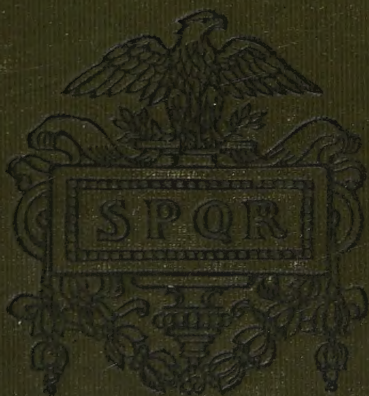


# CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

GUNNISON AND HARLEY



SILVER BURDETT & COMPANY

ST. MARY'S UNIVERSITY LIBRARY  
SAN ANTONIO, TEXAS

ST. LOUIS COLLEGE  
FACULTY LIBRARY

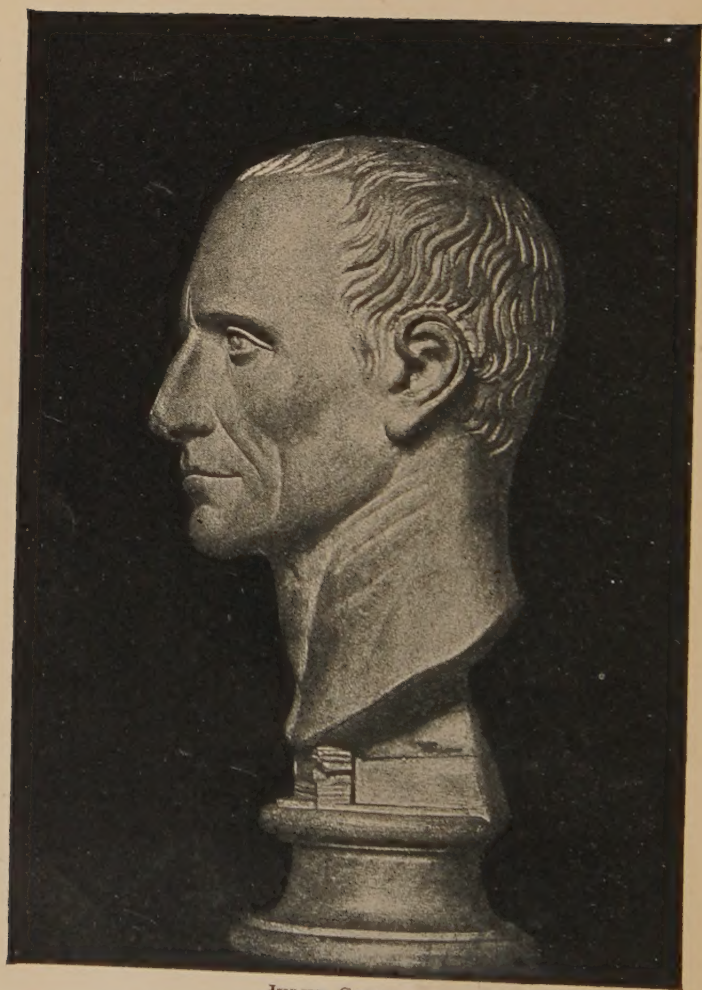
ST. LOUIS COLLEGE  
FACULTY LIBRARY

ST. LOUIS COLLEGE  
FACULTY LIBRARY









JULIUS CAESAR  
From the marble bust in the British Museum

# CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

BOOKS I-IV

AND SELECTIONS FROM BOOKS V-VII

WITH

NOTES, GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX, AND  
PROSE COMPOSITION

BY

WALTER B. GUNNISON, PH.D.

PRINCIPAL OF ERASMUS HALL HIGH SCHOOL  
BROOKLYN, NEW YORK

AND

WALTER S. HARLEY, A.M.

TEACHER OF LATIN, ERASMUS HALL HIGH SCHOOL



SILVER, BURDETT AND COMPANY

NEW YORK

BOSTON

CHICAGO

b

2083

COPYRIGHT, 1907,  
BY SILVER, BURDETT AND COMPANY.

b

878.1  
G168

## PREFACE

AT a time when so many excellent school editions of Caesar's Gallic War have been offered to the teachers of the country, representing the best scholarship and highest type of pedagogical presentation, it is but proper that a new edition should present its claims to consideration.

These must rest in large measure on the attempt to promote economy and convenience. The demands of the courses of study of our high schools and academies have so increased during the last few years as to suggest the wisdom of having all the required work for the second year of Latin in as compact form as possible. At present three books in Latin are used during this year: a grammar, a prose composition, and a Caesar text with its notes, vocabulary, history, etc. The aim in this edition is to place these three in one volume, containing all the text required for admission to college, all the grammar needed for the full interpretation of the text, together with all the usual grammatical forms for reference and for review, and a complete series of exercises in prose composition sufficient for the year's work.

By this arrangement it is felt that there will be not alone a marked economy in the cost to the pupil, but, what is far more important, a great saving of time through the easier reference from one part of the work to the other parts. For the most effective treatment,



each part needs the whole; a grammar cannot be properly divorced from the text, nor the composition from either. Then, too, a grammar full enough for college Latin is unnecessarily perplexing and burdensome to the beginner.

The first four books of the Gallic War are given, and a full equivalent of a fifth book has been added for those classes that can complete the larger amount, or for practice in sight reading; this book being made up of complete selections from the fifth, sixth, and seventh books, and containing only the most useful and interesting material.

Daily experience in the classroom has been the guide in the determination of what aids should be given in the way of notes, maps, and other illustrative material. The recognized difficulties of the Latin language, and the goal which the demands of the educational systems, and particularly of the colleges, have fixed as the termination of two years of work, have been carefully kept in mind.

We wish to acknowledge the very great assistance of Dr. William Tibbetts and Dr. Willis Boughton in the preparation of this work, and of Mr. Charles E. Dixon of this school for many valuable suggestions, and especially for the Prose Composition, which is entirely his work.

That in some measure our aims have been accomplished, and that this edition may prove of service to our fellow teachers of Latin, is the hope of

THE AUTHORS.

ERASMUS HALL HIGH SCHOOL, BROOKLYN,  
December 1, 1906.

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	xi
The Life of Caesar . . . . .	xi
The Gauls, the Germans, the Britons . . . . .	xix, xx
Caesar's Army . . . . .	xxi
Caesar's Ships . . . . .	xxxiv
Works of Reference . . . . .	xxxv
BOOK I . . . . .	1
BOOK II . . . . .	43
BOOK III . . . . .	66
BOOK IV . . . . .	86
SELECTIONS FROM BOOKS V, VI, AND VII . . . . .	113
ABBREVIATIONS . . . . .	146
NOTES . . . . .	147
GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX	
A. Inflection . . . . .	215
B. Syntax . . . . .	241
LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION . . . . .	279
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY . . . . .	359
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	374



## FULL-PAGE ILLUSTRATIONS

JULIUS CAESAR . . . . .	<i>Frontispiece</i>
	PAGE
CAESAR AS IMPERATOR . . . . .	x
THE DEATH OF CAESAR . . . . .	xvi
A ROMAN CAMP . . . . .	xxvi
CONSTRUCTING AN AGGER . . . . .	xxxii
ROMAN AND GALLIC SOLDIERS. Colored Plate I	<i>following</i> xxxvi
ROMAN OFFICERS. Colored Plate II . . . .	“ “
A ROMAN LEGIONARY SOLDIER. Colored Plate III .	“ “
STORMING A STRONGHOLD. Colored Plate IV . .	“ “
CAESAR'S BRIDGE OVER THE RHINE . . . . .	98
THE SURRENDER OF VERCINGETORIX TO CAESAR .	<i>facing</i> 144

## MAPS AND BATTLE PLANS

	FACING PAGE
GAUL IN THE TIME OF CAESAR . . . . .	1
HELVETIA AND NEIGHBORING COUNTRY . . . . .	6
(Campaign Map for 58 B.C.)	
DEFEAT OF THE HELVETII . . . . .	19
BATTLE WITH ARIOVISTUS . . . . .	40
CAMPAIGN OF 57 B.C. . . . .	44
BATTLE OF THE AXONA . . . . .	49
BATTLE OF THE SABIS . . . . .	55
STRONGHOLD OF THE ADUATUCI . . . . .	61
CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE VENETI . . . . .	76
CAMPAIGN OF 55 B.C. . . . .	86



CAESAR AS IMPERATOR



# INTRODUCTION

## THE LIFE OF CAESAR

1. **The Roman Republic.** — After the expulsion of King Tarquin, about five centuries B.C., the Roman government became a republic. The chief officers were two consuls, or presidents, elected annually. A senate consisting at first of three hundred members, enlarged later to six hundred, was an advisory body, whose power and authority increased with the growth of the republic. Starting with a single city, the Roman nation gradually extended its sway until, in 64 B.C., it included all Italy, Sicily, Sardinia, Spain, Illyricum, Macedonia and Greece, northern Africa, Gaul between the Rhone and the Apennines, and Asia Minor. In other words, Rome was the mistress of all the territory surrounding the Mediterranean. The conquest of Greece brought to the city Greek scholars, writers, and artists, who spread the higher learning and civilization of their land. One result of these foreign conquests was great national and personal wealth. But with wealth came luxury and the loss of the sturdy virtues that had been developed in the earlier days. Socially, the people were divided into the nobles (or men of senatorial rank), the knights (or men of wealth), the commons, and slaves. Between the rich and the poor there was frequent strife, owing to the unjust distribution of land and the undue power of the senate, which was cast on the side of the few great landowners. Politically, two parties came into existence after the foreign conquests, — the aristocratic, and the democratic or popular. Under the leadership of Sulla and Marius, the rivalry of these parties became most intense. But these leaders depended for their support upon the army, rather than upon the free will of the people, and thereafter the army was to be recognized in the settlement of political questions. There were many problems for statesmen

to solve at Rome at the beginning of the first century B.C. Popular government, as then conducted, was a failure. The extent of the Roman territory, the differing interests of the population, the corrupt condition of the senate, called for a leader of the highest ability. This man appeared, destined to lay the foundation of a mighty empire, and to be the foremost man in all Roman history, — Julius Caesar.

2. **Caesar's Ancestry.** — Gaius Julius Caesar was born at Rome, July 12, 100 (or 102)<sup>1</sup> B.C. The distinguished Julian family of which he was a member traced its history to Iulus, son of the Trojan Aeneas, who by tradition was descended from the gods. His father, who died when Julius was still a boy, had held the office of praetor. His mother, Aurelia, was a Roman matron of the highest type. To her wise training and influence, in a time of degeneracy, the son owed much, a debt which he repaid by deep affection and gratitude. It was the good fortune of Aurelia to live to see the success of her son in the greatest undertaking of his life, the conquest of Gaul.

3. **Education.** — Caesar's early education was received from M. Antonius Gniphio, a Gaul who resided in his pupil's family. It is probable that this instructor aroused in him a special interest in the Gallie land, which afterwards became so closely associated with his name. As to the extent of his education, we know that he spoke Greek as well as his own language, that he was an orator of great ability, that he was fond of books and art, and that he was an excellent gymnast and rider. The deeds of his uncle Marius, the greatest general that Rome had seen, must have filled his youthful mind with enthusiasm for military life.

4. **Marriage.** — At the age of fourteen, Caesar was appointed priest of Jupiter (*flamen dialis*). Four years later, he married Cornelia, daughter of a leader of the popular party, but on the return of Sulla as leader of the opposite faction he was ordered to be divorced. His refusal to obey was followed by dismissal from the priesthood, together with loss of his wife's dowry and

<sup>1</sup> The date is uncertain; 100 according to Suetonius, 102 according to Mommsen.

his own right of inheritance. The incident required him to retire from Rome, and though he was finally pardoned, it led to Sulla's prophecy that a youth of such metal would some day overthrow the aristocracy, "for in young Caesar there were many Mariuses."

5. **First Military Service.** — Going to Asia in 81 B.C., he began his career as a soldier by serving as aide-de-camp in the war against Mithridates, winning a civic crown (*corona civica*) for bravery. He was not without some experience in sea service also, for he joined the expedition of Servilius against the pirates of Cilicia.

6. **First Speeches.** — Returning to Rome after the death of Sulla, Caesar made his first speeches in several legal cases. Though not successful, his efforts were well received. It may be owing to his lack of success that he now went to Rhodes to study under Apollonius Molo, a noted teacher of rhetoric and oratory, who included Cicero among his pupils. It was on the way there that he was captured by pirates, who held him for a ransom. This he agreed to pay, with the threat that when released he would return and hang them all; he kept his word.

7. **First Command of an Army.** — Caesar's stay at Rhodes was shortened by an act of patriotism. Seeing that Mithridates, king of Pontus, was gaining in power in the absence of a sufficient Roman force, he raised a volunteer army, became its leader, and succeeded in driving back the king's general.

8. **Quaestorship.** — In 74 B.C., Caesar returned to Rome and began his political career. He had been appointed pontifex and was now elected military tribune. Allying himself with those who opposed the constitution of Sulla, he was elected quaestor, or public treasurer (68 B.C.). This office was the first in the "cursus honorum," and had to be held before one could be a member of the senate. Caesar's special duty called him to Spain as financial secretary to the governor of that distant province.

9. **Aedileship.** — Caesar was elected curule aedile for the year 65 B.C. This official had charge of the public buildings and streets, and was afforded a special opportunity to win popular favor for later offices by providing public games and amusements.

Caesar's entertainments of this sort were noted for their splendor, but they involved him in heavy debt.

**10. Pontifex Maximus.** — In 63 B.C., Caesar became pontifex maximus, or chief priest, an office of great influence and to be held for life. Besides having charge of the religious system of the nation, he was required to keep the calendar. The calendar at that time was much in need of revision, and it is to Caesar that we owe the corrections which, with slight alteration, have been accepted since 45 B.C.

**11. Praetorship.** — We know nothing of Caesar's record as praetor, or Roman judge, in 62 B.C. But we know that the following year as proprætor he became governor of Farther Spain, where he conquered several mountain tribes and gave evidence of his qualities as general. He reorganized the civil government of the province and personally accumulated sufficient means to enable him to satisfy his creditors at Rome. For his successes in Spain the senate granted him a triumph, but this honor he gave up voluntarily, that he might become a candidate for the consulship.

**12. The First Triumvirate.** — Caesar now became the leader of the popular party, which for twenty years had found no able successor of Marius and Cinna. At this time there were two other men of special prominence in the nation, Pompey, the greatest soldier of the day, and Crassus, the richest man in Rome. Pompey had just returned from his victories in the East. He had disbanded his army and now found the senate in opposition to himself, as it was to Caesar. To further their interests and more successfully meet the senate, these three men formed a league known as the First Triumvirate (60 B.C.). By the terms of their alliance Pompey was to receive land for his soldiers, and have his acts in the East ratified, Crassus was to gain an opportunity for political advancement, and Caesar was to become consul and later a governor.

**13. Consulship.** — Caesar's election to the consulship for 59 B.C. was easily won. His colleague Bibulus proved to be a weak associate, so that it was humorously said that the consuls were Julius and Caesar. The year was one of conflict with the senate. The proceedings of that body had never been public;

Caesar caused a daily report of them to be posted in the Forum, where it could be read. As consul he secured the demands of Pompey (12), proposed an agrarian law and a law against extortion, and obtained for himself the Gallic provinces for five years (59-55 B.C.). At a conference of the triumvirate at Luca in 56, this period was extended for five years more (54-50 B.C.).

**14. Caesar's Provinces.** — The territory assigned to Caesar included three provinces: Illyricum, east of the Adriatic; Cisalpine Gaul, lying east of the Alps along the Po; and Transalpine Gaul or Narbonensis, extending from the Alps southward to the Pyrenees. Transalpine Gaul, which had belonged to the Romans since 121 B.C., was distinguished as the Province, from which modern Provence is named. Caesar's relation to these provinces was both civil and military. As civil officer he would preside over the courts and provide for the general government. As military officer he would protect them from insurrection and invasion.

**15. The Conquest of Gaul.** — Caesar had just finished his consulship when he learned of the proposed invasion of the Province by the Helvetii. Immediately leaving Rome, he mustered an army of six legions. The conflict that followed with the invaders was the first event in the conquest of Gaul proper, the country bounded by the Atlantic Ocean, the Rhine, the Alps, and the Pyrenees, including therefore modern France, Switzerland, and Belgium. This conquest, the task of eight years (58-51 B.C.), was one of the most important events of history, for it not only added a vast province to the Roman dominions, but resulted in the extension of eastern civilization to western Europe. It is because Caesar prepared the way for the spread of this civilization that we have the chief interest in his life and writings.

**16. The Civil War.** — The triumvirate was dissolved by the death of Crassus (53 B.C.), and by the estrangement of Caesar and Pompey. As the time approached for Caesar's second consulship, which was to follow his ten years in Gaul, the law required that he give up the command of his army and become a private citizen at Rome before his election. This he refused to do. With a faithful legion he crossed the Rubicon, a small





THE DEATH OF CAESAR

*Rochegrosse.*

stream between his Cisalpine province and Italy. Civil war was inevitable. Pompey fled with his forces to Brundisium, thence to Greece. Having overrun Italy and undertaken the government at Rome, Caesar proceeded to Spain, where he secured control of the army in that country. Now in pursuit of Pompey he crossed the Adriatic and met his great rival in a decisive battle at Pharsalus (48 B.C.). Pompey fled to Egypt, where, upon landing, he was put to death by order of the king of that country.

**17. Caesar as Dictator.** — In 48 Caesar was appointed consul for five years, in 46 dictator for ten years, and in 44 dictator for life. To establish this supremacy he fought his last wars. He assigned the throne of Egypt to Cleopatra, defeating her brother Ptolemy. In Asia he suppressed the revolt of the son of Mithridates with such promptness that he could report the victory in his three famous words, *veni, vidi, vici*. He broke the power of Pompey's successors in Africa by defeating Scipio at Thapsus and Cato at Utica (46 B.C.). These and former victories he now had the honor to celebrate in four triumphs of unusual grandeur, — over Gaul, Egypt, Pontus, and Africa. In the following year the battle of Munda, in Spain, with the two sons of Pompey ended all resistance to his power.

**18. Caesar's Reforms.** — Caesar now turned his attention to improving the welfare of the people. He established a strong central government, enlarged the senate, making it more representative, and united the people by breaking down the old distinctions. He revised the laws, reduced pauperism, established colonies, encouraged agriculture, and protected the provinces from unjust taxation.

**19. Caesar's Death.** — While he was thus serving his country best, his enemies, including some whom he had pardoned and favored most, conspired to take his life, claiming that he intended to become king. On the Ides (the 15th) of March, 44 B.C., they assassinated him in the senate house, at the foot of Pompey's statue. "It was the most senseless deed," says Goethe, "that ever was done." It could not save Rome from monarchy, for within fifteen years Caesar's nephew and heir, Octavius Augustus, became the first emperor.

20. **Character of Caesar.** — Though not without vices, Caesar's virtues were such as to make his character well balanced. He was courteous, self-controlled, temperate, generous, and merciful toward his personal enemies. The breadth of his intellect has excited the wonder of all men. He has been called the greatest man in antiquity, for he was of the highest genius as statesman, soldier, orator, historian, and scholar. "Had he been nothing but a soldier," says Colonel Dodge, "Caesar would have been the equal of the other great captains." With but little military training, as we have seen, he learned the art of war by experience, and rarely made an error in strategy. A strict disciplinarian, he cared for his troops as few others have done, and was idolized by them. It is true that he seems needlessly cruel in slaying a million of the Gauls, a third of all with whom he fought, "but when he quitted Gaul and threw down the gauntlet to a mightier foe, the princes sent their bravest warriors to fight under his flag." But Caesar was primarily a statesman. He was a born ruler and organizer. The supreme act of his life was rescuing Rome from anarchy and laying the foundation of the empire, whose scepter he was the first to sway in fact, if not in name. To quote from Mommsen, "Caesar was monarch, but he never played the king. Even when absolute lord of Rome, he retained the deportment of the party leader. Complaisant toward every one, it seemed that he wished to be nothing but the first among his peers."

21. **Caesar's Commentaries.** — Caesar wrote on many topics, but the history of the Gallic war and another of the civil war are all that have come down to us. The former history, called *Commentarii de Bello Gallico* (*Commentaries on the Gallic War*), was written to justify his course in Gaul, and was probably finished before the end of 51 B.C. It was written in seven books, each being the record of a year's campaign in Gaul, for the period 58-52 B.C. To these was added an eighth book for 51 B.C., by his lieutenant, Aulus Hirtius. These commentaries tell of the defeat of the Helvetii and of Ariovistus in 58; of the conquest of the Belgae in 57; of the naval war with the Veneti and of the campaigns against the Aquitani and tribes on the northern coast in 56; of the defeat of two German tribes in Gaul and the

invasion of Germany and Britain in 55; of the second invasion of Britain in 54; of the second expedition to Germany and of the conflict with the Gallic chief Ambiorix in 53; of the last mighty struggle of all the tribes for freedom under the brave Vercingetorix in 52; and finally of the taking of the last stronghold, Uxellodunum, in 51.

It is not merely a history of warfare that Caesar has given us, but an account of the country and the people who were among the first to live in western Europe. It is the earliest source of information regarding that part of the world.

## THE GAULS

**22. Government.** — The Gauls whom Caesar conquered were divided into about sixty tribes. They were chiefly Celtic in origin and spoke different dialects of the Celtic language. These tribes did not form one nation, though it is said that representatives met yearly to consider matters of general concern. Naturally, friendly alliances existed between some tribes, while others were subject to the more powerful. With few exceptions they had dethroned their kings, the government passing into the hands of nobles or chieftains, and a senate or council of elders. In some tribes, such as the Haedui, magistrates were elected annually.

**23. Civilization.** — In civilization the northern tribes were least advanced, while those in the south developed because of intercourse with the Roman Province, chiefly through merchants from Narbo and the old Greek city of Massilia (Marseilles). The central Gauls sowed grain and were famous for their horses and cattle; the Aquitani were miners; the Veneti were sailors. The houses were of timber and wickerwork. The people lived in open villages or in towns fortified with massive walls. They collected taxes and tolls. They used coined money. In their written language they adopted the characters of the Greek alphabet. Their religion was druidism, of which Caesar has given much interesting information in Book VI.

**24. Dress.** — Physically the Gauls were tall, fair-haired, and of great strength. They wore trousers (*braccae*) and many-

colored shirts, in distinction from other nations of their time, and were known for their jewelry of gold and bronze (see Plate I.).

**25. Warfare.** — Much of the time of the Gauls was spent in warfare. Their weapons were a heavy javelin or pike, and a long two-edged sword made for striking rather than thrusting. Their defensive armor was a large shield and a metal helmet, the latter often being made in the shape of some animal's head. The strength of the Gallic army was in its cavalry. The infantry advanced to the attack in close array (by phalanxes) protected by shields above and in front, as in the case of the Helvetii. Caesar himself testifies to the valor of his foe, but bravery and numbers counted for little before the discipline and the organization of the Roman legions.

### THE GERMANS

**26.** The two battles which Caesar fought with German armies in 58 and 55 B.C. were on Gallie soil, to which the migrating Germans had come. In 55 Caesar entered Germany itself, and again in 53, but these brief expeditions were intended chiefly for display, and resulted in no conquest. The Romans knew little about Germany, although the Cimbri and Teutones, their well-nigh invincible enemies of the preceding century, had come from that country. Caesar was the first to learn of the nature and customs of the inhabitants and has left a record of his observations in Books IV and VI of the Commentaries. He found that they were less civilized than the Gauls, having scarcely left the nomadic stage. They lived in isolated tribes. Being herdsmen, they subsisted upon their cattle. They were tall in stature and stern looking. They were trained warriors, the Suebi alone having a standing army of a hundred thousand men. They worshiped the sun and the moon and were highly superstitious.

### THE BRITONS

**27.** The history of Britain may be said to begin with Caesar's invasions of that island in 55 and 54 B.C. As a reason for these invasions, he says that the Britons had given aid to the Gauls



in their recent wars, and that he wished to learn personally about the people and their land. Long before his time the island had been famous for its tin, for which Phoenician merchants came and bartered their wares. Like the Gauls, the inhabitants of Britain were Celts. The coast tribes had customs like those of their neighbors on the continent, while those in the interior were less advanced. In battles they used a special kind of chariot drawn by trained horses. Druidism flourished in Britain even to a greater extent than in Gaul. On his second expedition Caesar conquered the country for some distance beyond the Thames, and compelled the chiefs to pay tribute and give hostages. But after his return to Gaul, the country regained its independence, and it was not until a century later that the Romans sent another army to secure the conquest.

## CAESAR'S ARMY

### Divisions of the Army

**28. The Infantry.** — The main division of the Roman infantry was the legion (*legio*). This consisted of six thousand men when fully recruited, but through disability or loss of life the number in actual service was smaller, probably four thousand or five thousand. It is clearly impossible to tell the exact number for a particular legion at a given time, for recruits were not added to the old legions, but formed into new. Caesar had six <sup>1</sup> legions in 58 B.C., eight in 57–55, ten in 53, and eleven <sup>2</sup> in 52. Each legion was divided into ten cohorts, thirty maniples, sixty centuries.

100 (?) men	in	1 century ( <i>centuria, ordo</i> )
2 centuries	in	1 maniple ( <i>manipulus</i> )
3 maniples	in	1 cohort ( <i>cohors</i> )
10 cohorts	in	1 legion

**29. Auxiliaries.** — We have no knowledge of the number of auxiliaries (*auxilia*) in Caesar's army. They were not Roman

<sup>1</sup> Numbered 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12.

<sup>2</sup> Adding 1, 3, 13, 14, 15, to those of 58 B.C.

citizens. They included archers (*sagittarii*) from Crete and Numidia, slingers (*funditores*) from the Balearic Islands, and the soldiers of light armor (*milites levis armaturae*). The last kind of troops carried the usual sword and spear, but had a light round shield (*parma*), and wore light defensive armor in distinction from the legionary (40). The auxiliaries were used chiefly to make a show of strength, and generally were stationed on the wings (*alae*) of the army, from which they were called *alarii* (see Plate I.).

**30. Cavalry.** — This section of the army (*equitatus, equites*) was composed entirely of mercenaries from Gaul, Germany, and Spain. They numbered four thousand in 58 B.C., five thousand in 55, most of whom were furnished by the Haedui and Treveri. The divisions were *alae*, or regiments of three hundred or four hundred men; *turmac*, or squadrons of thirty-three men; and *decuriae*, of eleven men each. The officers were decurions (*decuriones*) and prefects (*praefecti equitum*). Caesar's cavalry won little glory in battle, being frequently defeated by much smaller numbers of the enemy.

**31. The Artillery.** — There was no regular artillery corps. The engines (56) for hurling stones and arrows were operated by skilled workmen (*fabri*) who ranked as legionaries.

**32. Baggage Train.** — The tents, mills for grinding grain, and stores of provisions and weapons were carried by pack-animals (*iumenta*), either horses or mules. It is estimated that about five hundred animals were required for each legion. These animals were attended by slaves (*calones*). The baggage train was called *impedimenta* because it was an "impediment" or hindrance to the army in its progress. A legion without its baggage was called *legio expedita*. For the personal baggage (*sarcinae*) carried by the soldiers, see 42.

### The Officers

**33. Commander in Chief.** — Caesar, as commander in chief, was called *dux belli*, until his victory over the Helvetii, when he received the title *imperator*. His staff included the lieutenants (*legati*), the quaestor, spies (*speculatores*), and camp companions

(*contubernales*), young men who had come to learn the art of war.

34. **Lieutenants.**—The *legati* may be considered as lieutenant-generals, being the intimate advisers of the emperor. They were sometimes assigned to conduct special expeditions, or to be commanders of the legions in battle, a custom introduced by Caesar. In the absence of the general, they held his authority and were regularly in charge of the winter-quarters. They were men of senatorial rank, the most prominent being Labienus, Publius Crassus, and Quintus Cicero, the brother of the famous orator. Caesar mentions the names of eighteen men who were his lieutenants at different times during the years 58–52 B.C.

35. **Quaestor.**—The provincial treasurer was one of the quaestors elected by the people at Rome, and was assigned to the province by lot, to be associated with the governor. In connection with the army, his duty was to provide for the food, pay, clothing, and equipment of the soldiers, like a modern quartermaster. Caesar sometimes placed his quaestor in command of a legion.

36. **Tribunes.**—Six military tribunes (*tribuni militum*) were attached to each legion. They were generally young men of equestrian rank, appointed for personal or political reasons rather than because of military training. In earlier times they had charge of the legion in turn, but in Caesar's army the legions were under the command of the lieutenants, as stated in 34. "The duties of the tribunes became mainly administrative and judicial; they cared for the levying, the discharge, and the equipment of the troops, and for the army supplies, under the orders of the quaestor; and they presided at courts-martial and took part in the councils of war. Sometimes they led the legions on the march and received subordinate military commands."

37. **Centurions.**—Much of Caesar's success was due to the practical experience and faithfulness of his centurions (*centuriones*). They were selected from the ranks by the commander in chief because of good service and were men of humbler birth than the lieutenants or tribunes. Each legion had sixty centurions, one for every century. They were divided into ten classes of six each. From the tenth class to the first there was

a regular system of promotion, which must have done much to improve the service. The six centurions of the first cohort were called *centuriones primorum ordinum*, and were entitled to special privileges, such as a place in the councils of war. The senior centurion of this cohort (*primipilus*) was the chief centurion of the legion, and was an officer of great responsibility. The maniples and cohorts were commanded by the senior centurions of these divisions. In his Commentaries, Caesar frequently pays compliment to the centurions and other officers for special acts of bravery (see Plate II.).

38. Besides the officers mentioned above there were prefects (*praefecti*), who commanded the auxiliaries and cavalry, and the decurions (*decuriones*), who were the subordinate cavalry leaders (30). Other members of the army, distinct from the regular soldiers, were the *evocati*, veterans who had completed their term of service but had reënlisted (had been "called out") at the request of the commander; the standard bearers (*aquiliferi*, *signiferi*); and the musicians (*bucinatores*, *cornicines*, *tubicines*) (see Plate II.).

### The Legionary Soldiers

39. The soldiers of a legion (*legionarii*) were Roman citizens. The age of service was seventeen to forty-six, and the period of enlistment probably twenty years, after which, if they volunteered, they were known as *evocati* (38). The fixed pay of a soldier was 225 denarii a year (about \$45), the amount received by a laborer at Rome. This remuneration was increased by a share of the booty and by gifts from the commander. Twice a month an allowance of grain, the principal article of food, was made to each man, about half a bushel, the cost of which was deducted from the soldier's pay. Many traders (*mercatores*) followed the army to supply the men with their wares.

40. Clothing and Armor. — The soldier wore (1) a sleeveless woolen tunic (*tunica*); (2) a coat of mail (*lorica*) made of leather overlaid with bands of metal; (3) a woolen mantle (*sagum*) for wet or cold weather; (4) heavy leather shoes (*caligae*); (5) an iron helmet (*cassis*) or one of leather and brass (*galea*), often decorated with colored plumes (*cristae*, *insignia*). His shield

(*scutum*) was about four feet high and two feet broad, and was curved to protect the body. It was made of layers of wood covered with leather and bound with metal. The outer surface



SHIELD  
(*Scutum*)

was decorated with the emblem of the cohort, such as a winged thunderbolt. When not in use, the shield was protected by a leather covering (*tegimentum*) (see Plate III.).

41. Weapons. — The soldier had two weapons, a sword and a spear. The sword (*gladius*) was about two feet long, straight, and two edged. It was carried on the right side, while the shield was necessarily on the left. The spear (*pilum*) was between six and seven feet in length, and consisted of an iron point two feet long inserted in a wooden shaft. The exact shape of the pilum of Caesar's army is not known. In the illustrations given on page xxxiv (a) was used a century before the Gallic War, (b) in the time of the empire. For the use of these weapons see 48.



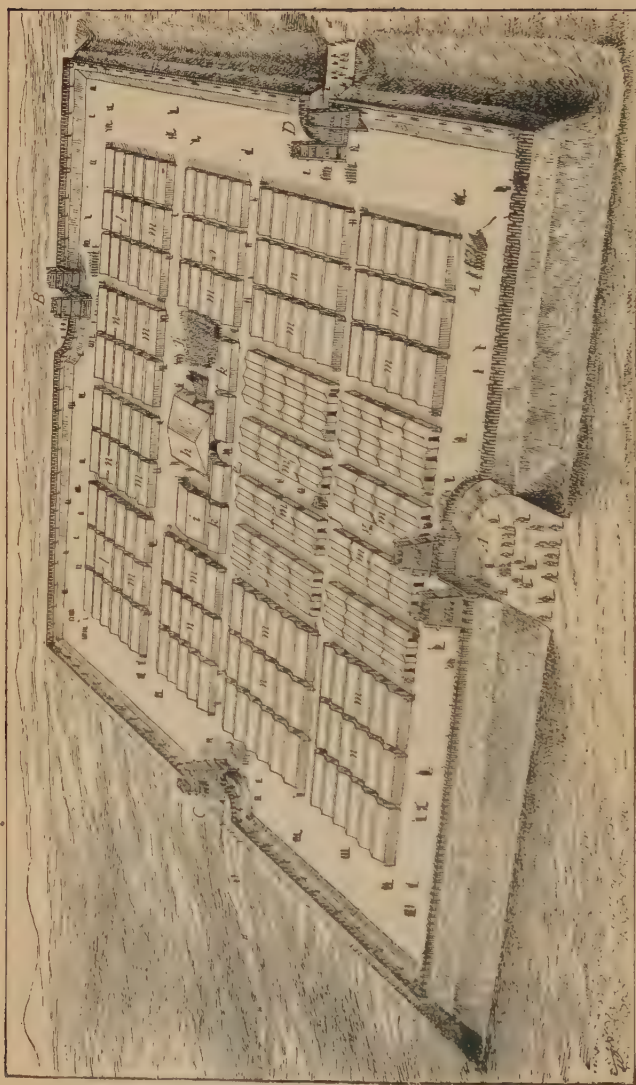
SWORD AND  
SCABBARD  
(*Gladius*)

42. Baggage. — The soldier carried his rations, extra clothing, and some tools and utensils, amounting at times to a weight of sixty pounds. For convenience in carrying, these articles were tied in bundles (*sarcinae*) and attached to a forked pole, which was known as the mule of Marius (*mulus Marianus*), having been first introduced by that general. This was carried over the shoulder. A soldier without his *sarcinae* was called *expeditus* (see Plate I.).

### The Camp

43. The Roman camp (*castra*) was always arranged and fortified with great care, even when it was to be used for only a single night. The first essential was a good location, on high, sloping ground, provided with water and wood, and having no large forest near by to conceal the enemy. The sloping ground was





<i>A</i>	Porta praetoria	<i>D</i>	Porta principalis sinistra	<i>g</i>	Via decumana	<i>j</i>	Forum	<i>mm</i>	Equites
<i>B</i>	Porta decumana	<i>e</i>	Via principalis	<i>h</i>	Praetorium	<i>kk</i>	Tribuni	<i>nn</i>	Pedites
<i>C</i>	Porta principalis dextra	<i>f</i>	Via quintana	<i>i</i>	Quaestorium	<i>ll</i>	Auxilia		

A ROMAN CAMP

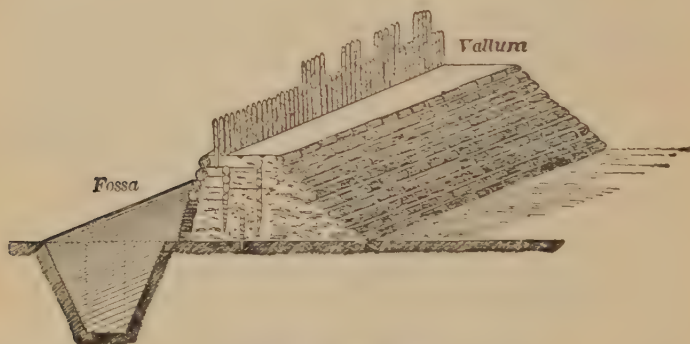


necessary to secure an advantage in case of attack. While the army was on the march, a detachment was sent ahead to select such a place. When the halt was made, the work of arranging the camp began at once, and since the soldier was trained to use the spade as well as the sword, it was completed in a few hours. The front of the camp faced the enemy, with the rear on higher ground (*superior locus*). The general plan was the same from day to day. In shape it was a rectangle, surrounded by a wall and ditch (44). There were four principal gates, one on each side. The front gate was *porta praetoria*, the rear *porta decumana* (see illustration). Within the wall, on four sides of the camp, there was left a wide space for marshaling troops and for protecting the interior from the enemy's missiles. Two parallel streets (*via principalis* and *via quintana*) divided the interior into three sections. In the rear or highest section were the headquarters of the general (*praetorium*) and of the quaestor (*quaestorium*), with the altar (*ara*) for religious observances, and the *forum*, where the general addressed the soldiers. Each division of the army had a certain position assigned to it. The tents (*tabernacula*, *pelles*) were large enough for ten men, and were made of leather. Hence *sub pellibus* meant "in the tents."

The permanent winter camp (*hiberna*) was constructed on the same plan as the temporary summer camp (*castra aestiva*) just described. It was larger, however, and had wooden huts with straw-thatched roofs instead of leather tents.

44. **Wall and Ditch.** — The Romans fortified the camp by means of a wall (*vallum*) and an adjacent ditch (*fossa*). The construction of these was the most important work in connection with the camp. When the ditch was dug about the outside of the camp, the earth thrown inward formed the wall, which was then faced with sod and strengthened by stakes and bundles of brush (*fascines*). It was mounted from the inside by means of steps. Upon the wall was a breastwork of stakes (*valli*), and in addition towers were sometimes erected at different points over the wall. The wall was not only to furnish protection, but to afford an elevation from which spears might be thrown upon the enemy. There seems to have been a fixed proportion in the dimensions of the fortification, the height of the wall being

two thirds the width of the ditch. Thus in the camp on the Axona (Book II, chap. 5) the former was twelve feet and the latter eighteen feet. But as a rule they were smaller, the wall being from six to eight feet high, the ditch nine to twelve feet wide and seven to nine deep.



WALL AND DITCH

45. **Watches.** — The night from sunset to sunrise was divided into four equal watches (*vigiliae*). The length of each, therefore, was three hours or less, varying with the time of year, but midnight always marked the end of the second watch and the beginning of the third. The musicians sounded a tattoo at night, a signal for the close of each watch, and a reveille at dawn. The guard consisted of five cohorts, one for each gate and one for the headquarters.

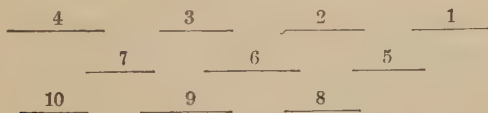
### The Army on the March

46. Marching was usually begun at sunrise, or if necessary soon after midnight (*tertia vigilia*). It was continued about seven hours, the distance covered being fifteen or twenty miles. Any greater distance was called a forced march (*magnum iter*), many of which were made by Caesar. The army on the march was divided into (1) the van (*primum agmen*), consisting of the cavalry and light-armed infantry; (2) the main body of the troops (*agmen legionum*); (3) the rear guard (*agmen novissimum*). The

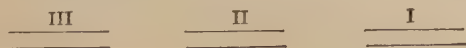
van might have to engage the enemy, to reconnoiter, or to select a position for the camp (43). The order of the second division depended upon circumstances. When not near the enemy, the legions were separated, each being followed by its own baggage. In this order the legions were *impeditae*. If an attack of the enemy was expected, most of the legions were massed together, followed by the baggage of the whole army and by the remaining legions as a rear guard. In this order they were *expeditae*. But the individual soldiers were *impediti*, for besides helmets and shields they carried their personal baggage (*sarcinae*, 42), which had to be disposed of before battle. The enemy sought the advantage of attacking the army *sub sarcinis* (*in agmine, in itinere*). Again, the army might march in line of battle (*acies instructa*), that is, in three parallel lines, ready for immediate action. This, however, was for only a short distance away from the camp, which was not broken up. Ordinarily the marching column was forty feet wide, one century following another or two centuries marching abreast. It is said that the order of precedence was changed from day to day, so that the same legion might not always lead the line.

### The Army in Battle

47. Arrangement of the Lines. — The usual arrangement of Caesar's army in battle was in three lines (*triplex acies*). The details of this plan are not altogether known, but the simpler facts seem to be as follows. The legions stood side by side, each in three lines of cohorts. Four of the ten cohorts of each legion were in the front line, while the others formed the second and third lines, three in each, thus:—



In each cohort the three maniples stood side by side, one century behind the other, thus:—



The first line consisted of the most experienced soldiers, while the third was generally held in reserve. The front was divided into three sections, right, left, and center (*cornu dextrum, cornu sinistrum, acies media*). The usual place of the auxiliaries (29) was on the wings, as they were not of service in making a charge. The cavalry (30), after skirmishing, guarded the auxiliaries on the wings, and in case of victory pursued the fleeing enemy. When no reserve was needed or when it was desired to extend the front, the army was drawn up in two lines (*acies duplex*, Book II, chap. 24). Special arrangements of small bodies of troops were the *testudo* ("tortoise"), in which the men were in close array, holding their overlapping shields above their heads (Plate IV.); and the *orbis* ("circle"), corresponding to our "hollow square," in which the men stood as on the circumference of a circle, facing outward.

48. **Manner of Attack.** — Before the battle the *sarcinae* (42) had to be laid aside, and the shield and helmet, with the decorations (*insignia*), had to be adjusted. For this the skirmishing line was expected to gain time. The general, if possible, passed from one legion to another with an encouraging speech (*cohortatio*). At the signal given by the trumpeters, the first line, with spears raised in their right hands, charged upon the enemy, hurling the weapons when within the required distance. Much depended upon this first assault, which was especially effective if made down hill. The rest of the contest was with the sword, hand to hand. As the first line weakened it was relieved by the second, while the third, as stated before, was held in reserve or deployed to resist a flank attack. A battle near the camp was of course more advantageous than one on the march (*ex itinere*).

49. **Standards.** — There were four kinds of standards.

1. The eagle (*aquila*) of each legion. This was of silver or bronze, mounted upon a staff. It was a sacred emblem, in the care of the chief centurion (*primipilus*), and carried by one whom he appointed (*aquilifer*) (see Plate II.).

2. The standards (*signa*) of the cohorts, of which there was a great variety. A common design was the figure of an animal, or an open hand having under it, upon the staff, a number of

other emblems. These cohort standards were carried by the *signiferi* (see Plate II.).

3. A small white or red banner (*vexillum*) used by the cavalry (see Plate II.).

4. A large red flag (*vexillum*) displayed at the general's tent as a signal for battle.

The phrase *signa inferre* meant "to advance"; *signa referre*, "to retreat"; *signa convertere*, "to face about."

50. **Music.** — Wind instruments of music were used to carry the orders of the commanders in battle, as well as in camp duty (45). They were the *tuba*, a long straight trumpet; the *lituus*, a curved trumpet of the cavalry; the *bucina*, a curved bugle; and the *cornu*, a horn made of the horn of an animal (see Plate II.).

### Siege Operations

51. **Methods of Capturing Towns.** — The towns of the Gauls were fortified with strongly built walls. To capture such places, the Romans employed one of three means: assault, blockade, or a long siege.

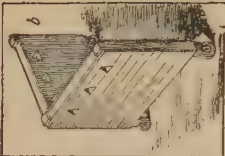
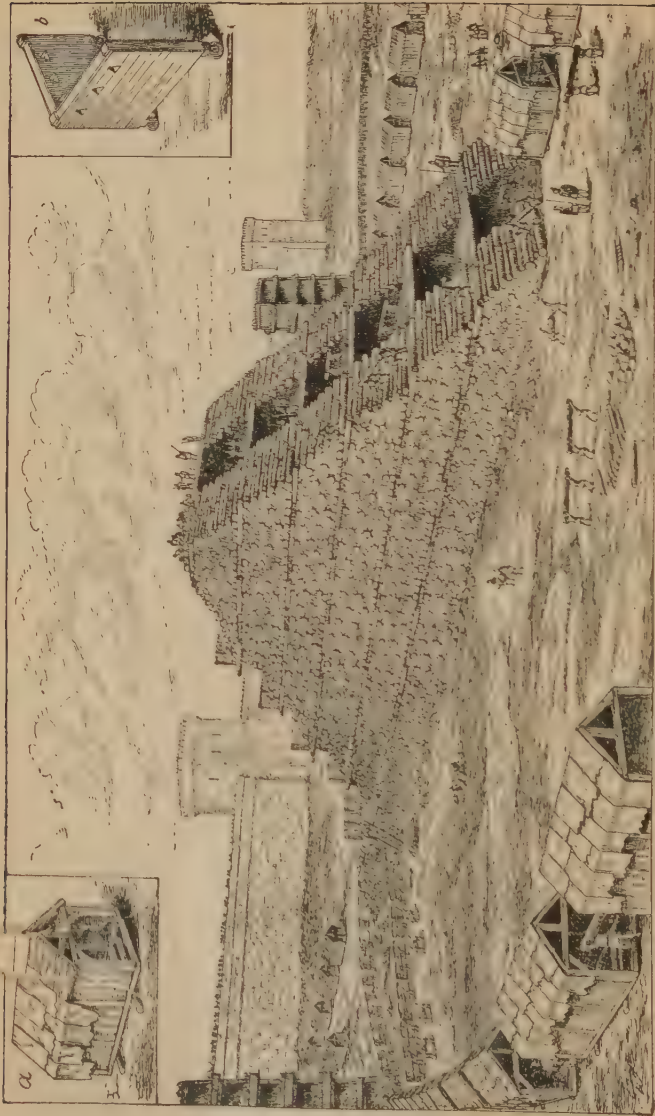
1. Assault (*oppugnatio repentina*) was an attempt to break down the walls without long-continued preparation. The defenders were dislodged by archers and slingers and by means of engines (*tormenta*, 56). The moat or ditch about the town was filled with brush and earth. The battering ram (*aries* 55) and scaling ladders (*scalae*) were applied. Some formed a testudo (47) for attack; others under protection sought to undermine the wall or set fire to the gates (see Plate IV.).

2. Blockade (*obsidio*) consisted in surrounding the town with a series of fortifications, including redoubts (*castella*) held by garrisons (*praesidia*), the aim being to starve the defenders into surrender, as at Alesia (Book VII).

3. The active siege (*oppugnatio*) was adopted against places that were strongly fortified or well supplied with provisions. This involved the building of an *agger* (52).

52. **Agger.** — The agger was a "siege mound or terrace, composed of a core of earth and timber, supported by walls of logs piled crosswise in successive layers" (p. xxxii). It was begun





a Vinca

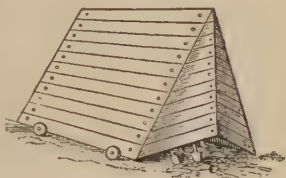
b Pluteus

CONSTRUCTING AN AGGER



at a distance of four or five hundred feet from the town wall, toward which it extended at a right angle, and was gradually brought up to the wall, equaling it in height. Its length might therefore be four or five hundred feet, width fifty or sixty feet, height fifty to eighty. The purpose of this great structure was to furnish the Romans a means of access to the top of the enemy's fortifications. In the war with the Belgae (Book II, chap. 30), the agger seems to have been "a smooth roadway" upon which a tower (54) was erected to the height of the wall.

53. *Plutei, Vineae*. — During the building of the agger the soldiers were protected by *plutei*, wicker shields covered with rawhides and moving on three rollers; by *musculi*, small sheds of great strength; and by *vineae* ("grape arbors"), which were movable wooden sheds, sixteen feet long, open at each end, and covered on the roof with hides. The *vineae* were placed end to end, forming a long gallery under which the men could move to the works, shielded from fire as well as darts thrown by the enemy.



MUSCULUS

54. *Turris*. — The movable tower (*turris ambulatoria*) is frequently mentioned by Caesar, and was used as an aid in agger building. It consisted of as many as ten stories, connected by stairs, and was moved upon rollers to the wall of the enemy's town. A bridge at the top of it could then be let down upon the wall, by which the Roman soldiers who garrisoned the tower could assault the defenders of the town.

55. *Aries*. — The battering ram (*aries*) consisted of a long beam with a heavy iron head, and was used in breaking down a wall, against which it was forcibly driven. Stones were pulled from the top of a wall by a huge iron hook attached to a long pole (*falx muralis*).

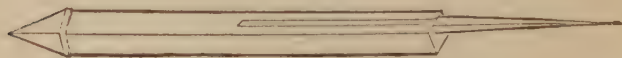
56. *Tormenta*. — The engines used for hurling heavy missiles were called *tormenta* (*torqueo*, twist) "because their power was derived from the torsion of twisted ropes." They included (1) the catapult (*catapulta*), for shooting large arrows; (2) the

scorpion (*scorpio*), for shooting a single heavy arrow; (3) the *ballista*, for hurling stones; (4) the *onager* ("wild ass"), a small *ballista* (see Plate IV.).

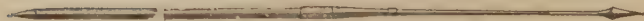
### CAESAR'S SHIPS

57. Caesar required ships in the war with the Veneti, 56 B.C., and in his two expeditions to Britain. They were made for the occasion and were of two kinds, war galleys and transports. The galleys (*naves longae*) in length were about eight times their breadth, and were noted for their speed. Though provided with a sail they were usually propelled by oars, which were often arranged in three banks (*triremes*). They carried the regular legionaries as fighters, the rowers (*remiges*), the sailors (*nautae*), and the pilot (*gubernator*). At the prow was a heavy beak (*rostrum*) of bronze or iron, intended for ramming the vessels of the enemy. In the war with the Veneti, grappling hooks of new design were used to cut down the enemy's sails, after which the contest was hand to hand. Missiles were thrown with great effect from towers erected upon the vessels, or by means of tormenta (56). When not in service the ships were beached rather than anchored.

The transports (*naves onerariae*) conveyed troops and supplies. They were shorter and broader than the galleys and were propelled more frequently by sails than by oars.



a



b

PILA (*Javelins*)

## WORKS OF REFERENCE

1. Holmes, T. R., *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, Macmillan and Company, 1899.
2. Dodge, Colonel T. A., *Caesar*, Houghton, Mifflin and Company, 1892.
3. Napoleon III, *History of Julius Caesar*, Harper and Brothers, 1865.
4. Trollope, A., *The Commentaries of Caesar*, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1880.
5. Froude, J. A., *Caesar: A Sketch*, Charles Scribner's Sons, 1879.
6. Fowler, W. W., *Julius Caesar*, G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1892.
7. Merivale, C., *The Roman Triumvirates*, Charles Scribner's Sons, 1887.
8. Plutarch, *Lives of Illustrious Men*.
9. Smith, William, *Dictionary of Greek and Roman Biography*.
10. Judson, H. P., *Caesar's Army*, Ginn and Company, 1888.
11. *Teachers College Record*, Vol. III, Nos. 3 and 4, Columbia University Press, 1902.

Mommsen's *History of Rome*, Merivale's *General History of Rome*, Guizot's *History of France*, Motley's *Rise of the Dutch Republic*, Hug and Stead's *Switzerland*, Taylor's *History of Germany*, Scarth's *Roman Britain*, and other histories discuss Caesar's conquest in its relation to the early history of western Europe.







ROMAN SOLDIERS

1 Funditor 2 Miles levis armaturae 3 Miles sub sarcinis 4 Legionarius

GALLIC SOLDIERS

5 Trumpeter 6 Foot Soldier 7 Standard Bearer 8 Leader





ROMAN OFFICERS

1 Legatus  
2 Imperator

3 Centurio  
4 Lictor

5-6 Signiferi  
7 Aquilifer

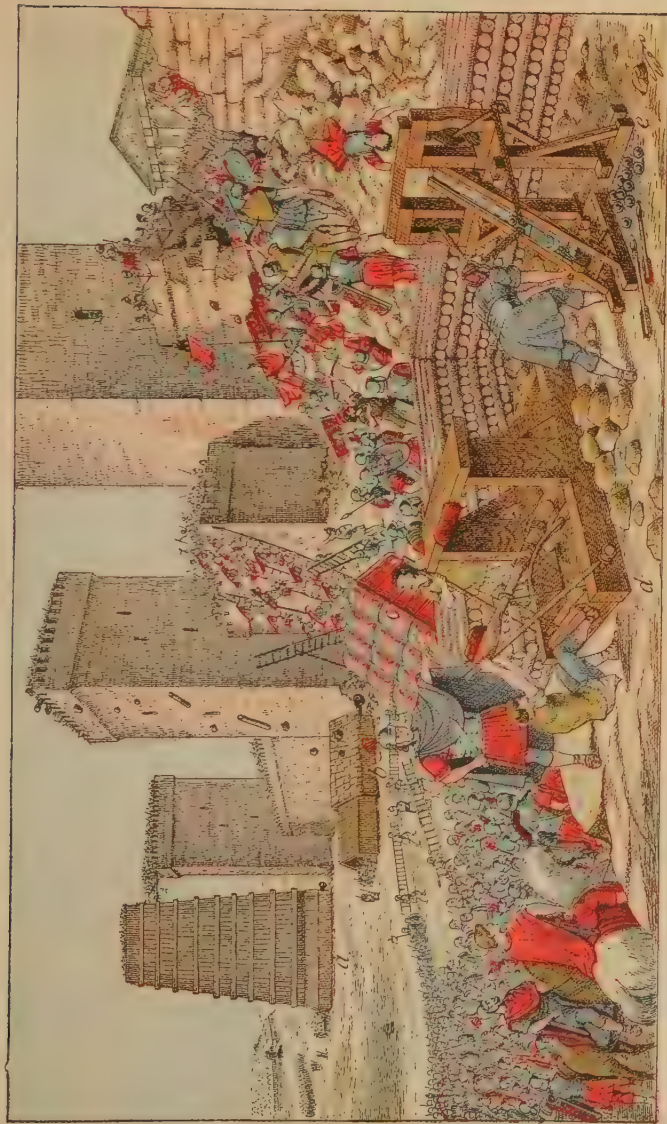
8 Tubicen  
9 Bucinator







LEGIONARIUS  
(Roman Legionary Soldier)



STORMING A STRONGHOLD

*a* Turris

*b* Aries

*c* Testudo

*d* Onager

*e* Ballista



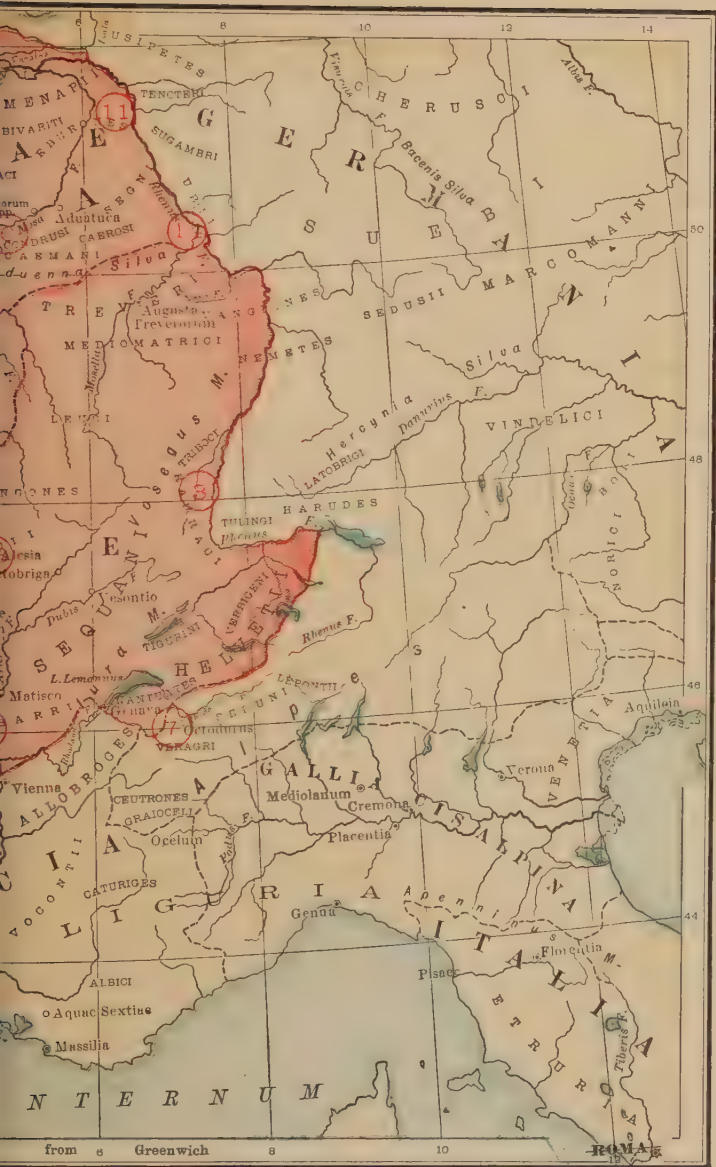




# Caesar's Battles with:

1. Helvetii, 58
2. Helvetii, 58
3. Ariovistus, 58
4. Belgae, 57
5. Nervii, 57
6. Aduatuci, 57
7. Veragri, 56
8. Veneti, 56
9. Veneti, 56
10. Sotiates, 56 (B.C.)
11. Germani, 55
12. Britons, 55
13. Vercingetorix, 52
14. Location of Bridge, 55

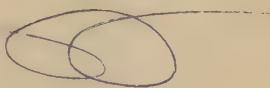






# CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

## BOOK I



### SUMMARY

#### CHAP. 1. Geography of Gaul.

CHAPS. 2-29. The War with the Helvetii, 58 B.C. — In the year 61 B.C. Orgetorix, an Helvetian chieftain, persuades his countrymen to plan the conquest of Gaul. Before the plan is completed, however, he is brought to trial on the charge of attempting to become king of his tribe. After his death, which was probably self-inflicted, the Helvetii continue their preparations for the conquest. They attempt to cross the Rhone three years later (58 B.C.), but are prevented by Caesar, the newly appointed governor of Illyricum, Cisalpine Gaul, and the Province. Foiled thus, they march through the country of the Sequani, three cantons crossing the Saône, the fourth being attacked and defeated by Caesar. After some parleying between Caesar and Helvetian envoys, there follows the defeat of the Roman cavalry and the treachery of Dumnorix, a Haeduan ally of the Romans. Pursuing the enemy farther, Caesar conquers them in a battle near Bibracte, the chief town of the Haeduans. The Helvetii and allied tribes are ordered to return to their own country, their forces having been reduced from 368,000 to 110,000.

CHAPS. 30-54. The War with Ariovistus, 58 B.C. — Gallic chiefs inform Caesar of the invasion of the German king, Ariovistus, and of his arrogance and cruelty. They ask aid from Caesar, which he promises to give. He demands a conference with the German, who refuses to meet him and replies in a defiant

tone. Hearing further complaints against the invaders, Caesar advances and seizes the stronghold of Vesontio. Here through fear of the enemy the Roman army is panic-stricken, but confidence is restored. A meeting of the two commanders, which is finally brought about, is interrupted by the treachery of the Germans. Though the latter seek to avoid a contest till after the new moon, Caesar forces battle upon them near the Rhine, putting them to rout and driving them across the Rhine.

*The nations of Gaul. Their territories.*

1. Gallia est omnis divisa in partēs trēs, quārum  
 ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam, quā  
 ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī  
 omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt.  
 5 Gallōs ab Aquitānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona  
 et Sēquana dividit.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā  
 quod ā cultū atque hūmānitātē prōvinciae longissimē  
 absunt, minimēque ad eōs mereātōrēs saepe commeant  
 10 atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, im-  
 portant; proximūque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum  
 incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā  
 dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecē-  
 dunt, quod ferē cotīdiānis proeliis cum Germānīs con-  
 15 tendunt, cum aut suis finibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī  
 in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est,  
 initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā  
 flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab  
 20 Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad sep-  
 tentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur,  
 pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī, spectant



in septentrionem et orientem <sup>part + rem</sup> solem. Aquitania a Garumnâ flumine ad Pyrænaeos montes et eam partem Oceanî, quae est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter <sup>rem + rem.</sup> 25 occasum solis et septentriones.

2-29. THE WAR WITH THE HELVETII, MARCH-JUNE,  
58 B.C.

*The plan of Orgetorix, the Helvetian.*

2. Apud Helveticos longè nobilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messala, M. Piso consulis, regni cupiditate inductus coniurationem nobilitatis fecit et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus <sup>30</sup> copiis exirent: perfacile esse, cum virtute omnibus praestarent, totius Galliae imperio potiri.

Id hoc facilius eis persuasit, quod undique loci naturâ Helvetii continentur: unâ ex parte flumine Rheno latissimò atque altissimò, quî agrum Helvetium a Germanis <sup>35</sup> dividit; alterâ ex parte monte Iura altissimò, quî est inter Sequanos et Helveticos; tertiâ, lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodanò, quî provinciam nostram ab Helveticis dividit.

His rebus fiebat, ut et minus latè vagarentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; quâ ex parte <sup>40</sup> homines bellandi cupidî magnò dolore adficiébantur. Pro multitudine autem hominum et pro gloriâ bellî atque fortitudinis angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur, quî in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL, in latitudinem CLXXX patébant.

45

*The Helvetii prepare to leave their country. Orgetorix conspires with Casticus and Dumnorix.*

3. His rebus adducti et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti constituerunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum per-

tinērent, comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam  
 māximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam māxi-  
 50 mās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum  
 proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiā cōfirmāre.  
 Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxē-  
 runt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant.

Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi  
 55 lēgatiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscepit. In eō itinere persuā-  
 det Casticō, Catamantāloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cūius pater  
 rēgnū in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā  
 senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēg-  
 num in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat;  
 60 itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Dīviciāci, quī eō  
 tempore principātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac māxime  
 plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur, persuādet eīque  
 filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat.

Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, prop-  
 65 terea quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset:  
 nōn esse dubium, quā tōtius Galliae plurimum Helvētiī  
possent; sē suis cōpiis suōque exercitū illis rēgna cōn-  
 ciliātūrum cōfirmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē  
 fidem et iūs iūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trēs  
 70 potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē  
 potiri posse spērant.

### *The trial and death of Orgetorix.*

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per iudiciū ēnūntiāta.  
 Mōribus suis Orgetorīgē ex vinculis causam dicere  
 coēgērunt; damnātum poenā sequi oportēbat, ut  
 75 igni cremārētur.

Diē cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iudiciū

omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique coëgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnū numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvītās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvētīi arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

*The Helvetii continue their preparations. Their allies.*

5. Post ēius mortem nīhīlō minus Helvētīi id, quod cōstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent.

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs, finitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōsiliō, oppidīs suīs vicīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum eis proficīcantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppūgnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adscīscunt.

*The two roads from Helvetia. The Helvetii decide to go through the Roman province.*

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus im-

pendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, 105 proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllis locīs vadō trānsitur.

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad 110 Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs, ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī 115 omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. V. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōsulibus.

*Caesar goes to Geneva. The Helvetii send an embassy.*

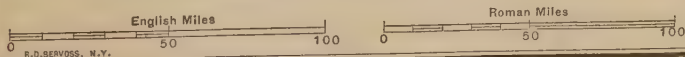
7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficisci et, quam māximīs potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriōrem 120 contendit et ad Genāvam. pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam māximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna); pontem, quī erat ad Genāvam, iubet rescindī.

Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs factī sunt, 125 lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūius lēgatiōnis Nammēius et Verueloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dicerent sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre, ut ēius voluntāte 130 id sibi facere liceat.

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōsulem



## HELVETIA AND NEIGHBORING COUNTRY







occisum exercitumque eius ab Helvëtiis pulsum et sub iugum missum, concédendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniuriā et maleficiō<sup>135</sup> existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum milites, quōs imperāverat, convenirent, lēgātis respondit diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum: sī quid vellent, ad Id. Apr. reverterentur.

*By fortifications Caesar prevents the Helvetii from crossing the Rhone.*

8. Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, militi-<sup>140</sup> busque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvëtiis dīvidit, milia passuum undēvigintī mūrū, in altitudinem pedum sēdecim, fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dis-<sup>145</sup> pōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre possit.

Ubi ea diēs, quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis, vēnit et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ullī per prōvinciam dare et,<sup>150</sup> sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibētūrum ostendit. Helvëtiī eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūctis ratibusque complūribus factis, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitudō flūminis erat, nōnnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et militum<sup>155</sup> concursū et tēlis repulsī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

*They now arrange to go by way of the Sequani.*

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās ire nōn poterant. Hīs

cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad  
 160 Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā  
 Sēquanīs impetrārent.

Dumnorīx grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūri-  
 mum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitatē  
 Orgetorīgis filiam in mātirimōnium dūxerat, et cupidī-  
 165 tāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūri-  
 mās cīvitatēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat.  
 Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per finēs  
 suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē  
 dent, perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant;  
 170 Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trāseant.

*Caesar reinforces his army.*

10. Caesarī renūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō per  
 agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum  
 finēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt,  
 quae cīvitas est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat  
 175 māgnō cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs  
 bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcos, locīs patentibus  
 māximēque frūmentāriīs finitimōs habēret.

Ob eas causās eī mūnitiōnī, quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum  
 lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Italiam māgnīs itineribus con-  
 180 tendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnserībit et trēs, quae cir-  
 cum Aquilēciam hiemābant, ex hibernīs ēdūcit et, quā  
 proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat,  
 cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus ire contendit.

Ibi Ceutronēs et Grāiocelī et Caturīgēs, locīs superiōri-  
 185 bus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur.  
 Complūribus hīs proeliis pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppi-  
 dum ceteriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocon-

tiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

*The Haedui and others ask Caesar's aid against the Helvetii.*

11. Helvētīi iam per angustiās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut, paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī, agrī vāstārī, liberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint.

Eōdem tempore, Ambarri, necessariī et cōsanguineī Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē, dēpopulātis agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, qui trāns Rhodanum vicōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquū. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōsūmptis in Santonōs Helvētīi pervenīrent.

*Three cantons of the Helvetii cross the Arar; the fourth is attacked and defeated.*

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit incrēdibili lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētīi ratibus ac lintribus iūctīs trānsībant.

Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, 215 quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs et inopīnantēs adgressus māgnam partem eōrum concēdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in 220 proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est.

Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīssset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōsulem interfēcērat et ēius exer- 225 citum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortalīum, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īn- sīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās, sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est, quod ēius 230 socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcērant.

*Caesar crosses the Arar. The Helvetii send a second embassy.*

13. Hīc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentinō ēius 235 adventū commōtī, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus vīgintī aegerrimē cōnfēcērant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellexerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgatiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

240 Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus

cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse voluisset; / sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminiscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum<sup>245</sup> adortus esset, cum eī, quī flūmen trānsissent, suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret. Sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtūte contenderent, quam dolō aut insidiīs nīterentur. Quārē<sup>250</sup> nē committeret, ut is locus, ubi cōstitissent, ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

*Caesar's reply to the Helvetian embassy.*

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētīi com-<sup>255</sup> memorāssent, memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicūius iniūriæ sibi cōnsciis fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellexeret; quārē timēret, neque sine causā timen-<sup>260</sup> dum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse?

265

Quod suā victōriā tam insolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse admirārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs

270 prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum  
rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea  
ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab eīs sibi dentur, utī ea, quae  
polliceantur, factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs,  
quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogi-  
275 bus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eīs pācem esse factūrum.

Dīvicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suīs  
īnstitūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōsuērint;  
ēius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō  
datō discessit.

*A cavalry skirmish. Both armies march northward.*

280 15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit  
Caesar equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor  
mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque  
eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant,  
quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissi-  
285 mum agmen īnsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvēti-  
ōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt.

Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus  
tantam multitudinē equitum prōpulerant, audācius  
subsistere nōnnumquam et novissimō agmine proeliō  
290 nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar euōs ā proeliō con-  
tinēbat ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs,  
pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs  
circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, ut inter novissimum  
hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius  
295 quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset.

*The Haedui fail to furnish grain to Caesar.*

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum, quod  
essent pūblicē pollicitī, flāgitāre. Nam propter frigora,



quod Gallia sub septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, non modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppetebat; 300 eo autem frumento, quod flumine Arari navibus subvexerat, propterea minus uti poterat, quod iter ab Arari Helvetii averterant, a quibus discedere nolēbat. Diem ex die ducere Haeduī: conferri, comportari, adesse dicere.

305

Ubi se diutius duci intellēxit et diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus metiri oporteret, convocatis eorum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habebat, in his Diviciaco et Lisco, qui summō magistratuī praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, 310 qui creatur annuus et vitae necisque in suos habet potestatem, graviter eos accusat, quod, cum neque emi neque ex agris sumi possit, tam necessariō tempore, tam propinquis hostibus ab eis non sublevetur; praesertim cum magnā ex parte eorum precibus adductus bellum 315 suscepit, multo etiam gravius, quod sit destitutus, queritur.

*The explanation of Liscus.*

17. Tum demum Liscus oratione Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat, proponit: Esse nonnullōs, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, qui privatim 320 plus possint quam ipsi magistratus. Hos seditiosā atque improbā oratione multitudinem deterrere, ne frumentum conferant, quod debeant: praestare, si iam principatū Galliae obtinere non possint, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia perferre; neque dubitare 325 debere, quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romani, una cum reliqua Galliā Haeduis libertatem sint erepturi.

Ab eisdem nostra cōsilia, quaeque in castris gerantur, hostibus enūtiārī: hōs ā sē coērcērī nōn posse. Quin  
 330 etiam, quod necessariām rem coactus Caesarī enūtiārīt, intellegere sēsē, quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.

*Dumnorix, the Haeduan.*

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciāci frātre, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat, sed, quod plūribus praesen-  
 335 tibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea, quae in conventū dīxerat. Dīcit liberius atque audācius.

Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, māgnā apud  
 340 plēbem propter liberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēpta habēre, proptereā quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. His rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs  
 345 ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; māgnū numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse, atque hūius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīe nōbilissimō ac potentissimō con-  
 350 locāsse; ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs conlocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam adfīnitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eīus dēminūta et Dīviciā-  
 355 cus frāter in antiquum locum grātiaē atque honōris sit restitūsus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem

per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā dēspērāre.

Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium <sup>360</sup> equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium ēius fugae factum ab Dumnorīge atque ēius equitibus (nam equitātūī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī miserant, Dumnorīx praeerat); eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum. 365

*Caesar summons Diviciacus, brother of Dumnorix.*

19. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrasset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et cīvitātis, sed etiam īnscentibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā <sup>370</sup> magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret.

Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repūgnābat, quod Dīviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, sum- <sup>375</sup> mam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat; nam, nē ēius suppliciō Dīviciāci animum offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et cotīdiānis interpretibus remōtis per C. Valerium Troucil- <sup>380</sup> lum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō cōloquitur; simul commonefacit, quae ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit, quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit; petit <sup>385</sup>

atque hortātur, ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō, causā cognitā, statuāt vel cīvitatē statuere iubeat. /

*The plea of Diviciacus in behalf of Dumnorix.*

20. Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem com-  
 390 plexus obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frātre  
 statueret: Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex  
 eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum  
 ipse grātiā plūrimū domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille  
 minimum propter adulēscētiā posset, per sē crēvis-  
 395 set; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn solum ad minuendam  
 grātiā, sed paene ad perniciem suā ūterētur. Sēsē  
 tamen et amorē frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī com-  
 movērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset,  
 cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nē-  
 400 minem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā  
 ex rē futūrum, utī tōtū Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.

Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret,  
 Caesar ēius dextram prēndit; cōsōlātus rogat, finem  
 ōrandī faciat; tantī ēius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit,  
 405 utī et rei pūblīcae iniūriā et suum dolōrem ēius volun-  
 tātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgē ad sē vocat,  
 frātre adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit;  
 quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvītās querātur, prōpōnit;  
 monet, ut in reliquū tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vītet;  
 410 praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dicit. Dumno-  
 rīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquātur,  
 scīre possit.

*Caesar prepares for battle.*

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs  
 sub monte cōsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsius castrīs

octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū<sup>415</sup> ascēsus, quī cognōscerent, mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus, quī iter cognōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōsili sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā<sup>420</sup> vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī rei militāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

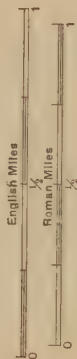
425

*The error of Considius, the scout.*

22. Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dīcit montem,<sup>430</sup> quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī: id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsignibus cognōvisse.

Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare, nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae<sup>435</sup> prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre<sup>440</sup> perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō sibi renūntiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

# DEFEAT OF THE HELVETII



legiones I  
novae et  
auxilia

equites fusi

Bibracte forensis

Romanorum acies triplex IV legionum veteran.

Romanorum equites

Helvetii aggredientes

Legionum IV Romanorum acies I et II

Helvetii reiecti

Boii et Tulingi

Romanorum acies III

Helvetiorum  
carri et  
impedimenta

Helvetiorum ad  
Lingones fuga



*The battle near Bibracte, June, 58 B.C.*

25. Caesar primum suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtis equīs, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Militēs ē locō superiōre pilīs missīs facile hostium phalangem 475 perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedimentō, quod, plūribus eōrum scūtīs unō ictū pilōrum trānsfixīs et conligātīs, cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pūgnāre 480 poterant, multī ut diū iactātō brachiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pūgnāre.

Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mille passūs, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōiī et 485 Tulingī, quī hominum milibus circiter quīndecim agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō adgressī circumvenīre; et id cōspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. 490 Rōmānī conversa sīgna bipertītō intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac submōtis resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

*Defeat of the Helvetii.*

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācritēr pūgnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn 495 possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum

pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad  
 500 multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pūgnātum est,  
 proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō  
 superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn-  
 nūllī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciē-  
 bant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pūgnā-  
 505 tum, impedimentis castrisque nostrī potitī sunt. Ibi  
 Orgetorīgis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est.

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx super-  
 fuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam  
 partem noctis itinere intermissō, in finēs Lingonum diē  
 510 quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et  
 propter sepultūram occisōrum nostrī trīduum morātī  
 eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās  
 nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent;  
 quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum.  
 515 Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequī  
 coepit.

### *Surrender of the Helvetii.*

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē  
 dēditionē ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere  
 convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque  
 520 locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō, quō  
 tum essent, suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pārūē-  
 runt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma,  
 servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposeit.

Dum ea conquīruntur et cōferuntur, nocte intermissā,  
 525 circiter hominum mīlia sex eiūs pāgī, quī Verbigenus  
 appellātur, sive timōre perterritī, nē armīs trāditīs  
 suppliciō adficerentur, sive spē salūtis inductī, quod in  
 tantā multitudīne dēditīciōrum suam fugam aut occul-

tārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse exīstimārent, primā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum finēs-<sup>530</sup> que Germānōrum contendērunt.

*The Helvetii return to their own country.*

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescīit, quōrum per finēs ierant, hīs, utī conquīrent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in<sup>535</sup> dēditionem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit; et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat, quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōsque, quōs incende-<sup>540</sup> rant, restituere iussit.

Id eā māximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsīrent et finitimī<sup>545</sup> Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cognitī, ut in finibus suis conlocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dēdērunt, quōsque postea in parem iūris libertātisque condiciōnem, atque ipsī erant, recēpērunt. 550

*The records of the Helvetii.*

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōminātīm ratiō cōfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīssset eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātīm puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium<sup>555</sup>

rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlium cclxiii, Tulingōrum mīlium xxxvi, Latobrigōrum xiiii, Rauracōrum xxiii, Bōiōrum xxxii; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia xcii. Summa omnium fuērunt ad  
 560 mīlia ccclxviii. Eōrum, quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium c et x.

30-54. THE WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS, JULY-SEP-  
 TEMBER, 58 B.C.

*Gallie chiefs congratulate Caesar and request a conference.*

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō, tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, principēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum  
 565 convēnērunt: Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetisset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, proptereā quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī reliquis-  
 570 sent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum īferrent imperiōque potīrentur locumque domiciliō ex māgnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā opportunissimum ac frūctuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque cīvitātēs stipendiāriās habērent.

575 Petiērunt, utī sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret; sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs, quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō petere vellent. Eā rē permissā, diem conciliō cōstituērunt et iūre iūrandō, nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi  
 580 quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

*In the conference, Diviciacus tells of two factions of Gaul,  
and complains of Ariovistus, the German.*

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō, īdem prīncipēs cīvītātum, quī ante fuerant, ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque, utī sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē impetrātā, sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī 585 ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea, quae dīxissent, ēnūntiārentur. quam utī ea, quae vellent, impetrārent, propterea quod, sī ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent.

590

Locūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Haeduus: Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs esse duās: hārum alterius prīncipātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse, utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde 595 arcesserentur. Hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia quīndecim Rhēnum trānsisse; posteaquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāssent, trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et vīgintī mīlium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque 600 clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; māgnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum amīsisse.

Quibus proeliis calamitātibusque frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitio atque amicitia 605 plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs cīvītātis et iūre iūrاندō cīvītātem obstringere, sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs neque

610 recūsātūrōs, quōminus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne  
 atque imperiō essent. Ūnum sē esse ex omnī cīvitāte  
 Haeduōrum, quī addūcī nōn potuerit, ut iūrāret aut  
 liberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex cīvitāte  
 profūgissee et Rōmam ad senātum vēnissee auxilium  
 615 postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrاندō neque ob-  
 sidibus tenērētur.

Sed pēius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs  
 accidissee, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum,  
 in eōrum finibus cōnsēdissee tertiamque partem agrī  
 620 Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtīus Galliae, occupāvissee,  
 et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret,  
 proptereā quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum milia  
 hominum XXIII ad eum vēnissee, quibus locus ac sēdēs  
 parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs, utī omnēs ex  
 625 Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhē-  
 num trānsīrent; neque enim cōferendum esse Galli-  
 cum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōsuētūdinem  
 victūs cum illā comparandam.

Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō  
 630 vīcerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam,  
 superbē et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī  
 cūiusque liberōs poseere et in eōs omnia exempla cru-  
 ciātūsque ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad volun-  
 tātē eius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, irā-  
 635 cundum, temerārium: nōn posse eius imperia diūtius  
 sustinēri.

Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxiliī,  
 omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum, quod Helvētīī  
 fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās  
 640 sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fortūnamque, quae-  
 cumque accidat, experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ario-



vistō sint, nōn dubitāre, quīn dē omnibus obsidibus, quī apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrere posse, nē<sup>645</sup> māior multitudō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcatur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.

*The unfortunate condition of the Sequani.*

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā, omnēs, quī aderant, māgnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs<sup>650</sup> nihil eārum rērum facere, quās cēterī facerent, sed tristēs capite dēmissō terram intuērī. Eius rei quae causa esset, mīrātus ex ipsīs quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondere, sed in eādē tristitiā tacitī permanere.

Cum ab hīs saepius quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō<sup>655</sup> vōcem exprimere posset, idem Dīviciācus Haeduus respondit: Hōc esse miserīorem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent, absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adesset,<sup>660</sup> horrērent, proptereā quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā finēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.

*Caesar promises to aid the Gauls against Ariovistus.*

33. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs<sup>665</sup> cōnfirmāvit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram; māgnam sē habere spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum finem iniūriīs factūrum. Hāc

— COLLEGE

orātiōne habitā concilium dīmisit. Et secundum ea  
 670 multae rēs eum hortābantur, quārē sibi eam rem cōgitan-  
 dam et suscipiendam putāret, in primīs quod Haeduōs,  
 frātrēs cōsanguineōsque saepenumērō ā senātū appel-  
 lātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germā-  
 nōrum tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac  
 675 Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rō-  
 mānī turpissimum sibi et rei pūblicae esse arbitrābātur.

Paulātim autem Germānōs cōsuēscere Rhēnum  
 transire et in Galliam māgnam eōrum multitudinem  
 venīre, populō Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi  
 680 hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat,  
 quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbri  
 Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde  
 in Italiā contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā  
 prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus rebus  
 685 quam mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem  
 Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam  
 sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

*Caesar demands a conference, which Ariovistus refuses.*

34. Quam ob rem placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs  
 mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent, utī aliquem locum me-  
 690 dium utrīusque conloquiō dēligeret; velle sēsē dē rē  
 pūblicā et summīs utrīusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī  
 lēgatiōnī Ariovistus respondit: Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare  
 opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille  
 sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. Praetereā sē  
 695 neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre,  
 quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine māgnō  
 commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere

posse. Sibi autem mīrum vidēri, quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī esset.

700

*Caesar sends a second embassy to Ariovistus.*

35. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: Quoniam tantō suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ab senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiā referret, ut in con- 705 loquium venīre invītātus gravārētur neque dē cōmūnī rē dīcendum sibi et cognōscendum putāret, haec esse, quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde obsidēs, quōs habēret ab Haeduīs, 710 redderet Sēquanīsque permitteret, ut, quōs illī habērent, voluntāte ēius reddere illīs licēret; nēve Haeduōs iniuriā lacesseret nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īferret.

Sī id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam 715 grātiā atque amīcitiā cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōsulibus senātus cēnсуisset, utī, quīcumque Galliam prōvinciā obtinēret, quod commodō rei pūblicae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, 720 sē Haeduōrum iniuriās nōn neglētūrum.

*Ariovistus replies defiantly.*

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse bellī, ut, quī vīcissent, eīs, quōs vīcissent, quem ad modum vel-  
lent, imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn

725 ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperare consuesse. Si ipse populo Romanō nōn praescriberet, quem ad modum suō iure ūteretur, nōn oportere sē ā populo Rōmānō in suō iure impediri.

Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortunam temptāssent et  
 730 armīs congressi ac superati essent, stipendiarios esse factos. Magnam Caesarem iniuriam facere, quī suō adventū vectigalia sibi deteriora faceret. Haeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque hīs neque eōrum sociis iniuriā bellum inlatūrum, si in eō manerent, quod  
 735 convēnisset, stipendiumque quotannis penderent; si id nōn fecissent, longē eis fraternum nōmen populi Rōmāni afutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiaret sē Haeduōrum iniuriās nōn neglētūrum, nēmīnem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congregē-  
 740 rētur; intellētūrum, quid invicti Germāni, exercitātissimi in armīs, quī inter annos quattuordecim tectum nōn subissent, virtūte possent.

*After hearing the complaints of the Haedui and Treveri,  
 Caesar hastens against Ariovistus.*

37. Haec eodem tempore Caesarī mandata referēbantur, et lēgati ab Haeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant:  
 745 Haeduī questum, quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam transportati essent, finēs eōrum popularentur; sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datis pacem Ariovisti redimere potuisse; Trēveri autem, pāgos centum Suēbōrum ad ripās Rhēni cōsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsire cōnārentur;  
 750 his praesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē, si nova manus Suēbōrum cum

veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā, quam celerrimē potuit, comparātā, māgnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum 755 contendit.

*Caesar occupies Vesontio.*

38. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, contendere, trīduīque viam ā suīs finibus prōcessisse. Id 760 nē accideret, māgnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar exīstimābat. Namque omnium rērum, quae ad bellum ūsuī erant, summa erat in eō oppidō facultās; idemque nātūrā locī sic mūniēbātur, ut māgnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, proptereā quod flūmen Dūbis, 765 ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum mīlle sexcentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet māgnā altitūdine, ita ut rādīcēs eius montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circum- 770 datus arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar māgnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit, occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium conlocat.

*The Roman army is panic-stricken.*

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem rei frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne 775 nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingentī māgnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incredibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant (saepenumerō sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vultum qui-

780 dem atque aciem oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret.

Hic primum ortus est ā tribūnīs militum, praefectīs  
785 reliquisque, quī ex urbe amīcitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn māgnū in rē militārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā inlātā, quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessāriam esse diceret, petēbat, ut ēius voluntāte discēdere liceret; nōnnūllī pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspiciōnem  
790 vitārent, remanēbant. Hī neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suis commūne pericūlum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsignābantur.

795 Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam eī, quī māgnū in castrīs ūsum habēbant, militēs centuriōnēsque, quīque equitātui praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs exīstimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustias itineris et māgnitudinem  
800 silvārum, quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dicēbant. Nōnnūllī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferrī iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs militēs neque propter timōrem  
805 signa lātūrōs.

*Caesar calls a council of war and restores confidence.*

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōsiliō omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōsiliū adhibitīs centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: primum quod, aut quam



in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupi-<sup>810</sup> dissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiā adpetisse; cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicāret? Sibi quidem persuādērī, cognitīs suīs postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre<sup>815</sup> atque āmentīā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsius diligentiā dēspērārent? Factum ēius hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam<sup>820</sup> ipse imperātor meritis vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servilī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna, quam ā nōbīs accēpissent, sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse, quantum habēret in sē bonī cōstantia, proptereā quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine<sup>825</sup> causā timuissent, hōs postea armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent.

Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs, quibuscum saepenumērō Helvētiī congressī, nōn solum in suīs sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plērumque superāssent, quī<sup>830</sup> tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaererent, reperīre posse, diūturnitāte bellī dēfatīgātīs Gallīs, Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem<sup>835</sup> fēcisset, dēspērāntēs iam dē pūgnā et dispersōs subitō adortum, magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcissee. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse.

Quī suum timōrem in rei frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiasque itineris cōferrent, facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescribere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum Sē-  
 845 quanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs.

Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque sīgna lātūrī dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scīre enim, quibus-  
 850 cumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; suam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, fēlicitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam.

Itaque sē, quod in longiōrem diem conlātūrus fuisset,  
 855 repraesentātūrum et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam primum intellegere posset, utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valēret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrūm, dē quā nōn dubitāret,  
 860 sibi que eam praetōriam cohortem futūram. Huic legiōni Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtūtem cōnfidēbat māximē.

*The soldiers apologize. The march is resumed.*

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, mirum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs summaque alacritās et cupiditās  
 865 bellī gerendī inlāta est, prīncepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs militum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfirmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs militum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus

ēgērunt, utī Caesarī satisfacerent; sē neque umquam<sup>870</sup> dubitāsse neque timuisse, neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse exīstimāvisse.

Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquisītō per Dīviciācum, quod ex Gallīs eī māximam fidem habēbat, ut mīlium amplius quīnquāgintā circuitū locīs apertīs<sup>875</sup> exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlia passuum XXIV abesse.

*Ariovistus finally consents to meet Caesar.*

42. Cognitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus lēgātōs ad<sup>880</sup> eum mittit: Quod antea dē conloquiō postulāset, id per sē fierī licēre, quoniam propius accessisset sēque id sine periculō facere posse exīstimāret. Nōn respuit condiōnem Caesar iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrābātur, cum id, quod antea petentī dēnegāset,<sup>885</sup> ultrō pollicērētur; māgnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suis tantīs populīque Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs, cognitīs suis postulātīs, fore utī pertināciā dēsisteret. Diēs conloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus.

Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs<sup>890</sup> mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit, nē quem peditem ad conloquium Caesar addūceret: Verērī sē, nē per insidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum. Caesar, quod neque conloquium interpositā causā tollī volēbat<sup>895</sup> neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātū committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equīs Gallīs equitibus detrāctīs, eō legiōnāriōs militēs legiōnis

decimae, cui quam m̄ximē cōfīdēbat, impōnere, ut  
 900 praesidium quam amīcissimum, sī quid opus factō esset,  
 habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn inrīdiculē quīdam ex  
 mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit: Plūs quam pollicitus  
 esset, Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis prae-  
 tōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum  
 905 rescribere.

*Meeting of Caesar and Ariovistus. Caesar's speech.*

43. Plānitiēs erat māgna et in eā tumultus terrēnus  
 satis grandis. Hīc locus aequō ferē spatiō ā castrīs Ario-  
 vistī et Caesaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad conlo-  
 quium vērunt. Legiōnem Caesar, quam equīs dē-  
 910 vexerat, passibus ducentīs ab eō tumulō cōstituit.  
 Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōstitērunt. Ario-  
 vistus, ex equīs ut conloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs  
 ad conloquium addūcerent, postulāvit.

Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar' initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūs-  
 915 que in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellā-  
 tus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, quod mūnera amplis-  
 sima missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō  
 māgnīs hominum officiīs cōsuēsse tribuī docēbat; illum,  
 cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam  
 920 habēret, beneficiō ac liberālitate suā ac senātūs ea prae-  
 mia cōsecūtum.

Docēbat etiam, quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae  
 necessitudinis ipsīs cum Haeduīs intercēderent, quae  
 senātūs cōsulta, quotiēns, quamque honorifica in eōs  
 925 facta essent, ut omnī tempore tōtius Galliae prīncipātum  
 Haeduī tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amīcitiā  
 adpetissent. Populī Rōmānī hanc esse cōsuētūdinem,

ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse; quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī attulissent, id eīs ēripī<sup>930</sup> quis patī posset? Postulāvit deinde eadem, quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īferret; obsidēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsire paterētur. 935

*The speech of Ariovistus.*

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallīs; nōn sine māgnā spē māgnisque praemiīs domum propinquōsque relīquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs<sup>940</sup> concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae cīvitatēs ad sē oppūgnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās<sup>945</sup> ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Sī iterum experīri velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī velint, inīquum esse dē stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerit. Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrī-<sup>950</sup>mentō esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petisse. Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittātur et dēditiciī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam, quam adpetierit.

Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat,<sup>955</sup> id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae oppūgnandae causā



facere; eius rei testimōnium esse, quod nisi rogātus nōn  
 vēnerit, et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē  
 prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum.  
 960 Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī  
 Galliae prōvinciae finibus ēggressum. Quid sibi vellet?  
 Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam  
 hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsī con-  
 cēdī nōn oporteret, sī in nostrōs finēs impetum faceret,  
 965 sic item nōs esse inīquōs, quod in suō iūre sē interpel-  
 lārēmus.

Quod frātrēs ā senātū Hae luōs appellātōs diceret,  
 nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rērum,  
 ut nōn scīret neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs  
 970 Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōni-  
 bus, quās Haeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent,  
 auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse.

Dēbere sē suspicārī simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā, quem  
 exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā ha-  
 975 bere. Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēdūcat ex  
 hīs regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste  
 habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē  
 nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse  
 factūrum (id sē ab ipsis per eōrum nūntiōs compertum  
 980 habēre), quōrum omnium grātiā atque amīcitiam  
 eius morte redimere posset. Quod sī dēcēssisset et  
 liberam possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādīdisset, māgnō  
 sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum et, quaecumque bella  
 gerī vellet, sine ūllō eius labōre et periculō cōnfectūrum.

*Caesar's final reply to Ariaristus.*

985 45. Multa ā Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt,  
 quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: Neque suam neque



populī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdinem patī, utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ā Q. Fabiō Māximō, quibus populus 990 Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stīpendium imposuisset. Quod sī antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium senātūs observārī oportēret, liberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam 995 bellō victam suīs lēgibus ūtī voluisset.

*Treachery of the Germans breaks up the conference.*

46. Dum haec in conloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumultum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendī finem fēcit sēque ad suōs 1000 recēpit suīsque imperāvit, nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō periculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat, ut pulsīs hostibus diēi posset eōs ab sē per fidem in conloquiō circumventōs. 1005 Posteaquam in vulgus militum ēlātum est, quā arrogantīā in conloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānīs interdixisset, impetumque ut in nostrōs ēius equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs conloquium dirēmisset, multō māior alacritās studiumque pūgnandī māius exercituī iniectum 1010 est.

*Ariovistus arrests two of Caesar's envoys.*

47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsīt: Velle sē dē eīs rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō; utī aut iterum

1015 conloquiō diem cōstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ex  
suīs lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret.

Conloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est, et eō magis,  
quod prīdiē ēius diēi Germānī retinērī nōn potuerant,  
quīn in nostrōs tēla conicerent. Lēgātum ex suīs sēsē  
1020 māgnō cum periculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus  
ferīs obiectūrum existimābat. Commodissimum vīsum  
est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī Cabūrī filium,  
summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscētem, cūius pater  
ā C. Valeriō Flaccō civitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fi-  
1025 dem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā  
iam Ariovistus longinquā cōsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et  
quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa nōn esset, ad eum  
mittere, et ūnā M. Metium, quī hospitio Ariovistī ūtē-  
bātur. Hīs mandāvit, ut, quae dīceret Ariovistus, cog-  
1030 nōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in  
castrīs Ariovistus cōspexisset, exercitū suō praesente  
conclāmāvit: Quid ad sē venīrent? an speculandī  
causā? Cōnantēs dicere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

*Ariovistus moves his camp. The German method of  
fighting.*

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et milibus passuum  
1035 sex ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōsēdit. Postrīdiē  
ēius diēi praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et  
milibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōn-  
siliō, utī frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanīs et  
Haeduīs supportārētur, Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō  
1040 diē diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās  
cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem instrūctam habuit, ut, sī  
vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, eī potestās nōn

deēsset. Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit, equestrī proeliō cotīdiē contendit.

Genus hōc erat pūgnæ, quō sē Germānī exercuerant. <sup>1045</sup> Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vėlō-cissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs in proeliīs versābantur. Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; sī quī graviōre vulnere acceptō <sup>1050</sup> equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās, ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

*The Roman army is divided in two camps.*

49. Ubi eum castrīs sēsē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē <sup>1055</sup> diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum, quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab hīs, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplici īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hīc <sup>1060</sup> locus ab hoste circiter passūs sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum sēdecim mīlia expedita cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsīt, quae cōpiae nostrōs terrērent et mūnitiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prō- <sup>1065</sup> pulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnītis castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum; quatuor reliquās legiōnēs in castra māiōra redūxit.

*A battle begun but discontinued because of a German superstition.*

50. Proximō diē īnstitūtō suō Caesar ex castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā māiōribus castrīs <sup>1070</sup>

prōgressus aciem instrūxit hostibusque pūgnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidemeōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merīdiē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae  
 1075 castra minōra oppūgnāret, mīsīt. Ācritēr utrimque ūsque ad vesperum pūgnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus, multīs et inlātīs et acceptīs vulneribus, in castra redūxit.

Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset, ut matrēs  
 1080 familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent, utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dīcere: Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam  
 1085 lūnam proeliō contendissent.

*Caesar forces the Germans to a general engagement.*

51. Postrīdiē ēius diēi Cāesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs, quod satis esse vīsum est, reliquit, ālārīōs omnēs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōstituit, quod minus multitudine mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō  
 1090 hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālārīīs ūterētur; ipse triplici instruetā aciē ūsque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs edūxērunt generātimque cōstituērunt paribus intervāllīs, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocōs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem  
 1095 suam raedīs et carrīs circumdederunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficīscētēs passīs manibus flentēs implōrābant, nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.





## BATTLE WITH ARIOVISTUS





*The battle is fought at close quarters.*

52. Caesar singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et 1100  
 quaestōrem praefēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque vir-  
 tūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem  
 minimē firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium  
 commisit. Ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs signō datō im-  
 petum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque 1105  
 prōcurrērunt, ut spatium pīla in hostēs coniciendī nōn  
 darētur. Rēiectis pīlis comminus gladiīs pūgnātum est.  
 At Germānī celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange  
 factā impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt  
 complūrēs nostrī, quī in phalangem insilirent et scūta 1110  
 manibus revellerent et dēsUPER vulnerārent. Cum  
 hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam  
 coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitudīne  
 suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animad-  
 vertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātuī praeerat, 1115  
 quod expeditior erat quam eī, quī inter aciem versā-  
 bantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō  
 mīsit.

*The flight of the Germans.*

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs  
 terga vertērunt, neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad 1120  
 flūmen Rhēnum, mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīn-  
 que, pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōfisi  
 trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus inventīs sibi salūtem  
 repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam  
 dēligātā ad rīpam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnēs 1125  
 cōsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt.

Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat ā frātre missam; 1130 utraque in eā fugā periit. Duae filiae: hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est.

Gāius Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā trīnīs catēnīs vīctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū īnsequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs 1135 Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ex manibus hostium, sibi restitūtum vidēbat; neque ēius calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna 1140 dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōsultum dīcēbat, utrum īgnī statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium beneficiō sē esse incolūmem. Item M. Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

*End of the year's warfare, September, 58 B.C.*

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbī, 1145 quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; quōs Ubiī, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs īnsecūtī māgnū ex hīs numerum occīdērunt.

Caesar ūnā aestāte duōbus māximīs bellīs cōfectīs, mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī postulābat, in hīberna 1150 in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in cīteriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

## BOOK II

### SUMMARY

CHAPS. 1-33. The War with the Belgae, 57 B.C. — The Belgian tribes, fearing an advance of the Romans, combine against them. Learning of this, Caesar adds two new legions to his army and early in the season proceeds to northern Gaul. He makes friends with the Remi, a Belgian tribe, who agree to aid him (1-4). The first battle is fought on the Axona (Aisne) against the combined forces of the Belgae, who are defeated and decide to disband (5-12). Two tribes surrender (13-15). The Nervii then prove to be a powerful foe, and in the battle of the Sabis (Sambre) submit only after one of the hardest struggles Caesar had in Gaul (16-28). Finally the Aduatuci surrender, but becoming treacherous are sold into slavery (29-33).

CHAPS. 34, 35. The account closes with a favorable report from Crassus, the lieutenant on the Atlantic coast, the return of Caesar to Italy, and the decree of a period of thanksgiving at Rome.

#### 1-33. THE WAR WITH THE BELGAE, 57 B.C.

##### *The Belgian tribes combine against Caesar.*

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur, litterisque item Labiēnī certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. 5

Coniūrandī hās esse causās : primum, quod verērentur, nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūceretur; deinde, quod ab nōnnūllis Gallīs sollicitārentur, partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant,  
 10 ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant; ab nōnnūllis etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eīs, quī ad  
 15 occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī poterant.

*Caesar increases his army and marches to the enemy's country.*

2. Hīs nūntiīs litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōseripsit et iaitā aestāte, in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium  
 20 lēgātum mīsīt. Ipse, cum primum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallīs, quī finitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea, quae apud eōs gerantur, cognōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiorē faciant. Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt  
 25 manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn existimāvit, quā ad eōs proficiscerētur. Rē frūmentariā prōvisā, castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad fines Belgārum pervenit.

*The Remi are friendly to the Romans.*

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnium opī-  
 30 niōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, primōs







cīvitātis, mīserunt, quī dīcerent: Sē suaque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere, neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et<sup>35</sup> obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem, ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs<sup>40</sup> cōnsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrere potuerint, quīn cum hīs cōnsentīrent.

*Strength of the Belgian tribes.*

4. Cum ab hīs quaereret, quae cīvitātes quantaeque<sup>45</sup> in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sīc reperiēbat: Plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse, Gallōsque, quī ea loca incolerent, expulisse, sōlōsque esse, quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī<sup>50</sup> Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fierī, utī eārum rērum memoriā māgnam sibi auctōritātem māgnōsque spīritūs in rē mīlitārī sūmerent.

Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explorāta Rēmī<sup>55</sup> dicēbant, proptereā quod propinquitātibus adfīnitātibusque coniūctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in cōmūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitas sit, cognōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse<sup>60</sup>

cōficere armāta mīlia centum, pollicitōs ex eō numerō  
 ēlēcta mīlia sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi  
 postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse fīnitimōs; fīnēs lātis-  
 simōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse  
 65 rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Dīviciācum, tōtīus Galliae  
 potentissimum, quī cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnum,  
 tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse  
 rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiam-  
 que summam tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēferri;  
 70 oppida habēre numerō duodecim, pollicērī mīlia armāta  
 quīnquāgintā; totidem Nerviōs, quī māximē ferī inter  
 ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; xv mīlia Atre-  
 bātēs, Ambiānōs x mīlia, Morinōs xxv mīlia, Menapiōs  
 vii mīlia, Caletōs x mīlia, Velioeassēs et Viromanduōs  
 75 totidem, Aduatucōs xix mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs,  
 Caerōsōs, Caemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellan-  
 tur, arbitrārī ad xl mīlia.

*Caesar consults with Diviciacus and crosses the Arona.*

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque ōrātiōne  
 prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipum-  
 80 que liberōs obsidēs ad sē adducēi iussit. Quae omnia  
 ab hīs dīligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum  
 Haeduum māgnopere cohortātus docet, quantō opere  
 rei pūblīcae commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hos-  
 tium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitudine ūnō tempore  
 85 cōnfligendum sit. Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Haeduī  
 in fīnēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs  
 populārī coeperint. Hīs datīs mandātīs, eum ā sē dī-  
 mittit.

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum

coāctās ad sē venīre vīdit, neque iam longē abesse, 90  
 ab eīs, quōs mīserat, explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cog-  
 nōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmō-  
 rum fīnibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi  
 castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs  
 flūminis mūniēbat et, post eum quae erant, tūta ab hosti- 95  
 bus reddēbat et, commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque  
 cīvītātibus ut sine periculō ad eum portārī possent,  
 efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium  
 pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum  
 lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in alti- 100  
 tūdinem pedum duodecim vāllō fossāque duodēvigintī  
 pedum mūnīrī iubet.

*The Belgae attack Bibrax.*

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax  
 aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū  
 Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentā- 105  
 tum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppūgnātiō  
 est haec: ubi, circumiectā multitudīne hominum tōtīs  
 moenibus, undique in mūrū lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt  
 mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā  
 portās succēdunt mūrūque subruunt. Quod tum 110  
 facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla  
 conicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nullī.

Cum finem oppūgnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus,  
 summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō  
 praefuerat, ūnus ex eīs, quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem 115  
 vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi  
 submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

*Caesar aids Bibrax. The Belgae encamp near the Romans.*

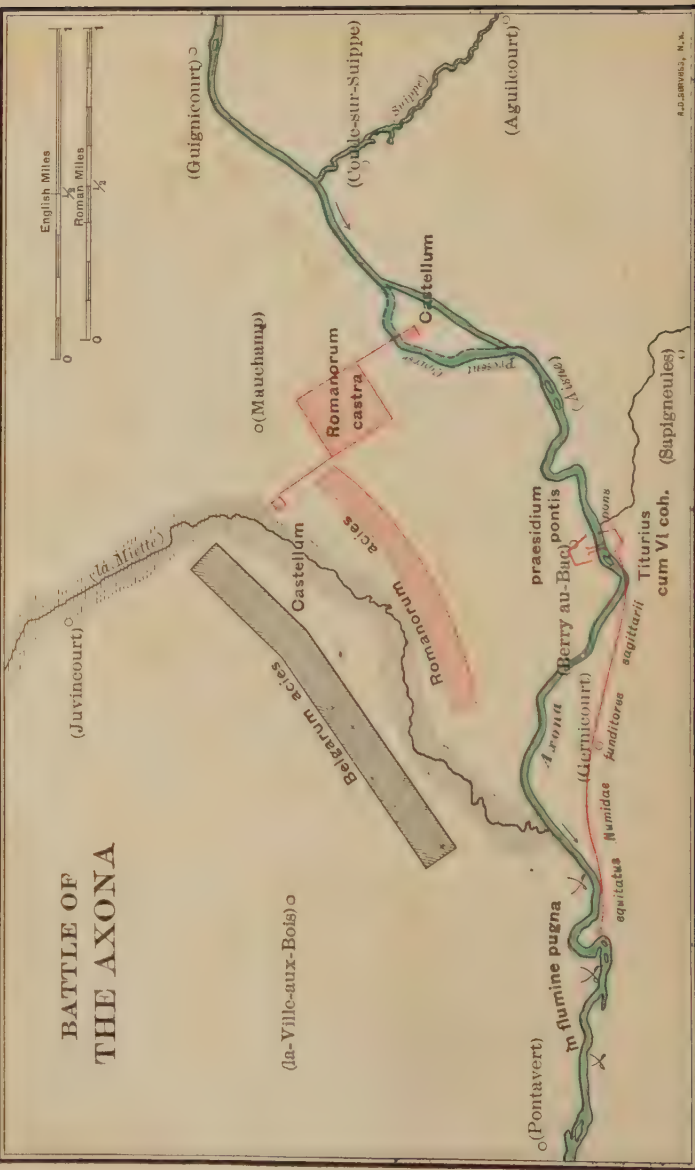
7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īsdem ducibus ūsus, quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagittariōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit. Quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus  
 120 vicīs aedificiīsque, quō adīre potuerant, incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.

*Caesar fortifies his position.*

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō superseedere statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, periclitābātur.  
 135 Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem instruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex plānitīē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitudinem patēbat, quantum locī aciēs instrūcta occupāre poterat, atque  
 140 ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in frontem lēniter fastīgātus paulātīm ad plānitiem redībāt, ab utrōque latere ēius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit



# BATTLE OF THE AXONA





circiter passuum quadringentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitudīne <sup>145</sup> poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent.

Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōnserīperat, in castrīs relictīs, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē <sup>150</sup> cōstituit. Hostēs item suās copiās ex castrīs ēductās instrūxērunt.

*The enemy attempt to cross the Axona.*

9. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent, hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, <sup>155</sup> ut impedītōs adgrederentur, parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, <sup>160</sup> quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum, cui praeerat Q. Titūius lēgātus, expūgnārent pontemque interseinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populāren- <sup>165</sup> tur, quī māgnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

*The battle of the Axona.*

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque

170 ponte trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō  
locō pūgnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostrī in flūmine  
adgressī māgnū eōrum numerū occīdērunt; per  
eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs  
multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōsquē, quī trānsi-  
175 erant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt.

Hostēs, ubi et dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine  
trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs  
in locū inīquiōrem prōgredi pūgnandī causā vidērunt,  
atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō  
180 convocātō, cōstituērunt optimum esse, domū suā  
quemque revertī et, quōrum in finēs primum Rōmānī  
exercitū intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique  
convenīrent, ut potius in suis quam in aliēnis finibus  
dēcrtārent et domesticis cōpiis rei frūmentāriae ūteren-  
185 tur. Ad eam sententiā cum reliquīs causīs haec quo-  
que ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Diviciācum atque Haeduōs  
finibus Bellovacōrum adpropinquāre cognōverant. Hīs  
persuādērī, ut diūtius morārentur neque suis auxiliū  
ferrent, nōn poterat.

*The Romans pursue the fleeing enemy.*

190 11. Eā rē cōstitutā, secūdā vigiliā māgnō cum stre-  
pitū ac tumultū castris ēgressī nūllō certō ōrdine neque  
imperio, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locū peteret  
et domū pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt, ut cōnsimilis  
fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per  
195 speculātōrēs cognitā, insidiās veritus, quod, quā dē  
causā discēderent, nōndum perspexerat, exercitū  
equitātumque castris continuit. Primā lūce cōfirmātā  
rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātū, quī novissimū  
agmen morārētur, praemisit.

His Q. Pedium et Aurunculëium Cottam lëgātōs<sup>200</sup> praefëcit; T. Labiënum lëgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hī novissimōs adorti et multa milia passuum prōsecūtī māgnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt; cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrō-<sup>205</sup>rum militum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā periculō vidērentur neque ullā necessitatē neque imperiō continērentur, exauditō clāmōre perturbātis ordinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ullō periculō tantam eōrum multitudinem nostrī interfēcērunt, quan-<sup>210</sup>tum fuit diēi spatium; sub occāsum sōlis sequi dēstiterunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēperunt.

*The siege of Noviodunum.*

12. Postrīdiē ēius diēi Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in finēs Suessiōnum, qui proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere<sup>215</sup> ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem, paucīs dēfendentibus, expugnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītis vineās agere, quaeque ad oppugnandum ūsuī<sup>220</sup>erant, comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitudō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vineīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque cōstitūtis, māgnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritatē Rōmānōrum<sup>225</sup> permōtī lëgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditione mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs, ut cōservārentur, impetrant.

*The Suessiones surrender. The Bellovacī seek peace.*

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs primīs cīvitātis atque ipsius Galbae rēgis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus  
 230 ex oppidō trāditis, in dēditionem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Brātuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressī  
 235 manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce sīgnificāre coepērunt, sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre nec contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passis manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs  
 240 petiērunt.

*Diviciacus pleads for the Bellovacī.*

14. Prō hīs Diviciācus (nam post discessum Belgārum dīmīssis Haeduōrum cōpiis ad eum reverterat) facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suis principibus,  
 245 quī dīcerent Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indīgnitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōsiliī principēs fuissent, quod intellexerent, quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam  
 250 profūgisse. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs, ut suā elēmentīā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcērit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōn-  
 255 suērint.

*Surrender of the Bellovaci. The Nervii.*

15. Caesar honōris Diviciāci atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dixit; et quod erat cīvitās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multītūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō 260 conlātīs, ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiebant: Nūllum esse aditum ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīnī 265 reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remitti virtūtem existimārent; esse hominēs ferōs māгнаeque virtūtis, increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtūtem 270 prōiēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

*The Nervii cross the Sabis and await the Romans.*

16. Cum per eōrum finēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suis nōn amplius mīlia passuum decem abesse; trāns id flūmen 275 omnēs Nervio cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, finitimīs suis (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant, utī eandem bellī fortūnam experirentur); exspectārī etiam ab hīs Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs, 280 quīque per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur, in eum locum coniēcisse, quō propter palūdēs exercitū aditus nōn esset.

*The Nervii plan an attack. Their hedges.*

17. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, explorātōrēs centuriōnēsque  
 285 praemittit, quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Cum  
 ex dēditiciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesa-  
 rem secūtī unā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut postea  
 ex captivīs cognitum est, eōrum diērum cōsuētūdine  
 itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs  
 290 pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōstrārunt inter singulās  
 legiōnēs impedimentōrum māgnū numerum inter-  
 cēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma legiō  
 in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnū spatium  
 abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adoriri; quā pulsā impedī-  
 295 mentīsque dīreptīs futurum, ut reliquae contrā cōnsis-  
 tere nōn audērent.

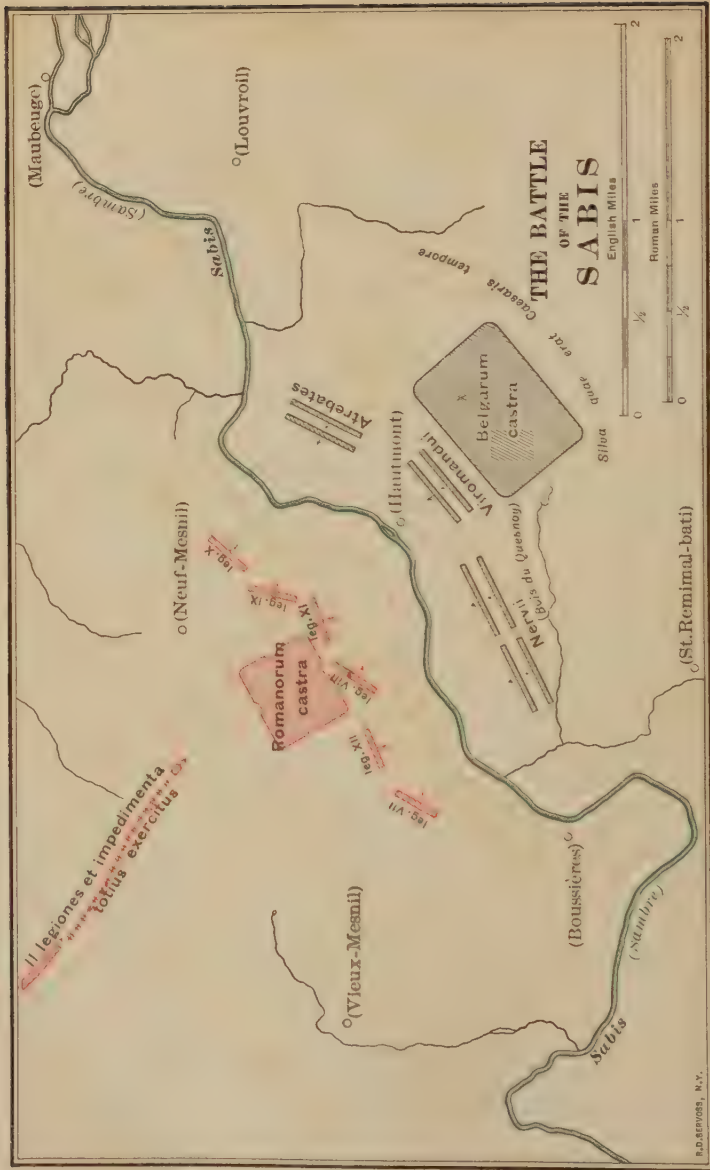
Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium, quī rem dēferē-  
 bant, quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent  
 (neque enim ad hōc tempus eī rei student, sed, quicquid  
 300 possunt, pedestribus valent cōpiīs), quō facilius finitimō-  
 rum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eos vēnissent,  
 impedirent, tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque inflexīs crē-  
 brisque in lātitudinem rāmīs enātīs et rubīs sentibusque  
 interiectīs effēcerant, ut instar mūrī hae saepēs mūnī-  
 305 mentum praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē  
 perspicī quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis  
 nostrī impedirētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium  
 Nervii existimāvērunt.

*The enemies select opposite hills.*

18. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs  
 310 dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclivis ad

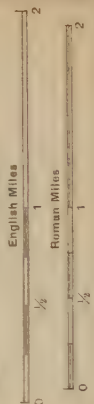






II legiones et impedimenta  
totus exercitus

# THE BATTLE OF THE SABIS



flūmen Sabim, quod suprà nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs infimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō<sup>315</sup> sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae stationēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

*The battle of the Sabis begins.*

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat, ac<sup>320</sup> Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus adpropinquābat, cōsuetūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedimenta conlocārat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōnseriptae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque<sup>325</sup> impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditoribus sagittariisque flūmen trāsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commiserunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suos reciperent ac rursus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent neque nostrī longius, quam quem ad finem<sup>330</sup> porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant, cēdentēs insequi auderent, interim legiōnēs sex, quae primae vēnerant, opere dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coeperunt.

Ubi prima impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab eis, qui in silvis abditī latēbant, vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter<sup>335</sup> eos committendī proelī convēnerat, ita ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēque cōstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōfirmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile pulsīs

340 ac prōturbātīs, incredibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrerunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs, quī in opere occupātī erant, contendērunt.

*A critical moment for the Romans.*

345 20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum (quod erat insigne, cum ad arma concurrī oportēret), sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī mīlitēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant, arcessendī, aciēs instruenda, mīlitēs  
350 cohortandī, sīgnum dandum. Quārum rērum māgnam partem temporis brevitās et incursus hostium impediēbat.

Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus mīlitum, quod superiōribus proeliis exercitātī,  
355 quid fierī oportēret, nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescribere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singulisque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītis castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium  
360 expectābant, sed per sē, quae vidēbantur, administrābant.

*Caesar quickly encourages his men.*

21. Caesar, necessariis rēbus imperātīs, ad cohortandōs mīlitēs, quam in partem fors obtulit, dēcucurrit et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus, quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis me-  
365 moriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque

impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant, quam quō tēlum adigī posset, proelī commit-tendī sīgnum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pūgnantibus occurrit. 370

Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus, ut nōn modo ad īnsīgnia ac-commodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque prīma sīgna 375 cōspexit, ad haec cōstitit, nē in quaerendīs suis pūgnandī tempus dīmitteret.

### *Disadvantage of the Romans.*

22. Instruetō exercitū, magis ut locī nātūra dēiectus-que collis et necessitās temporis, quam ut rei mīlītāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs 380 aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectīs prō-spectus impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia conlocārī neque, quid in quāque parte opus esset, prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā 385 rērum inīquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequē-bantur.

### *The battle is fiercely fought.*

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlītēs, ut in sinistrā pāte aciē cōstitērant, pīlīs ēmissīs, cursū ac lassitudīne exanimātōs vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs (nam 390 hīs ea pars obvenerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt, et trānsīre cōnantēs īnsecūtī gladiīs māgnam partem eōrum impedītā interfēcērunt. Ipsī

trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum inīquum  
 395 prōgressī rūsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō  
 in fugam coniēcērunt.

Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima  
 et octāva, prōfligātis Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant  
 congressī, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliā-  
 400 bantur. At tōtis ferē castris ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte  
 nūdātis, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn  
 māgnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōstitisset, omnēs  
 Nervii cōfertissimō agmine duce Boduognātō, quī  
 summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt;  
 405 quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre,  
 pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

*Panic in the Roman camp.*

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae  
 peditēs, quī cum eīs ūnā fuerant, quōs primō hostium  
 impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent,  
 410 adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūsus aliam in partem  
 fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā  
 ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse  
 cōspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respexis-  
 sent et hostēs in nostrīs castris versārī vīdissent, praeci-  
 415 pitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum, quī cum  
 impedimentis veniēbant, clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur,  
 aliūque aliam in partem perterriti ferēbantur.

Quibus omnibus rēbus permōti equitēs Trēverī,  
 quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī  
 420 auxiliī causā ā cīvitāte missi ad Caesarem vēnerant,  
 cum multitūdine hostium castra nostra complērī, legiōnēs  
 premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs,  
 funditōrēs, Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnēs



partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs<sup>425</sup> impedimentisque eōrum hostēs potītōs cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

*Caesar himself goes to the front and rallies his army.*

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī sīgnisque in ūnum locum conlātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs militēs<sup>430</sup> sibi ipsōs ad pūgnam esse impedimentō vīdit, quārtae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs, sīgniferō interfectō, sīgnō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātīs aut occīsīs, in hīs prīmipilō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque<sup>435</sup> vulneribus cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset; reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōnnūllōs ab novissimīs dēsertō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vītāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex inferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere īnstāre et rem esse in angustō vīdit, neque ūllum esse<sup>440</sup> subsidium, quod submittī posset; scūtō ab novissimīs ūnī militī dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminātīm appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus militēs sīgna īferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent.<sup>445</sup> Cūius adventū spē inlātā militibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

*The Romans advance. Labienus sends aid.*

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōn-<sup>450</sup>stiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs militum

monuit, ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō, cum aliis aliī subsidium ferrent neque timērent, nē āversī ab hoste  
 455 circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pūgnāre coepērunt.

Interim milītēs legiōnum duārum, quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciē-  
 460 bantur; et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre, quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur, cōspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsīt. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā, quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor  
 465 versārētur, cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

*The great bravery of both Romans and Nervii.*

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta, ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī prōcubuissent, seūtīs innīxī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs  
 470 hostēs cōspiciātī etiam inermēs armātis occurrerent; equitēs verō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pūgnandō sē legiōnāriīs milītibus praeferrent.

At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtū-  
 475 tem praestitērunt, ut, cum prīmī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pūgnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī superessent, ut ex tumultō, tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquiquam tantae  
 480 virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre





## THE STRONGHOLD OF THE ADUATUCI

English Miles  
0 1/4 1/2 3/4 1

Roman Miles  
0 1/4 1/2 3/4 1

inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī māgnitūdō redēgerat.

*Surrender of the Nervii.*

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviorum redāctō, māiōres nātū, quōs ūnā<sup>485</sup> cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impeditum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium, quī supererant, cōnsensū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt, et in commemorandā cīvitātis<sup>490</sup> calamitāte ex sexcentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum milibus sexāgintā vix ad quīngentōs, quī arma ferre possent, sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, diligentissimē cōservāvit suisque fīnibus atque oppidīs<sup>495</sup> ūtī iussit et fīnitimīs imperāvit, ut ab iniuriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

*The Aduatuci withdraw to their stronghold. Their origin.*

29. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā dīximus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nervii venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūctīs oppidīs castellisque<sup>500</sup> dēsertīs, sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnitum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in lātitudinem nōn amplius ducentōrum pedum relinquēbātur; quem<sup>505</sup> locum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum māgnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō conlocābant.

Ipsī erant ex Cīmrīs Teutonīsque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Ītaliā facerent, 510 eīs impedimentīs, quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant, citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs custōdiam ex suis ac praesidium sex mīlia hominum ūnā reliquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā finitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum īferrent, aliās inlātum dēfenderent, cōsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi 515 domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

*They taunt the Romans who besiege their town.*

30. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; postea vāllō pedum duodecim, 520 in circuitū quīndecim mīlium, crēbrisque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi, vineīs āctīs, aggere exstrūctō, turrīm procul cōstituī vīdērunt, primum inrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta māchinātiō ā tantō spatiō instituerētur: Quibus- 525 nam manibus aut quibus vīribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque omnibus Gallīs praemāgnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptuī est) tantī oneris turrīm in mūrō sēsē posse conlocāre cōfiderent?

*The Aduatuci send envoys.*

31. Ubi vērō movērī et adpropinquāre mūrīs vīdērunt, 530 novā atque inūsitatā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: Nōn sē existimāre Rōmānōs sine ope deōrum bellum gerere, qui tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prō-



movēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī per- 535  
mittere. dīxērunt. Ūnum petere ac dēprecārī: sī forte  
prō suā clēmēntiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs  
audīrent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē  
sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē finitimōs esse  
inimīcōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere 540  
trāditīs armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum  
cāsū dēdūcerentur, quamvis fortunam ā populō  
Rōmānō patī, quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī, inter  
quōs dominārī cōnsuēssent.

*Caesar's reply.*

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōnsuētūdine 545  
suā quam meritō eōrum civitatem cōservātūrum, sī,  
priusquam mūrū ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed  
dēditōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs.  
Sē id, quod in Nervīis fēcisset, factūrum finitimisque  
imperātūrum, nē quam dēditīciis populī Rōmānī iniū- 550  
riam inferrent.

Rē renūtiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur, facere  
dīxērunt. Armōrum māgnā multitūdine dē mūrō in  
fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, iactā, sic ut prope  
summam mūrī aggerisque altitudinem acervī armōrum 555  
adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut postea  
perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs  
patefactīs eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

*After a partial surrender, the Aduatuci attack the Romans  
by night and are defeated.*

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī milītēsque  
ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā mili- 560

tibus iniūriam acciperent. Illī ante initō, ut intellē-  
tum est, cōnsiliō, quod dēditionē factā nostrōs praesidia  
dēductūrōs aut dēnique indiligentius servātūrōs crēdi-  
derant, partim cum eīs, quae retinuerant et cēlāverant,  
565 armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus  
intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat,  
pellibus indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus  
ad nostrās mūnitiōnēs ascēsus vidēbātur, omnibus  
cōpiīs repente ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt.

570 Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperāverat, īgnibus sīgni-  
ficātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursum est,  
pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est, ut ā virīs forti-  
bus in extrēmā spē salutis iniquō locō contrā eōs, quī  
ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pūgnārī dēbuit, cum  
575 in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs cōsisteret. Occīsīs ad  
hominum mīlibus quattuor reliquā in oppidum rēiectī  
sunt.

Postrīdiē ēius diēi refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet  
nēmō, atque intrōmissīs mīlitibus nostrīs, sectiōnem ēius  
580 oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eīs, quī ēmerant,  
capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quāquā-  
gintā trium.

### 34, 35. END OF THE YEAR'S CAMPAIGNS.

#### *Other tribes submit.*

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne  
ūnā miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas,  
585 Esviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvi-  
tātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs

eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.

*The army goes into winter quarters. Caesar returns to Italy. Thanksgiving at Rome.*

35. His rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta hūius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab eīs nātiōnibus, 590 quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliā Illyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. 595

Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque cīvitātēs propinquae eīs locīs erant, ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs, in Ītaliā profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum quīndecim supplicatiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī. 600

## BOOK III

### SUMMARY

The third book deals chiefly with the work in different parts of Gaul of four of Caesar's lieutenants.

CHAPS. 1-6. Caesar knew that the southern merchants in crossing the Alps were heavily taxed by the natives. Accordingly, before returning to Italy for the winter of 57-56 B.C., he sends Galba with the twelfth legion to open a mountain road for commerce. Early in the season the winter quarters of this legion at Octodurus are attacked by the mountaineers. He defeats them, but returns to the province without accomplishing his purpose.

CHAPS. 7-16. Publius Crassus with the seventh legion had established winter quarters near the mouth of the Loire. The Veneti on the Atlantic coast bring war on themselves by seizing messengers sent to them by Crassus. Owing to the nature of the locality, the fighting is on the water, necessitating the building of ships by the Romans. Though Caesar himself is present on the scene of action, the victory is won by Brutus, the commander of the fleet.

CHAPS. 17-19. Sabinus, another lieutenant, is successful among the Venelli, an Atlantic tribe.

CHAPS. 20-27. Meanwhile Crassus, with about 5000 legionaries and all the cavalry, conducts a difficult campaign in Aquitania, securing the submission of many tribes.

CHAPS. 28-29. Finally, Caesar himself, leaving the country of the Veneti after the naval battle, marches a distance of over four hundred miles to the northeast, to the Morini. Having ravaged their territories, he ends the year's warfare.

## 1-6. WAR WITH ALPINE TRIBES, AUTUMN OF 57 B.C.

*The twelfth legion, under Galba, is sent to the Alps.  
Winter quarters at Octodurus.*

1. Cum in Ītaliā proficīscerētur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit, quod iter per Alpēs,<sup>5</sup> quō māgnō cum periculō māgnisque cum portōriis mercātōrēs ire cōsuērant, patefierī volēbat. Huic permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā conlocāret.

Galba, secundīs aliquot proeliis factīs castellisque<sup>10</sup> complūribus eōrum expūgnātīs, missīs ad eum undique lēgātīs obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā, cōstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus conlocāre et ipse cum reliquīs ēius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vicus positus in<sup>15</sup> valle, nōn māgnā adiectā plānitīē, altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem ēius vicī Gallīs concessit, alteram vacuum ab hīs relictam cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.<sup>20</sup>

*The Gauls withdraw to the mountains and plan to attack the legion.*

2. Cum diēs hībernōrum complūrēs trānsissent, frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explorātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vicī, quam Gallīs concesserat, omnēs noctū discessisse montēsque,

25 quī impendērent, ā māximā multitūdine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī.

Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat, ut subitō Gallī bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent: primum, quod legiōnem, neque eam plēnissimam,  
 30 dētrāctīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātīm, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, absentibus, propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē primum quidem im-  
 35 petum suum posse sustinērī exīstimābant. Accēlēbat, quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstrāctōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant, et Rōmānōs, nōn solum itinerum causā sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis, culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi  
 40 persuāsum habēbant.

*Though their position is unfavorable, the Romans decide to defend it.*

3. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs, Galba, cum neque opus hībernōrum mūnitiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvīsum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē  
 45 bellō timendum exīstimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō, sententiās exquirere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentinī periculī praeter opīniōnem accidisset ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōspicerentur, neque subsidiō  
 50 venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī interelūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōnnūllae eius modī sententiae dicēbantur, ut impedimentīs relictīs



ēruptiōne factā, īsdem itineribus, quibus eō pervēnissent, ad salūtem contenderent. Māiōrī tamen partī placuit, hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō, interim rei ēventum 55 experiri et castra dēfendere.

*They are almost overwhelmed by the numbers of the enemy.*

4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut eīs rēbus, quās cōstituissent, conlocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaeque in vāllum conicere. Nostrī primō 60 integrīs vīribus fortiter prōpugnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pūgnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, 65 aliī integrīs vīribus succēdēbant; quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex pūgnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō quidem ēius locī, ubi cōnstiterat, relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

70

### *A fierce struggle.*

5. Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex continenter pūgnārētur, ac nōn solum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius īnstārent languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius 75 Baculus, primī pilī centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōfectum vulneribus dīximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus mīlitum, vir et cōsilī māgnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis

80 docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experīren-  
 tur. Itaque convocātis centuriōnibus celeriter milītēs  
 certiōrēs facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tan-  
 tummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent;  
 post datō signō ex castris ērumperent atque omnem  
 85 spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

*Fortune favors the Romans.*

6. Quod iussī sunt, faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portīs  
 ēruptiōne factā, neque cognōscendī, quid fieret, neque  
 suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita  
 commūtātā fortūnā eōs, quī in spem potiundōrum cas-  
 90 trōrum vēnerant, undique circumventōs interficiunt et  
 ex hominum milibus amplius trīgintā, quem numerum  
 barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōstābat, plūs tertiā  
 parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt  
 ac nē in locīs quidem superiōribus cōsistere patiuntur.  
 95 Sic omnibus hostium cōpiīs fūsis armisque exūtis sē  
 intrā mūnitiōnēs suās recipiunt.

Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre  
 Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hiberna cōsiliō vēnisse  
 meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus viderat, māximē frū-  
 100 mentī commeātūsque inopiā permōtus posterō diē, om-  
 nibus eius vicī aedificiīs incēnsīs, in prōvinciam revertī  
 contendit ac, nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante,  
 incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs  
 perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

7-16. WAR WITH THE VENETI, 56 B.C.

*Cause of the war.*

105 7. His rēbus gestīs, cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar  
 pācātam Galliam exīstimāret, superātis Belgīs, expulsīs

Germānīs, victīs in Alpibus Sedūnīs, atque ita initā hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adīre et regiōnēs cognōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coörtum est. Eius bellī haec fuit causa. 110 P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat, praefectos tribūnōsque mīlitum complūrēs in finitimās cīvitātēs frūmentī commeātūsque petendī causā dīmīsīt; quō in numerō est T. Terrasidius 115 missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

*The Veneti and other tribes arrest the messengers from Caesar's army.*

8. Hūius est cīvitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōn- 120 suērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs antecēdunt, et in māgnō impetū maris vāstī atque apertī paucīs portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē, quī eō marī ūtī cōnsuērunt, habent vectīgālēs. Ab hīs fit initium retinendī Silī atque Velānī, quod per eōs 125 suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, recuperātūrōs exīstimābant.

Hōrum auctōritāte finitimī adductī, ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentinā cōnsilia, eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missīs lēgātīs per 130 suōs prīncipēs inter sē coniūrant, nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnēs fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs; reliquāsque cīvitātēs sollicitant, ut in eā liber- tāte, quam ā māiōribus accēperint, permanēre quam

135 Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālīnt. Omnī ōrā  
maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā, com-  
mūnem lēgatiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt: si velit suōs  
recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat.

*Caesar and the Veneti both prepare for a naval war.*

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ā Crassō certior factus, quod  
140 ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in  
flūmine Ligerī, quod īnfluit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex  
prōvinciā īstituī, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī  
iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter administrātīs, ipse, cum prī-  
mum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit.

145 Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitatēs cognitō Caesaris  
adventū, simul quod, quantum in sē facinus admīsissent,  
intellegēbant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen ad omnēs nātiōnēs  
sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē  
et in vincula coniectōs, prō māgnitūdine periculī bellum  
150 parāre et māximē ea, quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent,  
prōvidēre īstituunt, hōc māiōre spē, quod multum  
nātūrā locī cōnfidēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa  
aestuāriīs, nāvigatiōnem impedītam propter īnscientiam  
locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs  
155 exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē  
morārī posse cōnfidēbant; ac iam ut omnia contrā  
opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse,  
Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium neque  
eōrum locōrum, ubi bellum gestūrī essent, vada, portūs,  
160 īnsulās nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigatiōnem in  
conclūsō marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō  
Ōceanō perspiciēbant.

Hīs initīs cōnsiliīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs

in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum bellum gesturum cōstābat, quam plūrimās 165 possunt, cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliatōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adsciscunt; auxilia ex Britannia, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

*Caesar's reasons for undertaking the war.*

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī, quās suprā 170 ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebellio facta post dēditionem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot cīvitātum coniūrātiō, in primīs nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrarentur. Itaque 175 cum intellegeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā libertātī studēre et condiōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōspirārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum 180 putāvit.

*Caesar sends four lieutenants to different parts of Gaul.*

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat, Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Gallīs arcessitī 185 dīcēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnariis duodecim et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficisci iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titū- 190

rium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum disti-  
nendam cūret. D. Brūtum adulēscētem classī Galli-  
cīsque nāvibus, quās ex Pietonibus et Santonīs reliquīs-  
195 que pācātīs regiōnibus convenīre iusserat, praeficit et,  
cum primum possit, in Venetōs proficīscī iubet. Ipse  
eō pedestribus cōpiis contendit.

*The towns of the Veneti.*

12. Erant ēius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum, ut posita  
in extrēmīs lingulis prōmunturiisque neque pedibus adi-  
200 tum habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset, quod  
accidit semper hōrārū duodēnārū spatiō, neque  
nāvibus, quod rūsus minūte aestū nāvēs in vadīs  
adflētārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppūgnātiō  
impediēbātur; ac sī quandō, māgnitūdine operis forte  
205 superātī, extrūsō marī aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs  
oppidī moenibus adaequātīs, suis fortūnis dēspērāre  
coeperant, māgnō numerō nāvium adpulsō, cūius rei sum-  
mam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque  
in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūsus īsdem  
210 opportunitātibus locī dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius  
māgnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs  
tempestātibus dētīnēbantur, summaque erat vāstō atque  
apertō marī, māgnīs aestibus, rārīs ac prope nūllīs porti-  
bus, difficultās nāvīgandī.

*The ships of the Veneti.*

215 13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae  
armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam  
nostrārū nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs



excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs, ad māgnitūdinem fluctuum tempestātumque accomodātae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quam- 220  
vīs vim et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus, cōnfixa clāvīs ferreīs digitī pollicis crassitūdine; ancoraē prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnīs revīnctae; pellēs prō vēlīs alūtaeque tenuiter cōflectae, sive propter inopiam līnī atque eius ūsūs 225  
īnscientiam, sive eō, quod est magis vērīsīmile, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinērī ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlīs nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur.

Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae classī eius modī congressus 230  
erat, ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret, reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum illīs essent aptiōra et accomodātiōra. Neque enim eīs nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant (tanta in eīs erat fīrmitūdō), neque propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et 235  
eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevīre ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōsisterent tūtius et ab aestū relictāe nihil saxa et cautēs timērent; quārum rēmōrum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus 240  
erat extimēscendus.

*The Roman plan to weaken the enemy's ships.*

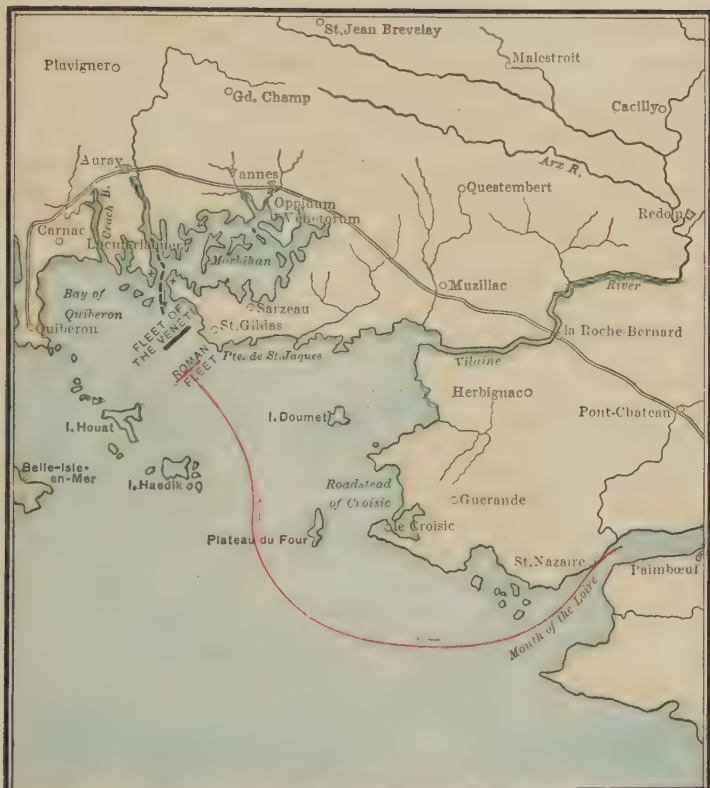
14. Complūribus expūgnātis oppidīs Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī neque hostium fugam captīs oppidīs reprimī neque eīs nocērī posse, statuit expectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac primum 245  
ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter ducentae et vīgintī nāvēs

eōrum, parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae, profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūns  
 250 militum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōstābat, quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pūgnae īnsisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātīs, tamen hās altitūdō puppiū ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat, ut neque  
 255 ex īferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adligī possent et missa ā Gallīs gravius acciderent.

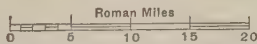
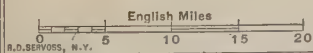
Ūna erat māgnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs praeacūtāe īsertae adfixaeque longuriīs, nōn absimilī fōrmā mūrāliū falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs, quī antennās  
 260 ad mālōs dēstinābant, comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus absceīs antennae necessāriō concidēbant, ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentisque cōsisteret, hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur.  
 265 Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī militēs facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset: omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus  
 270 dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

### *End of the naval battle.*

15. Dēiectīs, ut dīximus, antennīs, cum singulās bīnae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā vī trāscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expūgnātīs  
 275 complūribus nāvibus, cum eī rei nūllum reperirētur



## CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE VENETI





auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus, quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit, ut sē ex locō movēre non possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negotium cōficiendum māximē fuit opportūna; nam singu-<sup>285</sup> lās nostrī cōsectātī expūgnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervenīrent, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā ūsque ad sōlis occāsum pūgnārētur.

*Caesar's treatment of the conquered.*

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae<sup>285</sup> maritimae cōfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōsiliī aut dīgnitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum, nāvium quod ubique fuerat, in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissis, reliquī neque quō sē reciperent, neque quem ad modum<sup>290</sup> oppida dēfenderent, habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō diligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōservārētur. Itaque omnī senātū necātō, reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit. 295

17-19. WAR WITH THE VENELLI, 56 B.C.

*Sabinus adopts the policy of delaying.*

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus cum eīs cōpiīs, quās ā Caesare accēperat, in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit. Hīs praeerat Viridovīx ac summam imperī tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitatū, quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus excreitum māgnāsque cōpiās coē-<sup>300</sup> gerat; atque hīs paucīs diēbus Aulerei Eburovīcēs

Lexoviique senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī  
 esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce  
 coniūnxērunt; māgnaque praetereā multītūdō undique  
 305 ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat,  
 quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agrī cul-  
 tūrā et cotīdiānō labōre sēvocābat.

Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sēsē tenē-  
 bat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duōrum mīlium spatiō  
 310 cōnsēdisset cotīdiēque prōductīs cōpiīs pūgnandī potes-  
 tātem faceret, ut iam nōn solum hostibus in contemp-  
 tiōnem Sabīnus venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum mīlitum  
 vōcibus nōnnihil carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem  
 timōris praebuit, ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs  
 315 accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum  
 tantā multītūdine hostium, praesertim eō absente, quī  
 summam imperī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportūni-  
 tāte aliquā datā, lēgātō dīmīcandum nōn exīstimābat.

*Encouraged by the delay of the Romans, the Gauls attack  
 the camp.*

18. Hāc cōfīrmātā opīniōne timōris, idōneum quen-  
 320 clam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex eīs, quōs  
 auxiliī causā sēctum habēbat. Huic māgnīs praemiīs  
 pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet, utī ad hostēs trānseat,  
 et, quid fierī velit, ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs  
 vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit; quibus angustiīs  
 325 ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur, docet; neque longius  
 abesse, quā proximā nocte Sabīnus clam ex castrīs exer-  
 citum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxiliī ferendī causā profi-  
 ciscātur. Quod ubi audītum est, conclāmant omnēs  
 occāsiōnem negōtī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse,  
 330 ad castra īrī oportēre.



Multae rēs ad hōc cōsiliū Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō, perfugae cōfirmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui rei parum diligenter ab eīs erat prōvīsum, spēs Veneticī belli, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id, quod volunt, crēdunt. Hīs rēbus<sup>335</sup> adductī nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dīmittunt, quam ab eīs sit concessum, arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī, ut explorātā victōriā, sarmentīs virgultisque collēctīs, quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra<sup>340</sup> pergunt.

*Sabinus is victorious.*

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab imō acclīvis circiter passūs mīlle. Hūc māgnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spatī ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs darētur, exanimātique pervēnērunt.<sup>345</sup> Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus sīgnū dat. Impeditīs hostibus propter ea, quae ferēbant, onera subitō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est opportunitāte locī, hostium īnsientiā ac dēfatigātiōne, virtūte mīlitum et superiōrum pūgnārū exercitātiōne,<sup>350</sup> ut nē prīmum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs integrīs vīribus mīlītēs nostrī cōsecūtī māgnū numerum eōrum occidērunt; reliquōs equitēs cōsectātī paucōs, quī ex fugā ēvāserant, reliquērunt.

355

Sic unō tempore et dē nāvālī pūgnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar est certior factus, cīvitatēsque omnēs sē statim Titūrīō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est animus,

360 sic mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitatēs perferen-  
dās mēns eōrum est.

20-26. EXPEDITION OF CRASSUS INTO AQUITANIA,  
56 B.C.

*The army is attacked by the Sotiates.*

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquī-  
tāniam pervēnisset, quae pars, ut ante dictum est, et  
regiōnum lātitudine et multitudine hominum ex tertiā  
365 parte Galliae est aestimanda, cum intellegeret in eīs  
locīs sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucīs ante annīs L.  
Valerius Praecōnīnus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus  
esset, atque unde L. Manlius prōcōnsul impedimentīs  
āmissīs profūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi dīligentiam  
370 adhibendam intellegēbat.

Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvisā, auxiliīs equitātūque  
comparātō, multīs praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā et  
Carcasōne et Narbōne, quae sunt civitatēs Galliae prō-  
vinciae finitimae hīs regiōnibus, nōminatim ēvocātis, in  
375 Sōtiātium fīnēs exercitum intrōdūxit. Cūius adventū  
cognitō, Sōtiātēs magnīs cōpiīs coactīs equitātūque, quō  
plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī  
prīmum equestre proelium commīsērunt, deinde equitātū  
suō pulsō atque īnsequentibus nostrīs subitō pedes-  
380 trēs cōpiās, quās in convalle in īnsidiīs conlocāverant,  
ostendērunt. Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium  
renovārunt.

*Surrender of the Sotiates.*

21. Pūgnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sōtiātēs  
superiōribus victōriīs frētī in suā virtūte tōtius Aquī-  
385 tāniae salūtem positam putārent, nostrī autem, quid

sine imperātore et sine reliquīs legiōnibus adulēscutulō duce efficere possent, perspicī cuperent; tandem cōnfectī vulneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum māgnō numerō interfectō, Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sōtiātium oppugnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vīneās<sup>390</sup> turrēsque ēgit. Illī aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cunīculīs ad aggerem vīneāsque āctīs (cūius rei sunt longē perītissimī Aquītānī, proptereā quod multis locīs apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt), ubi dīligentiā nostrōrum nihil hīs rēbus prōfici posse intellēxērunt,<sup>395</sup> lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt, sēque in dēditiōnem ut recipiat, petunt. Quā rē impetrātā, arma trādere iussī faciunt.

*Adiatunnus and his "soldurii."*

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentīs animīs, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam im-<sup>400</sup> perī tenēbat, cum sexcentīs dēvōtīs, quōs illī 'solduriōs' appellant, quōrum haec est condiciō, utī omnibus in vitā commodīs ūnā cum eīs fruantur, quōrum sē amīcitiae dēdiderint, sī quid hīs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum ūnā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnsciscant (neque<sup>405</sup> adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam, quī eō interfectō, cūius sē amīcitiae dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret), cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnitiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma militēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pūgnā-<sup>410</sup> tum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen, utī eādem dēditiōnis condiciōne ūterētur, ā Crassō impetrāvit.

*Other tribes prepare to resist Crassus.*

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs, Crassus in finēs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō

415 barbari commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā loci et manū  
mūnītum paucis diēbus, quibus eō ventum erat, expūg-  
nātum cognōverant, lēgātōs quōqueversus dīmittere,  
coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt.  
Mittuntur etiam ad eās civitātēs lēgātī, quae sunt  
420 citeriōris Hispāniae finitimae Aquitāniae; inde auxilia  
ducēsque arcessuntur. Quōrum adventū māgnā cum  
auctōritāte et māgnā cum hominum multitudine bellum  
gerere cōnantur.

Ducēs vērō eī dēliguntur, quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō  
425 omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam rei mili-  
tāris habēre exīstimābantur. Hī cōsuētūdine populī  
Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs  
interclūdere instituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit  
suās cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile didūcī, hostem  
430 et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castris satis praesidi relin-  
quere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum  
commeātumque sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium nume-  
rum augērī, nōn cunctandū exīstimāvit, quīn pūgnā  
dēcērtāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs  
435 idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pūgnae cōstituit.

*Though outnumbering the Romans, they defer a battle.*

24. Primā lūce prōductis omnibus cōpiis, duplici acie  
īnstitūtā, auxiliis in mediam aciem coniectis, quid hostēs  
cōnsili caperent, exspectābat. Illi, etsi propter multi-  
tūdinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitātemque nos-  
440 trōrum sē tūtō dīmiciātūrōs exīstimābant, tamen tūtius  
esse arbitrābantur obsessis viis, commeātū interclūsō  
sine ūllō vulnere victōriā potiri; et, si propter inopiam  
rei frūmentariae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, im-

pedītōs in agmine et sub sarcinīs infirmiorēs animō adoriri cōgitābant. Hōc cōnsiliō probātō ab ducibus, 445  
prōductīs Rōmānōrum cōpiīs, sēsē castrīs tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opīniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs militēs alacriōrēs ad pūgnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audirentur expectārī diūtius nōn oportēre, quā ad castra irētur, 450  
cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

*Brave fighting.*

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multīs tēlīs coniectīs dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitiōnibusque dēpellerent auxiliārēsque, quibus ad pūgnam nōn multum Crassus 455  
cōfidēbat, lapidibus tēlisque subministrandīs et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandīs speciem atque opīniōnem pūgnantium praeberent, cum item ab hostibus cōstanter ac nōn timidē pūgnārētur tēlaque ex locō  
superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs cir- 460  
cumitīs hostium castrīs Crassō renūtiāvērunt nōn eādē esse dīligentiā ab decumānā portā castra mūnita facilemque aditum habēre.

*Crassus is victorious.*

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus, ut māgnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fieri 465  
vellet, ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperātum, dēvectīs eīs cohortibus, quae praesidiō castrīs relictæ intritæ ab labōre erant, et longiōre itinere circumductīs, nē ex hostium castrīs cōspici possent, omnium oculīs menti-  
busque ad pūgnam intentīs, celeriter ad eās, quās dīximus, 470  
mūnitiōnēs pervēnērunt atque hīs prōrutīs prius in hos-

tium castris cōstitērunt, quam plānē ab hīs vidērī aut quid rei gereretur, cognōscī posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte audītō nostrī redintegrātis vīribus, quod  
 475 plērumque in spē victōriæ accidere cōsuēvit, ācrius impūgnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventī, dēspērātis omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnitiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimīs campīs cōsectātus, ex milium quīnquāgintā  
 480 numerō, quae ex Aquitāniā Cantabrisque convēnisse cōstābat, vix quārtā parte relictā, multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

*Surrender of other tribes.*

27. Hāc audītā pūgnā, māxima pars Aquitāniæ sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsīt; quō in numerō  
 485 fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptiāniī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōfīsae, quod hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

27-29. EXPEDITION AGAINST THE MORINI AND  
 MENAPII, 56 B.C.

*The enemy are driven into their forests.*

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta  
 490 iam aestās erat, tamen quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapiīque supererant, quī in armīs essent neque ad eum unquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōficiī posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepē-  
 495 runt. Nam quod intellegēbant māximās nātiōnēs, quae proeliō contendissent, pulsās superātāsque esse



continentēsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre instituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersīs in opere nostrīs, 500 subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt et, complūribus interfectīs, longius impeditiōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suis dēperdidērunt.

505

*Fighting is discontinued because of severe storms.*

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere instituit et, nē quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam māteriam, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem conlocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus extruēbat. Incrēdibilī 510 celeritāte māgnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedimenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, ēius modī sunt tempestātēs cōsecūtae, utī opus necessariō intermitteretur et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus 515 militēs continērī non possent. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vicīs aedificiisque incēnsīs, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviisque, reliquīs item cīvitātibus, quae proximē bellum fēcērant, in hibernīs conlocāvit.

520

## BOOK IV

### SUMMARY

CHAPS. 1-15. Driven from their homes by the powerful Suebi, two German tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, cross the Rhine. Fearing a combination of Gallic and German tribes, Caesar returns to the army. He marches against the invaders, who in violation of a truce had attacked his cavalry, and annihilates their host of 430,000.

CHAPS. 16-19. In order to terrify the Germans, Caesar then builds his famous bridge over the Rhine. Having taken the army across and made peace with many tribes without bloodshed, he returns to Gaul and destroys the bridge.

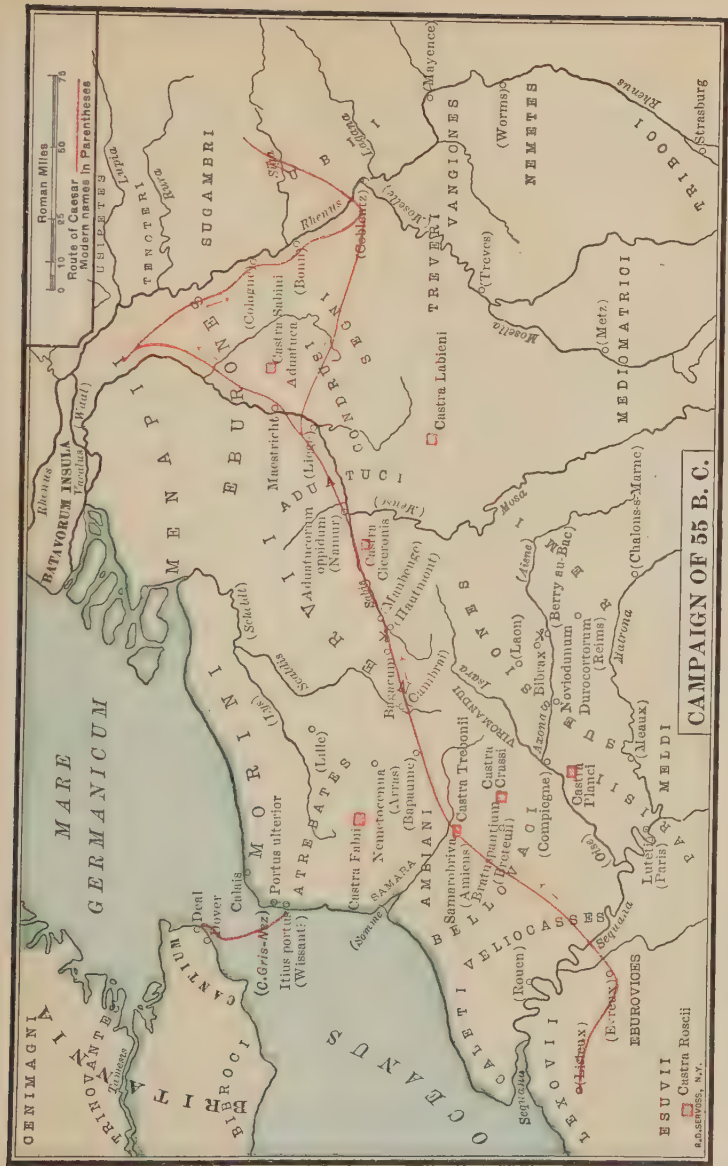
CHAPS. 20-36. Because of the discovery that aid is coming to the Gauls from Britain, Caesar decides to visit that island, but with the spirit rather of adventure than of conquest. Two legions and the cavalry embark for the expedition. After a difficult landing he defeats the Britons and arranges for peace. The event, attended with great peril to Caesar, is not of much importance in a military sense, but is important historically, being the first instance of contact between Britain and the older eastern nation.

CHAPS. 37, 38. The year 55 B.C. ends with a rebellion of two coast tribes and the placing of the legions in winter quarters among the Belgae.

#### 1-15. WAR WITH GERMAN TRIBES, 55 B.C.

*The Usipetes and Tencteri invade Gaul.*

1. Eā, quae secūta est, hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompēiō, M. Crassō cōsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et





item Teneterī māgnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt nōn longē ā marī, quō Rhēnus influit. Causa trānseundī fuit, quod ab Suēbis com-  
plūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā prohibēbantur.

### *Customs of the Suebi.*

Suēbōrum gēns est longē māxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs singula mīlia armātōrum bel-  
landī causā ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sic neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed  
prīvatī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius  
annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed māximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne et libertāte  
vītae, quod ā puerīs nullō officiō aut disciplīnā adsuēfactī  
nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et vīrēs alit et immānī corporum māgnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt, ut locīs frīgīdis-  
simīs neque vestītūs praeter pellēs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem māgna est corporis pars  
aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

### *Their commercial relations. Their cavalry.*

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut, quae bellō cēperint, quibus vēndant, habeant, quam quō ūllam





*The Usipetes and Tencteri seize the property of the Menapii.*

4. In eādem causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencterī, quōs suprā dīximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suḃbōrum vim sustinuērunt; ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsi et multīs locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum 60 pervēnērunt, quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant. Hī ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs, aedificia vicōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitudinis adventū perterritī, ex eīs aedificiīs, quae trāns flūmen habuerant, dēmigrāverant et eis Rhēnum dispositīs praesidiīs Germānōs 65 trānsire prohibēbant.

Illī omnia expertī, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsire propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsq̄ simulāvērunt et trīduī viam prōgressī rūsus revertērunt 70 atque, omnī hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōfectō, īnciōs inopinantēsq̄ Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs factī sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vicōs remigrāverant. Hīs interfectīs nāvibusque eōrum occupātīs, priusquam 75 ea pars Menapiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum erat, certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque, omnibus eōrum aedificiīs occupātīs, reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiīs aluērunt.

*The fickleness of the Gauls.*

5. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitātem 80 Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum exīstimāvit. Est enim hōc Gallicae cōsuētūdinis,

utī et viātōrēs etiam invītōs cōsistere cōgant et, quid  
 85 quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cognōverit,  
 quaerant; et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumsistat,  
 quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cognō-  
 verint, prōnūntiāre cōgat. Hīs rēbus atque auditiōni-  
 bus permōtī dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt,  
 90 quōrum eōs in vēstigiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incer-  
 tīs rūmōribus serviant et plērīque ad voluntātem eōrum  
 ficta respondeant.

*Caesar returns to the army and calls a council.*

6. Quā cōsuētūdine cognitā Caesar, nē graviōrī  
 bellō occurreret, mātūrius, quam cōsuērat, ad exerci-  
 95 tum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea, quae fore sus-  
 picātus erat, facta cognōvit: missās lēgatiōnēs ab nōn-  
 nullīs civitātibus ad Germānōs invītātōsque eōs, utī ab  
 Rhēnō discēderent, omniaque, quae postulāssent, ab  
 sē fore parāta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius iam  
 100 vagābantur et in finēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī  
 sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Prīncipibus  
 Galliae ēvocātis Caesar ea, quae cognōverat, dissimu-  
 landa sibi existimāvit, eōrumque animīs permulsīs et  
 cōfirmātis equitātūque imperātō, bellum cum Germānīs  
 105 gerere cōstituit.

*The Germans send envoys, asking for lands.*

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctis,  
 iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locīs esse Ger-  
 mānōs audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum  
 iter abesset, lēgātī ab eīs vēnērunt, quōrum haec fuit  
 110 ōrātiō: Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum

inferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur, quā armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōnsuetūdō sit ā māiōribus trādita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dīcere: vēnisse invītōs, ēiectōs domō; sī suam grātiā Rōmānī velint, posse eis ūtilēs 115 esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre, quōs armīs possēderint; sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs cōcēdere, quibus nē dīi quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem, quem non superāre possint.

120

*Caesar's reply.*

8. Ad haec Caesar, quae vīsum est, respondit; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis: Sibi nūllam cum hīs amīcitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērum esse, quī suōs finēs tuērī nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre, neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs, quī darī tantae praeser- 125 tim multitudinī sine iniuriā possint; sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum finibus cōnsīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniuriīs querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hōc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

*The envoys request a truce.*

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et rē 130 dēliberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē propius sē castra movēret, petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. Cognōverat enim māgnam partem equitātūs ab eis aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandīque causā ad Am- 135 bivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque eius rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

*The Meuse and the Rhine described.*

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in fīnibus  
 Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēno receptā, quae  
 140 appellātur Vacalus, īnsulam efficit Batāvōrum, neque  
 longius inde mīlibus passuum octōgintā in Ōceanum  
 īnfluit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiīs, quī Alpēs  
 incolunt, et longō spatiō per finēs Nantuātium, Hel-  
 vētīōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricōrum, Tribocōrum,  
 145 Trēverōrum citātus fertur; et, ubi Ōceanō adpropinquāvit,  
 in plūrēs diffluit partēs multīs ingentibusque īnsulīs  
 effectīs, quārum pars māgna ā ferīs barbarisque nāti-  
 ōnibus incolitur (ex quibus sunt, quī piscibus atque  
 ōvīs avium vīvere exīstimantur), multīsque capitibus in  
 150 Ōceanum īnfluit.

*German envoys return and request further delay.*

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum duo-  
 decim mīlibus abesset, ut erat cōstitutum, ad eum  
 lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī māgnopere,  
 nē longius prōgrederētur, ōrābant. Cum id nōn impe-  
 155 trāssent, petēbant, utī ad eōs equitēs, quī agmen ante-  
 cessissent, praemitteret eōsque pūgnā prohibēret, sibi-  
 que ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quō-  
 rum sī prīncipēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcis-  
 set, eā condiciōne, quae ā Caesare ferrētur, sē ūsūrōs  
 160 ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi trīduī spatium  
 daret.

Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur,  
 ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum, quī abessent,  
 reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīlibus pas-

suum quattuor aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē<sup>165</sup> dīxit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī convenīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātis cognōsceret. Interim ad prae-  
fectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit quī  
nūntiārent, nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent et, sī ipsī  
lacesserentur, sustinērent, quoad ipse cum exercitū<sup>170</sup>  
propius accessisset.

*Treacherous attack upon the Roman cavalry.*

12. At hostēs, ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōspexē-  
runt, quōrum erat quīnque mīlium numerus, cum ipsī  
nōn amplius octingentōs equitēs habērent, quod eī,  
quī frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam, nōndum<sup>175</sup>  
redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum  
paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiīs  
erat ab hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs per-  
turbāvērunt; rūsus hīs resistentibus, cōnsuetūdine suā  
ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, subfossisque equīs complūribusque<sup>180</sup>  
nostrīs dēiectīs, reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita  
perterritōs ēgērunt, ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent, quam  
in cōspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent.

In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur quat-  
tuor et septuāgintā, in hīs vir fortissimus Pīsō Aquītānus,<sup>185</sup>  
amplissimō genere nātus, cūius avus in civitāte suā rēg-  
num obtinuerat, amīcus ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc  
cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum  
ex periculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus, quoad  
potuit, fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multis<sup>190</sup>  
vulneribus acceptīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam  
proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō  
equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

*Caesar arrests the German chiefs.*

13. Hōc factō proeliō, Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs  
 195 audiendōs neque condiōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur  
 ab eīs, quī per dolum atque īnsidiās petītā pāce ultrō  
 bellum intulissent; exspectāre vērō, dum hostium cōpia  
 augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmen-  
 tiaē esse iūdicābat, et cognitā Gallōrum īnfirmitāte, quan-  
 200 tum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent  
 cōsecūtī, sentiēbat; quibus ad cōsilia capiēda nihil  
 spatī dandum exīstimābat.

His cōstitūtis rēbus et cōsiliō cum lēgātīs et quaes-  
 tōre commūnicātō, nē quem diem pūgnae praetermit-  
 205 teret, opportunissima rēs accidit, quod postrūdiē ēius  
 diēi māne eādem et simulātiōne et perfidiā ūsī Germānī  
 frequentēs, omnibus prīcipibus māiōribusque nātū  
 adhibitīs, ad eum in castra vērunt; simul, ut dicēbātur,  
 pūrgandī suī causā, quod contrā atque esset dictum  
 210 et ipsī petīssent, proelium prīdiē commīssissent; simul  
 ut, sī quid possent, dē indūtīs fallendō impetrārent.  
 Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus illōs retinērī iussit;  
 ipse omnēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque, quod  
 recentī proeliō perterritum esse exīstimābat, agmen  
 215 subsequī iussit.

*Caesar surprises the camp of the enemy.*

14. Acīē triplici īstitutā et celeriter octō mīlium  
 itinere cōfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam,  
 quid agerētur, Germānī sentīre possent. Quī omnibus  
 rēbus subitō perterritī et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et  
 220 discessū suōrum, neque cōsiliū habendī neque arma



capiendī spatiō datō, perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere an castra dēfendere an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, milītēs nostrī pristinī diēi perfidiā incitātī in castra inrūpērunt. Quō locō, quī celeriter <sup>225</sup> arma capere potuērunt, paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedimentaue proelium commīsērunt; at reliqua multītūdō puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōsectandōs <sup>230</sup> Caesar equitātum mīsīt.

*Caesar annihilates the enemy in their flight.*

15. Germānī, post tergum clāmōre audītō, cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs abiectīs signisque militāribus relictīs sē ex castrīs eīēcērunt, et cum ad cōfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, <sup>235</sup> māgnō numerō interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs, perpaucīs vulnerātīs, ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum quadringentōrum et trīgintā milium <sup>240</sup> fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar eīs, quōs in castrīs retinuerat, discēdendī potestātem fēcīt. Illī supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dīxērunt. Hīs Caesar libertātem concessit. 245

16-19. FIRST EXPEDITION INTO GERMANY, 55 B.C.

*Caesar decides to bridge the Rhine.*

16. Germānicō bellō cōfectō, multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa

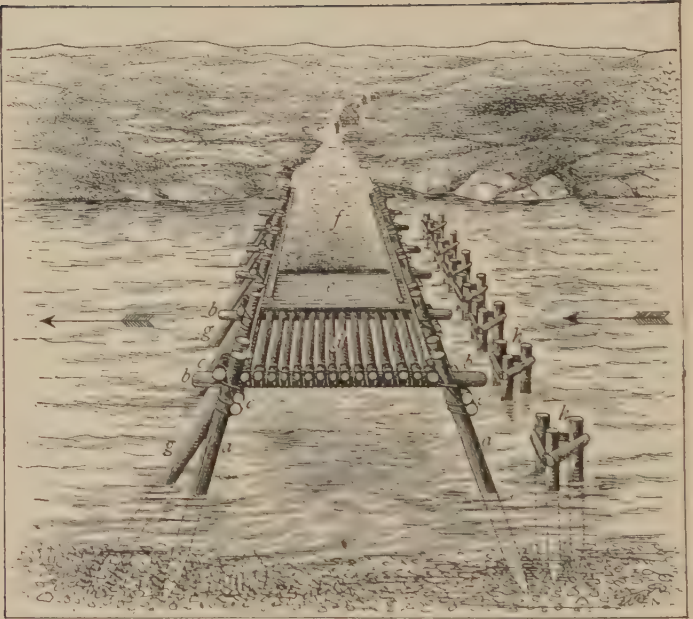
fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī, ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus eōs  
 250 timēre voluit, cum intellexerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsīre. Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitātūs Ūsipetum et Tencterōrum, quam suprā commemorāvī praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam trānsisse neque proeliō interfuisse, post  
 255 fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in finēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum hīs coniūnxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset, quī postulārent, eōs, quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dēderent, respondērunt: Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum finīre; sī sē  
 260 invitō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre non aequum exīstimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?

Ubiī autem, quī unī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiā fēcerant, obsidēs dederant,  
 265 māgnopere ōrābant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premereantur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus rei pūblīcae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret; id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen  
 270 atque opīniōnem eius exercitūs, Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne et amīcitiā populī Rōmānī tūtī esse possent. Nāvium māgnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

*Description of the bridge.*

275 17. Caesar hīs dē causīs, quās commemorāvī, Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis





*aa* Tigna bina sesquipedalia

*bb* Trabes bipedales

*cc* Fibulae

*d* Directa materia

*e* Longurii

*f* Crates

*gg* Sublicae pro ariete oblique actae

*hh* Sublicae supra pontem immissae

CAESAR'S BRIDGE OVER THE RHINE

tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rō-  
mānī dīgnitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa  
difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātītū-  
dinem, rapīditātem altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id <sup>280</sup>  
sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exer-  
cītum exīstimābat.

Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. Tīgna bīna sēsqui-  
pedālia paulum ab īmō praeacūta, dīmēnsa ad altitū-  
dinem flūminis, intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē <sup>285</sup>  
iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flū-  
men dēfixerat fistūcisque adēgerat, nōn sublicae modō  
dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastīgātē, ut  
secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, eis item  
contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta intervāllō <sup>290</sup>  
pedum quadrāgēnum ab īferiōre parte contrā vim  
atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat.

Haec utraque īnsuper bipedālibus trabibus immissīs,  
quantum eōrum tīgnōrum iūnctūra distābat, bīnīs utrim-  
que fibulīs ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus <sup>295</sup>  
disclūsīs atque in contrāriam partem revīnetīs tanta  
erat operis fīrmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra, ut, quō  
māior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius inligāta tenē-  
rentur. Haec dērēctā mātēriā iniectā contexēbantur ac  
longuriīs crātibusque cōsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius <sup>300</sup>  
sublicae et ad īferiōrem partem flūminis oblīquē agē-  
bantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere  
coniūnctae vim flūminis exciperent; et aliae item suprā  
pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sive nāvēs  
dēiciendī operis causā essent ā barbarīs missae, hīs <sup>305</sup>  
dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu pontī  
nocērent.

*The army crosses the bridge into Germany.*

18. Diēbus decem, quibus māteria coepta erat com-  
 portārī, omnī opere effectō, exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar,  
 310 ad utramque partem pontis fīrmō praesidiō relictō in  
 finēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus  
 cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque  
 amīcitiam petentibus liberāliter respondet obsidēsque  
 ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambrī ex ēo tempore, quō  
 315 pōns institūi coeptus est, fugā comparātā, hortantibus  
 eīs, quōs ex Tencterīs atque Usipetibus apud sē habē-  
 bant, finibus suis excesserant suaque omnia exportā-  
 verant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

*Having received the submission of many tribes, Caesar returns to Gaul and destroys the bridge.*

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus,  
 320 omnibus vicīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs frūmentīsque suc-  
 cīsīs, sē in finēs Ubiōrum recēpit atque hīs auxilium  
 suum pollicitus, sī ā Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab eīs  
 cognōvit: Suēbōs, posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pontem  
 fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō, nūntiōs in  
 325 omnēs partēs dīmīsisse, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent,  
 liberōs, uxōrēs suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent atque  
 omnēs, quī arma ferre possent, ūnum in locum convenī-  
 rent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium ferē regiōnum eārum,  
 quās Suēbī obtinērent; hīc Rōmānōrum adventum  
 330 expectāre atque ibi dēcertāre cōstituisse.

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus eīs rēbus cōn-  
 fectīs, quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōn-



stituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulcīscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne liberāret, diēbus omnīnō duodēvīgintī trāns Rhēnum cōnsūptīs, satis et ad<sup>335</sup> laudem et ad ūtilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

20-36. FIRST EXPEDITION TO BRITAIN, 55 B.C.

*Caesar seeks information concerning Britain.*

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit,<sup>340</sup> quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat; et sī tempus annī ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adīssset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae<sup>345</sup> omnia ferē Gallīs erant incognita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae<sup>350</sup> māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īstitutīs ūterentur, neque quī essent ad māiōrem nāvium multitudinem idōneī portūs, reperīre poterat.

*Volusenus and Commius are sent to reconnoiter.*

21. Ad haec cognōscenda, priusquam perīculum fa-<sup>355</sup> ceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat, ut explōrātīs omnibus

rēbus ad sē quam primum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiis in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex finitimīs regiōnibus et, quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat, classem iubet convenīre.

Interim cōsiliō eius cognitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītis, liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque, ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit, et cum eīs unā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātis rēgem ibi cōstituerat, cūius et virtūtem et cōsiliū probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābatur cūiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus magnū habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat, quās possit, adeat cīvitatēs hortēturque, ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectis regiōnibus omnibus, quantum ei facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvī ēgredi ac sē barbaris committere nōn auderet, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspexisset, renūntiat.

*Caesar assembles his fleet.*

22. Dum in hīs locis Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vērunt, quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōsiliō excūsarent, quod hominēs barbari et nostrae cōsuētudinis imperitī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea, quae imperāset, factūrōs pollicērentur. Hōc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque

post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs sibi Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, māgnū eīs numerum<sup>390</sup> obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recipit.

Nāvibus circiter octōgintā onerāriīs coāctīs, quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat, quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectisque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant duo-<sup>395</sup> dēvigintī onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā milibus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur, quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabīnō et Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ā<sup>400</sup> quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant, dūcendum dedit. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō, quod satis esse arbitrābātur, portum tenēre iussit.

*Setting sail, Caesar reaches Britain and casts anchor.*

23. Hīs cōstitūtīs rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvīgandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit, equi-<sup>405</sup> tēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvēs cōnscondere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quārtā cum primīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit.<sup>410</sup> Cūius locī haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbatur, utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit. <sup>415</sup>

Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs, et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fierī vellet, ostendit monuitque (ut rei mīlitāris ratiō, māximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem  
 420 mōtum habērent), ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmīssīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs circiter mīlia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō litore nāvēs cōstituit.

*The natives prevent the Romans from landing.*

24. At barbarī, cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, prae-  
 missō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in  
 proeliīs ūtī cōsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nos-  
 trōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās  
 summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem  
 430 nisi in altō cōstitui nōn poterant; mīlitibus autem  
 ignōtis locīs, impedītīs manibus, māgnō et gravī onere  
 armōrum pressīs simul et' dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et  
 in fluctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnan-  
 dum, cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prō-  
 435 gressī, omnibus membrīs expeditīs, nōtissimīs locīs,  
 audācter tēla conicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs incitārent.  
 Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque hūius omnīnō generis  
 pūgnae imperītī nōn eādē alacritāte ac studiō, quō in  
 pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōsuērunt, ūtēbantur.

*The soldiers are encouraged to disembark.*

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās,  
 440 quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus  
 ad ūsum expeditior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs

nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōstitui, atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī ac submovērī iussit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nos- 445 trīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitatō genere tormentōrum permōtī, barbarī cōstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, māximē propter altitudinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, 450 obtestātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēliciter ēvenīret, “Dēsilīte,” inquit, “commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum rei pūblīcae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō.” Hōc cum vōce māgnā dixisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam 455 ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus adpropinquārunt.

*The Britons are put to flight.*

26. Pūgnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, 460 quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter īnsistere neque sīgna subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī, quibuscumque sīgnīs occurrerat, sē adgregābat, māgnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōn- 465 spexerant, incitātīs equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus complērī iussit et, quōs labōrantēs cōspexerat, 470 hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōn-

stitērunt, suis omnibus cōsecūtīs in hostēs impetum  
fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius  
prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque  
475 īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad pristi-  
nam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

*They ask pardon for the arrest of Commius.*

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā  
recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsē-  
runt; obsidēs datūrōs, quaeque imperāset, factūrōs sēsē  
480 pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atre-  
bās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in  
Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum,  
cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret,  
comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcērant; tum  
485 proeliō factō remīsērunt et in petendā pāce ēius rei cul-  
pam in multitudinem contulērunt et, propter imprū-  
dentiam ut ignōscerētur, petīvērunt.

Caesar questus, quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgā-  
tīs missīs pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā  
490 intulissent, ignōscere imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque im-  
perāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem  
ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessītā paucīs diēbus sēsē  
datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suos remigrāre in agrōs  
iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē civi-  
495 tātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

*The Roman cavalry transports are driven back by a storm.*

28. Hīs rēbus pāce cōfirmātā, post diem quārtum  
quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs duodēvīgintī,  
dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sus-



tulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum adpropinquārent Britanniae et ex castris vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coōrta est, ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem, unde erant profectae, referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est propius solis occāsum, māgnō suō cum periculō clēicerentur; quae tamen ancorīs iactīs cum fluctibus complērentur, necessariō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

*The tide nearly wrecks the fleet on the British coast.*

29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuevit, nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita unō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum cūrāverat quāsque in aridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligatae, tempestās adflīctābat, neque ūlla nostris facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs, reliquae cum essent, fūnibus, ancorīs reliquisque armāmentīs āmissīs, ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna, id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deērant, quae ad reficiendās nāves erant ūsuī; et, quod omnibus cōstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locis in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

*The Britons plan to renew the war.*

30. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē locūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs

deesse intellegerent et paucitatem militum ex castrorum  
 exiguitate cognoscerent, quae hoc erant etiam angustiora,  
 quod sine impedimentis Caesar legionem transportaverat,  
 530 optimum factum esse duxerunt, rebellionem factam, frum-  
 entum commeatumque nostros prohibere et rem in hiemem  
 producere; quod, his superatis aut reditu interclusis,  
 neminem postea belli inferendi causam in Britanniam  
 transiturum confidebant. Itaque rursus coniuratione  
 535 factam, paulatim ex castris discedere et suos clam ex  
 agris deducere coeperunt.

*Caesar secures grain and repairs the fleet.*

31. At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat,  
 tamen et ex eventum navium suarum et ex eo, quod  
 obsides dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, sus-  
 540 picabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat.  
 Nam et frumentum ex agris cotidie in castra conferbat  
 et, quae gravissimae afflictae erant navee, earum materiam  
 atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas utebantur et, quae ad  
 eas res erant usu, ex continentibus comparari iubebat.  
 545 Itaque cum summo studio a militibus administraretur,  
 duodecim navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari satis  
 commodum posset, effecit.

*The Britons attack a foraging legion.*

32. Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una  
 frumentatum missa, quae appellabatur septima, neque  
 550 ullam ad id tempus belli suspitionem interpositam, cum pars  
 hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ven-  
 titaret, ei, qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant,  
 Caesaris nuntiaverunt pulverem maiorem, quam con-

suētūdō ferret, in eā parte vidērī, quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicātus, aliquid 555 novī ā barbarīs initum cōsilī, cohortēs, quae in statiōnibus erant, sēcum in eam partem proficiscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit.

Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hos- 560 tibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conici animadvertit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs 565 in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

*The war-chariots of the Britons.*

33. Genus hōc est ex essedīs pūgnae. Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō 570 terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant, ut, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur, 575 expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis praestant; ac tantum ūsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt, utī in dēclivī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere et per tēmōnem percurrere 580 et in iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

*Caesar relieves his foragers. Storms prevent further fighting.*

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostrīs novitāte pūgnae tempore opportunissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque  
 585 ēius adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et ad committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs  
 590 omnibus occupātis, quī erant in agrīs reliquī, discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnes partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum  
 595 suis praedicāvērunt et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī liberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter māgnā multitudīne peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vērunt.

*Defeat of the Britons.*

600 35. Caesar, etsī idem, quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat, fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter trigintā, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trāsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs  
 605 cōstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī, quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex eis occīdērunt;

deinde, omnibus longē lātēque aedificiis incēnsis, sē in castra recēpērunt.

610

*Caesar demands hostages and returns to Gaul.*

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pācē vērērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante imperāverat, duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod propinquā diē aequinoctī infirmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigationem subiciendam nōn exīstimā-<sup>615</sup> bat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit, quae omnes incolumēs ad continentem pervērērunt; sed ex eīs onerariae duae eōdem portūs, quōs reliquae, capere nōn potuērunt et paulō infra delatae sunt.

620

### 37, 38. REBELLION OF THE MORINI AND MENAPII.

*The Morini attack the Romans as they disembark.*

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī milites circiter trecentī atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat, spē praedae adductī primō nōn ita magnō suorum numerō circumsteterunt ac, si sēsē interficī nōllent,<sup>625</sup> arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illi orbe factō sēsē defenderent, celeriter ad clamōrem hominum circiter milia sex convērērunt. Quā rē nūtiatā, Caesar omnem ex castris equitātum suis auxiliō misit. Interim nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius<sup>630</sup> hōris quattuor fortissimē pūgnāvērunt, et paucis vulneribus acceptis complūrēs ex hīs occiderunt. Postea vērō quam equitatus noster in cōspectum vēnit, hostēs

abiectis armis terga vertērunt māgnusque eōrum nume-  
635 rus est occīsus.

*Labienus defeats them. Winter quarters among the Belgae.*

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum  
eīs legiōnibus, quās ex Britannia redūxerat, in Morinōs,  
quī rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter sic-  
citātēs palūdum, quō sē reciperent, nōn habērent, quō  
640 perfugiō superiōre annō erant ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestā-  
tem Labiēnī vērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta  
lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, om-  
nibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs  
incēnsīs, quod Menapii sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās  
645 abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt.

Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hiberna cōstituit.  
Eō duae omnīnō civitātēs ex Britannia obsidēs mīsērunt,  
reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs, ex litterīs Caesaris  
diērum vīgintī supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.



## SELECTIONS FROM BOOKS V., VI., AND VII

INTENDED ESPECIALLY FOR SIGHT READING

### THE CAPTURE AND DEATH OF DUMNORIX, 54 B.C. BOOK V., CHAPS. 6, 7.

When Caesar was preparing to invade Britain a second time, he feared an uprising in Gaul during his absence, and therefore intended to take with him most of the Gallic chiefs, including Dumnorix. This troublesome Haeduan deserted him, but was captured and put to death.

6.<sup>1</sup> Erat ūnā cum cēterīs Dumnorīx Haeduus, dē quō ante<sup>2</sup> ā nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in prīmīs<sup>3</sup> cōstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperī, māgnī<sup>4</sup> animī, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cognōverat. Accēdēbat hūc, quod in conciliō Haeduōrum Dumnorīx dīxerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum cīvitatīs dēferri; quod dictum<sup>5</sup> Haeduī graviter ferēbant neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suīs hospitibus Caesar cognōverat.

10

Ille omnibus primō precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinqueretur, partim quod insuetus<sup>6</sup> nāvigandī

6. <sup>1</sup> The chapter numbers are given as in the complete text.  
<sup>2</sup> Dumnorix was last mentioned in Bk. I., chap. 20. <sup>3</sup> in primis: especially. <sup>4</sup> haughty. <sup>5</sup> statement. <sup>6</sup> unaccustomed, w. gen.

mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus <sup>7</sup> impedīrī sēsē dīceret. Posteaquam id obstinātē sibi negārī vīdit, 15 omni spē impetrandī adēptā, prīcipēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs hortārīque coepit, utī in continentī remanērent; metū territāre: nōn <sup>8</sup> sine causā fierī, ut Gallia omni nōbilitāte spoliārētur; id esse cōsiliū Caesaris ut, quōs in cōspectū Galliae inter- 20 ficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret; fidem reliquīs interpōnere, <sup>9</sup> iūs iūrandum poscere ut, quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent, cōmūnī cōsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

25 7. Quā rē cognitā Caesar, quod tantum cīvitātī Haeduae dīgnitātis <sup>1</sup> tribuēbat, coērcendum atque dēterrendum, quibuscumque rēbus posset. Dumnorīgem statuēbat; quod longius ēius āmentiam prōgredi vīdēbat, prōspiciendum, <sup>2</sup> nē quid <sup>3</sup> sibi ac reī pūblīcae nocēre 30 posset. Itaque diēs circiter vīgintī quīque in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus vēptus nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, quī māgnam partem omnis temporis <sup>4</sup> in hīs locīs flāre <sup>5</sup> cōsuevit, dabat operam, <sup>6</sup> ut in officiō Dumnorīgem contineret, nihilō tamen sētius <sup>7</sup> omnia ēius cōsilia 35 cognōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem milītēs equitēsque cōscendere nāvēs iubet.

At omnium impedītis <sup>8</sup> animīs, Dumnorīx cum equitibus Haeduōrum ā castrīs īnsiente Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar, intermissā

6. <sup>7</sup> religious scruples. <sup>8</sup> saying that, etc. <sup>9</sup> gave.

7. <sup>1</sup> dignitatis tribuebat: had respect for. <sup>2</sup> take precaution. <sup>3</sup> quid nocere: do any harm. <sup>4</sup> omnis temporis: every season. <sup>5</sup> blow. <sup>6</sup> dabat operam: (gave attention) tried. <sup>7</sup> strengthens tamen. <sup>8</sup> occupied.

profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositis,<sup>9</sup> māgnam<sup>40</sup> partem equitatūs ad eum īnsequendum mittit retrahique imperat; sī vim faciat neque pāreat, interficī iubet, nihil hunc sē absente prō sānō<sup>10</sup> factūrum arbitrātus, quī praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille<sup>11</sup> autem revo-cātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem<sup>45</sup> implōrāre coepit, saepe clāmitāns liberum sē liberaeque esse cīvitātis. Illi, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equitēs Haeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

BRITAIN: ITS INHABITANTS, PRODUCTS, SIZE, ETC.  
BOOK V., CHAPS. 12-14.

The observations here noted about Britain were made by Caesar on his second invasion of that island, 54 B.C., and are the first of which we have any record.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab eīs incolitur, quōs<sup>50</sup> nātōs in īnsulā ipsā memoriā<sup>1</sup> prōditum dīcunt; maritima pars ab eīs, quī praedae ac bellī īferendī causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē īsdem<sup>2</sup> nōminibus cīvitātum appellantur, quibus<sup>3</sup> ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō inlātō ibi remānsērunt atque<sup>55</sup> agrōs colere<sup>4</sup> coepērunt. Hominum est īnfīnīta multitūdō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia, pecoris māgnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut nummō<sup>5</sup> aureō<sup>6</sup> aut tāleīs<sup>7</sup> ferreīs ad certum pondus exāminātīs<sup>8</sup> prō nummō.

60

7. <sup>9</sup> laid aside everything else. <sup>10</sup> as a sane man. <sup>11</sup> Dumnorix.

12. <sup>1</sup> memoria proditum: according to tradition. <sup>2</sup> = eisdem.

<sup>3</sup> order: ex quibus civitatibus orti (sunt et) pervenerunt eo.

<sup>4</sup> cultivate. <sup>5</sup> money. <sup>6</sup> of gold. <sup>7</sup> bars. <sup>8</sup> weighed.

Nāscitur ibi plumbum <sup>9</sup> album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed ēius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria <sup>10</sup> cūiusque generis, ut in Galliā, est praeter fāgum <sup>11</sup> atque abietem.<sup>12</sup>  
 65 Leporem <sup>13</sup> et gallīnam <sup>14</sup> et ānserem <sup>15</sup> gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā.<sup>16</sup>  
 Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā, remissiōribus frīgoribus.

13. Insula nātūrā triquetra,<sup>1</sup> cūius ūnum latus est  
 70 contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter angulus,<sup>2</sup> quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs adpelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, inferior <sup>3</sup> ad merīdiem <sup>4</sup> spectat. Hōc latus pertinet circiter mīlia passuum quīngenta.

Alterum <sup>5</sup> vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem  
 75 sōlem: quā ex parte est Hibernia īnsula, dīmidiō minor,<sup>6</sup> ut exīstimātur, quam Britannia, sed parī <sup>7</sup> spatiō trāsmis-sūs atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In <sup>8</sup> hōc mediō cursū est īnsula, quae appellātur Mona: complūrēs praetereā minōrēs obiectae,<sup>9</sup> īnsulae exīstimantur, dē  
 80 quibus īnsulīs nōnnūllī scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs trīgintā sub brūmam <sup>10</sup> esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus <sup>11</sup> reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā <sup>12</sup> mēnsūrīs breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Hūius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert <sup>13</sup>  
 85 illōrum opīniō, septingentōrum mīlium.

12. <sup>9</sup>plumbum album: *tin.* <sup>10</sup>timber. <sup>11</sup>beech. <sup>12</sup>fir. <sup>13</sup>hare.  
<sup>14</sup>hen. <sup>15</sup>goose. <sup>16</sup>i.e. as pets.

13. <sup>1</sup>triangular. <sup>2</sup>angle. <sup>3</sup>sc. angulus. <sup>4</sup>south. <sup>5</sup>sc. latus. <sup>6</sup>by half. <sup>7</sup>pari . . . atque: with the same distance across as.  
<sup>8</sup>in . . . cursu: in the middle of this passage. <sup>9</sup>sc. esse. to lie opposite. <sup>10</sup>winter-solstice. <sup>11</sup>inquiry. <sup>12</sup>ex aqua: by the water-clock, an instrument constructed like a sand-glass. <sup>13</sup>is.

Tertium est contrā septentrionēs, cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra; sed ēius angulus alter māximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hōc mīlium passuum octingentōrum in longitudinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū viciēs centum mīlium passuum. 90

14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī, quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuetūdine. Interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt,<sup>1</sup> sed lacte et carne vīvunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō<sup>2</sup> 95 inficiunt,<sup>3</sup> quod caeruleum<sup>4</sup> efficit colōrem, atque hōc horribiliōrēs sunt in pūgnā aspectū; capillōque<sup>5</sup> sunt prōmissō<sup>6</sup> atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum<sup>7</sup> superius.

## THE RIVALRY OF TWO CENTURIONS. BOOK V., CHAP. 44.

For the winter of 54-53 B.C. Caesar placed his legions in several scattered camps. Quintus Cicero, the lieutenant in charge of one legion among the Nervii, was besieged in his camp by the Gallic chief Ambiorix. During the siege occurred the incident given below.

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī 100 iam prīmīs ordinibus adpropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habebant, uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō<sup>1</sup> summīs simultātibus<sup>2</sup> contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum

14. <sup>1</sup> sow.    <sup>2</sup> woad.    <sup>3</sup> stain.    <sup>4</sup> dark blue.    <sup>5</sup> hair.    <sup>6</sup> (let grow) long.    <sup>7</sup> lip.

44. <sup>1</sup> precedence.    <sup>2</sup> rivalry.

105 ācerīmē ad mūnitiōnēs pūgnārētur, “Quid dubitās,” inquit, “Vorēne? aut quem locum<sup>3</sup> tuae probandae virtutis exspectās? Hic diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiis iūdicābit.” Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnitiōnēs, quaeque pars<sup>4</sup> hostium cōnfertissima est vīsa, 110 inrumpit.<sup>5</sup>

Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur. Mediocri spatiō relictō<sup>6</sup> Pullō pīlum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum ex multitudine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō per- 115 cussō<sup>7</sup> et exanimātō hunc scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs, in illum<sup>8</sup> ūniversī tēla cōniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfīgitur scūtum Pullōnī<sup>9</sup> et verūtum<sup>10</sup> in balteō<sup>11</sup> dēfīgitur. Āvertit hic cāsus vāginam<sup>12</sup> et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum, 120 impeditumque hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit.

Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit; illum verūtō trānsfīxum arbitrantur. Gladiō comminus rem gerit Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō 125 reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īstat, in locum dēiectus īferiōrem concidit. Huic rūsus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō<sup>13</sup> incolumēs complūribus interfectīs summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnitiōnēs recipiunt. Sic fortūna in contentiōne et 130 certāmine utrumque versāvit,<sup>14</sup> ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtīque esset, neque dīiūdicārī posset, uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

44. <sup>3</sup> opportunity. <sup>4</sup> quaeque pars = et eam partem quae.

<sup>5</sup> attacked. <sup>6</sup> i.e. between him and the enemy. <sup>7</sup> thrust through.

<sup>8</sup> i.e. Pullo. <sup>9</sup> dat. of ref. <sup>10</sup> dart. <sup>11</sup> belt. <sup>12</sup> sheath. <sup>13</sup> both.

<sup>14</sup> dealt with.



THE CUSTOMS OF THE GAULS AND THE GERMAN.  
BOOK VI., CHAPS. 11-28.

In the spring of 53 B.C. Caesar suppressed the uprisings among the Nervii, Treveri and other tribes. Then building another bridge across the Rhine, near the site of the former one (Bk. IV.), he entered Germany a second time. The following chapters are a digression introduced at this point in the narrative.

*Two factions of Gaul.*

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum <sup>1</sup> perventum est, nō aliēnum <sup>2</sup> esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et, quō <sup>3</sup> differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē, prōpōnere.<sup>4</sup> 135

In Galliā nōn solum in omnibus cīvitatibus atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiōnēs sunt; eārumque factiōnum prīncipēs sunt, quī summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdicio habere existimantur, quōrum <sup>5</sup> ad arbitrium iūdiciumque 140 summa <sup>6</sup> omnium rērum cōsiliōrumque redeat.<sup>7</sup> Idque <sup>8</sup> ēius rei causā antīquitus institūtum <sup>9</sup> vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxiliī egēret;<sup>10</sup> suōs enim quisque opprimī et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. 145 Haec eadem ratiō <sup>11</sup> est in summā <sup>12</sup> tōtius Galliae; namque omnēs cīvitatēs dīvisae sunt in duās partēs.

*Relation of the Romans to the factions.*

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prīncipēs erant Haeduī, alterius Sēquanī.<sup>1</sup> Hī,<sup>2</sup>

11. <sup>1</sup> i.e. in the narrative. <sup>2</sup> inappropriate. <sup>3</sup> how. <sup>4</sup> explain.  
<sup>5</sup> antecedent is principes. <sup>6</sup> management. <sup>7</sup> is referred. <sup>8</sup> this custom.  
<sup>9</sup> sc. esse. <sup>10</sup> need, governs gen. <sup>11</sup> system. <sup>12</sup> in general.

12. <sup>1</sup> cf. Bk. I., chap. 31. <sup>2</sup> the latter.

150 cum per sē minus valērent, quod summa auctōritās  
antīquitus erat in Haeduīs māgnaeque eōrum erant  
clientēlae,<sup>3</sup> Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant  
eōsque ad sē māgnīs iactūrīs<sup>4</sup> pollicitātiōnibusque per-  
dūxerant. Proeliīs vērō complūribus factīs secundīs  
155 atque omnī nōbilitāte Haeduōrum interfectā, tantum  
potentiā antecesserant, ut māgnam partem clientium  
ab Haeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab hīs prīn-  
cipum filiōs acciperent, et públicē iūrāre cōgerent  
nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsiliī initūrōs, et partem  
160 fīnitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent, Galliaeque  
tōtīus prīncipātum obtinērent. Quā necessitatē ad-  
ductus, Dīviciācus auxiliī petendī causā Rōmam<sup>1</sup> ad  
senātum profectus infectā<sup>5</sup> rē redierat.

Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus  
165 Haeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlīs restitūtīs, novīs  
per Caesarem comparātīs, quod eī, quī sē ad eōrum  
amīcitiam adgregāverant, meliōre condiciōne atque  
aequiōre imperiō sē utī vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus<sup>6</sup> eōrum  
grātiā dīgnitatēque amplificātā, Sēquanī prīncipātum  
170 dīmiserant.<sup>7</sup> In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs  
quod adaequāre<sup>8</sup> apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur,  
eī, quī propter veterēs inimīcitiās nūllō modō cum  
Haeduīs coniungī poterant, sē Rēmīs in clientēlam  
dicēbant.<sup>9</sup> Hōs illī diligenter tuēbantur; ita et novam  
175 et repente collēctam<sup>10</sup> auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō  
tamen statū rēs erat, ut longē prīncipēs habērentur  
Haeduī, secundum locum dīgnitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

12. <sup>3</sup> dependencies. <sup>4</sup> sacrifices. <sup>5</sup> infecta re: without success.  
<sup>6</sup> abl. of spec. <sup>7</sup> lost. <sup>8</sup> sc. obj. eōs, i.e. the Remi. <sup>9</sup> gave up.  
<sup>10</sup> acquired.

*The druids and the knights.*

13. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum, quī aliquō sunt numerō <sup>1</sup> atque honōre, genera sunt duo. Nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, <sup>2</sup> quae nihil audet 180 per sē, nullī adhibētur <sup>3</sup> consiliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere <sup>4</sup> aliēnō aut māgnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant <sup>5</sup> nōbilibus, quibus in <sup>6</sup> hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra, quae dominīs <sup>7</sup> in servōs. Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus 185 alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. <sup>8</sup> Illī rēbus dīvinīs intersunt, <sup>9</sup> sacrificia pūblica ac prīvāta prōcūrant, <sup>10</sup> religiōnēs interpretantur; ad eōs māgnus adulēscēntium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrīt, māgnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē 190 omnibus contrōversiīs pūblicīs prīvātisque cōstituunt; et, sī quod est admissum <sup>11</sup> facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditātē, dē finibus contrōversia est, idem dēcernunt, praemia poenāsque cōstituunt; sī quī aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, <sup>12</sup> sacri- 195 ficiīs interdīcunt. <sup>13</sup> Haec poena apud eōs est gravis-sima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque <sup>14</sup> dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant, neque eīs petentibus iūs 200 redditur <sup>15</sup> neque honōs ūllus commūnicātur.

Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō aut,

13. <sup>1</sup> account. <sup>2</sup> as. <sup>3</sup> invited. <sup>4</sup> aere alieno : debt. <sup>5</sup> give up.  
<sup>6</sup> over. <sup>7</sup> masters. <sup>8</sup> knights. <sup>9</sup> preside over. <sup>10</sup> attend to. <sup>11</sup> com-  
mitted. <sup>12</sup> abide by. <sup>13</sup> prohibit (them). <sup>14</sup> speech. <sup>15</sup> granted.

sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dīgnitāte, succēdit aut, sī sunt  
 205 plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōnnumquam etiam  
 armīs de princīpātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tem-  
 pore in finibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtius Galliae  
 media habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōsecrātō. Hūc  
 210 omnēs undique, quī contrōversiās habent, conveniunt  
 eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdicīisque pārent. Disciplīna <sup>16</sup> in  
 Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trāslāta  
 exīstimātur, et nunc, quī dīligentius eam rem cognōs-  
 cere volunt, plērumque illō discendī causā proficīscuntur.

*Privileges and doctrines of the druids.*

14. Druidēs ā bellō abesse <sup>1</sup> cōsuērunt neque tri-  
 215 būta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt; mīlitiae vacātiōnem  
 omniumque rērum habent immūnitātem.<sup>2</sup> Tantīs exci-  
 tātī praemiīs et suā sponte multī in <sup>3</sup> disciplīnam con-  
 veniunt et ā parentibus propinquisque mittuntur.  
 Māgnū ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dīcuntur.  
 220 Itaque annōs nōnnūllī vicēnōs in disciplīnā permanent.  
 Neque fās esse exīstimant ea litterīs mandāre, cum <sup>4</sup>  
 in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicīs privātisque ratiōnibus,<sup>5</sup>  
 Graecīs litterīs <sup>6</sup> ūtantur.

Id mihi duābus dē causīs instituisse videntur, quod  
 225 neque in vulgus disciplīnam efferri <sup>7</sup> velint neque eōs,  
 quī discunt, litterīs cōnfīsōs minus memoriae studēre;<sup>8</sup>  
 quod ferē plērisque accidit, ut praesidiō <sup>9</sup> litterārum  
 dīligentiam in perdiscendō ac memoriam remittant.<sup>10</sup>  
 In prīmīs hōc volunt persuādēre,<sup>11</sup> nōn interīre <sup>12</sup> ani-

13. <sup>16</sup> the system of the Druids.

14. <sup>1</sup> take no part in. <sup>2</sup> freedom from. <sup>3</sup> for. <sup>4</sup> although.  
<sup>5</sup> accounts. <sup>6</sup> cf. Bk. I., chap. 29. <sup>7</sup> to be disclosed. <sup>8</sup> pay atten-  
 tion to. <sup>9</sup> assistance. <sup>10</sup> relax. <sup>11</sup> inculcate. <sup>12</sup> perish.

mās,<sup>13</sup> sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsīre ad aliōs, atque<sup>230</sup> hōc<sup>14</sup> māximē ad virtūtem excitārī putant metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi<sup>15</sup> ac terrārum māgnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortalīum vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūti trādunt.

235

*Power of the knights.*

15. Alterum genus est equitum.<sup>1</sup> Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannīs accidere solēbat,<sup>1</sup> utī aut ipsī iniuriās inferrent aut inlātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur,<sup>2</sup> atque eōrum ut<sup>3</sup> quisque est genere<sup>4</sup> <sup>240</sup> cōpiisque amplissimus,<sup>5</sup> ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs<sup>6</sup> clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiā potentiamque nōvērunt.

*Human sacrifices.*

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum<sup>1</sup> dēdita<sup>2</sup> religiōnibus, atque ob eam causam, quī sunt adfectī<sup>245</sup> graviōribus morbīs quīque in proeliīs periculisque versantur,<sup>3</sup> aut prō victimīs hominēs immolant<sup>4</sup> aut sē immolātūrōs vovent,<sup>5</sup> administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, quod, prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortalīum nūmen<sup>6</sup> <sup>250</sup> plācārī<sup>7</sup> arbitrantur, pūblicēque eiusdem generis habent institūta sacrificia. Aliī immānī māgnitūdine simu-

14. <sup>13</sup> souls. <sup>14</sup> by this (belief). <sup>15</sup> the universe.

15. <sup>1</sup> was accustomed. <sup>2</sup> are engaged. <sup>3</sup> according as. <sup>4</sup> birth. <sup>6</sup> distinguished. <sup>6</sup> vassals.

16. <sup>1</sup> very. <sup>2</sup> devoted. <sup>3</sup> engage. <sup>4</sup> sacrifice. <sup>5</sup> vow. <sup>6</sup> will. <sup>7</sup> to be appeased.

lācra <sup>8</sup> habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs  
hominibus complent; quibus succēnsīs circumventī  
255 flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum, quī  
in fūrtō <sup>9</sup> aut latrōciniō aut aliquā noxiā <sup>10</sup> sint com-  
prehēnsī, grātiōra dīs immortālibus esse arbitrantur;  
sed, cum ēius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium  
supplicia dēscendunt.<sup>11</sup>

*The gods of the Gauls.*

260 17. Deōrum māximē Mercurium colunt;<sup>1</sup> hūius sunt  
plūrima simulācra, hunc omnium inventōrem artium  
ferunt,<sup>2</sup> hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad  
quaestūs <sup>3</sup> pecūniae mereātūrāsque <sup>4</sup> habēre vim māxi-  
mam arbitrantur; post hunc Apollinem et Mārtē et  
265 Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē, quam reliquae  
gentēs, habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere,  
Minervam operum atque artificiōrum <sup>5</sup> initia trādere,<sup>6</sup>  
Iovem imperium caelestium <sup>7</sup> tenēre, Mārtē bella  
regere. Huic, cum proeliō dīmicāre cōstituērunt, ea,  
270 quae bellō cēperint, plērumque dēvovent; cum superā-  
vērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum  
locum cōferunt. Multīs in cīvitātibus hārum rērum  
extrūctōs cumulōs <sup>8</sup> locīs cōsecrātīs cōspicārī licet;  
neque saepe accidit, ut neglētā quispiam religiōne  
275 aut capta apud <sup>9</sup> sē occultāre aut posita <sup>10</sup> tollere audēret,  
gravissimumque eī rei supplicium cum cruciātū cōn-  
stitutū est.

16. <sup>8</sup> *images* (of wicker-work). <sup>9</sup> *theft*. <sup>10</sup> *crime*. <sup>11</sup> *resort*.

17. <sup>1</sup> *worship*. <sup>2</sup> *call*. <sup>3</sup> *gaining*. <sup>4</sup> *pursuits of trade*. <sup>5</sup> *arts*.  
<sup>6</sup> *impart*. <sup>7</sup> *of the gods*. <sup>8</sup> *heaps*. <sup>9</sup> *apud se*: at his house. <sup>10</sup> *set  
aside, i.e. consecrated as gifts*.



*They claim descent from Pluto.*

18. Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte<sup>1</sup> patre prōgnātōs prae-  
dicant idque<sup>2</sup> ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam  
causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum, sed<sup>280</sup>  
noctium fīniunt;<sup>3</sup> diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annō-  
rum initia sīc observant, ut noctem diēs subsequātur.  
In reliquīs vītāe īnstitūtīs hōc ferē ab reliquīs<sup>4</sup> differunt,  
quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt, ut mūnus<sup>5</sup>  
mīlitiae sustinēre possint, palam<sup>6</sup> ad sē adīre nōn<sup>285</sup>  
patiuntur filiumque puerilī aetāte in pūblicō in cōn-  
spectū patris adsistere turpe dūcunt.

*Laws of marriage. Funeral rites.*

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis<sup>1</sup> nōmine  
accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs aestimātiōne<sup>2</sup> factā  
cum dōtibus commūnicant.<sup>3</sup> Hūius omnis pecūniae<sup>290</sup>  
coniūctim<sup>4</sup> ratiō habētur fructūsque<sup>5</sup> servantur; uter  
eōrum vītā superāvit, ad eum pars utrīusque cum  
fructibus superiōrum temporum pervenit.<sup>6</sup> Virī in<sup>7</sup>  
uxōrēs, sicutī in liberōs, vītāe necisque habent pote-  
stātem; et cum pater familiae inlūstriore<sup>8</sup> locō nātus<sup>295</sup>  
dēcessit, ēius propinquī conveniunt et, dē<sup>9</sup> morte sī rēs  
in suspiciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servīlem modum<sup>10</sup>  
quaestiōnem habent, et sī<sup>11</sup> compertum est, īgnī atque  
omnibus tormentīs excruciatās interficiunt. Fūnera

18. <sup>1</sup> *Pluto.* <sup>2</sup> *and this tradition.* <sup>3</sup> *measure.* <sup>4</sup> *sc. nationibus.*  
<sup>5</sup> *munus militiae: military service.* <sup>6</sup> *publicly.*

19. <sup>1</sup> *dotis nomine: as a dowry.* <sup>2</sup> *valuation.* <sup>3</sup> *put along.*  
<sup>4</sup> *jointly.* <sup>5</sup> *income.* <sup>6</sup> *belongs.* <sup>7</sup> *over.* <sup>8</sup> *inlūstriore . . . natus:*  
*of higher rank.* <sup>9</sup> *de . . . venit: if there is any suspicion regarding*  
*the cause of death.* <sup>10</sup> *the manner of slaves.* <sup>11</sup> *if any guilt.*

300 sunt prō cultū Gallōrum māgnifica et sūmptuōsa;  
omniaque, quae vīvīs cordī<sup>12</sup> fuisse arbitrantur, in  
īgnem īferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō suprā<sup>13</sup> hanc  
memoriam servī et clientēs, quōs ab eīs dilēctōs<sup>14</sup> esse  
cōnstābat, iūstīs<sup>15</sup> fūnebris cōfectīs ūnā cremābantur.

*Rumors are to be report d to the magistrates.*

305 20. Quae cīvitatēs commodius<sup>1</sup> suam rem pūblicam  
administrāre exīstīmantur, habent lēgibus sānetum.<sup>2</sup> sī  
quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimīs rūmōre ac fāmā  
accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō  
aliō communicet, quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque  
310 imperītōs falsīs rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī  
et dē summis rēbus cōsiliū capere cognitum<sup>3</sup> est.  
Magistrātūs, quae vīsa sunt,<sup>4</sup> occultant: quae esse ex  
ūsū iūdicāverunt, multitudinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā  
nisi per conciliū loquī nōn concēditur.

*The customs of the Germans.*

315 21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōsuētūdine diffe-  
runt. Nam neque druidēs habent, quī rēbus dīvinīs  
praesint, neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō  
eōs sōlōs dūcunt, quōs cernunt<sup>1</sup> et quōrum apertē opibus  
iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam, reliquōs nē  
320 fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus  
atque in studiīs<sup>2</sup> rei militāris cōsistit; ā parvis labōrī

19. <sup>12</sup> dear. <sup>13</sup> supra . . . memoriam: before our time.  
<sup>14</sup> loved. <sup>15</sup> regular.

20. <sup>1</sup> effectively. <sup>2</sup> established. <sup>3</sup> known. <sup>4</sup> seems best (to be  
concealed).

21. <sup>1</sup> see. <sup>2</sup> pursued.

ac dūritiae<sup>3</sup> student.<sup>4</sup> Quī diūtissimē impūberēs<sup>5</sup> permānsērunt, māximam inter suōs ferunt laudem; hōc alī<sup>6</sup> statūram, alī virēs nervōsque<sup>7</sup> cōfirmārī putant.

*Ownership of land.*

22. Agrī cultūrae nōn student, māiorque pars eōrum<sup>325</sup> vīctūs in<sup>1</sup> lacte, cāseō, carne cōsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum<sup>2</sup> certum aut finēs habet propriōs,<sup>3</sup> sed magistrātūs ac prīncipēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cognātiōibusque<sup>4</sup> hominum, quīque ūnā coiērunt, quantum<sup>5</sup> et quō locō vīsum est agrī, attribuunt atque<sup>330</sup> annō post aliō<sup>6</sup> trānsire cōgunt. Eius rei multās adferunt causās: nē adsiduā<sup>7</sup> cōsuētūdine<sup>8</sup> captī studium bellī gerendī agrī cultūrā commūtent;<sup>9</sup> nē lātōs finēs parāre studeant potentiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessionibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque<sup>335</sup> aestūs vītandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte<sup>10</sup> plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.<sup>11</sup>

*The isolation of German tribes; chieftains; brigandage; hospitality.*

23. Cīvitātibus māxima laus est, quam lātissimē<sup>340</sup> circum sē vāstātis finibus sōlitūdinēs habēre.<sup>1</sup> Hōc

21. <sup>3</sup> hardship. <sup>4</sup> devote themselves. <sup>5</sup> unmarried. <sup>6</sup> is increased. <sup>7</sup> muscles.

22. <sup>1</sup> of. <sup>2</sup> amount. <sup>3</sup> his own. <sup>4</sup> families. <sup>5</sup> w. agri. <sup>6</sup> to another place. <sup>7</sup> continuous. <sup>8</sup> mode of life. <sup>9</sup> exchange (for). <sup>10</sup> animi aequitate: contentment. <sup>11</sup> cf. Bk. IV., chap. 1.

23. <sup>1</sup> cf. Bk. IV., chap. 3.

proprium <sup>2</sup> virtūtis existimant, expul-sōs agrīs finitimōs  
 cēdere neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōsistere;  
 simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentināe incur-  
 345 sionis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut inlātum  
 dēfendit aut infert, magistrātūs, quī eī bellō praesint  
 et vītae necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In  
 pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs  
 regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dīcunt <sup>3</sup> contrō-  
 350 versiāsque minuunt.<sup>4</sup>

Latrōcinia nūllam habent infāmiam, quae extrā finēs  
 cūiusque cīvitātis fiunt, atque ea <sup>5</sup> iuventūtis exercendae  
 ac dēsidiāe <sup>6</sup> minuendae causā fieri praedicant. Atque  
 ubi quis ex prīncipibus in conciliō dīxit sē ducem fore,  
 355 quī <sup>7</sup> sequi velint, profiteantur, cōsurgunt <sup>8</sup> eī, quī et  
 causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium polli-  
 centur atque ā multitudīne conlaudantur; quī ex hīs  
 secūtī nōn sunt, in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum <sup>9</sup> numerō  
 dūcuntur, omniumque hīs rērum postea fidēs dērogā-  
 360 tur.<sup>10</sup> Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque  
 dē causā ad eōs vērunt, ab iniuriā prohibent sānetōs-  
 que habent, hīsque omnium domūs patent victusque  
 communicātur.

### *Galic colonies in Germany.*

24. Ac fuit antea tempus, cum Germānōs Gallī  
 365 virtūte superārent, ultrō bella inferrent, propter homi-  
 num multitudinē agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum  
 colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima Ger-

23. <sup>2</sup> a proof. <sup>3</sup> declare. <sup>4</sup> settle. <sup>5</sup> i.e. latrocinia. <sup>6</sup> idleness.

<sup>7</sup> qui . . . profiteantur: that those who, etc., should volunteer.

<sup>8</sup> rise. <sup>9</sup> traitors. <sup>10</sup> is refused.

māniae sunt, loca circum Hercyniam silvam, quam Eratosthenī et quibusdam Graccīs fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illī Oreyniam appellant, Volcae Tecto-370 sagēs occupāvērunt atque ibi cōsēdērunt; quae gēns ad hōc tempus hīs sēdibus sēsē continet summamque<sup>1</sup> habet iūstīiae et bellicae laudis opīniōnem.<sup>2</sup> Nunc, quod in eādē inopiā, egestātē,<sup>3</sup> patientiā, quā ante, Germānī permanent, eōdem vīctū et cultū<sup>4</sup> corporis 375 ūtuntur; Gallīs<sup>5</sup> autem prōvinciārum<sup>6</sup> propinquitās et trāsmarinārum rērum nōtitia multa ad cōpiam atque ūsūs<sup>7</sup> largītur;<sup>8</sup> paulātīm adsuēfactī superārī multīsque vīctī procliīs nē sē quīdem ipsī<sup>9</sup> cum illīs virtūte comparant.

380

### *The Hercynian forest.*

25. Hūius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est, lātītūdō novem diērum iter expedītō<sup>1</sup> patet; nōn enim aliter finīrī<sup>2</sup> potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum finibus rēctāque<sup>3</sup> flūminis Dānuvī regiōne 385 pertinet ad finēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc<sup>4</sup> sē flectit sinistrōrsus dīversīs<sup>5</sup> ā flūmine regiōnibus multārumque gentium finēs propter māgnitūdinem attingit; neque quisquam est hūius<sup>6</sup> Germāniae, quī sē aut adīsse ad initium<sup>7</sup> eius silvae dicat, cum diērum iter 390

24. <sup>1</sup> adj. <sup>2</sup> reputation (for). <sup>3</sup> poverty. <sup>4</sup> care. <sup>5</sup> dat. w. largitur. <sup>6</sup> These were on both sides of the Alps. <sup>7</sup> enjoyment. <sup>8</sup> afford. <sup>9</sup> i.e. the Gauls.

25. <sup>1</sup> to a rapid traveler, i.e. without baggage. <sup>2</sup> measured. <sup>3</sup> recta regione: parallel (to). <sup>4</sup> from this place. <sup>5</sup> diversis . . . regionibus: away from the river. <sup>6</sup> i.e. the western part. <sup>7</sup> the eastern edge.

sexāgintā prōcesserit, aut, quō ex locō oriātur, accēperit;  
 multaque in eā genera ferārū <sup>8</sup> nāscī cōstat, quae reli-  
 quis in locis vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus, quae māximē  
 differant ā cēterīs et memoriae prōdenda videantur,  
 395 haec sunt.

*The reindeer.*

26. Est bōs <sup>1</sup> cervī <sup>2</sup> figurā, cūius ā mediā fronte  
 inter aurēs ūnum <sup>3</sup> cornū existit excelsius magisque  
 dērēctum hīs, quae nōbīs nōta sunt, cornibus; ab eius  
 summō sicut palmae rāmīque <sup>4</sup> lātē diffunduntur. Eadem  
 400 est fēminae marisque nātūra, eadem fōrma māgnitū-  
 dōque cornuum.

*The elk.*

27. Sunt item, quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est  
 cōnsimilis caprīs <sup>1</sup> figurā et varietās pellium, sed māgni-  
 tudine paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque <sup>2</sup> sunt cornibus et  
 405 erūra <sup>3</sup> sine nōdīs articulisque <sup>4</sup> habent; neque quiētis causā  
 prōcumbunt neque, sī quō adflictae <sup>5</sup> cāsū concidērunt,  
 erigere sēsē ac sublevāre possunt. Hīs sunt arborēs  
 prō cubilibus; ad eas sē adplicant <sup>6</sup> atque ita paulum  
 modo reclīnātae quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex vēstīgiīs  
 410 eum est animalversum ā vēnātōribus, quō <sup>7</sup> sē recipere  
 cōnsuērint, omnēs <sup>8</sup> eō locō aut ab rādīcibus subruunt  
 aut accēdunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs eārum

25. <sup>8</sup> *wild animals.*

26. <sup>1</sup> *large animal.* <sup>2</sup> *stag.* <sup>3</sup> *An inaccurate description of the reindeer, which has two horns.* <sup>4</sup> *palmae ramique: branching horns, extending like the fingers from the palm of the hand.*

27. <sup>1</sup> *goats.* <sup>2</sup> *mutilae cornibus: with short broken horns.*  
<sup>3</sup> *legs.* <sup>4</sup> *protuberant joints (hendiadys).* <sup>5</sup> *thrown down.* <sup>6</sup> *se adplicant: lean against.* <sup>7</sup> *quo, where.* <sup>8</sup> *w. arbores.*



stantium relinquātur.<sup>9</sup> Hūc cum sē cōnsuētūdine reclīnāvērunt, infirmās arborēs pondere adfligunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.

415

*The wild ox (urochs).*

28. Tertium est genus eōrum, quī ūrī appellantur. Hī sunt māgnitūdine paulō infrā elephantōs, speciē et colōre et figurā taurī. Māgna vīs eōrum est et māgna vėlōcitās; neque hominī neque ferae, quam cōspexērunt, parcut.<sup>1</sup> Hōs studiōsē foveīs<sup>2</sup> captōs inter-<sup>420</sup>ficiunt. Hōc sē labōre dūrant<sup>3</sup> adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātīs in pūblicum cornibus, quae<sup>4</sup> sint testimoniō, māgnam ferunt laudem. Sed adsuēscere<sup>5</sup> ad hominēs et mānsuēfierī<sup>6</sup> nē parvulī quidem exceptī<sup>7</sup> <sup>425</sup>possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum et figurā et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquisīta ab labrīs<sup>8</sup> argentō circumelūdunt atque in amplissimīs epulīs<sup>9</sup> prō pōculīs ūtuntur.

THE BATTLE OF ALESIA, AUTUMN OF 52 B.C.

BOOK VII., CHAPS. 77-90.

The last and greatest struggle of the Gauls for independence was made in 52 B.C. Owing to political disturbances at Rome, the chiefs supposed that Caesar would be detained in Italy, and they planned to prevent him from joining his legions now wintering among the Treveri and other northern tribes. Vercingetorix, chief of the Arverni, united the tribes and became the first able leader of Gaul against the Roman armies. Caesar

27. <sup>9</sup> *summa . . . relinquatur: they appear to be standing firmly.*

28. <sup>1</sup> *spare.* <sup>2</sup> *pitfalls.* <sup>3</sup> *harden.* <sup>4</sup> *purpose.* <sup>5</sup> *become accustomed.* <sup>6</sup> *be tamed.* <sup>7</sup> *caught.* <sup>8</sup> *ab labris: around the rim.* <sup>9</sup> *feasts.*

in haste returned, protected the Province, crossed the snow-covered Cevennes, and by eluding the enemy reached his forces. The first important engagement was at the stronghold of Avaricum, among the Bituriges, which Caesar captured, slaying most of the inhabitants. The Gauls continued the war and in turn defeated the Romans with great loss at Gergovia, capital of the Arverni. After this disaster the Haedui, Caesar's old allies, broke out in open revolt, and were the last to add their strength to the common Gallic cause. Caesar united his troops with the detachment under Labienus, and sent to Germany for cavalry, forming an army of 60,000. Defeated in an attack upon the Romans, Vercingetorix with 80,000 men retired into the city of Alesia (the modern *Alise Ste. Reine*), which became the scene of the final efforts of both sides. The Romans skilfully constructed siege-works upon a novel plan. Vercingetorix sent his cavalry throughout Gaul for help, and a quarter of a million men responded to the call. This army of relief approached, but before arriving at Alesia the food supply of the town was exhausted. The following chapters tell the rest of the story.

*The starving garrison in Alesia hold a council. The proposal of Critognatus.*

430 77. At eī, quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē, quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōsūptō omni frūmentō, insei quid in Haeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū suārum fortunārum cōsultābant. Ac variis dictis sententiis, quarum pars dēditionem, pars, 435 dum virēs suppeterent,<sup>1</sup> ēruptionem cēnsēbat,<sup>2</sup> nōn praetereunda orātiō Critognātī vidētur propter eius singulārem et nefāriam<sup>3</sup> crūdelitātem.

Hic summō in Arvernīs ortus locō<sup>4</sup> et māgnae habitus auctoritātis, "Nihil," inquit "dē eōrum sententiā dic-

77. <sup>1</sup> hold out. <sup>2</sup> favor. <sup>3</sup> infamous. <sup>4</sup> social position.

tūrus sum, quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditionis<sup>440</sup>  
nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō<sup>5</sup>  
neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēseō. Cum<sup>6</sup> hīs mihi  
rēs est, quī ēruptiōnem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō  
omnium vestrum cōnsēnsū prīstinae residēre virtūtis  
memoria vidētur. Animī est ista<sup>7</sup> mollitia, nōn virtūs,<sup>445</sup>  
paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ultrō mortī  
offerant, facilius reperiuntur, quam quī dolōrem patien-  
ter ferant.

“Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem (tantum apud  
mē dīgnitās<sup>8</sup> potest) sī nūllam praeterquam vītāe<sup>450</sup>  
nostrae iactūrā<sup>9</sup> fierī vidērem; sed in cōnsiliō capiendō  
omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium  
conciatāvimus. Quid,<sup>10</sup> hominum milibus octōgintā unō  
locō interfectīs, propinquīs cōsanguineisque nostrīs  
animī fore exīstimātis, sī paene in ipsīs cadāveribus<sup>455</sup>  
proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō  
exspoliāre quī vestrae salūtis causā suum perīculum  
neglēxērunt, nec stultitiā<sup>11</sup> ac temeritāte vestrā aut  
animī imbēcillitāte omnem Galliam prōsternere<sup>12</sup> et  
perpetuae servitūtī subicere.<sup>13</sup> An quod ad<sup>14</sup> diem nōn<sup>460</sup>  
vērērunt, dē eōrum fidē cōstantiāque dubitātis? Quid  
ergō? Rōmānōs in illīs ulteriōribus mūnitiōnibus  
animīne causā<sup>15</sup> cotīdiē exercēri putātis? Sī illōrum<sup>16</sup>  
nūntiīs cōfirmārī nōn potestis omnī aditū praesaepitō,<sup>17</sup>  
hīs<sup>18</sup> ūtiminī testibus<sup>19</sup> adpropinquāre eōrum<sup>16</sup> adven-<sup>465</sup>  
tum, cūius rei timōre exterritī diem noctemque in opere  
versantur.

77. <sup>5</sup> as. <sup>6</sup> cum mihi res est: *I have to do with.* <sup>7</sup> that is weak-  
ness (mollitia). <sup>8</sup> authority (of those advising a sally). <sup>9</sup> loss.  
<sup>10</sup> w. animi. <sup>11</sup> folly. <sup>12</sup> overthrow. <sup>13</sup> put under. <sup>14</sup> on. <sup>15</sup> for amuse-  
ment. <sup>16</sup> the Gauls. <sup>17</sup> barricaded. <sup>18</sup> the Romans. <sup>19</sup> as witnesses.

“Quid ergō mei cōsilī est? Facere, quod nostrī māiōrēs nēquāquam parī bellō Cīmbrōrum Teutonum-  
 470 que fēcērunt; quī, in oppida compulsī ac similī inopiā subāctī, eōrum corporibus, quī aetāte ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur, vītā tolerāvērunt neque sē hostibus trādīdērunt. Cūius rei sī exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen libertātis causā instituī et posterīs prōdī pulcher-  
 475 rimum iūdicārem. Nam quid <sup>20</sup> illī simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā Cīmbrī, māgnāque inlātā calamitāte, fīnibus quidem nostrīs aliquandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, libertātem nōbīs reliquērunt. Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut  
 480 quid volunt, nisi invidiā adductī, quōs <sup>21</sup> fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō cognōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs cīvī-  
 tātibusque cōnsidere atque hīs aeternam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea, quae in longinquīs nātiōnibus  
 485 geruntur, ignōrātis, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātīs, secūribus <sup>22</sup> subiecta perpetuā premitur <sup>23</sup> servitūte.”

*The non-combatants are sent away.*

78. Sententiīs dictīs cōstituunt, ut eī, quī valētūdine <sup>1</sup> aut aetāte inūtilēs sint bellō, oppidō excēdant, atque omnia prius experiantur quam ad Critognātī  
 490 sententiam dēscendant; illō tamen potius ūtendum cōsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subeundam condiciōnem. Mandubīi,<sup>2</sup> quī eōs oppidō recēperant, cum liberīs atque

77. <sup>20</sup> quid . . . fuit: *what resemblance had that war (to this)?*

<sup>21</sup> antecedent is *horum*. <sup>22</sup> *authority*. <sup>23</sup> *is burdened*.

78. <sup>1</sup> *ill-health*. <sup>2</sup> *the inhabitants of Alesia*.

uxoribus exire cōguntur. Hī, cum ad mūnitionēs Rō-<sup>495</sup> mănōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant, ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositīs in vāllō custōdiīs recipī prohibēbat.

*The large army of relief arrives near the city.*

79. Intereā Commius<sup>1</sup> reliquīque ducēs, quibus summa imperī permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiīs<sup>500</sup> ad Alesiam perveniunt et, colle exteriōre<sup>2</sup> occupātō, nōn longius mille passibus ā nostrīs mūnitionibus cōnsidunt. Posterō diē equitātū ex castrīs ēductō omnem eam plānitiam, quam in longitūdinem mīlia passuum tria patēre dēmōstrāvimus,<sup>3</sup> complent pedestrēsque<sup>505</sup> cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās in locīs superiōribus cōstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus in campum. Concurrunt<sup>4</sup> hīs auxiliīs vīsīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs atque omnium animī ad laetitiam<sup>5</sup> excitantur. Itaque prōductis cōpiīs ante oppidum cōsistunt, et<sup>510</sup> proximam fossam<sup>6</sup> crātibus<sup>7</sup> integunt atque aggere<sup>8</sup> explent, sēque ad ēruptionem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

*Fierce conflict in the valley. Failure of the Gauls.*

80. Caesar, omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnitionum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus<sup>1</sup> veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castrīs ēducī et<sup>515</sup> proelium committī iubet. Erat ex omnibus<sup>2</sup> castrīs, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus;

79. <sup>1</sup> leader of the Atrebrates. <sup>2</sup> on the west side of the plain of Alesia. <sup>3</sup> in chap. 69. <sup>4</sup> the Gauls in Alesia. <sup>5</sup> gladness. <sup>6</sup> This was twenty feet wide. <sup>7</sup> with hurdles. <sup>8</sup> with earth.

80. <sup>1</sup> need. <sup>2</sup> The Romans had eight camps on the heights about the town.

atque omnēs militēs intentī pūgnae prōventum<sup>3</sup> expectābant. Gallī inter equitēs<sup>4</sup> rārōs<sup>5</sup> sagittariōs  
 520 expeditōsque levis armātūrae interiēcerant, quī suis cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab hīs complūrēs dē imprōvisō vulnerātī proeliō excēdēbant.

Cum suōs pūgnā superiōrēs esse Gallī cōfiderent et  
 525 nostrōs multitudīne premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et eī, quī mūnitiōnibus continēbantur, et eī, quī ad auxiliū convēnerant, clamōre et ululātū<sup>6</sup> suōrum animōs cōfirmābant. Quod in cōspectu omnium rēs gerēbātur, neque rēctē aut turpiter factum cēlārī  
 530 poterat; utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad virtutē excitābat. Cum ā merīdiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pūgnārētur, Germānī<sup>7</sup> unā in parte cōfertis turmīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt; quibus in fugam coniectis sagittariī circumventī interfectīque sunt. Item ex reliquīs  
 535 partibus nostrī cēdentēs ūsque ad castra īnsecūtī suī colligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At eī, qui Alesiā prōcesserant, maestī<sup>8</sup> prope victōriā dēspērātā sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

*The Gauls attack by night.*

540 81. Unō diē intermissō Gallī<sup>1</sup> atque hōc spatiō<sup>2</sup> māgnō crātium, scālārum,<sup>3</sup> harpagōnum<sup>4</sup> numerō effectō, mediā nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī ad campestrēs<sup>5</sup>

80. <sup>3</sup> *outcome*. <sup>4</sup> using German tactics, as described in Bk. I., chap. 48. <sup>5</sup> *in scattered groups*. <sup>6</sup> *shrieking*. <sup>7</sup> the German cavalry in Caesar's service. <sup>8</sup> *sad*.

81. <sup>1</sup> the relief army of Gauls. <sup>2</sup> *i.e.* one day. <sup>3</sup> *ladders*. <sup>4</sup> *grappling-hooks*. <sup>5</sup> *on the plain, west of Alesia*.



mūnitiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā significātiōne, quī in oppidō obsidēbantur, dē suō adventū cognōscere possent,<sup>6</sup> crātēs prōicere, fundīs,<sup>545</sup> sagittīs, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre<sup>7</sup> reliquaque, quae ad oppugnātiōnem pertinent, parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore clāmōre exaudītō dat tubā sīgnum suis Vercingetorix atque ex oppidō edūcit.

Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suis cuique erat locus<sup>550</sup> attribūtus, ad mūnitiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs librilibus<sup>8</sup> sudilibusque,<sup>9</sup> quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus<sup>10</sup> Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebrīs<sup>11</sup> adēptō multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur; complūra tormentīs tēla coniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius<sup>555</sup> lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvenerant,<sup>12</sup> quā ex parte<sup>13</sup> nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex ulteriōribus castellīs dēductōs submittēbant.

### *Second failure of the Gauls.*

82. Dum longius ā mūnitiōne aberant Gallī, plūs multitūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteāquam propius<sup>560</sup> successērunt, aut sē stimulīs<sup>1</sup> inopinantēs induēbant<sup>2</sup> aut in scrobēs<sup>3</sup> dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur<sup>4</sup> aut ex vāllō ac turribus trāiectī<sup>5</sup> pīlīs mūrālibus interībant. Multīs undique vulneribus acceptīs, nullā mūnitiōne perruptā, cum lūx adpeteret,<sup>6</sup> veritī, nē ab latere apertō ex su-<sup>565</sup> periōribus<sup>7</sup> castrīs ēruptiōne circumvenīrentur, sē ad

81. <sup>6</sup> purpose cl. beginning w. quā. <sup>7</sup> repulse. <sup>8</sup> fundis librilibus: by slinging stones weighing a pound. <sup>9</sup> stakes. <sup>10</sup> bullets. <sup>11</sup> by the darkness. <sup>12</sup> had fallen to the lot of. <sup>13</sup> qua ex parte: where.

82. <sup>1</sup> pointed stakes, described in chap. 73. <sup>2</sup> impaled. <sup>3</sup> pits; cf. chap. 73. <sup>4</sup> wounded. <sup>5</sup> pierced. <sup>6</sup> approached. <sup>7</sup> on the heights.

suos recēpērunt. At interiōrēs,<sup>8</sup> dum ea, quae ā Vercingetorīge ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant, prōferunt, priōrēs<sup>9</sup> fossās explent; diūtius in hīs rēbus  
 570 administrandīs morātī prius suos discessisse cognōvērunt, quam mūnitiōnibus adpropinquārent. Ita rē infectā in oppidum revertērunt.

*Third attempt of the Gauls to relieve the city.*

83. Bis<sup>1</sup> māgnō cum dētrīmentō repulsī Gallī, quid agant, cōsulant; locōrum perītōs<sup>2</sup> adhibent; ex hīs  
 575 superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnitiōnēsque cognōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis,<sup>3</sup> quem propter māgnitudinem circuitūs opere circumplectī<sup>4</sup> nōn potuerant nostrī; necessariōque paene inīquō locō et lēniter dēclīvī castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēgīnus et  
 580 C. Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant.

Cognitis per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus ducēs hostium sexāgintā mīlia ex omnī numerō dēligunt eārum civitātum, quae māximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant;  
 585 quid quōque pactō<sup>5</sup> agī placeat, occultē inter sē cōstituunt; adeundī tempus dēfīniunt, cum merīdiēs esse videātur. Hīs cōpiīs Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorīgis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castrīs primā vigiliā ēgressus, prope  
 590 cōfectō sub<sup>6</sup> lūcem itinere, post montem<sup>3</sup> sē occultāvit milītesque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum

82. <sup>8</sup> i.e. the Gauls in the city. <sup>9</sup> the trenches in front of the city.

83. <sup>1</sup> twice. <sup>2</sup> familiar with. <sup>3</sup> now Mont Réa. <sup>4</sup> inclose. quoque pacto : and in what manner. <sup>5</sup> before.

iam merīdiēs adpropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra, quae suprā<sup>7</sup> dēmōnstrāvimus, contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrēs mūnitiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt. 595

*Vercingetorix coöperates. The Romans' difficulty.*

84. Vercingetorix ex arce<sup>1</sup> Alesiae suōs cōspiciātus ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātēs,<sup>2</sup> longuriōs, mūrālēs falcēs reliquaque, quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat, prōfert. Pūgnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē vīsa pars firma est, hūc con- 600 curritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnitiōnibus distinetur nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit.<sup>3</sup> Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet<sup>4</sup> clāmor, quī post tergum pūgnantibus existit, quod suum periculum in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque, quae absunt, 605 vehementius hominum mentēs perturbant.

*Desperate fighting everywhere.*

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus, quid quāque in parte gerātur, cognōscit; labōrantibus subsidium submittit. Utrisque ad animum occurrit<sup>1</sup> ūnum esse illud tempus, quō māximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi 610 perfrēgerint mūnitiōnēs, dē omni salūte dēspērānt; Rōmānī, sī rem<sup>2</sup> obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium exspectant. Māximē ad superiōrēs mūnitiōnēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus.<sup>3</sup>

83. <sup>7</sup> in line 579.

84. <sup>1</sup> fortress. <sup>2</sup> fascines (to fill or cover trenches). <sup>3</sup> sc. hostibus. <sup>4</sup> tend.

85. <sup>1</sup> occurs. <sup>2</sup> the "day." <sup>3</sup> in chap. 83.

615 Inīquum <sup>4</sup> locī ad dēclīvitātem fastīgium māgnūm  
habet mōmentum. Aliī tēla coniciunt, aliī testūdine  
factā subeunt; dēfatīgātīs in vicem integrī succēdunt.  
Agger <sup>5</sup> ab ūniversīs in <sup>6</sup> mūnitiōnem coniectus et ascēn-  
sum dat Gallīs, et ea, <sup>7</sup> quae in terrā occultāverant  
620 Rōmānī, contegit; nec iam arma nostrīs nec vīrēs  
suppetunt.

*Caesar encourages his men.*

86. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar Labiēnum <sup>1</sup> cum  
cohortibus sex subsidiō labōrantibus mittit; imperat,  
sī sustinēre nōn possit, dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne  
625 pūgnet; id nisi necessāriō nē faciat. Ipse adit reli-  
quōs; cohortātur, nē labōrī succumbant: omnium supe-  
riōrum dīmiciātiōnum fructum in eō diē atque hōrā  
docet cōsistere. Interiōrēs, <sup>2</sup> dēspērātīs campestribus  
locīs propter māgnitūdinem mūnitiōnum, loca praerupta <sup>3</sup>  
630 ascēnsū temptant; hūc ea, quae parāverant, cōferunt.  
Multitūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpūgnantēs <sup>4</sup> dētur-  
bant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, faleibus vāllum  
ac lōrīcam <sup>5</sup> rescindunt.

*Caesar's active part in the battle.*

87. Mittit primum Brūtum adulēscētem cum co-  
635 hortibus Caesar, post eum aliīs C. Fabium lēgātum:  
postrēmō ipse, cum vehementius pūgnārētur, integrōs  
subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō ac repulsīs hostibus

85. <sup>4</sup> Iniquum . . . fastigium: the unfavorable downward slope of the ground. <sup>5</sup> earth (and stones, etc.). <sup>6</sup> upon. <sup>7</sup> i.e. the cippi, lilia, and stimuli described in chap. 73.

86. <sup>1</sup> He was on the heights of Bussy. <sup>2</sup> cf. l. 567. <sup>3</sup> steep. <sup>4</sup> defenders (Roman). <sup>5</sup> breastworks.

eō, quō Labiēnum mīserat, contendit; cohortēs quattuor ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnitiōnēs et ā tergō<sup>640</sup> hostēs adorīrī iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae<sup>1</sup> vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctīs undecim cohortibus quās ex proximīs prae-sidiīs dēductās fors obtulit, (Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem, quid faciendum existimet. Accelerat Caesar,<sup>645</sup> ut proeliō intersit.

### *Defeat of the Gauls.*

88. Eius adventū ex colōre<sup>1</sup> vestītūs cognitō, quō insīgnī<sup>2</sup> in proeliīs ūtī cōsuēverat, turmīsque equitum et cohortibus vīsīs, quās sē sequī iusserat, ut dē locīs superiōribus haec dēclīvia<sup>3</sup> et dēvexa cernē-<sup>650</sup> bantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō excipit<sup>4</sup> rūsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnitiōnibus clāmōr. Nostri, ēmissīs pilīs, gladiīs rem gerunt.

Repente post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs<sup>655</sup> aliae adpropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit māgna caedēs. Sedulius, dux et prīnceps Lemovīcum, occīditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vīvus in fugā comprehenditur; sīgna militāria septuāgintā quattuor ad Caesarem referuntur;<sup>660</sup> paucī ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōnspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum dēspērātā salūte cōpiās ā mūnitiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prō-

87. <sup>1</sup> nom. case.

88. <sup>1</sup> The purple or scarlet of the general's cloak. <sup>2</sup> as a distinction. <sup>3</sup> declivia et devexa : steep declivities. <sup>4</sup> follows.

tinus hāc rē audītā ex castrīs Gallōrum fuga. Quod <sup>5</sup>  
 665 nisi crēbrīs subsidiīs <sup>6</sup> ac tōtīus diēi labōre militēs essent  
 dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī potuissent. Dē  
 mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōn-  
 sequitur; māgnus numerus capitur atque interficitur,  
 reliquī ex fugā in cīvitatēs discēdunt.

*Vercingetorix surrenders.*

670 89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx conciliō convocātō id  
 bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum, sed  
 commūnis libertātis causā dēmōnstrat, et <sup>1</sup> quoniam sit  
 fortūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem <sup>2</sup> sē illis offerre,  
 seu morte suā Rōmānīs satisfacere seu vīvum trādere  
 675 velint. Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī.  
 Iubet arma trādī, prīncipēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnī-  
 tiōne prō castrīs cōnsīdit; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur.  
 Vercingetorīx deditur, arma prōiciuntur. Reservātis  
 Haeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī <sup>3</sup> per eōs cīvitatēs recuperāre  
 680 posset, ex reliquīs captīvīs tōtī exercituī capita singula <sup>4</sup>  
 praedae nōmine distribuit.

*The army divided for the winter. Thanksgiving at Rome.*

90. Hīs rēbus cōfectīs in Haeduōs proficīscitur;  
 cīvitatē recipit.<sup>1</sup> Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī, quae  
 imperāret, sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat māg-  
 685 num numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hiberna mittit.  
 Captīvōrum circiter vīgintī mīlia Haeduīs Arvernisque  
 reddit.

88. <sup>5</sup> and. <sup>6</sup> services of relief.

89. <sup>1</sup> and (says). <sup>2</sup> utramque rem: either fate. <sup>3</sup> to see whether.  
<sup>4</sup> capita singula: one captive to each (soldier).

90. <sup>1</sup> recovers (the loyalty of).



T. Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs proficīscī iubet; huic M. Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium<sup>690</sup> Basilum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs conlocat, nē quam ā finitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antistium Rēgīnum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in Biturīgēs, C. Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnōs cum singulis legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P.<sup>695</sup> Sulpicium Cavillōnī<sup>2</sup> et Matiscōne<sup>3</sup> in Haeduīs ad Ararim rei frūmentāriæ causā conlocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōstituit.

Hīs rēbus ex Caesaris litterīs cognitīs Rōmæ diērum vīgintī supplicātiō redditur.

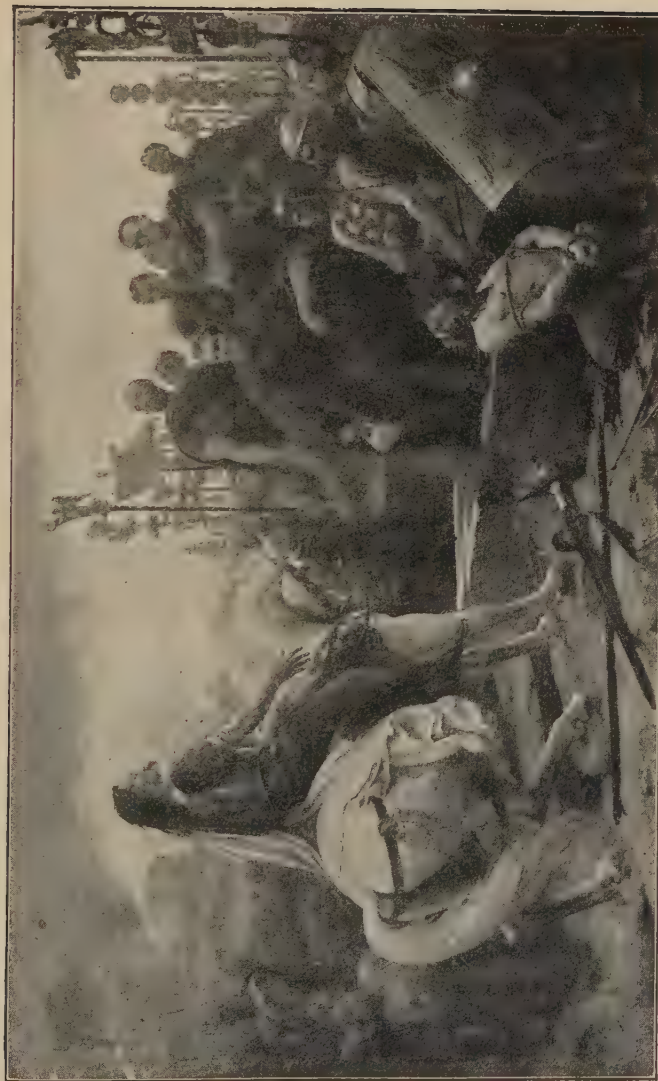
700

"Vercingetorix, who was the chief author of all the war, putting on his best armor, came out of the gate (of Alesia), and rode round Caesar as he sat (on the tribunal), then dismounted from his horse, threw off his armor, and remained sitting quietly at Caesar's feet until he was led away to be reserved for the triumph." — PLUTARCH.

This heroic chieftain, "who embodied all the finest qualities of his race, and added to them a steadiness of purpose and a power of organization rare among the Gallic peoples," was kept in chains for six years; was then exhibited in Caesar's triumphal procession at Rome, and put to death in the dungeon at the foot of the Capitol. Nineteen centuries later Napoleon III., whose excavations revealed much to corroborate Caesar's account of the siege of Alesia, erected on its site a colossal statue of Vercingetorix in honor of his patriotic countryman.

"The siege of Alesia exhibits the greatest art in Caesar and equal courage and endurance on the part of his troops. The

inaction of the bulk of the barbarians in the last battle had been his salvation, as well as led to the loss of Gallic independence. Though there were, thereafter, isolated cases of insurrection, the country never again rose *en masse*. In a year Gaul was practically a Roman province. Her spirit of resistance had been finally crushed." — COLONEL DODGE.



*Copyright, 1899, by Braun, Clement and Company.*

**THE SURRENDER OF VERCINGETORIX TO CAESAR**

*Lionel Royer.*



NOTES, GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX AND  
LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

## ABBREVIATIONS

<i>abbr.</i> . . .	abbreviated	<i>intr.</i> . . .	intransitive
<i>Ab., abl.</i> . . .	ablative	<i>Introd.</i> . . .	Introduction
<i>abs.</i> . . .	absolute	<i>irr.</i> . . .	irregular
<i>Ac., acc.</i> . . .	accusative	<i>l.</i> . . .	line
<i>adj.</i> . . .	adjective	<i>lit.</i> . . .	literally
<i>adv.</i> . . .	adverb	<i>loc.</i> . . .	locative
<i>App.</i> . . .	Appendix	<i>M., masc.</i> . . .	masculine
<i>appos.</i> . . .	{ appositive apposition	<i>N., neut.</i> . . .	neuter
<i>cf. (confer)</i> . . .	compare	<i>neg.</i> . . .	negative
<i>cl.</i> . . .	clause	<i>N., nom.</i> . . .	nominative
<i>comp.</i> . . .	comparative	<i>num.</i> . . .	numeral
<i>conj.</i> . . .	conjunction	<i>obj.</i> . . .	object
<i>cons.</i> . . .	consonant	<i>p.</i> . . .	page
<i>D., dat.</i> . . .	dative	<i>part.</i> . . .	participle
<i>def.</i> . . .	defective	<i>pass.</i> . . .	passive
<i>dem.</i> . . .	demonstrative	<i>perf.</i> . . .	perfect
<i>dep.</i> . . .	deponent	<i>pl., plur.</i> . . .	plural
<i>dir. disc.</i> . . .	direct discourse	<i>plup.</i> . . .	pluperfect
<i>dist.</i> . . .	distributive	<i>poss.</i> . . .	possessive
<i>F., fem.</i> . . .	feminine	<i>pred.</i> . . .	predicate
<i>ff.</i> . . .	following	<i>prep.</i> . . .	preposition
<i>freg.</i> . . .	frequentative	<i>pres.</i> . . .	present
<i>fut.</i> . . .	future	<i>pron.</i> . . .	pronoun
<i>F. P.</i> . . .	future perfect	<i>rel.</i> . . .	relative
<i>G., gen.</i> . . .	genitive	<i>sc. (scilicet)</i> . . .	supply
<i>i.e. (id est)</i> . . .	that is	<i>sing.</i> . . .	singular
<i>impers.</i> . . .	impersonal	<i>subj.</i> . . .	subject
<i>impf.</i> . . .	imperfect	<i>subjunct.</i> . . .	subjunctive
<i>indecl.</i> . . .	indeclinable	<i>sup.</i> . . .	superlative
<i>indef.</i> . . .	indefinite	<i>tr.</i> . . .	transitive
<i>indic.</i> . . .	indicative	<i>trans.</i> . . .	{ translate translation
<i>interrog.</i> . . .	interrogative	<i>w.</i> . . .	with



## NOTES

(The references are to the Grammatical Appendix, unless "Introd." precedes.)

### BOOK I

#### CHAPTER 1

1. **Gallia**: see Introd. 14 and 22. **omnis**: *as a whole*. **divisa**: pred. adj. w. **est**; *is divided*. **quarum**: 63, *e*.

2. **unam, aliam, tertiam**: sc. **partem** w. each. **qui**: sc. an antecedent **ei**, *they*, as subj. of **incolunt**, *they inhabit the third part who*, etc. It is best to translate the sentence by a passive verb: *one part is inhabited by the Belgae, etc., the third part by those who*, etc.

3. **ipsorum**: 114, *b*. **Celtae, Galli**: 62, *b*. **nostra**: sc. **lingua**, *i.e.* the Roman.

4. **lingua**: 97. **legibus**: 174. **inter se**: *from one another*.

5. **ab Aquitanis**: 83.

6. **dividit**: 118, *c*.

7. **Horum**: 63, note.

8. **cultu**: *civilization*, seen in customs, dress, etc.; **humanitate**: mental and moral *refinement*. **provinciae**: see Introd. 14.

9. **minime**: modifies **saepe**; see Vocab. **mercatores**: nom. case; they came from the Mediterranean coast, probably from Marseilles, bringing wine, etc.

10. **ea**: *those things*, obj. of **important**. **effeminandos**: 164, *c*.

11. **Germanis**: 73.

12. **quibuscum**: 94, *b*. **Qua de causa**: 115, *f*, and 171, *b*.

13. **quoque**: *i.e.* the Helvetii are brave for the same reason as the Belgae. **virtute**: 97.

15. **cum aut . . . prohibent**: **cum** here = **et tum**. **suis** and **ipsi** refer to the Helvetii; **eos** and **eorum** to the Germans, 112, *a*. **suis finibus**: 83.

17. **quam**: obj. of **obtinere**. **Gallos obtinere**: 149.

19. **ab (Sequanis)**: *on the side of*.

21. *ab (extremis finibus): at. Galliae: i.e. central Gaul, which has just been bounded.*

25. *ad (Hispaniam): near.*

## CHAPTER 2

28. *is: 113. Messala (et) Pisone: 99, b, 1 and 172; the year was 61 B.C.*

29. *regni: 63, c. There was no king in Helvetia at this time. The former monarchy had given place to a government by chiefs or nobles, constituting the "nobilitas." Orgetorix, the most powerful of these, aimed at restoring the monarchy, with himself as king. inductus: agrees w. is.*

30. *civitati: 67, b. ut . . . exirent: obj. of persuasit, 143 and 145, a.*

31. *copiis: 94. exirent: pl. because civitas, the implied subject is collective, 118, d. perfacile esse: (he said) it was very easy, depending upon the idea of saying implied in persuasit, 151. cum . . . praestarent: 138, b. omnibus: 67, c. and 104.*

32. *imperio potiri: 88.*

33. *Id . . . persuasit: he persuaded them of this the more easily on this account. id: direct obj. of persuasit; lit. persuaded it to them. hoc: 90.*

34. *una ex parte: on one side, 171, b. latissimo, 107.*

37. *tertia: sc. ex parte.*

39. *rebus: 90. ut . . . vagarentur: 145, c. et . . . et: both (omit in translation) . . . and*

40. *finitimis: 67, c. qua ex parte: and for that reason.*

41. *homines: appositive, being men. bellandi: 64 and 165, a.*

42. *Pro: considering. multitudo: 263,000 persons, as stated in chap. 29. autem: 171, c. belli atque fortitudinis: 173.*

43. *se: 77.*

44. *milia: modified by the following numerals; case, 80. passuum: 63, c. CCXL=ducenta (et) quadraginta.*

45. *CLXXX=centum (et) octoginta.*

## CHAPTER 3

46. *His rebus: by these considerations, facts, 87.*

47. *ea: obj. of comparare, 113, c. ad proficiscendum: 165, c. pertinere: 134.*

48. *comparare*: w. *constituerunt*, 150.  
 49. *quam maximum*, *quam maximas*: 107, *a*.  
 50. *ut . . . suppeteret*: 135. *frumenti*: 63, *e*.  
 52. *conficiendas*: 164, *c*, note.  
 53. *in tertium annum*: *for the third year*. *confirmant*, *deligitur*: 120, *a*.  
 54. *sibi*: 67, *c*.  
 56. *filio*: 52. *cuius*: 63, *a*.  
 57. *regnum*: the government of the Sequani was like that of the Helvetii; see note, chap. 2, l. 29. *annos*: 80.  
 58. *amicus*: 62, *b*. *ut . . . occuparet*: 145, *a*.  
 59. *quod*: relative. *ante*: adv.  
 60. *Dumnorigi*: w. *persuadet* (l. 62).  
 61. *tempore*: 100.  
 62. *plebi*: 73. *acceptus*: pred. adj. w. *erat*, *was popular*.  
*ei*: 67, *a*.  
 64. *factu*: 166, *b*. *esse*: the subj. is *conata perficere*; *that it is easy to accomplish the undertakings*. *illis*: dat. w. *probat*, 67, *a*.  
 65. *obtenturus esset*: 162 and 138, *a*.  
 66. *non esse dubium*: (*saying*) *there was no doubt*, depending on the idea of *saying* in *probat*, 153, 154. *quin . . . possent*: 145, *e*. *plurimum*: see Vocab. and 82.  
 67. *se*: subj. of *conciliaturum* (*esse*). *copiis*: 87. *illis*: *for them*.  
 68. *inter se*: *to one another*.  
 69. *fidem . . . iurandum*: 173. *regno*: 99, *a*, 1. *tres*: *i.e.* the Helvetii, Haedui, and Sequani.  
 70. *Galliae*: 65, *d*.

## CHAPTER 4

72. *Ea res*: *this conspiracy, i.e.* of Orgetorix, Casticus, and Dumnorix. *est*: w. *enuntiata*.  
 73. *Moribus*: 92. *causam*: Orgetorix was to be tried for seeking to become a king (chap. 3, l. 65), not for the plan of chap. 2, which the Helvetii had already accepted.  
 74. *damnatum*: (*if*) *found guilty*, agreeing w. *eum*, *him* understood as obj. of *sequi*. *poenam*: subj. of *sequi*. *oportebat*: 119, *a*. *ut . . . cremaretur*: in appos. w. *poenam*, 143 and 145, *d*.  
 76. *Die*: 100. *causae dictionis*: *for the trial* (lit. of the pleading of the case).

77. **familiam**: *vassals*, including kinsmen and dependents.  
**ad**: adv. *about*, modifying **decem. hominum**: 63, note.  
 78. **clientes**: *i.e.*, free retainers. **obaeratos**: in Gaul debtors became slaves of the creditor.  
 80. **ne . . . diceret**: 135. **Cum . . . conaretur**: 137, *b*.  
 81. **armis**: 87.  
 83. **ut**: *as*, 130, *f*.  
 84. **quin**: 145, *e*.

## CHAPTER 5

86. **facere**: 150. **finibus**: 83, *a*. **ut . . . exeant**: 145, *d*.  
 87. **Ubi . . . sunt**: 137, *a*. **se**: 77. **ad eam rem paratos**: *ready for this undertaking*.  
 88. **oppida**: these were fortified; a **vicus** was not. **numero**:  
 97. **ad**: adv., *about*.  
 90. **praeter**: the obj. may be the clause following, or **id** supplied as antecedent of **quod**. **portaturi**: 162.  
 91. **domum**: 79, *a*. **spe sublata**: 99, *a*, 1.  
 92. **subeunda**: 164, *c*. **mensium**: 63, *d*.  
 93. **sibi**: 70. **domo**: 83, *b*. **quemque efferre**: 77.  
 94. **finitimis**: 52; these tribes lived north of the Helvetii.  
 95. **uti**: *w*. **proficiscantur**. **usi consilio**: 88.  
 96. **Boios**: obj. of **adsciscunt**; see Vocab.  
 98. **receptos**: *w*. **Boios**; translate *having received into their number (ad se) the Boii, who, etc., they unite with them as allies*.

## CHAPTER 6

99. **itineribus**: omit in translation, 115, *d*.  
 100. **possent**: 134. **unum**: *sc. iter*; along the north bank of the Rhone, and through a pass now called Pas de l'Écluse.  
 101. **qua**: *rel. adv.*, see Vocab.  
 102. **ducerentur**: 134, *a*. **autem**: 171, *e*.  
 103. **ut . . . possent**: 136. **alterum**: *sc. iter*; south of the Rhone.  
 104. **provinciam nostram**: see Introd. 14. **multo**: 95.  
 106. **nuper**: though conquered by the Romans in 121, the Allobroges had revolted in 61 B.C., and were then subdued by Pomptinus.  
 107. **locis**: 101.  
 109. **Genava**: 171, *c*.

110. *sese*: subj. of *persuasuros (esse)* and *coacturos (esse)*; *they thought they would either persuade the Allobroges, or, etc.*

111. *quod . . . viderentur*: *because they did not seem*, 154, *b. bono animo*: 96.

113. *rebus comparatis*: 99, *b, 1.*

114. *qua die . . . convenient*: 135.

115. *a. d. V. Kal. Apr.*, = *ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles*: *March 28*; see 172, *b, c.*

116. *Pisone . . . consulibus*: *i.e. the year 58 B.C.*

## CHAPTER 7

117. *Caesari*: *case*, 67; *position*, 171, *c.*; see also *Introd.*  
15. *eos . . . conari*: in *appos. w. id.*, 149.

118. *maturat*: 120, *a. ab urbe*: *i.e. from the vicinity of the city (Rome)*. Caesar was not in Rome, for as *proconsul* he could not exercise his power (*imperium*) within the city.

119. *quam . . . itineribus*: 107, *b. ulteriorem*: *i.e. west of the Alps*. See *Gallia* in *Vocab.*

120. *contendit*: Plutarch says that Caesar made this journey in eight days. *ad*: 79, *a. Provinciae*: 67, *a.*

122. *legio*: the legion which had been assigned to protect the province. It was the tenth legion of the Roman army, which later became famous and the favorite of Caesar's forces.

125. *nobilissimos*: 104.

127. *qui . . . dicerent*: 135. *sibi* (72) *esse in animo*: *they have it in mind, they intend* (lit. it is to them in mind).

129. *rogare*: depending on *dicerent*; *sc. se* as subj. *ut . . . liceat*: 145, *a.*

132. *occisum, pulsum, missum*: *sc. esse w. each*; the year was 107 B.C. *sub iugum*: to indicate submission; cf. "subjugation."

133. *concedendum*: *sc. esse sibi*, 163, *a.*

134. *homines*: subj. of *temperaturos (esse)*. *animo*: 96. *data facultate*: 99, *b, 3.*

136. *spatium*: *sc. temporis*.

137. *dum . . . convenirent*: 137, *e.*

138. *diem*: *time*, not *day*. *deliberandum*: 165, *c.*

139. *ad*: *on. reverterentur*: the speaker used an imperative, 154, *c.*

## CHAPTER 8

140. *legione*: 87; the tenth legion mentioned in chap. 7  
*secum*: 94, *b*. *militibus*: the levy mentioned in chap. 7, l. 121.  
*quam . . . habebat, qui . . . convenerant*: 133, *a*.

142. *qui . . . influit*: 133, *b*.

143. *passuum*: sc. *in longitudinem*.

144. *murum*: this wall from Geneva to Pas de l'Écluse was not continuous, but was built wherever necessary to supplement the natural fortifications. The space thus artificially fortified covered only about three miles. *pedum*: 63, *d*.

145. *opere perfecto*: 99, *c*. *praesidia*: the garrisons of the *castella*.

146. *quo . . . possit*: 135, *a*. *se invito*: 99, *a*, 2.

148. *dies*: see chap. 7, l. 139.

149. *se*: subj. of *posse*. *more*: 92.

150. *ulli*: case?

151. *prohibiturum*: sc. *se* as subj. *eos* as obj.

152. *ea spe* (83) *deiecti*: *disappointed in this hope*.

153. *alii*: *others*. *vadis*: 87. *qua*: adv.

154. *si . . . possent*: (*to see*) *if they could*, 141.

155. *conati, repulsi*: like *deiecti*, these participles agree w. *Helvetii*.

156. *conatu*: 83.

## CHAPTER 9

157. *Relinquebatur*: 171, *c*. *Sequanis invitis*: 99, *b*, 3.

158. *His*: w. *persuadere*.

159. *cum*: 138, *b*.

160. *eo deprecatore*: 99, *a*, 3.

162. *gratia*: 90. *plurimum*: see *Vocab.* and 82.

163. *amicus*: adj., 73.

164. *filiam*: see chap. 3, l. 63.

165. *novis rebus*: 67, *b*.

166. *civitates*: obj. of *habere*, which is the complement of *volebat*. *beneficio*: 90.

167. *rem*: *mission*. *ut . . . patiantur*: obj. of *impetrat*.

168. *obsides*: acc. Hostages were often children of prominent men. They were in danger of punishment in case their nation violated its agreement. *obsidesque . . . dent*: obj. of *perficit*, 145, *a*.

169. *Sequani, Helvetii*: sc. *dant obsides*. *itinere*: 83.



## CHAPTER 10

171. *renuntiatur*: the subj. is the clause *Helvetiis . . . facere*, 149. *Helvetiis*: 72. *esse*: the subj. is *iter . . . facere*, 149.

174. *quae civitas*: 115, *b*, and 133, *b*. *Id*: 171, *c*. *fieret*: the mood and tense depend on *intellegebat*: 154, *b*, and 128.

175. *futurum* (*esse*): subj. is *ut . . . haberet*: translate, *that it would be attended with great danger to* (lit. of) *the Province to have*, etc.

176. *locis patentibus*: abl. abs.

177. *finitimos*: pred. acc., *as neighbors*.

178. *munitioni*: 67, *c*. This was the *muris fossaque* of chap. 8. *Labienum*: see *Vocab*.

179. *legatum*: see *Introd*. 34. *ipse*: *i.e.* Caesar. *Italiam*: the northern part, called Cisalpine Gaul, was one of Caesar's three provinces.

180. *duas*: the eleventh and twelfth. *tres*: the seventh, eighth, and ninth. Thus Caesar's army consisted of six legions, numbered seventh to twelfth, inclusive.

182. *proximum iter*: by Mt. Genève, a pass in the Cottian Alps.

186. *compluribus . . . pulsis*: 171, *d*.

187. *citerioris provinciae*: *i.e.* east of the Alps, Cisalpine Gaul. *Vocontiorum*: sc. an appositive, *civitatis*, *a tribe* of the province west of the Alps (*ulterioris provinciae*).

188. *die septimo*: marching at the rate of about sixteen miles a day.

## CHAPTER 11

192. *iam*: it was probably June, two months after Caesar's first arrival, mentioned in chap. 7. *angustias*: the Pas de l'Écluse, where Mt. Jura meets the Rhone; see chaps. 6 and 9.

193. *traduxerant . . . populabantur*: notice the change of tense, 124 and 121.

194. *Haedui*: see *Vocab*. *cum . . . possent*: expressing time and also cause, 137, *b*, 138, *b*.

196. *rogatum*: 166, *a*. *Ita . . . debuerint*: a quotation depending on the idea of saying implied in *rogatum*. *se . . . meritos*: 151 and 154. The speaker said *meriti sumus*.

198. *vastari, abduci, expugnari*: complements of *debuerint*, 150.

201. *depopulatis*: to be translated as passive, though the verb in other forms is deponent.

202. *ab oppidis*: 83.

205. *sibi*: w. *esse*, 72. *reliqui*: gen. w. *nihil*, 63, e.

206. *expectandum* (*esse*): 163, a. *sibi*: 71.

207. *dum . . . pervenirent*: 137, e.

## CHAPTER 12

209. *Arar*: appositive, 52; *there is a river, the Arar*.

210. *lenitate*: 91.

211. *ut . . . possit*: 136 and note. *fluat*: 141.

212. *ratibus*: 87. *transibant*: note the force of the tense, 121.

214. *partes, flumen*: objects of *traduxisse*, 75, b.

215. *fere*: generally modifies the word before it, as here. *citra*: i.e. the side as viewed from Rome.

216. *tertia vigilia*: the third watch began at midnight; see Vocab. *cum legionibus*: 94. *castris*: see Introd. 43. The place of this camp is now called Sathonay. The battle of the Arar was fought about twelve miles north of the camp.

219. *reliqui*: 104. *mandarunt* = *mandaverunt*.

224. *memoria*: 100. *Cassium*: see chap. 7, l. 131.

225. *casu*: 90.

226. *quae pars* (115, c) . . . *persolvit* = *ea pars civitatis Helvetiae, quae . . . intulerat, princeps . . . persolvit* (*was the first to pay*).

227. *populo*: 67, c.

228. *Qua in re*: 115, f.

229. *quod . . . Tigurini . . . interfecerant*: the obj. is *Pisonem*, a lieutenant of Cassius.

230. *avum*: in appos. w. *Pisonem*, grandfather of Caesar's (*eius*) father-in-law.

231. *quo Cassium*: sc. *interfecerant*; (*in the same battle*) *in which*, etc.

## CHAPTER 13

232. *proelio*: 99, b, 1. *reliquas*: position, 171, c.

233. *ut posset*: 135. *in*: *over*, though the Romans said a bridge was *in* a river. *faciendum curat*: 164, c.

235. *cum* . . . *intellegerent*: expressing time and cause, 137, *b*, and 138, *b*. *id*: obj. of *fecisse* (*had done*).

236. *aegerrime*: they were migrating with their families and with supplies for three months. *ut* . . . *transirent*: in appos. w. *id*. *illum*: *i.e.* Caesar.

238. *Divico*: now an old man, for the date of the war with Crassus was 107 B.C.

240. *Si pacem* . . . *proderet*: this is an indirect quotation. In the direct quotation, *i.e.* the exact language of the speaker, the words would be the same, except chiefly the *verbs*, their *subjects*, and *pronouns* referring to persons. The direct forms of this passage are given below. See also 153, 154, *a*, *b*, and note.

241. *partem*: *sc. Galliae*. *ituros*: *sc. esse*.

243. *reminisceretur*: *he should remember*, 154, *c*.

244. *et* (*veteris*): *both*. *incommodi*: 65, *a*.

245. *Quod*: *as to the fact that*. *unum pagum*: chap. 12, l. 220.

246. *suis*: 67 *a*, and 104.

247. *ne* (*adv.*) *tribueret*: *he should not attribute (it)*.

248. *Se*: *they*, referring to the Helvetians.

249. *virtute*: 87.

251. *ne committeret*: *he should not allow*.

Direct forms:—

*Si pacem* *populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faciet* (154, *b*, and 155, *a*), *in eam partem ibunt* (154, *a*) *atque ibi erunt Helvetii, ubi eos tu, Caesar, constitueris* (*fut. perf.*) *atque esse volueris*; *sin bello persequi perseverabis, reminiscere* (*imperative*, 154, *c*) *et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helveticorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus es, cum ei, qui flumen transierant, suis auxilium ferre non possent noli ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtuti tribuere, aut nos despicere* (147, *a*); *nos* (156) *ita a patribus maioribusque nostris didicimus ut magis virtute contendamus, quam dolo aut insidiis nitamur. Qua re noli committere ut is locus, ubi constitimus, ex calamitate . . . nomen capiat aut memoriam prodāt.*

#### CHAPTER 14

254. *His*: *sc. legatis*, 67. *Eo sibi, etc.*: indirect discourse. Review, 153–156, and see direct forms below. *Eo*: *for this reason*, 90. *sibi . . . dari*: (*lit. less hesitation was given to him*), *he had less hesitation*. *dubitationis*: 63, note.

255. commemorassent = commemoravissent.

256. eo gravius . . . accidissent: *he was the more displeased in that they had not happened through the fault of the Roman people.* eo, quo: 95.

257. qui si: *for if they*, referring to *populus*, 115, f.

258. non fuisse: *it would not have been.*

259. eo deceptum (esse): *sc. populum as subj., they had been deceived on this account.* commissum (esse): *sc. quicquam as subj., that anything had been done.*

260. timendum (esse) sibi: 163, a.

261. Quod si: *now if.*

262. vellet: *he should be willing.* num . . . posse: *could he, etc.,* 154, d. eo invito: 99, a, 2.

266. Quod: *the fact that.* victoria: 90; see chap. 7, l. 131.

268. eodem: *adv., explained by the next sentence.* pertinere: the subjects are the two quod-clauses preceding. Consuesse . . . concedere: the English order is, *enim immortales deos consuesse interdum concedere secundiore res et . . . his* (dative), *quos . . . velint, quo doleant.* quo: 135, a.

269. ex: *as a result of.*

271. Cum sint: 139, b.

272. sibi: *i.e.* Caesar.

273. facturos (esse): *sc. eos as subj.* Haeduis: *dat. w.* satisfaciant, 67.

274. ipsis sociisque: 67, c.

277. uti . . . consuerint: 136.

Direct forms:—

Eo mihi minus dubitationis datur, quod eas res, quas vos, legati Helvetii, commemorastis, memoria teneo, atque eo gravius fero, quo minus merito populi Romani acciderunt; qui si alicuius iniuriæ sibi conscius fuisset, non fuit difficile cavere; sed eo deceptus est quod neque commissum a se intellegebat quare timeret neque sine causa timendum putabat. Quod si veteris contumeliæ oblivisci velim, num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod me invito iter per provinciam per vim temptastis, quod Haeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexastis, memoriam deponere possum (154, d)? Quod vestra victoria tam insolenter gloriamini, quodque tam diu vos impune tulisse iniurias admiramini eodem pertinet. Consuerunt enim di immortales quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci volunt, his secundiore interdum res et diuturni.

orem impunitatem concedere. Cum haec ita sint, tamen si obsides a vobis mihi dabuntur, uti ea, quae pollicemini, facturos intellegam et si Haeduis de iniuriis quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulistis, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciatis, ego vobiscum pacem faciam.

## CHAPTER 15

280. die: 100. castra: for a description of the camp, see Introd. 43. Idem: position, 171, c.

281. equitatum: commanded by Dumnorix, the Haeduan, according to chap. 18, l. 364. Notice that Caesar's cavalry was not composed of Romans; see Introd. 30.

283. qui videant: 135.

284. quas in partes: *in what direction*. faciant: 141. Qui: *and they*, 115, f. cupidius: *too eagerly*, 107.

285. loco: 101.

286. de nostris = nostrorum.

287. Quo proelio: 90. equitibus: 87.

289. novissimo agmine: *in the rear*, 101.

290. suos: sc. milites. a proelio, rapinis: 83.

292. dies: 80.

294. amplius: comp. adj. used as noun, subj. of interesset.

295. milibus: 86.

## CHAPTER 16

296. Haeduos, frumentum: 75, a. quod essent: *which* (as he said), etc.; subjunct. in implied indirect discourse, 154, b.

297. flagitare: 61 and 152.

298. ante: in chap. 1, l. 20.

300. ne-quidem: emphasizing pabuli. pabuli: w. copia, 63, e.

301. eo frumento: w. uti, 88. autem: 171, e. quod: rel. pron.

302. propterea: translate after poterat w. quod; *he was not able to use, for the reason that*. minus = non.

303. Diem (80) . . . Haedui: *the Haedui were putting him off day after day*.

304. ducere, dicere: 152. (id) conferri, comportari: *that it was being gathered, that it was being brought to one place*.

306. diutius: *too long*. quo die: 115, d.

307. *frumentum metiri*: see Introd. 39. *oporteret*: subjunct. in indirect discourse.

309. *Diviciaco, Lisco*: in appos. w. *principibus*. *magistratui*: 67, c.

310. *vergobretum*: 76, a.

313. *possit*: sc. *frumentum* as subj. *tempore, hostibus*: 99.

314. *sublevetur*: we should expect the indicative, but Caesar, the writer, is here quoting Caesar, the soldier, as if another person, 138, a. So with *sit destitutus*, l. 316.

315. *magna ex parte*: in great measure.

#### CHAPTER 17

319. *quod*: pron., obj. of *tacuerat*. *Esse*: 154, a, and note. *quorum*: *whose*.

320. *valeat, possint*: subjunct. also in direct discourse, 134.

321. *Hos*: 77, and 113, a.

322. *ne . . . conferant*: 145, e.

323. *quod debeant*: *which they ought*, 154, b. *praestare*: *it was better* (they said).

325. *neque = et . . . non*. *dubitare*: complement of *debere*.

326. *debere*: sc. *eos* as subj. *quin . . . sint erepturi*: 145, e, and 162. *superaverint*: perf. subjunct., 127, c. *una*: adv.

327. *Haeduis*: dat., 68.

328. *quaeque = et ea quae*.

330. *coactus*: *under compulsion*.

331. *fecerit*: 141.

#### CHAPTER 18

334. *sentiebat*: 121. *pluribus praesentibus*: *in the presence of many persons*, 99.

335. *dimittit, retinet*: 174.

336. *ex solo*: *from him alone*.

339. *Ipsum*: 76, b, and 114, a. *audacia*: 96. *magna*: w. *gratia*, 96.

340. *rerum*: 64.

341. *annos*: 80. *portoria*: see Vocab.

342. *pretio*: 98. *redempta habere = redemisse*. According to the custom, Dumnorix had bought the privilege of collecting the taxes, paying to the state the amount bid, but retaining what he collected above that amount.



343. *illo licente*: *when he bid*, 99, *b*, 1.

344. *His rebus*: 87. *auxisse*: the subj. of this and the following infinitives is *eum* understood, referring to Dumnorix.

345. *ad largiendum*: 165, *c*. *comparasse* = *comparavisse*.

347. *neque* = *et non*. *domi*: 102.

350. *uxorem*: the daughter of Orgetorix, chap. 3, l. 63.

351. *nuptum*: a supine used w. *conlocasse*; see Vocab. and 166, *a*.

352. *Helvetiis*: case, 67, *b*.

353. *odisse*: the perf. tense of this verb has the meaning of the pres., 47. *suo nomine*: *on his own account*.

354. *adventu*: 100. *deminuta*: sc. *sit*.

356. *spem*: see Vocab.

357. *regni obtinendi*: 164, *a*. *imperio*: 93.

358. *ea*: w. *gratia*.

359. *habeat*: 154, *b*.

360. *quaerendo*: 165, *d*. *quod . . . factum est*: translate freely, with regard to the unfavorable cavalry battle which had been fought, etc.

363. *equitatui*: w. *praeerat*, 67, *b*. *auxilio Caesari*: 69 and 70.

## CHAPTER 19

366. *cum accederent*: 138, *b*.

367. *res*: *facts*. *accederent*: *were added*.

368. *traduxisset*, *curasset*: etc., 142. *dandos curasset*: 164, *c*; see chap. 9, l. 168.

369. *suo*: *i.e.* Caesar's.

370. *civitatis*: *i.e.* of the Haedui. *inscientibus ipsis*: *without their knowledge*.

371. *magistratu*: Who is meant? See chap. 16, l. 309. *satis causae*: 63, note.

372. *animadverteret*: 134, *d*.

374. *rebus*: indirect obj. of *repugnabat*, 67, *b*. *unum*: *one consideration*.

375. *summum*: w. *studium*.

377. *ne offenderet*: 145, *b*.

378. *priusquam conaretur*: 137, *f*.

382. *cui*: *in whom*. *omnium rerum*: *in all matters*.

383. *quae sint dicta*: 141. *ipso praesente*: *in his own (i.e. Caesar's) presence*.

386. *sine . . . animi*: *without offence to his own feelings*.  
*eius* refers to Diviciacus, *ipse* to Caesar.

387. *ut statuatur*: 145, *a. civitatem*: of the Haedui.

## CHAPTER 20

390. *obsecrare*: 150. *gravius*: adj. w. *quid*, *too severe*.  
*in*: *against*.

391. *Scire*: the subj. follows. *nec* = *et non*.

392. *doloris*: w. *plus*, 63, *e. nec . . . capere*: *and no one was more grieved than he on account of it (ex eo)*.

393. *ipse*, *se*, *suam*, *sese*, refer to Diviciacus; *ille*, to Dumnorix. *plurimum*: w. *posset*. *ille*: (*and*) *he*, 174.

395. *opibus ac nervis*: w. *uteretur* (88); *he was using*.

398. *Quod*: *and*.

400. *existimaturum, factum*: *sc. esse* w. each.

401. *futurum (esse) uti averterentur*: a phrase used instead of the fut. pass. infin. of *averto*; *the hearts of all the Gauls would be turned away from him* (lit. the result would be that, etc.).

404. *faciat*: subjunctive in a substantive cl. used without a connective. *tanti*: 65, *e. eius*: w. *gratiam*, referring to Diviciacus.

406. *condonet*: *pardons (iniuriam) for the sake of (voluntati, indirect obj.)*.

407. *reprehendat, intellegat, queratur*: 141 and 145, *f*.

410. *praeterita fratri condonare*: *pardons the past for the sake of his brother*.

## CHAPTER 21

413. *Eodem tempore*: continuing the account of chap. 15.  
*hostes . . . consedisce*: depending on the idea of saying in *certior factus*, 151.

414. *milia*: 80. *passuum*: 63, *e. ipsius*: 114, *b*.

415. *qualis . . . esset*: 141. *in circuitu*: *i.e.* by ascending from another part of the mountain.

416. *qui*: supply an antecedent, 115, *e. cognoscerent*: 135.

417. *esse*: *sc. a subj. ascensum*. *Labienum*: first mentioned in chap. 10. For a full sketch of Labienus, see Smith's Dict. of Greek and Roman Biography.

418. *praetore*: see Vocab. *ducibus*: (*as*) *guides*, 52.

420. *quid sui consili* (63, note) *sit* (141): *what his plan is*.

**Ipse:** 114. *de quarta vigilia:* *i.e.* between two and four o'clock A.M., for the sun rose about four at this time of the year.

423. **rei peritissimus:** 64.

424. **Sullae, etc.:** Sulla had fought against Mithridates, king of Pontus, 88-84 B.C.; Crassus, against Spartacus and the slaves, 71 B.C. **in M. Crassi:** *sc. exercitu.*

## CHAPTER 22

426. **cum teneretur:** 137, *b.* **summus:** 106.

428. **passibus:** 86. **ut . . . comperit:** 130, *f.*

429. **cognitus esset:** after *cum.*

432. **se:** *i.e.* **Considius.** **insignibus:** *i.e.* standards and decorations.

433. **subducit, instruit:** 174.

434. **ut:** *just as.*

435. **ne . . . committeret:** 145. **ipsius = Caesaris.**

438. **proelio:** 83. **Multo die:** *late in the day.*

439. **et:** omit, 175.

441. **quod** (*pron.*) **non vidisset:** clause obj. of **renuntiasset.** **pro viso:** *as if seen* (lit. as a thing seen); **viso,** used as a noun. **sibi:** *i.e.* Caesar.

442. **quo . . . intervallo:** *at the usual distance,* five or six miles; case, 93. **consuerat = consueverat.**

## CHAPTER 23

445. **diei:** depending on **postridie;** see **Vocab. super-erat.**

446. **cum** (*before the time*) **when.** **frumentum:** object of **metiri;** see **Introd. 39.** **oporteret:** subjunct. denoting an expected event.

449. **rei:** 67, *c.* **prospiciendum (esse sibi):** 163, *a.*

450. **Bibracte ire:** 79, *a.*

452. **hostibus:** 67, *a.*

453. **existimarent, commisissent:** if Caesar had known the reason, he would have used the indic., 138, *a.*

454. **eo** (90) **magis:** *all the more* (lit. more on account of this). **locis occupatis:** 99, *b,* 4.

455. **eo:** *for this reason,* 90. **re frumentaria:** 83.

456. **posse:** *sc. eos* as subj.

## CHAPTER 24

459. *animum advertit* = *animadvertit*; *id* is the obj.  
 460. *qui sustineret*: 135.  
 461. *in colle medio*: 106.  
 462. *triplicem aciem*: see Introd. 47. *legionum quattuor*: consisting of four legions, 63, *d.* *quattuor*: including one mentioned in chap. 7, and three from Aquileia (chap. 10).  
 463. *duas legiones*: see chap. 10.  
 465. *auxilia*: see Introd. 29. *hominibus*: 87. "Caesar had from 30,000 to 36,000 legionaries, perhaps 20,000 auxiliaries, and 4000 horse." Dodge, p. 75.  
 466. *sarcinas*: the packs carried by the soldiers themselves; *impedimenta*, the heavy baggage, tents, etc., carried in carts; see Introd. 32 and 42. *eum*: *sc. locum*.  
 468. *cum carris*: the Helvetii went to the battle with their families and baggage.  
 470. *phalange*: see Vocab. *sub*: *up to*, because the Romans were on higher ground.

## CHAPTER 25

472. *suo*: *sc. equo remoto*. *omnium*: *i.e.* of the officers.  
 473. *aequato periculo*: *by equalizing the danger*.  
 475. *pilis*: see Introd. 41.  
 477. *Gallis, impedimento*: 70, 69. *erat*: the subj. is *quod neque evellere . . . poterant*.  
 478. *pluribus*: *several*.  
 479. *ferrum*: the iron point of a spear might pierce, from above, the overlapping shields of the phalanx.  
 481. *multi ut = ut multi*: *so that many*; order, 171, *c.* *iactato*: *i.e.* in trying to remove the left arm, to which the shield was attached.  
 483. *vulneribus*: 90. *et (pedem)*: *both or omit*.  
 484. *circiter*: adv. *passus*, 80. *eo*: adv.  
 485. *Boii et Tulingi*: see chap. 5.  
 487. *novissimis, praesidio*: 70, 69.  
 488. *circumvenire*: complement of *coeperunt*.  
 491. *conversa . . . intulerunt*: *faced about and charged in two divisions*.  
 491. *bipertito*: see battle-plan.  
 492. *victis (i.e. the Helvetii) resisteret*: 67, *b.*

493. *venientes*: *i.e.* the Boii and Tulingi.

For good descriptions of this battle, see Dodge's "Caesar," p. 72, ff., and Holmes; "Conquest of Gaul," p. 32, ff.

## CHAPTER 26

494. *pugnatum est*: 119, *b*.

496. *alteri*: *i.e.* the Helvetii; see Vocab. and 117.

497. *alteri*: *i.e.* the allies.

498. *proelio*: 100. *cum pugnatum sit*: 139, *b*. *hora septima*: beginning at noon.

499. *Ad multam noctem*: *till late at night*.

501. *obiecerant, coniciebant*: note the tenses, 124 and 121. *loco superiore*: *i.e.* the barricade of wagons.

502. *venientes*: *w. nostros*.

503. *subiciebant*: note three compounds of *iacio* in lines 501-503.

505. *impedimentis castrisque*: 88.

506. *captus est*: 103, *b*.

509. *in fines Lingonum*: about seventy miles north of Bibracte.

511. *triduum*: 80.

512. *Lingonas*: a Greek ending; see Vocab.

513. *ne . . . iuvarent*: (*directing*) *that they should not*, etc.

514. *qui si*: 115, *f*. *loco*: *position, light*.

## CHAPTER 27

518. *Qui cum*: *and when they*, 115, *f*.

519. *ad pedes*: *sc. Caesaris*.

520. *petissent = petivissent*.

521. *essent*: subjunct. by attraction, 142. *paruerunt*: the only word in the independent part of the sentence.

522. *Eo*: adv.

523. *perfugissent*: subjunct. because quoted from the words used by Caesar in making the demand; the direct form is *perfugerunt*, 154, *b*.

524. *Dum conquiruntur*: 137, *c*.

526. *armis traditis*: expressing condition as well as time, 99, *b*.

527. *adficerentur*: 145, *b*.

528. *occultari*: *i.e.* concealed from Caesar.

## CHAPTER 28

532. *Quod* = *id.* *quorum*: refers to *his* (l. 533).

533. *his imperavit*: 67, *b.* *uti . . . reducerent*: 145, *a.* *sibi*: in *his sight*, 70.

534. *in hostium numero habuit*: a mild way of saying that he put them to death.

537. *unde*: rel. adv. = *e quibus*.

538. *quo tolerarent*: 135.

540. *ipsos*: the *Helvetii*.

546. *Boios* (171, *c*): obj. of *conlocarent*. *petentibus Haeduis concessit*: to the *Haedui*, at their request, he granted (*ut . . . conlocarent*).

547. *virtute*: 96.

549. *parem atque ipsi erant*: equal with themselves. The *Boii* had been a wandering tribe before they formed an alliance with the *Helvetii*. See chap. 5.

## CHAPTER 29

551. *tabulae*: thin boards covered with wax, in shape like a double slate.

552. *litteris Graecis*: having no alphabet of their own, the Gauls used for their language Greek letters, which they had learned from a Greek colony at *Marseilles*.

553. *quibus tabulis*: 115, *d.* *qui numerus*: (*showing*) what number.

554. *domo*: 83, *b.* *exisset*: 141. *possent*: 134.

555. *pueri*, etc.: supply a verb.

556. *CCLXIII* = *ducentorum sexaginta trium*.

558. *XXXII* = *triginta duorum*.

559. *ad*: adv., *about*. *XCII* = *nonaginta duo*.

560. *CCCLXVIII* = *trecenta sexaginta octo*.

## CHAPTER 30

564. *gratulatum*: 166, *a.*

565. *sese*: subj. of *intellegere*, (*saying that*) they knew. Review 153 and 154. The direct forms of the passage, ll. 565-573, would be the same as the indirect, except that *intellegere sese*, *repetisset*, and *reliquissent* would be *intellegimus*, *repetisti*, and *reliquerunt*. *tametsi . . . repetisset*: 139, *a.* and 154, *b.*



566. *Helvetiorum, populi*: done by the Helvetians to the people, 63, *b* and *c*. *iniuriis*: referring to the defeat of Cassius by the Helvetians, mentioned in chap. 7. *ab his*: on (lit. from) them, 83.

569. *florentissimis rebus*: under flourishing circumstances, 93.

571. *domicilio*: dat., 69.

572. *opportunitissimum, stipendiarias*: pred. adj., 103.

575. *uti . . . liceret*: 145, *a*. This request for permission was unnecessary, but was made because of Caesar's standing. *in diem*: for a day.

576. *voluntate*: 93.

579. *ne . . . enuntiaret*: 145, *a*. *quis*: 116.

580. *quibus* (dat.): sc. antecedent *ei*.

### CHAPTER 31

582. *idem*: nom. pl.

583. *fuerant*: sc. *apud eum*.

585. *Caesari*: 70, *a*.

586. *Non minus*, etc.: the rest of this chapter is indirect discourse. For ll. 586–590 the direct forms would be: —

*Non minus id contendimus et laboramus, ne ea, quae dixerimus, enuntientur, quam uti ea, quae volumus, impetremus, propterea quod, si enuntiatum erit, summum in cruciatum nos venturos videmus.*

The changes for ll. 591–647 are according to 154, note.

587. *quam*: *than*.

591. *pro*: in behalf of. *Diviciacus*: the man best fitted to act as spokesman. Why? See Vocab. *Galliae totius*: what was actually meant was central or Celtic Gaul, and perhaps only the eastern part of it.

593. *Hi*: i.e. the *Averni*, 113, *a*.

594. *factum esse*: the subj. is *uti . . . arcesserentur*; trans. *it came to pass that, etc.*

595. *mercede*: 98.

598. *adamassent* = *adamavissent*.

599. *traductos*: sc. *esse*. *esse*: sc. *Germanos* as subj. *ad*: prep. w. *numerus*.

602. *omnem nobilitatem*, etc.: not all, for at least the speaker himself and his brother *Dumnorix* were surviving nobles.

604. *Quibus*: 115, *f*. *fractos*: agreeing w. *eos* (i.e. *Haeduos*), to be supplied as antecedent of *qui*, 115, *e*.

605. virtute, etc.: *because of their bravery*, 90.  
 607. obsides: *as hostages*. nobilissimos: *the chief nobles*.  
 610. quominus essent: (*refuse*) *to be*, 145, e.  
 611. unum se esse: *he was the only one*.  
 612. qui . . . potuerit: 134.  
 614. Romam: 79, a.  
 615. postulatum: 166, a.  
 617. peius: used as a noun, *a worse fate*, 104.  
 622. mensibus: 95.  
 623. quibus . . . pararentur: *for whom a place and settle-  
 ments were to be prepared*, 135.  
 624. annis: 100. uti . . . transirent: subj. of futurum esse.  
 626. conferendum Gallicum (sc. agrum): 163.  
 629. semel: see Vocab.  
 630. quod proelium: 115, d. The year of this battle was  
 60 B.C.  
 631. nobilissimi cuiusque: *of all the noblest*.  
 632. exempla cruciatusque: *forms of torture*, 173.  
 637. auxili: w. quid; *some aid*, 63, e.  
 638. Gallis: 71.  
 642. dubitare: the subj. is se, referring to Diviciacus.  
 645. ne . . . traducatur: 145, e.

## CHAPTER 32

651. tristes: used as adv., *sadly, in sadness*, 105.  
 653. quae esset: 141, depending on miratus. Sequani re-  
 spondere: 152.  
 657. Hoc: *on this account*, 90. esse: fortunam is the  
 subj., see 153 and 154, a.  
 658. reliquorum: 86, a.  
 659. absentis: *though absent*.  
 662. Sequanis: dat. w. perferendi, 71. vero: 171, e.

## CHAPTER 33

665. His rebus cognitis: 99, c.  
 666. sibi (70) . . . curae (69) futuram: *he would attend to  
 this matter* (lit. this matter would be for a care to him).  
 667. et (beneficio): both. beneficio: in Caesar's consulship,  
 59 B.C., the senate had conferred on Ariovistus the title "*amicus  
 populi Romani*."

668. *facturum*: sc. *esse*.  
 669. *secundum*: prep., see Vocab.  
 670. *quare* . . . *putaret*: 134. *cogitandam*: sc. *esse*.  
 675. *quod*: rel., a *fact* which.  
 677. *Paulatim* . . . *consuescere*: *that the Germans should gradually become accustomed*, 146.  
 679. *periculosum*: sc. *esse*. *sibi* (67, b) . . . *temperaturos* . . . *quin exirent* (145, e): *would refrain from going out*.  
 681. *ut*: *as*.  
 684. *Rhodanus*: *only the Rhone*. *quibus rebus*: 67, c.  
 685. *quam maturrime*: 107, a. *occurrendum* (*esse sibi*): 163, a.

## CHAPTER 34

688. *placuit ei*: *he decided* (lit. it pleased him), 67, b. *ad Ariovistum*: "Ariovistus was probably on the Rhine somewhere about modern Strasburg." Dodge.  
 689. *qui postularent*: 135.  
 690. *conloquio*: dat., 69. *velle*, etc.: depending on the idea of saying in *postularent*.  
 692. *Si quid* . . . *opus esset*: *if he needed anything* (lit. if there was any need to himself). *ipsi*: 72. Direct: *Si quid mihi a Caesare* (te) *opus esset*, *ego ad eum* (te) *venissem*.  
 693. *venturum fuisse*: 157, b.  
*quid*, *se* (l. 694): two objects of *velit*, *wanted anything of him* (i.e. Ariovistus), 75, a. *ille*: *he*, i.e. Caesar.  
 698. *quid Caesari* (72) *negoti* (63, note) *esset* (141): *what business Caesar had*.

## CHAPTER 35

702. *Quoniam*: w. *referret*. *tanto* . . . *adfectus*: *after being treated with so great kindness on his own part and that of the Roman people*.  
 703. *cum* . . . *esset*: explains *beneficio*.  
 705. *hanc gratiam referret*: *he rendered such gratitude*.  
 706. *invitatus*: *when invited*. *neque dicendum* (163, a) *sibi putaret*: *he thought he ought not to speak*.  
 707. *haec* . . . *postularet*: *the following were the demands that he made*.  
 708. *ne* (adv. not conj.) *quam traduceret*: *he should not lead over any*, etc.

710 traduceret, redderet, etc.: quoted commands, 154, c, and 147.

711. ut illis liceret: redundant, omit in trans. eius: *i.e.* of Ariovistus.

715. sibi . . . futuram: *he* (Caesar), etc., *would have*

717. sese: w. neglecturum.

719. quod: *so far as*. commodum: *with advantage*, 93.

721. se: repeats sese of l. 717.

Caesar's position at this time is clearly stated by Holmes, "Conquest of Gaul," p. 37.

### CHAPTER 36

722. Ius esse, etc.: see direct forms below. ut . . . imperarent: clause explaining ius, 143.

723. qui: sc. antecedent ei as subj. of imperarent. eis: w. imperarent, 67, b.

724. victis: w. imperare, 160 and 67, b.

725. ad: *according to*.

726. consuesse = consuevisse. praescriberet: *did not direct*.

727. uteretur: 141, a.

728. se: subj. of impediri, but translate *he ought*, etc., 119, a.

730. stipendiarios: pred. adj.

731. Magnam: position, 171, c. qui . . . faceret: 134, c, and 138, b.

732. adventu: denoting time and cause. deteriora: pred. adj.

734. in eo manerent: *abide by the terms*.

735. convenisset: see Vocab.

736. long. afuturum: *would be far from (aiding)*.

737. Quod: *as to the fact that*.

739. congregaretur: *let him come on*, 154, c.

740. (eum) intellecturum (esse). quid (S2) virtute (97) posent: *how powerful they were*.

Direct forms: —

Ius est belli ut qui vicerunt eis quos vicerunt quem ad modum velint imperent; item populus Romanus victis non ad alterius praescriptum . . . imperare consuevit. Si ego populo Romano non praescribo quem ad modum suo iure utatur, non oportet me . . . in meo iure impediri. Haedui mihi, quoniam belli fortunam

temptaverunt et . . . superati sunt, stipendiarii sunt facti. Magnam Caesar iniuriam facit qui suo adventu vectigalia mihi deteriora faciat. Haeduis (ego) obsides non reddam, neque his . . . bellum inferam, si in eo manebunt quod convenit stipendiumque . . . pendent; si id non fecerint, longe eis fraternum nomen populi Romani aberit. Quod mihi Caesar denuntiat se Haeduum iniurias non neglecturum, nemo mecum sine sua pernicie contendit. Cum volet, congregiatur; intellet quid invicti Germani . . . qui inter annos quattuordecim tectum non subierunt (subierint) virtute possint.

## CHAPTER 37

745. Haedui: sc. veniebant. questum: 166, *a*.

746. sese: (*saying*) that they.

747. obsidibus: 99, *b*, 5.

748. Treveri: sc. veniebant questum. Sueborum: the largest and most powerful of the German nations. In Bk. IV, chaps. 1-3, Caesar writes of their customs and importance.

750. Quibus rebus: w. commotus, 87.

751. maturandum: 163, *a*.

754. resisti (119, *b*) posset: *resistance could be made*. quam . . . potuit: 107, *b*. Caesar's last-mentioned location was among the Lingones, chap. 26.

## CHAPTER 38

757. tridui: 63, *d*. viam: 81.

758. ad occupandum, etc.: 164, *c*, note.

760. suis finibus: *i.e.*, his part of the country of the Sequani, between the Vosges and the Rhine, now upper Alsace.

762. Namque: see Vocab.

763. usui: 69.

764. ducendum: gerundive, 165, note.

766. ut: *as if*.

767. amplius: 86, *b*. pedum: 63, *d*.

768. qua . . . intermittit: *where the river stops*; the river does not complete its circular course because of the mountain.

769. magna altitudine: 96. radices: acc.

770. ripae: subj. of contingent. Hunc: *i.e.* the mountain, obj. of efficit.

771. arcem: pred. acc., 76, *a*.

## CHAPTER 39

774. *Dum*: 137, *c.* *ad*: 79, *a.*  
 777. *magnitudine, virtute*: 96. *Germanos*: subj. of *esse*.  
 784. *Hic*: sc. *timor*. *tribunis, praefectis*: see *Introd.* 36.  
 785. *reliquisque*: friends of Caesar who had come for the pleasure, and perhaps profit, of military life. *urbe*: *i.e.* Rome.  
 787. *alius alia*: 117, *b.* *quam . . . diceret*: *which he said made it necessary for him to go*.  
 788. *ut . . . liceret*: 145, *a.*  
 789. *ut . . . vitarent*: 135.  
 793. *Vulgo*: adv.  
 795. *vocibus*: means or cause.  
 797. *quique*: *and those who*. (*ei*) *Qui . . . ex his . . . dicebant*: *those of this number who wished . . . said*.  
 801. *ut . . . posset*: 145, *b.*  
 803. *iussisset*: 155, *b.*  
 804. *fore*: *milites* is the subj. *dicto*: see *Vocab.*

## CHAPTER 40

- Caesar was an orator (*Introd.* 3 and 6). That he was a master of his art is seen in this inspiring address to the timid soldiers.  
 807. *centurionibus*: see *Introd.* 37.  
 808. *quam in partem*: *in what direction*.  
 809. *ducerentur*: *were to be led*, 141.  
 810. *se consule*: 99, *b*, 1. Caesar was consul in 59 B.C.  
 813. *Sibi persuaderi*: *he was persuaded, or he believed*, 67 *b*, and 119, *b*.  
 815. *Quod si*: *but if*.  
 817. *sua*: *their own*. *ipsius*: *his*.  
 818. *Factum (esse)*: emphatic by position, 171, *c*, *a test had been (actually) made*.  
 819. *Cimbris . . . pulsis*: in the battles of 102 and 101 B.C.  
 821. *factum*: sc. *esse periculum*.  
 822. *servili tumultu*: under the leadership of Spartacus 73-71 B.C. *quos . . . usus . . . sublevarent*: translate as if passive, *who were helped by the skill*, etc. *aliquid*: adverbial acc., *somewhat*.  
 824. *iudicari posse*: *one could judge* (lit. it could be judged). *quantum . . . constantia*: *how much advantage* (lit. good) *firmness had* (omit in *se*). *boni*: w. *quantum*, 63, *c*.



825. *inermes*: acc. w. *quos*.

828. *Germanos* . . . *superassent*: cf. chap. 1, l. 14.

830. *illorum*: 112, *a*.

831. *exercitui*: 73. *Si* . . . *commoveret*: translate as if passive, *if any were disturbed by*, etc.

832. *adversum proelium*: the defeat of the Gauls by Ariovistus, chap. 31, l. 602.

835. *sui* (63, *c*) *potestatem*: *i.e.* a chance to attack him.

838. *Cui rationi* . . . *hac* = *hac ratione cui*: *by that strategy for which there had been*, etc.

839. *ipsum*: Ariovistus.

841. *Qui* . . . *conferrent*: *those who attributed their fear to a pretended concern about*, etc.

844. *Haec* . . . *curae*: cf. note on chap 33, l. 666.

848. *Quod* . . . *dicantur*: *as to its being said that they*, etc.

849. *nihil*: adv. *quibuscumque* (72) . . . *convictam*: *whoever did not have obedient armies (it was) either because fortune had failed (the commanders) on account of bad management, or because avarice had been proved (against them) by the discovery of some misdeed*.

854. *quod* . . . *fuisset*: *what he had intended to put off till a later day*.

856. *quam primum*: see Vocab. *primum*.

858. *Quod si*: *and if*.

860. *legioni*: 67, *b*. This was the oldest legion in his service; see chap. 7.

## CHAPTER 41

865. *inlata est*: 118, *a*. *princeps gratias egit*: *was the first to thank*.

866. *de se*: *i.e.* the legion.

867. *iudicium*: see Vocab. *se esse*: *that it was*.

868. *cum tribunis egerunt*: *arranged with the tribunes*.

870. *uti* . . . *satisfacerent*: clause obj. of *egerunt*. *se*: (*saying that*) *they*.

871. *suum* . . . *esse*: *the decision was not theirs, but the commander's* (66).

874. *ei*: *in him*.

875. *ut* . . . *duceret*: may be taken as a purpose clause, construed with *profectus est*. *miliū* (sc. *passuum*) *amplius*:

86, *b*. *circuitu*: from Vesontio northward and eastward into the plain of the Rhine.

878. *Ariovisti*: the German army was twenty-four miles farther north, between the Vosges and the Rhine.

#### CHAPTER 42

881. *Quod*: the antecedent is *id*. *postulasset*: sc. Caesar.

882. *per se*: as far as he was concerned. *fieri licere*: might be granted.

885. *petenti*: 159.

886. *spem*: see *Vocab*. *pro*: considering.

888. *fore uti desisteret*: that he would desist (lit. it would be that he would, etc.).

893. *uterque veniret*: each should come, 154, *c*.

897. *omnibus equis*: w. *detractis*, 99.

898. *Gallis equitibus*: 68. *eo* = *in eos*, upon them.

899. *cui*: 67, *b*. *imponere*: subj. of *esse*, l. 897.

900. *quam*: 107, *a*. *quid*: 82. *facto*: 89.

901. *Quod cum* = *et cum id*.

903. *pollicitum*: part. w. the implied subj. of *rescribere*.

904. *ad equum rescribere*: (he) was enrolling (them) as knights (or equites, the great order of wealthy Romans). The phrase may also mean "enroll as horsemen"; hence the wit of the remark.

#### CHAPTER 43

907. *aequo spatio*: 95.

908. *ut erat dictum*: 130, *f*.

909. *equis*: abl. of means, but translate *on horseback*.

910. *passibus*: 95.

911. *intervallo*: 93.

912. *ut conloquerentur*: 145, *a*.

914. *ventum est*: 119, *b*, and *Vocab*. *initio*: 100.

915. *rex, amicus*: Caesar makes as much as possible of this honor conferred on Ariovistus.

917. *missa*: sc. *essent*. *pro*: in return for.

922. *quam-que*.

923. *ipsis cum . . . intercederent*: existed between themselves and . . .

925. *ut*: how.

926. prius . . . quam = priusquam.  
 928. ut . . . vellet: in appos. w. consuetudinem, 143. sui:  
*of their (standing).*  
 929. gratia, etc.: 97.  
 930. id: antecedent of quod. eis: 68.  
 932. ne: adv. w. inferret, *that he should not make war; cf.*  
*chap. 35, l. 708, ff., and notes thereon.*

## CHAPTER 44

Though without the mental training and advantages of his Roman foe, Ariovistus was ready to make a strong and logical reply.

937. multa: 104. Transisse, etc.: indirect discourse.  
 938. sese: subj. of transisse and following infinitives. rogatum: cf. the statement of Diviciacus, chap. 31, l. 595.  
 939. praemiis = praemiorum, limiting spe, 173.  
 941. concessas, dados: 159. ipsorum: 114, b.  
 942. iure: 92.  
 947. decertare: w. paratus we might have ad decertandum, instead of the infinitive, as here. See 165, c.  
 948. de stipendio recusare: *refuse to pay the tribute* (lit. make objection about the tribute).  
 950. sibi ornamento: 70, 69.  
 954. quam: conj.  
 955. Quod traducat: *as to his leading.*  
 956. sui muniendi: w. causa, 164, a.  
 959. prius . . . quam = priusquam.  
 963. hanc, illam: 113, a. Ut (as) . . . sic: 130, g.  
 967. Quod diceret: *as to his saying.*  
 968. imperitum rerum: 64.  
 969. ut non sciret: *as not to know*, 136. bello proximo: the Allobroges had revolted in 61 B.C.  
 973. simulata amicitia: *under the pretence of friendship* quem exercitum = exercitum quem, 115, c.  
 974. habere: the obj. is exercitum.  
 975. Qui nisi: 115, f.  
 977. multis gratum: *a (thing) pleasing to many.* Caesar was head of the so-called popular party in the Roman government. His opponents, members of the aristocratic party, would not have objected to the removal of a leader so formidable.

## CHAPTER 45

986. quare: (*showing*) *why*. negotio: 83.

987. consuetudinem: subj. of pati.

989. Ariovisti: 63, *a*, and 66. superatos esse: position, 171, *c*.

The date of the war was 121 B.C.

990. quibus: 67, *b*.

991. neque: *and not*.

992. neque: *nor*. Quod si: *and if*. antiquissimum quodque

tempus: *priority in time*.

996. suis legibus: *its own laws*, *w. uti*. voluisset: *sc. senatus*.

## CHAPTER 46

997. Dum geruntur: 137, *c*.

998. propius tumultum: 78, *a*.

1001. quod telum: *any javelin*, 116.

1002. etsi . . . videbat: 139, *a*. periculo legionis: *danger to the legion*.

1004. committendum . . . posset: *he thought he ought not to permit the possibility of its being said, after the enemy had been defeated*. ut . . . posset: subj. of committendum.

1006. qua arrogantia usus: *with what arrogance*.

1007. omni Gallia: 83. Romanis: 67, *c*.

1008. ut: *how*, 141.

## CHAPTER 47

1012. Biduo: 95. post: *adv.*

1013. coeptae essent: coepi takes a passive form with a complementary pass. infin. (*agi*).

1014. agere: complement of velle. uti . . . constitueret: noun cl. depending upon velle.

1017. causa visa non est: *there did not seem (to be) a reason*.

1019. quin conicerent: *from hurling*, 145, *c*.

1021. visum est: *w. mittere*, l. 1028.

1023. virtute: 96.

1024. Flacco: Flaccus, the Roman governor of Gaul, 83 B.C. He had honored certain Gauls with Roman citizenship, who then according to custom assumed his name, C. Valerius.

1025. multa: agreeing *w. qua*, but to be translated *readily, fluently*.

1027. *in eo: in his case. peccandi Germanis . . . esset: the Germans had no reason for offence, i.e. by harming him. Germanis: 72.*

1028. *hospitio: a sacred tie of friendship.*

1032. *Quid venirent: 154, d.*

1033. *(eos) conantes: 159.*

## CHAPTER 48

1034. *milibus: 95.*

1035. *monte: the Vosges.*

1038. *frumento: 83, w. intercluderet.*

1039. *supportaretur: 142.*

1046. *numero: 97, omit in trans.*

1047. *singuli singulos: one each.*

1048. *his, hi: i.e. pedites. versabantur, etc.: 121, b.*

1050. *durius: more difficult (than usual), 107.*

1051. *quo: adv.*

1052. *prodeundum: 163, a. "By these peculiar tactics (ll. 1045-1054), the Germans puzzled the Gallic squadrons, though it was really nothing new, but an ancient device to be found among many peoples." Dodge.*

## CHAPTER 49

1056. *quo in loco: 115, d.*

1057. *passus: 80.*

1058. *castris: 73. acie triplici: see Introd. 47.*

1060. *castra munire: see Introd. 43.*

1063. *quae terrerent: 135.*

1068. *castra maiora: the larger Roman camp was two miles from the German camp; the smaller (minora), about half a mile.*

## CHAPTER 50

1069. *instituto suo: 92.*

1072. *ne tum quidem, not even then.*

1074. *quae oppugnaret: 135.*

1079. *quam ob rem: see Vocab.*

1080. *decertaret: 141.*

1081. *ut . . . declararent: in appos. w. consuetudo, 143.*

1083. *proelium: subj. acc.*

1085. *lunam*: the ancients of different lands believed the heavenly bodies had an influence upon human affairs.

## CHAPTER 51

1086. *praesidio castris*: 69 and 70.

1087. *quod visum est*: *what seemed*.

1089. *minus* = *non*. *multitudine*: 97. *pro*: *in comparison with*.

1093. *paribus intervallis*: 93.

1096. *qua*: indef. adj., see Vocab. *quis* and 116.

1097. *Eo* (adv.) = *eis*: *on them*, i.e. the carts and wagons.

1098. *proficiscentes*: acc. w. *eos* understood. *passis*: from *pando*. *flentes*: w. *quae*.

## CHAPTER 52

1100. *singulis . . . singulos*: the five lieutenants and the quaestor were now put in charge of the six legions, one man to each.

1101. *quaestorem*: see Intro. 35.

1102. *a dextro cornu*: *on the right wing*. *eam partem*: the German left wing opposite the Roman right.

1104. *Ita*: w. *acriter*.

1105. *itaque* = *et ita*: not the conj. *itaque*.

1106. *ut daretur*: 136. *pila coniciendi*: 165, note.

1108. *phalange*: see Vocab.; cf. the way the Helvetii attacked, chap. 24.

1110. *qui insilirent*, etc.: 134.

1112. *a*: *on*.

1115. *P. Crassus adulescens*: *the younger*, distinguished from his father M. Crassus, the triumvir.

1117. *laborantibus*: 159. *subsidio*: 69. "If young Crassus had not acted with unusual intelligence and promptness, Caesar might have forfeited the victory, for his success on the right in no wise demoralized the enemy's flank." Dodge.

## CHAPTER 53

1120. *prius w. quam*: 137, *f*.

1121. *Rhenum*: the exact site of the battle is uncertain *milia*: 80.



1122. **viribus**: loc. abl. w. **confisi**.

1124. **Ariovistus**: his death is mentioned in Bk. V, chap. 29.

1125. **reliquos omnes**: Plutarch says there were 80,000. The recollection of this defeat kept the Germans from crossing the Rhine four years later (Bk. V, chap. 55).

1127. **natione**: 97.

1129. **in Gallia duxerat**: sc. **in matrimonium**.

1130. **filiae**: we might have expected **fuerunt**, as in l. 1127.

1132. **Procillus**: see chap. 47.

1134. **insequentem** = **qui insequebatur** (**hostes**): 159.

1140. **ter**: cf. our "best out of three." **consultum** (**esse**): *they had consulted*, **impers**. 119.

1141. **utrum . . . necaretur an . . . reservaretur**: a double indirect question.

1143. **Metius**: cf. chap. 47. "It is not often that Caesar in his Commentaries alludes to his own personal feelings; he appears in them rather as a great governing force, than as a human being with feelings and affections." Fowler.

## CHAPTER 54

1146. **Ubii**: Germans, but enemies of the Suebi (Bk. IV, chap. 3). **proximi Rhenum**: 78, *a*.

1150. **in Sequanos**: probably in Vesontio (chap. 38). **hibernis**: 67, *c*. **Labienum**: he had been in command of the original legion in Gaul (chap. 10).

1151. **citeriorem Galliam**: Where was this? **conventus**: as governor of Gaul Caesar had to hold the provincial courts, which he did during the winter season. But he was also one of the famous triumvirate, with Pompey and Crassus, and therefore needed to be nearer Rome for political reasons.

"The results of the campaign which Caesar had just concluded may be summed up in a single sentence: he had secured, at least for a time, the virtual submission of central Gaul, and he had paved the way for the conquest by destroying or expelling the barbarian hordes who threatened to anticipate him."

Holmes.

## BOOK II

## CHAPTER 1

1. *esset*: 137, *b.* *citeriore Gallia*: east of the Alps; see *Introd.* 14, and *Vocab.* *supra*: in *Bk. I*, chap. 54.

3. *Labieni*: *Bk. I*, chap. 54. *Belgae coniurare*: *that the Belgae were combining*, 77.

4. *quam*: agreement, 115, *b.* *dixeramus*: referring to himself as a writer, Caesar uses the first person, singular or plural.

5. *inter se dare*: *were giving to one another*.

6. *esse causas*: 77. *vererentur*: 138, *a.*

7. *pacata Gallia*: *if Gaul were subdued*, 99, *b.* 3. *Gallia*: here Celtic or central Gaul, not the whole country.

8. Order: *partim* (*sc. ab eis*) *qui moleste ferebant exercitum hiemare . . . in Gallia, ita ut* (*just as*) *noluerant Germanos . . . versari*.

9. *ut . . . noluerant*: 130, *g.*

11. *partim* (*sc. ab eis*) *qui. mobilitate*: 90.

12. *ab nonnullis. sc. sollicitabantur*.

13. *quod. w. regna occupabantur. ad conducendos homines: i.e. as mercenaries*; see 164, *c.*

14. *vulgo*: *adv.*

15. *imperio nostro*: *under our government*, 93.

The Belgae combined, therefore, for the following reasons:—

1. They feared that the Roman army might advance against them.

2. They were incited by certain Gauls,

*a.* Those who objected to the present location of the Roman army.

*b.* Revolutionists.

*c.* Men who now found it easy to seize the supreme power.

## CHAPTER 2

17. *nuntiis*: *abl. of means or cause*.

18. *novas*: How many legions did Caesar have in 58 B.C.? see *Introd.* 28. *inita aestate*: see 99 and *Vocab.*

19. *ulteriorem Galliam*: west of the Alps. *qui deduceret*: 135.

20. *Ipse*: 114. *cum primum*: *as soon as*, here followed by the subjunct., but usually by the indic., 137, *a*. *pabuli*: 65, *e*.  
 22. *Belgis*: 73. *uti . . . cognoscant*: 143, 145, *d*.  
 23. *quae gerantur*: *what is going on*, 142.  
 25. *cogi, exercitum*: 174.  
 26. *dubitandum* (163, *a*) *non quin proficisceretur*: *he ought not to hesitate to set out*.  
 27. *castra movet*: from Vesontio, where the army had wintered. Cf. Bk. I, chaps. 38 and 54. *diebus*: 100. The distance Caesar traveled has been estimated to be one hundred and forty-five miles.

### CHAPTER 3

29. *Eo*: referring to *fines Belgarum*, chap. 2, l. 28. *opinio*: 86.  
 30. *venisset*: 137, *b*. *Galliae*: 73. *ex Belgis* = *Belgarum*.  
 31. *legatos*: *as envoys*, 76, *a*.  
 32. *dicerent* (not *dicebant*): 135. *Se*: obj. of *permittere*: supply another *se* as subj. *suaque*: *and their property*, 104.  
 33. *permittere*: 154, note. The rest of the chapter is an indirect quotation, in which the main infinitives stand for direct indicatives, and the subordinate subjunctives stand for direct indicatives or subjunctives. Review App. 153–156. For the direct forms, see below.  
 35. *et*: omit in translating, 175.  
 36. *dare*, etc.: 150, *a*. *imperata facere*: *do his bidding*. *recipere*: *sc. eos* as obj. (= *Romanos*).  
 37. *frumento*: 87.  
 40. *ut*: *w. potuerint*, 136. *ne w. quidem*: see Vocab. *quidem*. *Suessiones*: obj. of *deterre*.  
 41. *iure*: the principles of *justice*; *legibus*: *special laws*.  
 43. *quin sentirent*: *from uniting*, 145, *e*.  
 “The Remi discerned in the invasion of the Romans an opportunity to shake off the rule which their neighbors, the Suessiones, exercised over them.” Mommsen.

Direct forms:—

*Nos nostraque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani permittimus neque (nos) cum Belgis reliquis consensimus neque contra populum Romanum coniuravimus, paratique sumus et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus iuvare; reliqui omnes Belgae in armis*

sunt, Germanique, qui cis Rhenum incolunt, sese cum his coniunxerunt, tantusque est eorum omnium furor ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque nostros, qui eodem iure et isdem legibus utuntur, unum imperium unumque magistratum nobiscum habent, detertere potuerimus quin cum his consentiant.

## CHAPTER 4

45. quae . . . essent (141): *what tribes were in arms and how large they were.*

46. quid: 82.

47. Plerosque . . . Germanis: the Belgae were descended from a people east of the Rhine, but they were Celtic rather than German. a Germanis: 84. Rhenum: 75, note.

49. Gallos: obj. of expulisse. incolerent: subjunct. standing for a direct indic., 154, b.

50. memoria, etc.: the Teutoni and Cimbri were conquered by the Romans in 102 and 101 B.C.

51. Gallia vexata: abl. abs. denoting time.

52. ingredi: *from entering.* prohibuerint: 134. qua ex re fieri: *and from this fact it came about.* uti . . . sumerent: 143.

55. habere explorata = exploravisse.

56. propterea quod: w. cognoverint.

57. quantam . . . pollicitus sit: 141.

59. Plurimum: adv. w. valere, 82. Bellovacos: subj. of valere. et . . . et . . . et: 175. virtute: 90.

61. armata: see Vocab.

65. Diviciacum: not the Haeduan chief of Bk. I.

66. cum . . . tum etiam: see cum, Vocab.

69. summam: noun.

70. habere: sc. Suessiones as subj. numero: 97.

71. Nervios: sc. polliceri with this and the following proper names.

72. habeantur: *are considered.*

77. arbitrari: sc. se (= Remos) as subj. used parenthetically, the Condrusi, etc., promised about 40,000 (*they, i.e. the Remi, thought*).

Direct forms of chap. 4: —

Plerique Belgae sunt orti ab Germanis, Rhenumque . . . tracti propter loci fertilitatem ibi consederunt, Gallosque, qui ea loca incolebant, expulerunt, solique sunt, qui patrum nostrorum

memoria, . . . Teutonos Cimbrosque intra suos fines ingredi prohibuerint ; qua ex re fit uti . . . magnam sibi auctoritatem . . . sumant.

De numero eorum omnia habemus explorata . . . propterea quod propinquitatibus . . . coniuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem . . . ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognovimus. Plurimum inter eos Bellovaci . . . valent; hi possunt conficere armata milia centum, polliciti ex eo numero electa milia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulant. Suessiones nostri sunt finitimi; fines latissimos feracissimosque agros possident. Apud eos fuit rex nostra etiam memoria Diviciacus, totius Galliae potentissimus, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuit; nunc est rex Galba; ad hunc . . . summa totius belli . . . defertur; oppida habent numero duodecim, pollicentur milia armata quinquaginta; totidem Nervii, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habentur, longissimeque absunt; . . . Atrebates, Ambiani, Morini, etc. . . . Condrusos, Eburones, etc., qui . . . Germani appellantur, arbitramur ad quadraginta milia.

## CHAPTER 5

80. obsides: *as hostages*. adduci iussit: 151. Quae: 115, *j*.

83. rei publicae: *w. intersit*, 65, *c. intersit*: 141.

85. conflagrandum: 163. id fieri posse: *that this could be done*, depending on docet, l. 82.

89. Postquam vidit: 137.

90. neque . . . abesse, cognovit: *and learned that by this time they were not far distant*.

91. ab eis exploratoribus: *w. cognovit*.

92. flumen: *w. traducere*, 75, *b. quod*: agreeing in gender *w. flumen*.

94. castra: remains of this fortification are still found at Berry-au-Bac. Quae res: *this maneuver*, subj. of muniebat, reddebat, efficiebat. et . . . et . . . et: 175. ripis: 87.

95. post eum quae erant: *the rear*, obj. of reddebat. ab: *from*.

96. commeatus . . . efficiebat: *made it possible for supplies to be brought* (lit. caused that supplies could be brought).

99. altera: *i.e. the south side*.

101. pedum: 63, *d. fossa*: eighteen feet wide at the top; see Introd. 44.

## CHAPTER 6

103. **nomine:** 97.  
 104. **ex itinere:** *i.e.* without besieging it. See Introd. 51.  
**impetu:** 91.  
 105. **sustentatum est:** *impers., they made a defense.*  
 106. **eadem atque Belgarum:** *the same as that of the Belgae.*  
 107. **circumiecta multitudine:** *after a great number had been stationed about.*  
 108. **moenibus:** *dat. w. circumiecta:* 67, *c.*  
 109. **defensoribus:** 83.  
 112. **conicerent:** on the plur. form, see 118, *d.* **nulli:** 72.  
 114. **nobilitate:** 96. **oppido:** 67, *c.*  
 115. **ex eis = eorum.:** the abl. **w. ex** or **de** is often used for the gen. especially after numerals. **legati:** *as envoys*, a pred. noun.  
 116. **nisi:** (*saying that*) *unless.*

## CHAPTER 7

118. **Eo:** referring to Bibrax. **isdem:** *sc. viris.* **ducibus:** *as guides.*  
 119. **Numidas, Cretas:** translate as adj. **w. sagittarios**, though grammatically objects of the verb. The troops referred to were mercenaries, coming from countries noted for their archers and slingers.  
 120. **subsidio oppidanis:** 69, 70.  
 121. **Quorum adventu** (100): *upon whose arrival.* **et:** omit. **Remis** (67, *c*) **accessit:** *was inspired in the Remi.*  
 122. **hostibus** (68) **discessit:** *forsook the enemy.* **eadem de causa = de eadem causa**, 171, *b.*  
 125. **quo** (adv.) = **ad quae.**  
 126. **copiis:** 94. **a:** adv., away. **milibus:** 95.  
 128. **ut:** 130, *f.*  
 129. **milibus:** 86.

## CHAPTER 8

130. **et:** *both.*  
 131. **opinionem virtutis:** *reputation for bravery.* **proelio:** 83.  
 132. **proeliis:** 87. **quid . . . posset:** *how brave the enemy was*, 82 and 141.  
 135. **loco opportuno:** *the position being suitable.* 99, *b*, 2.  
 136. **instruendam:** 164, *c.*



138. *tantum quantum loci: over as much space as. tantum:* 80.  
 139. *quantum: obj. of occupare. loci: 63, note.*  
 140. *ex utraque parte: on each side.*  
 142. *transversam: i.e. at right angles to the length of the hill. See plan.*  
 143. *passuum: 63, d. extremas: 106.*  
 144. *tormenta: see Introd. 56.*  
 145. *tantum poterant: had so much strength, 82.*  
 148. *Hoc facto: 99, b, 1. proxime: cf. Bk. II. chap. 2.*  
 149. *quo: anywhere. opus: indeclinable, see Vocab. subsidio: 69.*  
 151. *eductas = eduxerant.*

## CHAPTER 9

153. *nostrum: w. exercitum.*  
 154. *Hanc, 171, c. si transirent: to see whether, etc., 141. exspectabant: 121.*  
 156. *ut . . . adgrederentur: w. parati.*  
 157. *contendebatur: impers., see Vocab.*  
 158. *secundiore . . . proelio nostris (70): though the cavalry skirmish was more favorable for our men.*  
 161. *demonstratum est: cf. Bk. II. l. 95.*  
 162. *vadis repertis: 99, c.*  
 163. *eo consilio (92) ut expugnarent: with the design of capturing. cui: 67, c.*  
 165. *minus = non. popularentur: after ut.*  
 166. *nobis usui: 70, 69. gerendum: 164, c.*  
 167. *commeatu: 83.*

## CHAPTER 10

- Read Colonel Dodge's description of the battle of the Axona, p. 108.  
 169. *armaturae: 63, d.*  
 170. *ponte: 87.*  
 171. *Hostes: obj. of adgressi; emphatic position, 171, c.*  
 172. *per: over.*  
 173. *reliquos: obj. of reppulerunt. conantes: w. reliquos.*  
 175. *circumventos = circumvenerunt.*

176. *et . . . et: both . . . and. expugnando: 164, d.*

177. *spem se fefellisse: they had been disappointed in the hope* (lit. hope had deceived them). *fefellisse: when the perfect tense repeats the initial consonant, it is called a reduplicated perfect; cf. the perfect of cado, caedo, do, pello, etc. neque = et non.*

178. *pugnandi causa: 165, a, and 171, a. viderunt: repeat ubi.*

180. *domum . . . reverti: for each to return to his own home.*

181. *quorum in fines: into whose country.*

182. *defendendos: 164, note.*

186. *deduxit: it is often best to translate by an English passive, as here, they were led to this decision, etc., by this consideration.*

187. *His persuaderi (67, b, and note) non poterat: they could not be persuaded* (lit. it could not be persuaded to them).

188. *neque (= et non) . . . ferrent: i.e. if they delayed.*

#### CHAPTER 11

190. *re: plan. Note the force of the seven ablatives in ll. 190-192.*

192. *cum peteret, properaret: 138.*

193. *domum: 79, a. fecerunt ut . . . videretur: made their departure look, etc.*

194. *fugae: 73.*

195. *speculatores: probably referring to individual spies, while exploratoribus (l. 198) refers to bands of scouts.*

196. *discederent: 141.*

198. *re: the fact, that the Belgae had retreated. qui moraretur: 135.*

200. *His: w. praefecit, 67, c.*

202. *milia: 80.*

203. *fugientium: as they fled.*

204. *cum (ei) . . . consisterent: since those in the rear . . . halted, 138.*

205. *ventum erat: see Vocab.*

206. *priores praesidium ponerent: (while) those in front sought refuge.*

210. *quantum . . . spatium: as the length of the day allowed.*

CHAPTER 12

213. *priusquam reciperent*: *before they could recover*, 137, *f*.  
 216. *ex itinere*: cf. Bk. II. chap. 6, l. 104.  
 217. *ab defensoribus*: 83.  
 219. *paucis defendentibus*: *though the defenders were few*, 99 *b*, 4.  
 220. *vineas*: for a description, see Introd. 53, *agere*: see Vocab. *quaeque = et ea quae*.  
 223. *iacto*: *constructed*. *aggere, turribus*: see Introd. 52, 54.  
 224. *constitutis*: *set up*.  
 225. *ante*: adv. *audierant*: *had heard of*.  
 227. *petentibus Remis*: *at the request of the Remi*. *ut conservarentur*: 145, *a*.

CHAPTER 13

228. *obsidibus*: *as hostages*. *primis*: *the chief men*; abl. abs. w. *acceptis*.  
 229. *Galbae*: cf. chap. 4, l. 68.  
 230. *deditionem*: see Vocab.  
 231. *Qui cum = cum ei*, *i.e.* the Bellovaci.  
 235. *voce*: their language was Celtic, not Latin, of course.  
 236. *sese . . . venire*: *put themselves under his protection*, etc.  
 238. *accessisset, poneret, petierunt*: note the difference of tense. *pueri*: *children*.  
 239. *more*: 92.

CHAPTER 14

243. *Bellovacos*: the direct forms of this quotation are given below. *in fide . . . fuisse*: *had been on terms of loyalty and friendship with*.  
 244. *impulsos (Bellovacos)*: w. *defecisse et intulisse*.  
 245. *qui dicerent*: *who said*, 154, *b*, not an expression of purpose.  
 246. *perferre*: *were suffering*. *et*: omit.  
 248. *Qui*: supply antecedent *eos* as subject of *profugisse*, 115, *e*.  
 250. *petere*: pred. of *Bellovacos* and *Haeduos*.  
 251. *sua*: *his (characteristic)*.  
 252. *Quod si = et si id*.  
 253. *auxiliis*: 87. *si qua bella*: *whatever wars*.

Direct Forms:—

**Bellovaci** omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Haeduae fuerunt; **impulsi** ab suis principibus, qui dicebant Haeduos a Caesare in servitutem redactos omnes indignitates . . . perferre, et ab Haeduis **defecerunt** et populo Romano bellum intulerunt. Qui eius consili principes fuerant, quod intellegebant quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent in Britanniam profugerunt. Petunt non solum **Bellovaci** sed, etiam pro his **Haedui** ut tua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos **utaris**. Quod si feceris, Haeduorum auctoritatem apud omnes Belgas **amplificabis**, quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella **inciderunt**, sustentare consuerunt.

#### CHAPTER 15

256. **honoris causa**: see Vocab. Diviciaci: 63, c.

258. **magna auctoritate**: 96.

259. **multitudine**: 97.

263. **Nervii**: "The people, whom of all his enemies Caesar most respected and of whom he wrote with one of those rare touches of enthusiasm that here and there relieve the severity of his narrative, were the Nervii." Holmes.

265. **esse mercatoribus**: 72. **pati**: (*they*) allow.

267. **quod . . . existimarent**: 138, a. For the same thought, cf. Bk. I. chap. 1, l. 10.

268. **magnae virtutis**: 63, d.

269. **qui deditissent**: 138, b.

#### CHAPTER 16

273. **triduum**: 80.

275. **amplius milia**: 86, b. **abesse**, 151.

277. **finitimis**: 52.

280. **mulieres**: obj. of coniecisse.

281. **quique** = et eos qui.

282. **quo**: adv. **exercitui esset**: *the army had*, 72.

#### CHAPTER 17

285. **qui deligant**: 135. **castris**: 73.

286. **ex Belgis** = **Belgarum**: w. complures.

287. **una**: *along with him*. **ex his** = **horum**.

288. *eorum . . . perspecta*: *having noticed the usual marching order of our army at that time* (lit. the custom of march of those days).

290. *inter singulas legiones*: *between the several legions*.

291. *numerus*: *amount*.

292. *quicquam negoti*: *any difficulty*, 63, *e*.

293. *spatium*: 80.

294. *sub sarcinis*: see Introd. 42.

295. *futurum (esse)*: *the result would be*.

297. *Adiuvabat*, etc.: the subj. is the clause beginning w. *quod*, and the obj. is *consilium*, but translate as if passive, *the plan of those who, etc., was supported by the fact that*, etc.

298. *quod Nervii*: w. *effecerant* (l. 304). *cum*: causal. *nihil possent*: *had no power*.

299. *quicquid . . . copiis*: *whatever strength they have consists in infantry*.

300. *quo impedirent*: 135, *a*.

302. *teneris . . . inflexis*: *by cutting into and bending over young trees*.

303. *in latitudinem enatis*: *by letting grow sidewise*.

305. *quo*: adv. *intrari posset*: impers., *one could enter*.

## CHAPTER 18

309. *castris*: 69.

311. *supra*: chap. 16.

312. *acclivitate*: 91.

313. *huic*: 73. *passus*: 80.

314. *ab*: *at*.

316. *secundum*: prep.

318. *pedum*: 63, *d*.

## CHAPTER 19

320. *aliter . . . ac*: *was different from what* (lit. had itself otherwise than).

322. *consuetudine*: 92.

324. *conlocarat* = *conlocaverat*.

325. *praesidio*: 69.

330. *neque*: = *et cum . . . non*. *longius . . . finem . . . pertinebant*: *farther than the open places reached* (lit. than the limit to which the open places lay extended).

331. cedentes (sc. eos): *them as they retreated.*  
 335. quod tempus = tempus quod.  
 337. sese confirmaverant: *had resolved to do.*  
 341. et . . . et . . . et: 175.  
 343. adverso: see Vocab.

## CHAPTER 20

345. Caesari: 71. erant agenda: 39 and 163. vexillum: a large red flag showing that there was to be a battle; the tuba (l. 347) sounded the call to fall into line.  
 346. proponendum: sc. erat (or erant) with this and following verbs, 163. quod: rel.  
 347. opere: i.e. the fortifying of the camp, chap. 19, l. 334.  
 349. qui: sc. antecedent ei, as subj. of arcessendi. aggeris: material for the rampart (of the camp). petendi causa: 164, a.  
 353. difficultatibus: 70. subsidio: 69.  
 355. quid oporteret: depending on praescribere and doceri, 141.  
 357. singulis: *respective.* singulos: *the several.*  
 359. nihil iam: *no longer.*  
 360. videbantur: *seemed best.*

## CHAPTER 21

362. necessariis . . . imperatis: *having given the necessary commands.* cohortandos: note the number and use of the gerundives in this chapter; see 164.  
 363. quam in partem: *to whatever part* (of the camp).  
 364. non longiore . . . quam: *no longer than* (to say).  
 368. quam . . . posset: *a spear's throw*; cf. our "a stone's throw."  
 370. pugnantibus: sc. eis, 67, c.  
 371. insignia: i.e. crests of the shields and other ornaments.  
 372. scutis: 83. The shields were covered with leather when not in use.  
 374. Quam . . . in partem . . . devenit: *to whatever position each man happened to come.*  
 375. quaeque: *and whatever.*  
 376. ad: *by.*



## CHAPTER 22

379. *quam: than.*

381. *aliae alia: 117. saepibus: 87.*

383. *neque certa . . . poterant: this is the independent clause. conlocari: w. poterant. neque quid . . . provideri (poterat); nor could it be foreseen what need there was in each position.*

## CHAPTER 23

388. *ut: just as.*

389. *acie = aciei. Order: pilis emissis celeriter compulerunt ex superiore loco in flumen Atrebatas exanimatos, etc.*

391. *ea pars: i.e. of the Roman army.*

392. *conantes: sc. eos.*

393. *Ipsi: the Roman soldiers.*

395. *resistentes: acc. agreeing w. hostes.*

399. *ipsis: 114, a.*

400. *fere: 171, f.*

402. *non magno intervallo: at no great distance, 95, b.*

403. *duce Boduognato: 99, a, 3.*

406. *summum castrorum locum: the height occupied by the camp.*

## CHAPTER 24

407. *levis armaturae: 63, d, and Introd. 29.*

409. *pulsos: sc. esse. dixeram: chap. 19, l. 340.*

411. *calones: w. mandabant (l. 415).*

412. *nostros victores: our victorious troops.*

417. *alii aliam: 117, b. ferebantur: see Vocab.*

418. *Treveri: used as adj., of the Treveri.*

419. *quorum opinio, whose reputation.*

421. *cum: conj. w. vidissent (l. 424). compleri: was filling, 151.*

424. *desperatis nostris rebus: despairing of our situation. domum: 79, a.*

425. *Romanos pulsos (esse): w. renuntiaverunt, 151. castris: 88.*

## CHAPTER 25

428. *Caesar . . . possent (l. 445): in this long sentence of eighteen lines, notice the verbs expressing the action of Caesar: profectus, (ubi) vidit, (scuto) detracto, processit (main verb),*

(centurionibus) appellatis, cohortatus, iussit. *cohortatione*: cf. chap. 21, l. 364.

429. *signis conlatis*: *i.e.* instead of being placed at regular intervals.

431. *sibi esse impedimento*, *e c.*: *hindered one another* (lit. were for a hindrance to themselves) *in fighting*.

432. For *centurio*, *signifer*, *primipilus*, *manipulus*, see Vocab. and Intro. 37 and 49.

435. *Baculo*: distinguished for bravery also in Bk. III. chap. 5, and Bk. VI. chap. 38.

437. *tardiores*: *rather slack*. *ab novissimis*: *in the rear*.

440. *vidit*: repeated from l. 431. *rem*: *matters*.

441. *quod . . . posset*: 134.

442. *scuto militi* (68) *detracto*: *snatching a shield from a soldier*.

445. *quo possent*: 135, *a*.

448. *in extremis suis rebus*: *in his own extreme peril*.

## CHAPTER 26

452. *ut . . . coniungerent . . . inferrent*: secondary obj. of *monuit*, 145, *a*.

453. *conversa . . . inferrent*: *face about and advance* (lit. bear the standards turned). *aliis alii*: *to one another*, 117.

459. *summo*: 106.

460. *Labienus*: Caesar's chief lieutenant, who was in command of legions IX and X.

461. *gererentur*: 141.

462. *subsidio nostris*: 69, 70. *Qui cum* (115, *f*): *w. cognovissent* (l. 465).

463. *quo . . . esset*: *what the situation was*.

465. *nihil . . . fecerunt*: *made all possible haste* (lit. made nothing (of) left (63, *e*) for speed).

## CHAPTER 27

468. *procubuissent*: 142, depending on *redintegrarent*.

469. *scutis*: abl. *w. innixi*. *calones*: (*and*) *the camp followers*, nom. case.

470. *inermes*: *w. calones*. *armatis*: 67, *c*.

471. *vero*: 171, *e*. *fugae*: cf. chap. 24.

472. *se praeferrent*: *w. ut*, l. 468, *tried to surpass*; tense, 121, *b*; mood, 136.

474. *spe*: see *Vocab.*

476. *iacentibus*: *upon the fallen*, 160.

478. *qui superessent*: *the survivors*. *ut*: *as if*. *conicerent*, *remitterent*: *w. ut* in l. 475.

479. *ut . . . transire*: *so that it ought not to be supposed that men of such bravery dared cross, etc., without reason*.

482. *facilia*: *pred. adj.* *ex*: *instead of*.

"So ended this wild fight . . . a soldier's battle, and withal the battle of a great man. Within an hour it was over, fought and well nigh lost and won." Read Holmes, Dodge, or Froude, on this battle with the Nervii.

## CHAPTER 28

487. *dixeramus*: cf. chap. 16. *cum*: *since*. *victoribus, etc.*: *they thought that nothing was difficult for the victors*, 70.

488. *omnium*: *w. consensu*.

492. *vix*: *modifies quingentos*.

493. *possent*: 134.

494. *usus*: *sc. esse*. *videretur*: *might be seen*.

## CHAPTER 29

498. *supra*: chap. 16.

502. *Quod cum*: *while this (town)*. *ex . . . partibus*: *round about*.

505. *amplius pedum*: 86, b.

507. *conlocabant*: *note the tense*.

508. *Ipsi . . . prognati*: cf. chap. 4, l. 47. *ex Cimbris*: 84.

510. *agere*: *drive*, referring to the animals included in the *impedimenta* (*possessions*).

511. *citra*: *i.e. the west side*. *custodiam*: *as a guard*.

512. *una*: *with it*.

513. *Hi*: *i.e. the 6000*. *obitum*: the Teutoni were defeated by Marius at the battle of Aquae Sextiae, 102 B.C.; the Cimbri, in 101 B.C., by Marius and Catulus in the battle of Vercellae.

514. *cum . . . defenderent*: *i.e. they carried on offensive and defensive warfare*.

## CHAPTER 30

516. **primo**: adv. *at first*. **adventu**: 100.  
 519. **pedum duodecim**: *i.e.* in height, 63, *d*.  
 520. **milium**: sc. **pedum**, rather than **passuum**.  
 523. **inridere, increpitare**: 152.  
 524. **a** (adv.) **tanto spatio** (95): *so far away*. **quibusnam**: implying derision.  
 525. **homines**: w. **confident**.  
 526. Translate the parenthesis last in the sentence. **Gallis** (70): *in the eyes of the Gauls*. **prae**: *in comparison with*.  
 528. **in**: *upon*.  
 529. **confident**: a quoted question, 154, *d*.

## CHAPTER 31

530. **vero**: *but*, 171, *e*. **moveri**: sc. **turrim**.  
 532. **qui**: w. **dixerunt** (l. 536). **locuti**: *speaking*.  
 533. **qui . . . possent**: 134, *c*.  
 536. **Unum**: obj.  
 537. **pro**: *in accordance with*.  
 538. **ne . . . despoliaret**: in appos. w. **unum**, 145, *a*.  
 539. **armis**: 83.  
 • 540. **invidere**: 67, *b*.  
 541. **traditis armis**: 99, *b*, 3. **Sibi praestare**: *impers., it was better for them*.  
 543. **per cruciatum interfici**: *to be tortured to death*.

## CHAPTER 32

545. **consuetudine**: 92.  
 546. **merito**: 90.  
 547. **attigisset**: *should touch*. What would be the form of this verb in *dir. disc.*, see 155, *b*.  
 549. **in**: *in the case of*.  
 550. **ne . . . inferrent**: *not to do any harm, etc.* **quam**: 116.  
 552. **facere**: sc. **sē** as subj. *i.e.* they would do; the present tense is used here to express the future action more vividly.  
 554. **iacta**: w. **multitudine**. **prope**: adv. w. **adaequarent**.  
 555. **summam**: *top*.

## CHAPTER 33

560. *quam*: 116.

561. *Illi*: translate w. *fecerunt* (l. 569). *ante inito consilio*: according to a plan previously formed.

564. *cum eis*: w. *armis*.

565. *ex cortice*, (*ex*) *viminibus*: abl. of material, 84.

567. *qua*: adv., *where*.

571. *eo*: adv. *concursum est*: impers., *they rushed*.

572. *ut a viris fortibus . . . debuit*: translate actively, as *brave men were bound to fight*, etc.

573. *spe*: see Vocab. *qui iacerent*: 134.

575. *una*: *alone*.

579. *sectionem*: *booty*, including the people as well as their property.

581. *capitum*: gen. pl. of *caput*, *persons*. *milium*: pred. gen., 66.

## CHAPTER 34

583. *Crasso*: w. *certior factus est*. He is mentioned also in Bk. I. chap. 52, and Bk. III. chaps. 7, 8, 9, etc.

584. *Venetos*: a war with this tribe occurred the following year; see Bk. III. chaps. 9-16.

## CHAPTER 35

590. *barbaros*: the Romans applied this term to all outside their national boundaries.

591. *incolerent*: 142.

593. *pollicerentur*: 135. *Quas* = *eas*. *Italiam*: *i.e.* north of the Rubicon. For the extent of Caesar's province, see Introd. 14.

596. *quaeque* = *et eas . . . quae*.

599. *ex*: in accordance with. *supplicatio*: decreed by the senate. The longest thanksgiving previously observed was for twelve days in honor of Pompey's victory over Mithridates.

## BOOK III

## CHAPTER 1

The events of chaps. 1-6 occurred before the close of 57 B.C., and might therefore have been included in the narrative of Bk. II. The campaign of 56 B.C. begins in chap. 7.

1. in *Italia*m: emphatic by position, 171, *c.* *Galbam*: twelve years later he is said to have been one of Caesar's assassins.

4. *summas*: *the tops of*, 106.

5. *iter per Alpes*: now the Great St. Bernard Pass.

7. *mercatores*: Caesar knew of the commercial advantages which his conquest would gain for the Romans. *Huic*: *i.e.* *Galba*, 67, *a.*

8. *uti* . . . *conlocaret*: obj. clause w. *permisit*.

9. *hiemandi causa*: cf. *causa mittendi* (l. 5).

14. *vico*: not a walled town, which was called an *oppidum*.

17. *Cum*: causal.

19. *vacuam*: pred. adj. w. *relictam*, *left vacant*.

## CHAPTER 2

25. *impenderent*: 154, *b.*

27. *ut* . . . *caperent*: noun cl. in appos. w. *id*, 145, *d.*

29. *legionem*: w. *despiciebant*\* (l. 32). *neque eam plenissimam*: *and that indeed not very full*. The twelfth legion was reduced not only by the withdrawal of two cohorts and the absence of individuals, but by the severe losses in the battle with the *Nervii*, Bk. II. chap. 23.

35. *accedebat*: see *Vocab.*

36. *quod* . . . *habebant*: 144. *ab se*: 83. *abstractos*: *sc. esse*. *obsidum nomine*: *as hostages*.

39. *sibi persuasum habebant*: *they believed* (lit. had it persuaded to themselves).

## CHAPTER 3

41. *acceptis*: 99, *c.*

42. *perfectae*: agreeing with the nearest subject, 103, *a, b.* *neque satis esset provisum*: *impers., and sufficient provision had not been made*.

44. *nihil timendum (esse)*: *there should be no fear*.



- 45. *consilio*: *i.e.* of the officers.
- 47. *tantum*: 104. *periculi*: 63, *e.*
- 49. *neque subsidio veniri*: *sc. posset, and (since) reinforcements could not come.*
- 54. *maiori parti placuit*: *the majority decided, 67, b.*

#### CHAPTER 4

- 57. *vix*: *w. daretur, 171, c. eis rebus conlocandis*: *dat. of purpose, 164, b.*
- 59. *decurrere* and six following *inf.*: 152.
- 62. *ex loco superiore*: *i.e. the top of the fortifications.*
- 64. *hoc*: *on this account, 90.*
- 66. *quarum rerum*: *w. nihil.*
- 67. *non modo (= non modo non) . . . dabatur*: *not only was no chance given the wearied man, etc.*
- 69. *sui recipiendi*: 164, *a.*

#### CHAPTER 5

- 71. *iam pugnaretur*: *they had fought.*
- 74. *res . . . casum*: *the conflict had been prolonged to a critical situation.*
- 76. *Baculus*: the brave centurion of Bk. II. chap. 25.
- 77. *diximus*: "we," the writer.
- 80. *extremum auxilium*: *last resource.*
- 82. *certiores facit*: here = *commands. intermitterent* and following verbs are subjunctive, instead of imperative which they would be in direct discourse, 154, *c.*

#### CHAPTER 6

- 86. *Quod (rel.)*: supply antecedent *id* as obj. of *faciunt. omnibus portis*: there were four gates. See Introd. 43.
- 87. *quid fieret*: 141.
- 88. *sui colligendi*: *sing. form of the gerundive to agree w. the sing. form of sui, which of course is pl. here in meaning.*
- 89. *spem*: see Vocab.
- 95. *fusis armisque exutis*: *routed and deprived of their arms. armis*: 83.
- 97. *saepius*: *too often.*

98. *alio consilio*: with one design, to open the way for the merchants.

99. *aliis rebus*: other difficulties, the conflict with the mountain tribes.

## CHAPTER 7

105. *cum*: although.

106. *superatis Belgis*: 57 B.C.

107. *Germanis*: under Ariovistus, 58 B.C.

108. *Illyricum*: one of Caesar's provinces. *eas quoque nationes*: i.e. as well as those of Gaul.

111. *P. Crassus*: cf. Bk. I. chap. 52, and Bk. II. chap. 34. *proximus mare*: 78, a.

112. *hiemabat*: note the tense, 121.

114. *complures*: w. *civitates*.

## CHAPTER 8

118. *civitatis*: w. *auctoritas*. *amplissima*: pred. adj.

119. *orae*: 63, e. *et*: 175.

120. *consuerunt*: are accustomed.

121. *scientia*: 97.

122. *in . . . aperti*: on the boisterous, vast, and open sea (lit. in the great force of, etc.).

123. *omnes*, obj., *vectigales*, pred. adj., w. *habent*.

124. *ab his . . . retinendi*: they begin by arresting (lit. a beginning of arresting is made, etc.).

126. *dedissent*: 154, b.

131. *principes*: acc. w. *per*. *nihil acturos (esse)*: that they would do nothing.

138. *remittat*: subjunct. for a direct imperative, *remitte*, 154, c.

## CHAPTER 9

140. *aberat longius*: during his absence Caesar had held a conference at Luca, in Etruria, with the other triumvirs, Pompey and Crassus, by which his term as governor of Gaul was extended to 49 B.C. *naves longas*: ships of war: see Introd. 57.

143. *cum . . . potuit*: cf. Bk. II. chap. 2, l. 20.

145. *cognito adventu*: causal.

146. *simul quod*: and also because. *admisissent*: see Vocab.

147. *legatos . . . coniectos*: explaining *facinus*, in *arresting envoys*, etc. *quod nomen*: a name which, referring to *legatos*.

151. *instituunt*: *begin*. *hoc*: on this account, 90. *maiore spe*: abl. abs., but translate with greater hope.

152. *natura*: 90. *esse concisa*: depending on *sciebant*.

156. *ut*: *although*, 139.

157. *posse*: this and following inf. depend on *perspiciebant* (l. 162).

158. *neque*: w. *novisse*.

160. *longe aliam atque*: *very different from what it was*.

166. *Socios*: *as allies*.

168. *Britannia*: "Caesar had already planned to invade Britain, and to reduce the Veneti was a necessary first step, for while he might push his way between their fleets, they could seriously threaten his rear during his absence." Dodge.

## CHAPTER 10

172. *iniuria retentorum equitum*: the crime of arresting knights; namely, Silius, Velanius, etc., members of the great Roman social class, the *equites*.

173. *datis obsidibus*: *after hostages had been given*.

174. *ne . . . arbitrentur*: the fifth reason for the war. *hac parte* (= *natione*) *neglecta*: *if this tribe were let go unpunished*.

178. *autem*: *furthermore*, 171, e.

179. *priusquam conspirarent*: 137, f.

180. *partiendum*: the gerundive of a dep. verb is pass. in meaning.

## CHAPTER 11

183. *proximi flumini*: 73. *Huic*: *him*, 67, b.

184. *adeat, contineat, prohibeat*: *that he should go*, etc. The clauses are used without a connective as obj. of *mandat*. What mood would be used in *dir. disc.*? 154, c. *officio*: *allegiance*.

185. *auxilio*: 69.

187. *cohortibus legionariis*: *i.e.* of regular soldiers. The allied forces were in cohorts, but not in legions.

192. *qui . . . curet*: *to see that this force be kept apart*, 135.

193. *Brutum*: this lieutenant, as well as Labienus, was among Caesar's assassins in 43 B.C.; see *Intro.* 19.

## CHAPTER 12

198. *eius modi fere ut: generally such that. posita: sc. oppida.*  
 199. *extremis: 106. pedibus, navibus (l. 202): 87.*  
 200. *cum: whenever. quod: rel.*  
 203. *utraque re: in either case, i.e. approach by foot or by boat.*  
 204. *operis: i.e. the fortifications which the enemy of the Veneti might construct.*  
 205. *extruso mari: abl. abs. his: (i.e. aggere et molibus), abl. abs. w. adaequatis.*  
 206. *moenibus: dat., 67, c. fortunis: dat. w. desperare.*  
 207. *cuius rei: referring to navium.*  
 210. *eo: on this account, 90.*  
 212. *summa: w. difficultas.*  
 213. *raris ac prope nullis: few and far apart.*

## CHAPTER 13

215. *namque: (and the Veneti did not have these difficulties) for.*  
 216. *carinae: sc. erant with this and following nominatives, prorae, etc.*  
 220. *totae: entirely, 105. ad . . . perferendam: 164, c.*  
 221. *ex trabibus: 84. pedalibus in altitudinem: a foot thick.*  
 223. *crassitudine: of (or having) the thickness, 96. ferreis: w. catenis.*  
 225. *eius: of it, i.e. lini.*  
 226. *eo: on this account, 90.*  
 228. *tanta onera navium = naves tanti oneris.*  
 230. *nostrae classi: dat. of possessor, our fleet had.*  
 231. *una: adv., only.*  
 232. *reliqua: everything else. pro: considering. essent: w. ut, 136.*  
 233. *enim: 171, c. eis: 67, b. nostrae: sc. naves.*  
 234. *rostro: this was made of bronze, for ramming the enemy's vessels.*  
 237. *accedeabat: another advantage was. se vento dedissent: ran before the wind.*  
 238. *et . . . et . . . et: 175. ferrent: w. ut, 145, c.*  
 240. *navibus: 71.*

## CHAPTER 14

244. *captis oppidis*: 99, b, 5. *neque eis noceri* (impers., 67, note). *posse*: *no injury could be done to them*.

245. *expectandam*: sc. *esse*.

248. *nostris*: dat. w. *adversae*, 73.

249. *satis Bruto*: w. *constabat*, *it was not very clear to Brutus*.

251. *quid agerent*: 141, a.

252. *Rostro*: 87.

253. *turribus excitatis*: concessive, *though*, etc.

254. *ex*: *on*.

258. *non absimili forma*: *having a form not unlike (that)*.

259. *muralium falcium*: see Introd. 55. *His*: abl. of means, emphatic position.

263. *navibus*: dat., 70.

267. *res*: *conflict, action*.

268. *paulo fortius*: *unusually brave*.

## CHAPTER 15

271. *cum circumsteterant*: 137, note. *singulas (naves)*: *i.e. of the enemy*.

272. *binae ac ternae*: *two or three Roman ships*.

273. *Quod postquam = et postquam id*.

277. *quo = in quam*. *ferebat*: sc. *eas* as obj.

279. *ad negotium conficiendum*: *for ending the fight*.

283. *cum*: concessive.

This was the first recorded fight on the Atlantic Ocean. Read Dodge, pp. 131-139, and Holmes, pp. 62-66.

## CHAPTER 16

285. *orae maritimae*: cf. Bk. III. chap. 8, l. 119.

286. *cum . . . tum* (l. 288): *not only . . . but*.

288. *navium quod*: *what ships*, 63, e.

290. *neque quo . . . reciperent neque . . . defenderent*: *no place to retreat and no means of defense* (lit. *whither they might retreat, etc.*), 135.

292. *vindicandum*: impers., *punishment must be inflicted*.

295. *sub corona*: captives were crowned with a wreath when they were to be sold into slavery.

## CHAPTER 17

296. *Dum geruntur*: 137, c. Sabinus: cf. chap. 11.  
 301. *diebus*: time within which, 100.  
 305. *ex Gallia = Galliae*: w. *undique*.  
 308. *omnibus rebus*: *in all respects*.  
 309. *cum*: *although*. *spatio*: 95.  
 311. *hostibus*: 70.  
 317. *teneret*: subjunct. in indir. disc., depending on *existimabat*.  
 318. *legato dimicandum*: *a lieutenant ought to fight*, 71 and 163.

## CHAPTER 18

324. *quibus . . . prematur*: 141, obj. of *docet*.  
 325. *neque longius . . . educat*: *and not later than the next night Sabinus will lead out*, etc.  
 329. *negoti bene gerendi*: *of success*.  
 330. *iri oportere*: *impers.*, (*but that*) *they ought to go*.  
 337. *sit concessum*: 137, f. *uti capiant . . . contentant*: noun clauses, subj. of *sit concessum*.  
 339. *ut explorata victoria*: *as though victory were assured*.  
 340. *quibus compleant*: 135.

## CHAPTER 19

343. *circiter*: adv. modifying *mille* (adj.).  
 344. *quam minimum spati*: *as little time as possible*.  
 346. *cupientibus*: dat.  
 348. *Factum est*: translate the ablatives first, 90.  
 352. *Quos*: obj. of *consecuti*.  
 354. *equites*: nom.  
 358. *ut, though*: *sic, yet*. *animus, spirit*: *mens, will*.

## CHAPTER 20

362. *Crassus*: cf. Bk. I. chap. 52, Bk. II. chap. 34, Bk. III. chap. 11.  
 363. *ante*: Bk. I. chap. 1. *et*: *both*.  
 364. *ex tertia parte*: *as the third part*.  
 366. *paucis ante annis*: in 78 B.C., in the war with Sertorius.  
 372. *Tolosa*: etc., 83, b. *Narbone*: Narbo was the capital of the Roman province which was called *Narbonensis*.



374. *finitimae*: agrees w. *civitates* and governs *regionibus*, 73.  
*evocatis*: see Vocab.

## CHAPTER 21

384. *victoriis*: abl. governed by *freti*.  
 385. *quid . . . possent*: subj. of *perspici* (l. 387).  
 386. *imperatore*: referring to Caesar. *adulescentulo duce*: referring to Crassus, 99, *a*, 3.  
 391. *Illi*: subj. of *mittunt*. l. 396.  
 392. *cuniculis*: so named from their resemblance to rabbits' burrows. *cuius rei*: w. *peritissimi*, 64.  
 394. *diligentia*: 90.  
 398. *faciunt*: *they do so*.

## CHAPTER 22

402. *uti . . . fruantur*: noun clause.  
 403. *commedis*: w. *fruantur*, 88. *quorum amicitiae*: *to whose friendship*.  
 404. *si (and if) . . . accidat*: 140.  
 405. *ferant*: w. *uti* (l. 402).  
 408. *recusaret*: 134. *cum his*: *i.e.*, *sexcentis devotis*, repeated from l. 401.  
 412. *impetravit*: the mercy of Crassus is notable.

## CHAPTER 23

416. *munitum*: part. *diebus*: time within which, w. *expugnatum (esse)*.  
 420. *citerioris Hispaniae*: north of the Ebro. Spain had become a Roman province 150 years before this time: case, 66. *finitimae*: nom. pl.  
 424. *Duces*: *as guides*, 62. *Sertorius*: a partisan of Marius, who, after the death of that general, continued in Spain the struggle of the Marian or popular faction against the government at Rome.  
 425. *omnes annos*: 82-72 B.C.  
 427. *loca capere*: *to choose positions*.  
 428. *Quod*: *this*; the following clauses are in appos.  
 433. *cunctandum*: 119, *d*. *quin decertaret*: *to fight*, 145, *e*.

## CHAPTER 24

436. *duplici*: owing to the small number of men, they were stationed two cohorts deep instead of three. See Introd. 47.

437. *in mediam aciem*: the auxiliaries were ordinarily stationed on the wings.

438. *expectabat*: *waited to see*.

443. *coepissent*: 155, *b*.

444. *sub sarcinis*: see Introd. 42. *infirmiores animo*: *discouraged*.

448. *hostes*: nom. *alacriores*: pred. adj.

## CHAPTER 25

454. *vallo*: 83.

455. *quibus*: dat. w. *confidebat*, 67.

456. *lapidibus subministrandis*: *by supplying stones*, 87.

457. *speciem atque opinionem*: *appearance and impression*.

462. *ab (at) decumana porta*: see Introd. 43.

## CHAPTER 26

467. *praesidio castris*: 69, 70. *ab labore*: w. an abstract noun personified, *ab* may be used as w. a personal agent, 85.

472. *videri*: sc. *possent*.

473. *quid rei*: *what*, 63, *e*.

474. *quod*: rel., *as*.

477. *per*: *over*.

## CHAPTER 27

487. *tempore confisae*: *confido* generally takes the abl. when used of *things*, the dat. when used of *persons*.

## CHAPTER 28

"The whole of Gaul had now been reduced save only the land of the Morini and Menapii, which extended along the coast southerly from the mouth of the Rhine to modern Boulogne, the land which the Dutch have since so laboriously rescued from the ocean. These peoples had never sent ambassadors to Caesar, and when he approached their territory, taught by defeat of other Gauls, they retired into their forests and morasses of the coast and bade him defiance." Dodge.

490. *omni Gallia: i.e. the rest of Gaul.*  
 491. *qui essent, misissent: 134. neque: and . . . not.*  
 492. *arbitratus: thinking, perf. part. as pres.*  
 494. *alia . . . ac: other than.*  
 504. *longius: too far. impeditioribus: too much obstructed.*  
*locis: 101.*

## CHAPTER 29

507. *quis: w. impetus. inermibus . . . militibus: 99.*  
 511. *spatio confecto: i.e. cleared of timber.*  
 512. *extrema: the rear of.*  
 513. *ipsi: (and when) they themselves. eius modi: see Vocab.*

## BOOK IV

## CHAPTER 1

1. *qui: agreeing w. annus, in gender, though we should expect quae in agreement w. hieme, 115 b.*

2. *Pompeio, Crasso: consuls, 55 B.C. They were also Caesar's colleagues in the triumvirate; see Introd. 12. Germani: in appos. w. Usipetes and Tencteri.*

5. *Suebis: mentioned first in Bk. I. chaps. 37 and 54.*

10. *singula milia: a thousand each.*

12. *hi, illi: 113, b.*

14. *ratio atque usus: theory and practice.*

15. *agri: 63, e; land was common property, tilled each year by an alternate section of the people.*

18. *maximam partem: to a great extent, adverbial acc.*

19. *multum . . . venationibus: they are great hunters. Order: quae res vires alit et . . . efficit, cibi genere . . . vitae, quod . . . faciunt.*

20. *officio adsuefacti: accustomed to no duty.*

24. *vestitus: w. quicquam, 63, e.*

## CHAPTER 2

27. *Mercatoribus est: 72. aditus: sc. ad eos, i.e. the Suebi. Order: ut habeant (eos) quibus vendant (135) quae ceperint (142).*

28. *quam quo: than because, used w. implied negative. The Germans desired to sell to the traders, rather than buy from them.*

29. *iumentis . . . importatis utuntur: they import for use.*  
 33. *summi . . . efficiunt: render (capable) of greatest labor,*  
 66, 136.  
 39. *quamvis pauci: however few they are.*  
 40. *vinum: cf. the Nervii, Bk. II. chap. 15.*

## CHAPTER 3

43. *maximam laudem; a sign of greatest glory.*  
 44. *agros: subj. of vacare; vacare is intrans.*  
 46. *a Suebis: of the Suebi (lit. away from the Suebi).*  
 49. *captus: noun, standard.*  
 53. *adsuefacti: used to. cum: concessive.*

## CHAPTER 4

57. *In eadem causa: they were subject to the Suebi, just as the Ubii were.*  
 64. *trans flumen: i.e. on the German side.*  
 65. *cis Rhenum: i.e. on the Gallic side.*  
 67. *vi contendere: to force a passage.*  
 70. *viam: 81.*  
 75. *His, eorum: referring to the Menapii. priusquam . . . fieret: 137 f.*

## CHAPTER 5

82. *nihil his (dat.) committendum: no confidence should be placed in them.*  
 83. *Est hoc consuetudinis: there is this custom (lit. of custom, 66).*  
 84. *uti: w. cogant, quaerant, circumsistat, cogat, forming noun clauses in appos. w. hoc.*  
 87. *quibusque = et quibus. quasque = et quas.*  
 90. *quorum: 65, b. eos: obj. of paenitere, but trans., they must repent.*  
 91. *ad . . . respondeant: give answers made to suit their (i.e. the questioners') wish.*

## CHAPTER 6

93. *graviori bello: which would result if the Gauls and Germans would combine against him.*  
 95. *Eo: Where was the army? Cf. Bk. III. chap. 29.*

96. *facta*: sc. *esse*. *missas*: sc. *esse*.

97. *Germanos*: the *Usipetes* and *Tencteri*, who were requested to leave the Rhine and enter farther into Gaul.

98. *postulassent*: *should demand*, 155, *b*.

## CHAPTER 7

108. *a quibus*: referring to *locis*.

109. *iter*: 80.

110. *priores inferre*: *were the first to make*, etc. (lit. made first).

111. *quin . . . contendant*: *to fight*.

113. *resistere*, etc.: in appos. w. *consuetudo*.

114. *Haec*: explained by (se) *venisse*, etc. *dicere*: sc. *se* as subj.

116. *attribuant*: *let them assign*; a quoted command, 154, *c*.

117. *unis*: *alone*. *concedere*: *i.e.* were inferior to.

118. *quibus pares*: 73.

119. *in terris*: *on earth*.

## CHAPTER 8

121. *quae*: obj. of *respondere*, which is to be supplied w. *visum est*.

122. *Sibi esse*: 72.

124. *qui*: sc. antecedent *eos* as subj. of *occupare*.

129. *hoc*: obj. of *imperaturum*, *he would give this command*.

## CHAPTER 9

130. *relatueros (esse)*: *would report*.

131. *post diem tertium*; *the second day after*, as we should say. The Romans said the *third* day, counting the parts of the three days involved.

132. *propius se*: 78, *a*.

136. *hos*: w. *equites*.

## CHAPTER 10

139. *parte*: *branch*.

141. *milibus*: 86.

142. *ex (Lepontiis)*: *in the country of* (lit. from the L.).

145. *Oceano*: 67, *c*.

146. *ingentibusque*: omit *-que*.

148. *ex quibus sunt qui*: *among whom are those who*.

## CHAPTER 11

152. *ut erat constitutum*: see chap. 9.  
 155. *antecessissent*: 142.  
 156. *praemitteret*: *send word*. *pugna*: 83.  
 157. *legatos mittendi*: 165, note. *quorum si*: *and if their*.  
 158. *fecisset*: 118, *a*, and 155, *b*.  
 161. *daret*: *he should give*, 154, *c*.  
 162. *eodem illo pertinere*: *tended to the same end*.  
 166. *quam frequentissimi*: *in as great numbers as possible*.  
*convenirent*: *they should assemble* (let them assemble), 154, *c*.  
 168. *mittit qui nuntiarent*: *sends men to direct*.

## CHAPTER 12

172. *hostes*: *w. perturbaverunt* (l. 178). *ubi primum*: see Vocab.  
 173. *cum*: concessive.  
 174. *amplius . . . equites*: 86, *b*.  
 177. *indutiis*: 69.  
 183. *venissent*: 142.  
 184. *ex equitibus*: *w. cardinal numerals the abi. is commonly used instead of the gen. of the whole*.  
 186. *genere natus*: 84.  
 188. *intercluso* = *qui interclusus erat*, 159.

## CHAPTER 13

194. *iam*: see Vocab.  
 197. *expectare*: subj. of *esse*, 149. *dum augerentur*, 137, *e*.  
 198. *summae dementiae*: 63, *d*, and 66.  
 199. *quantum*: *w. auctoritatis*.  
 203. *cum legatis*: *to the lieutenants* (lit. with, etc.).  
 209. *purgandi sui*: *sui* is plur.; the sing. form of *purgandi* is due to the apparently sing. form of *sui*.  
 211. *de indutiis*: *terms of truce*.  
 212. *Quos*: subj. of *oblatos* (*esse*).

## CHAPTER 14

216. *Acie triplici*: *i.e. the army marched in battle array*.  
 219. *et celeritate et discessu*: explaining *omnibus rebus*.  
 220. *habendi, capiendi*, 165, note.



221. *perturbantur*: the subj. is *qui*. *copiasne . . . prae-staret*: see Vocab. and 141.

223. *Quorum cum* = *et cum eorum*.

229. *cum omnibus suis excesserant*: like the Helvetii, Bk. I.

#### CHAPTER 15

232. *clamore*: of the warriors' families attacked by the Roman cavalry.

233. *signis*: probably the figures of animals, attached to poles.

238. *ad unum omnes*: *all to a man*.

239. *ex timore*: *after the fear*.

245. *libertatem*: *permission*, not liberty.

"The whole nation was exterminated save only the absent cavalry, and but few Romans were wounded. . . . This awful act in the Gallic drama has uniformly received the severest condemnation of thinking men." Dodge.

Plutarch says that in the senate at Rome Caesar's enemies, like Cato, even proposed that he be given up to the Germans. The excuse for the wholesale slaughter could only be that it was necessary to establish the Rhine as the boundary of Gaul and Germany.

#### CHAPTER 16

247. *sibi*: 71. *illa*: *sc. causa*.

249. *suis rebus*: *for their own interests*.

251. *Accessit*: see Vocab.

253. *quam*: subj. of *transisse*, etc. *supra*: chap. 9.

258. *intulissent*: 142. *dederent*: *that they surrender*, obj. cl.

259. *Rhenum*: subject.

261. *cur . . . postularet*: *why did he demand that any control, etc., should belong to him*; *sui*: 66; *imperi*: 63, *e*.

266. *id facere*: *from doing this*. *occupationibus rei publicae*: *by public duties*.

#### CHAPTER 17

276. *transire*: subj. of *esse*.

277. *suae dignitatis*: *consistent with his dignity*, 63, *d*, and 66.

279. *latitudinem*: about a quarter of a mile. The place where the bridge was built cannot be exactly fixed. It is thought, with good authority, to have been between Andernach and Coblenz. "The Roman engineers were accustomed to bridge

ivers; but this was an undertaking of unprecedented difficulty.”  
Holmes.

283. *tigna bina*: *pairs of logs or piles*; obj. of *iungebat*.

284. *dimensa . . . fluminis*: the depth of the river varied, of course.

285. *intervallo*: *i.e.* the space between the logs of each pair.

286. *Haec cum . . . defixerat* (137, note): *when (ever), by means of machines, he had let down these (pairs of logs) and had planted them firmly.*

287. *non sublicae . . . perpendiculum*: *not quite vertically like a pile.*

289. *secundum naturam*: *in the direction of the current, i.e.* slanting down stream. *eis contraria*: *opposite to these (pairs of logs).*

290. *duo*: *sc. tigna*, obj. of *statuebat*.

291. *quadragerum*: *gen. pl. = -orum*. The *dist.* is used because the measure is for each pier. *ab inferiore parte*: *lower down (the river).*

293. *Haec utraque . . . distinebantur*: *these two pairs, after beams had been laid on them two feet thick (as large as was the space between the logs), were kept apart at the ends by two braces, one on each side.*

297. *rerum*: *structure*. *quo maior . . . teneretur*: *the greater the force of the water became, the more closely they were bound and held.*

The description so far is of a single pier or trestle. See plan.

299. *Haec*: *i.e.* the cross-beams.

301. *et (omit) ad inferiorem partem*: *down the stream*. *agebantur*: *were driven in.*

303. *exciperent*: 135. *aliae*: *sc. sublicae agebantur.*

#### CHAPTER 18

308. *coepta erat, coeptus est* (l. 315): see Vocab.

312. *quibus*: *dat. w. respondet.*

314. *quo*: *when, 133, a.*

315. *hortantibus eis*: *upon the urgent advice of those.*

#### CHAPTER 19

325. *uti demigrarent*: *directing that they should, etc.; noun clause depending on nuntios dimisisse.*

327. *possent*: 134.

- 329. **hic**: adv.
- 330. **ibi**: refers to the same place as **hic**.
- 333. **ut . . . iniceret**, etc.: noun clauses explaining **rebus**.
- 334. **obsidione**: 83.
- 336. **profectum (esse)**: from **proficio**.

#### CHAPTER 20

340. **Britanniam**: this expedition to Britain is the first that history records.

342. **subministrata (esse) auxilia**: whether a fact or not, this was a good enough pretext. **si deficeret**: 155, *a*.

344. **si adisset**: 155, *b*.

346. **Gallis**: dat.

347. **illo**: adv.

349. **Gallias**: pl. referring to the divisions, Belgic and Celtic.

352. **usum belli**: *skill in war*.

353. **qui**: w. **portus**. **maiolem**: *rather large*.

#### CHAPTER 21

355. **priusquam faceret**: 137, *f*.

356. **idoneum**: pred. adj. referring to Volusenus, cf. Bk. III. chap. 5.

357. **ut . . . revertatur**: 145, *a*.

360. **traiectus**: *i.e.* across the Strait of Dover.

362. **classem**: antecedent of **quam** and subj. of **convenire**.

370. **ibi**: among the Atrebates.

372. **magni**: *of great value*, 65, *e*.

373. **adeat**, **hortetur**, **nuntiet**: subjunct. in noun clauses.

374. **se**: *i.e.* Caesar.

376. **quantum . . . potuit**: *as far as there was opportunity for one (ei), who, etc.*

#### CHAPTER 22

382. **de consilio**: *for their conduct*, cf. Bk. III. chap. 28.

383. **homines barbari**: *being barbarian men*.

385. **imperasset**: fut. perf. in the dir. disc., 155, *b*. **pollicerentur**: connected by **-que** w. **excusarent**.

389. **has . . . occupationes**: *engaging in such trivial matters*.

390. **anteponendas**: *i.e.* take precedence of the invasion.

394. **quod navium**: *what ships*, 63, *e*.  
 396. **a**: *adv. away*. **milibus**: 95.  
 397. **quo minus possent**: *so that they could not*.  
 401. **ducendum**: *w. exercitum, to be led*.

## CHAPTER 23

405. **solvit**: the infantry sailed from the Portus Itius, the location of which is not known, but was probably modern Wissant. The cavalry sailed from another port, unnamed, eight miles farther east (**ulterior**, l. 406).

409. **Britanniam attigit**: off the cliffs of Dover, as it is supposed.

411. **haec**: *such*.

416. **et**: *both*.

418. **monuit . . . administrarentur**: *he admonished (them) that they should do everything at his bidding and promptly ("on time,") as the principles of warfare and especially as navigation demanded, since it involved quick and unsteady motion (lit. as things which had, etc.)*.

419. **postularent**: subjunct. by attraction, 142. **ut quae . . . haberent**: *rel. causal clause*, 134, *e*.

421. **administrarentur**: subjunct. in a noun clause, depending on **monuit**.

424. **aperro . . . litore**: "the low shore of Romney Marsh." Fowler.

## CHAPTER 24

426. **quo genere**: *a kind (of fighters) which*, 88.

427. **copiis**: 94, *a*.

428. **navibus egredi**: *from disembarking*.

430. **militibus**: *dat. w. desiliendum erat* (71), *the soldiers had to jump down*.

434. **cum**: *while*.

437. **omnino**: *w. imperiti*.

438. **pugnae**: 64.

## CHAPTER 25

441. **barbaris inusitator**: *less familiar to*, etc.

442. **ad usum expeditior**: *more easily controlled*; compared with the transports. The galleys were propelled chiefly by oars.

444. *fundis*: 87. *tormentis*: see *Intro.* 56.  
 450. *qui*: *he who*, 115, *e*.  
 451. *legioni*: 70.  
 452. *Desilite*: 147. *commilitones*: 62, note. *aquilam*: the chief standard of the legion.  
 454. *praestitero*: 125. *cum*: conj.  
 456. *inter se*: *one another*.  
 457. *dedecus*: *i.e.* the disgrace of losing the standard.  
 458. Order: *cum* (*ei*) *ex proximis navibus conspexissent hos*.

## CHAPTER 26

462. *alius alia . . . adgregabat*: *the men from the different ships gathered around whatever standards they had met*.  
 466. *plures*: *and many*, 174.  
 467. *alii*: *while others*, 174.  
 468. *Quod cum* = *et cum id*, 115, *f*.  
 470. *quos*: the antecedent is *his* (l. 471).  
 474. *equites*: cf. chap. 23, l. 405.  
 475. *Hoc . . . defuit*: *this one thing was wanting to Caesar's usual good fortune*.

## CHAPTER 27

479. *quaeque* = *et ea quae*.  
 480. *Commilus, supra*: see chap. 21.  
 482. *illi*: subj. of *comprehenderant*. *e navi egressum*: *when he had landed*.  
 483. *cum*: concessive.  
 487. *ut ignosceretur*: *that they be pardoned*; lit. that it be pardoned (to them), 67, note, and 145, *a*.  
 489. *sine causa*: it could hardly have seemed so to the Britons.  
 490. *ignoscere*: supply *se* as subj.

## CHAPTER 28

496. *post*: w. *quam* = *postquam*. *diem quartum*: we should say *three days after*. The acc. or abl. may be used of the interval between two events.  
 498. *supra*: chap. 22.  
 499. *superiore portu*: called *ulterior portus* in chap. 23.  
 502. *eodem*: adv.

503. *referrentur, deicerentur*: w. ut, l. 501.

505. *quae tamen . . . complerentur*: *which, however, after having cast anchor, when they began to fill with the waves*, 121, b.

506. *adversa nocte*: *though night was coming on* (lit. in the face of the night).

#### CHAPTER 29

508. *luna plena*: August 30, 55 B.C. *qui dies*: *a period which*.

509. *aestus maximos*: the tides in the Strait of Dover are twenty-five feet high; in the Mediterranean they are very slight.

513. *complebat*, etc.: note the tense of incomplete action.

515. *administrandi*: *of managing them, i.e. the ships*.

516. *essent*: w. *inutiles*.

517. *amissis*: *lost*.

520. *quibus possent*: 134.

#### CHAPTER 30

524. *principes*: w. *duxerunt*, l. 530.

528. *hoc*: *on this account*, 90.

530. *optimum factu*: 166, b.

531. *rem*: *the conflict*.

532. *his superatis*: conditional. *reditu*: 83.

535. *castris*: Caesar's. *ex agris deducere*: *i.e. to muster an army*.

#### CHAPTER 31

538. *ex eo quod*: *from the fact that*.

539. *fore . . . accidit*: *that would happen which actually did*.

540. *subsidia comparabat*: *made provision*.

542. Order: *materia earum (navium) quae adflictae erant*, etc. *naves*: 115, c.

543. *quae*: *whatever*.

545. *cum*: causal. *administraretur*: *the work was done*.

546. *navigari posset effecit*: *made it possible to sail*.

#### CHAPTER 32

549. *frumentatum*: 166.

553. *quam consuetudo ferret*: *than usual*.

554. *parte*: *direction*.



556. *initum*: sc. *esse*. *cohortes proficisci*: w. *iussit*.  
 558. *in stationem succedere*: *take their place on guard*.  
 560. *paulo longius*: *some little distance*.  
 564. *hostes*: nom.  
 565. *dispersos*: referring to the Romans.  
 567. *simul*: *and at the same time*.

## CHAPTER 33

571. *terrore equorum*: *i.e.* caused by the horses, 63, b.  
 573. *Aurigae*: a British war-chariot carried several fighters (*essedarii*) and a driver (*auriga*); it was drawn by two horses.  
 580. *brevi*: sc. *tempore*, *quickly*.  
 581. *iugo*: a bar of wood that rested on the necks of the horses attached to a chariot.

## CHAPTER 34

583. *rebus*: 87. *perturbatis nostris*: dat. w. *tulit*. *novitate*:  
 90.  
 585. *nostri* = *et nostri*.  
 588. *suo*: *favorable*, contrasted w. *alienus*.  
 590. *qui . . . reliqui*: referring to the Britons.  
 591. *dies*: 80.  
 592. *quae continerent*: 134.  
 596. *sui liberandi*: see note on *sui purgandi*, Bk. IV. chap.  
 13.

## CHAPTER 35

600. *idem*: explained by *ut . . . effugerent*.  
 601. *celeritate*: 87.  
 607. *tanto spatio*: 95. *secuti*: sc. *nostri*. *quantum*: 74.  
*Quos . . . potuerunt*, *pursuing them as far as they had strength to run*.  
 609. *longe lateque*: *far and wide*.

## CHAPTER 36

612. *His*: dat., 70.  
 614. *propinqua die*: 99. *aequinociti*: it is thought that Caesar remained in Britain about three weeks, returning to Gaul about September 11. Cf. chap. 29, l. 508, and note.  
 615. *navibus*: abl.

## CHAPTER 37

621. **Quibus ex navibus:** *i.e.* the two just mentioned.  
623. **proficiscens:** (*when*) *setting out*.  
625. **circumsteterunt:** *sc. eos*, the three hundred.  
626. **orbe facto:** with the men facing outward, of course.  
632. **Postea:** *w. quam = posteaquam*.

## CHAPTER 38

639. **quo (= locum ad quem) reciperent:** 134. *b*.  
640. **perfugio:** *i.e.* the marshes. **superiore anno:** *cf. Bk. III. chap. 28.*  
649. **supplicatio:** *cf. Bk. II. chap. 35.*

Although there were no immediate results of the two expeditions of this year, yet Caesar probably accomplished all that he intended in crossing the Rhine, and in going to Britain he had gained information for a more important invasion of that country the next year. Read Dodge, pp. 162, 174; Fowler, pp. 194, 199; Froude, p. 233.

# GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

## A. INFLECTION

### NOUNS

#### FIRST DECLENSION

1.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N.	porta <sup>1</sup>	portae
G.	portae	portarum
D.	portae	portis
Ac.	portam	portas
Ab.	portā	portis

#### SECOND DECLENSION

2.

	SINGULAR				
N.	amicus	puer	ager	vir	bellum
G.	amicī	puerī	agrī	virī	bellī
D. Ab.	amicō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō
Ac.	amicum	puerum	agrum	virum	bellum

	PLURAL				
N.	amicī	puerī	agrī	virī	bella
G.	amicōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	bellōrum
D. Ab.	amicīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs
Ac.	amicōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	bella

#### THIRD DECLENSION

3.

	SINGULAR		
N.	cōnsul	mercātor	pater
G.	cōnsulis	mercātōris	patris
D.	cōnsulī	mercātōrī	patri
Ac.	cōnsulem	mercātōrem	patrem
Ab.	cōnsule	mercātōre	patre

	legiō
	legiōnis
	legiōnī
	legiōnem
	legiōne

<sup>1</sup> The *base* of a noun is found, in any declension, by dropping the ending of the genitive singular; the *stem*, by dropping -*rum* of the genitive plural in the first, second, and fifth declensions, -*um* in the third and fourth: base, *port-*, stem, *portā-*.

## PLURAL

N. Ac.	cōsulēs	mercātōrēs	patrēs	legiōnēs
G.	cōnsulum	mercātōrum	patrum	legiōnum
D. Ab.	cōsulibus	mercātōribus	patribus	legiōnibus

## 4.

## SINGULAR

N.	lēx	prīnceps	mīles	cīvītās
G.	lēgis	prīncipis	militis	cīvītātis
D.	lēgī	prīncipī	militī	cīvītātī
Ac.	lēgem	prīncipem	militem	cīvītātem
Ab.	lēge	prīncipe	milite	cīvītāte

## PLURAL

N. Ac.	lēgēs	prīncipēs	militēs	cīvītātēs
G.	lēgum	prīncipum	militum	cīvītātum
D. Ab.	lēgibus	prīncipibus	militibus	cīvītātibus

## 5.

## SINGULAR

N. Ac.	flūmen	opus	tempus	caput
G.	flūminis	operis	temporis	capitis
D.	flūminī	operī	temporī	capitī
Ab.	flūmine	opere	tempore	capite

## PLURAL

N. Ac.	flūmina	opera	tempora	capita
G.	flūminum	operum	temporum	capitum
D. Ab.	flūminibus	operibus	temporibus	capitibus

## 6.

## SINGULAR

N.	saepēs	turris	hostis	mōns	nox
G.	saepis	turris	hostis	montis	noctis
D.	saepī	turri	hostī	montī	noctī
Ac.	saepem	turrim (-em) <sup>1</sup>	hostem	montem	noctem
Ab.	saepe	turri (-e) <sup>2</sup>	hoste	monte	nocte

<sup>1</sup> Acc. sing. -im or -em is found in *nāvis* (usually -em), *puppis* (usually -im), *sēmentis*, *turris*.

<sup>2</sup> Abl. sing. -ī or -e is found in *avis*, *cīvis*, *classis*, *collis*, *finis*, *ignis*, *nāvis*, *orbis*, *puppis*, *sēmentis*, *turris*, *imber*.

## PLURAL

N.	saepēs	turrēs	hostēs	montēs	noctēs
G.	saepium <sup>1</sup>	turrium <sup>1</sup>	hostium <sup>1</sup>	montium <sup>1</sup>	noctium <sup>1</sup>
D. Ab.	saepibus	turribus	hostibus	montibus	noctibus
Ac.	saepīs (-ēs) <sup>1</sup>	turrīs (-ēs) <sup>1</sup>	hostīs (-ēs) <sup>1</sup>	montīs (-ēs) <sup>1</sup>	noctīs (-ēs) <sup>1</sup>

## 7.

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. Ac.	cubīle	cubilia <sup>2</sup>	animal	animālia <sup>2</sup>
G.	cubīlis	cubilium <sup>2</sup>	animālis	animālium
D. Ab.	cubīlī <sup>3</sup>	cubilibus	animālī <sup>3</sup>	animālibus

## FOURTH DECLENSION

## 8.

## SINGULAR

N.	manus	lacus	domus	cornū
G.	manūs	lacūs	domūs	cornūs
D.	manuī (-ū)	lacuī (-ū)	domuī	cornū
Ac.	manum	lacum	domum	cornū
Ab.	manū	lacū	domō (-ū)	cornū

Locative sing. domi, *at home*.

## PLURAL

N.	manūs	lacūs	domūs	cornua
G.	manuum	lacuum	domuum	cornuum
D. Ab.	manibus	lacubus	domibus	cornibus
Ac.	manūs	lacūs	domōs (-ūs)	cornua

<sup>1</sup> Gen. plur. -ium and acc. plur. -īs or -ēs are found in,—

- Nouns in -ēs or is (having the same number of syllables in nom. and gen.).
- Polysyllables in -ns or -rs, and sometimes -tās; also proper names in -ās.
- Monosyllables in -s or -x, following a consonant.
- imber, linter, and nox.

<sup>2</sup> Gen. plur. -ium, nom. and acc. plur. -ia, are found in neuters with nom. in -e, -al, -ar.

<sup>3</sup> Abl. sing. -ī is found in neuters with nom. sing. in -e, -al, -ar.

## FIFTH DECLENSION

## 9.

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
G.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
D.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Ac.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Ab.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

## SPECIAL NOUNS

## 10.

SINGULAR				
N.	deus	senex	vis	iter
G.	dei	senis	vis	itineris
D.	deō	senī	vi	itineri
Ac.	deum	senem	vim	iter
Ab.	deō	sene	vī	itinere
PLURAL				
N.	dei, diī, dī	senēs	vīrēs	itinerā
G.	deōrum, deum	senum	vīrium	itinerum
D. Ab.	deīs, diīs, dīs	senibus	vīribus	itineribus
Ac.	deōs	senēs	vīrēs	itinerā

## ADJECTIVES

## FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

## 11.

	SINGULAR				PLURAL	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
G.	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
D.	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Ac.	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
Ab.	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs



SINGULAR			PLURAL			
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	liber	libera	liberum	liberī	liberae	libera
G.	liberī	liberae	liberī	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
D.	liberō	liberae	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
Ac.	liberum	liberam	liberum	liberōs	liberās	libera
Ab.	liberō	liberā	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	noster <sup>1</sup>	nostra	nostrum	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
G.	nostrī	nostrae	nostrī	nostrōrum	nostrārum	nostrōrum
D.	nostrō	nostrae	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs
Ac.	nostrum	nostram	nostrum	nostrōs	nostrās	nostra
Ab.	nostrō	nostrā	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs

12

SINGULAR						
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
G.	alius	alius	alius	alterius	alterius	alterius
D.	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
Ac.	aliūm	aliām	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
Ab.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	neuter <sup>2</sup>	neutra	neutrum	ūnus <sup>3</sup>	ūna	ūnum
G.	neutriūs	neutriūs	neutriūs	ūniūs	ūniūs	ūniūs
D.	neutrī	neutrī	neutrī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
Ac.	neutrum	neutram	neutrum	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
Ab.	neutrō	neutrā	neutrō	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

## THIRD DECLENSION

## 13. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS

SINGULAR			PLURAL			
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	ācer	āceris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
D. Ab.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Ac.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācria

<sup>1</sup> Possessive pronoun, used as an adjective.<sup>2</sup> So also *uter*.<sup>3</sup> So also *nūllus*, *sōlus*, *tōtus*, *ūllus*.

## 14. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS

SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
G.	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
D. Ab.	forti	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
Ac.	fortem	forte	fortis (-ēs)	fortia

SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	longior	longius	longiōrēs	longiōra
G.	longiōris	longiōris	longiōrum	longiōrum
D.	longiōrī	longiōrī	longiōribus	longiōribus
Ac.	longiōrem	longius	longiōrēs	longiōra
Ab.	longiōre	longiōre	longiōribus	longiōribus

## 15. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING

SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	potēns	potēns	potentēs	potentia
G.	potentis	potentis	potentium	potentium
D.	potentī	potentī	potentibus	potentibus
Ac.	potentem	potēns	potentis (-ēs)	potentia
Ab.	potentī (-e)	potentī (e)	potentibus	potentibus

SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	vēlōx	vēlōx	vēlōcēs	vēlōcia
G.	vēlōcis	vēlōcis	vēlōcium	vēlōcium
D.	vēlōcī	vēlōcī	vēlōcibus	vēlōcibus
Ac.	vēlōcem	vēlōx	vēlōcis (-ēs)	vēlōcia
Ab.	vēlōcī (-e)	vēlōcī (-e)	vēlōcibus	vēlōcibus

## 16. SPECIAL ADJECTIVES

SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
G.	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
D.	veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
Ac.	veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
Ab.	vetere (-ī)	vetere (-ī)	veteribus	veteribus

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>		<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	—	plūs		plūrēs	plūra
G.	—	plūris		plūrium	plūrium
D.	—	—		plūribus	plūribus
Ac.	—	plūs		plūrēs	plūra
Ab.	—	plūre		plūribus	plūribus

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
D. Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Ac.	duōs	duās	duo	trīs, trēs	tria

## 17. REGULAR COMPARISON

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātus, -a, -um, <i>broad</i>	lātior, -ius	lātissimus, -a, -um
fortis, -e, <i>brave</i>	fortior, -ius	fortissimus, -a, -um
potēns, <i>powerful</i>	potentior, -ius	potentissimus, -a, -um
vēlōx, <i>swift</i>	vēlōcior, -ius	vēlōcissimus, -a, -um
ācer, ācris, ācre, <i>sharp</i>	ācrior, -ius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
liber, -era, -erum, <i>free</i>	liberior, -ius	liberrimus, -a, -um
facilis, -e, <i>easy</i>	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um <sup>1</sup>

## 18. IRREGULAR COMPARISON

bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>	pēior, pēius	pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i>	māior, māius	māximus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i>	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i>	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
senex, <i>old</i>	senior	māximus nātū
iuvenis, -e, <i>young</i>	iūnior	minimus nātū
vetus, <i>old</i>	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um
(exterus, <i>outward</i> )	exterior, <i>outer,</i> <i>exterior</i>	extrēmus } <i>outermost,</i> extimus } <i>last</i>
(īferus, <i>below</i> )	īferior, <i>lower</i>	īfimus } <i>lowest</i> īmus }
(posterus, <i>following</i> )	posterior, <i>later</i>	postrēmus } <i>last</i> postumus }

<sup>1</sup> So also *difficilis, similis, dissimilis, gracilis, humilis.*

## IRREGULAR COMPARISON

(superus, above)	superior, higher	suprēmus summus	} highest
[cis, citrā, on this side]	citerior, hither	citimus, hithermost	
[in, intrā, in, within]	interior, inner	intimus, inmost	
[prae, prō, before]	prior, former	primus, first	
[prope, near]	propior, nearer	proximus, next	
[ultrā, beyond]	ulterior, farther	ultimus, farthest	

## 19. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātē, <sup>1</sup> widely	lātius	lātissimē
liberē, freely	liberius	liberrimē
facile, easily	facilius	facillimē
ācriter, <sup>1</sup> sharply	ācrius	ācerrimē
fortiter, bravely	fortius	fortissimē
bene, well	melius, better	optimē, best
male, ill	pēius, worse	pessimē, worst
māgnopere, much	magis, more	māximē, most
multum, much	plūs, more	plūrimum, most
parum, little	minus, less	minimē, least
prope, near	propius	proximē
diū, long	diūtius	diūtissimē

20. CARDINAL<sup>2</sup> NUMERAL ADJECTIVES

1. ūnus, -a, -um	12. duodecim
2. duo, -ae, -o	13. tredecim
3. trēs, tria	14. quattuordecim
4. quattuor	15. quīndecim
5. quīnque	16. sēdecim
6. sex	17. septendecim
7. septem	18. duodēvigintī
8. octō	19. ūndēvigintī
9. novem	20. vīgintī
10. decem	21. vīgintī ūnus (ūnus et vīgintī)
11. ūndecim	

<sup>1</sup> Some adverbs are formed from adjectives by adding -ē (-e) or -ter (-iter) to the base: others in -ā, -ō, -am, -um, -im, etc., are case forms of nouns or adjectives.

<sup>2</sup> Meaning one, two, three, etc.

30. trīgintā	300. trecentī, -ae, -a
40. quadrāgintā	400. quadringentī, -ae, -a
50. quīnquāgintā	500. quīngentī, -ae, -a
60. sexāgintā	600. sescentī, -ae, -a
70. septuāgintā	700. septingentī, -ae, -a
80. octōgintā	800. octingentī, -ae, -a
90. nōnāgintā	900. nōngentī, -ae, -a
100. centum	1000. mīlle
200. ducentī, -ae, -a	

ORDINAL<sup>1</sup> NUMERAL ADJECTIVES

1. prīmus	20. vīcēsīmus
2. secundus	21. vīcēsīmus prīmus
3. tertius	30. tricēsīmus
4. quārtus	40. quadrāgēsīmus
5. quīntus	50. quīnquāgēsīmus
6. sextus	60. sexāgēsīmus
7. septīmus	70. septuāgēsīmus
8. octāvus	80. octōgēsīmus
9. nōnus	90. nōnāgēsīmus
10. decīmus	100. centēsīmus
11. ūndecīmus	200. ducentēsīmus
12. duodecīmus	300. trecentēsīmus
13. tertius decīmus	400. quadringentēsīmus
14. quārtus decīmus	500. quīngentēsīmus
15. quīntus decīmus	600. sescentēsīmus
16. sextus decīmus	700. septingentēsīmus
17. septīmus decīmus	800. octingentēsīmus
18. duodēvīcēsīmus	900. nōngentēsīmus
19. ūndēvīcēsīmus	1000. millēsīmus

## 21.

## PRONOUNS

PERSONAL				REFLEXIVE		
	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
N.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	—	—
G.	meī	nostrum, -trī	tuī	vestrum, -trī	suī	suī
D.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
Ac.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē
Ab.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē

<sup>1</sup> Meaning *first, second, third, etc.*

## 22.

## POSSESSIVE

*Meus, my; tuus, thy; suus, his, her, its, their; noster, our; vester, your,* are used and declined like adjectives.

## 23.

## DEMONSTRATIVE

SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
G.	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
D.	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
Ac.	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
Ab.	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
G.	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
D.	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
Ac.	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
Ab.	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>

SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eī, iī</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
G.	<i>ēius</i>	<i>ēius</i>	<i>ēius</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
D.	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>
Ac.	<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
Ab.	<i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>

SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	<i>īdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eīdem</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
G.	<i>ēiusdem</i>	<i>ēiusdem</i>	<i>ēiusdem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
D.	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>eīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>
Ac.	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
Ab.	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>eīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>

<sup>1</sup> Or *īdem*.<sup>2</sup> Or *īsdem*.



## 24.

## INTENSIVE

	SINGULAR				PLURAL	
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
Ac.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

## 25.

## RELATIVE

	SINGULAR				PLURAL	
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

## 26.

## INTERROGATIVE

	SINGULAR	
	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	quis	quid
G.	cūius	cūius
D.	cui	cui
Ac.	quem	quid
Ab.	quō	quō

The plural of the interrogative **quis** is like that of the relative **quī**. When used as an adjective, the singular also is like that of the relative.

## 27.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

1. **quis**, *any (one), anything*
2. **aliquis**, *some (one), some thing*
3. **quispiam**, *any (one) at all*
4. **quisquam**, *any (one) at all* (chiefly in negative sentences)
5. **quīlibet**, *any (one) you please*
6. **quīvis**, *any (one) you will*
7. **quisque**, *each (one), every (one)*
8. **quīdam**, *a certain (one)*

The indefinite **quis** is declined like the interrogative **quis** (26). As an adjective it may have **qua** as well as **quae** in the nominative feminine singular and in the neuter plural.

Only the pronominal part of the compounds is declined. **Aliquis** has **aliqua** instead of **aliquae** in the nominative feminine singular and in the neuter plural. **Quidam** has **n** instead of **m** before **d** in **quendam**, **quandam**, **quōrundam**, **quārundam**. **Quisquam** has **c** for **d** in the neuter: **quicquam**.

## 28.

## VERBS

## FIRST CONJUGATION

## ACTIVE VOICE

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **laudō**, **laudāre**, **laudāvī**, **laudātum**

Indicative		Subjunctive	
PRESENT		PRESENT	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>I praise</i>		<i>I may<sup>1</sup> praise</i>	
<b>laudō</b>	<b>laudāmus</b>	<b>laudem</b>	<b>laudēmus</b>
<b>laudās</b>	<b>laudātis</b>	<b>laudēs</b>	<b>laudētis</b>
<b>laudat</b>	<b>laudent</b>	<b>laudet</b>	<b>laudent</b>
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
<i>I was praising, I praised</i>		<i>I might<sup>1</sup> praise</i>	
<b>laudābam</b>	<b>laudābāmus</b>	<b>laudārem</b>	<b>laudārēmus</b>
<b>laudābās</b>	<b>laudābātis</b>	<b>laudārēs</b>	<b>laudārētis</b>
<b>laudābat</b>	<b>laudābant</b>	<b>laudāret</b>	<b>laudārent</b>
FUTURE		FUTURE	
<i>I shall praise</i>			
<b>laudābō</b>	<b>laudābimus</b>		
<b>laudābis</b>	<b>laudābitis</b>		
<b>laudābit</b>	<b>laudābunt</b>		
PERFECT		PERFECT	
<i>I have praised, I praised</i>		<i>I may have<sup>1</sup> praised</i>	
<b>laudāvī</b>	<b>laudāvimus</b>	<b>laudāverim</b>	<b>laudāverimus</b>
<b>laudāvistī</b>	<b>laudāvistis</b>	<b>laudāveris</b>	<b>laudāveritis</b>
<b>laudāvit</b>	<b>laudāvērunt (-ēre)</b>	<b>laudāverit</b>	<b>laudāverint</b>

<sup>1</sup> The translation of the subjunctive varies.

## PLUPERFECT

*I had praised*

laudāveram	laudāverāmus
laudāverās	laudāverātis
laudāverat	laudāverant

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have praised*

laudāverō	laudāverimus
laudāveris	laudāveritis
laudāverit	laudāverint

## Imperative

*praise thou*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRES. laudā	laudāte
FUT. laudātō	laudātōte
laudātō	laudantō

## Infinitive

PRES. laudāre, to praise
PERF. laudāvisse, to have praised
FUT. laudātūrus esse, to be about to praise

## PLUPERFECT

*I might have<sup>1</sup> praised*

laudāvissem	laudāvissemus
laudāvisse	laudāvissetis
laudāvisset	laudāvissent

## Participle

PRES. laudāns, praising.
FUT. laudātūrus, about to praise

## Gerund

G. laudandī, of praising
D. Ab. laudandō
Ac. laudandum

## Supine

Ac. laudātum, to praise
Ab. laudātū, to praise

## 29,

## PASSIVE VOICE

PRINCIPAL PARTS: laudor, laudāri, laudātus sum

## Indicative

## PRESENT

*I am praised*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
laudor	laudāmur
laudāris (-re)	laudāminī
laudātur	laudantur

## IMPERFECT

*I was praised*

laudābar	laudābāmur
laudābāris (-re)	laudābāminī
laudābātur	laudābantur

## Subjunctive

## PRESENT

*I may be<sup>1</sup> praised*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
lauder	laudēmur
laudēris (-re)	laudēminī
laudētur	laudentur

## IMPERFECT

*I might be<sup>1</sup> praised*

laudārer	laudārēmur
laudārēris (-re)	laudārēminī
laudārētur	laudārentur

<sup>1</sup> The translation of the subjunctive varies.

## FUTURE

*I shall be praised*

laudābor	laudābimur
laudāberis(-re)	laudābimini
laudābitur	laudābuntur

## PERFECT

*I have been (or I was) praised*

laudātus sum	laudātī sumus
laudātus es	laudātī estis
laudātus est	laudātī sunt

## PLUPERFECT

*I had been praised*

laudātus eram	laudātī erāmus
laudātus erās	laudātī erātis
laudātus erat	laudātī erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have been praised*

laudātus erō	laudātī erimus
laudātus eris	laudātī eritis
laudātus erit	laudātī erunt

## Imperative

*be thou praised*

PRES. laudāre	laudāmini
FUT. laudātor	
laudātor	laudantor

## PERFECT

*I may have been<sup>1</sup> praised*

laudātus sim	laudātī sīmus
laudātus sis	laudātī sītis
laudātus sit	laudātī sint

## PLUPERFECT

*I might have been<sup>1</sup> praised*

laudātus essem	laudātī essēmus
laudātus essēs	laudātī essētis
laudātus esset	laudātī essent

## Infinitive

PRES. laudārī, *to be praised*PERF. laudātus esse, *to have been praised*FUT. laudātum irī, *to be about to be praised*

## Participle

PERF. laudātus, *having been praised*FUT. laudandus (*Gerundive*) *to be praised*

## 30.

## SECOND CONJUGATION

## ACTIVE VOICE

PRINCIPAL PARTS: moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum.

## Indicative

PRES. moneō, monēs, monet,
monēmus, monētis,
monent

## Subjunctive

PRES. moneam, moneās, mon-
eat, etc.

<sup>1</sup> The translation of the subjunctive varies.

IMPF. monēbam <sup>1</sup>FUT. monēbō <sup>1</sup>

PERF. monuī

PLUP. monueram

F. P. monuerō

IMPF. monērem

PERF. monuerim

PLUP. monuissem

## Imperative

SINGULAR PLURAL

PRES. monē monēte

FUT. monētō monētōte

monētō monentō

## Participle

PRES. monēns

FUT. monitūrus

## Gerund

monendī, *etc.*

## Infinitive

PRES. monēre

PERF. monuisse

FUT. monitūrus esse

## Supine

monitum, -ū

## 31.

## PASSIVE VOICE

PRINCIPAL PARTS: moneor, monērī, monitus sum

## Indicative

PRES. moneor, monēris, mon-  
ētur, monēmur, mon-  
ēminī, monenturIMPF. monēbar<sup>1</sup>FUT. monēbor<sup>1</sup>

PERF. monitus sum

PLUP. monitus eram

F. P. monitus erō

## Subjunctive

PRES. monear, moneāris, *etc.*

IMPF. monērer

PERF. monitus sim

PLUP. monitus essem

## Imperative

SINGULAR PLURAL

PRES. monēre monēminī

FUT. monētor

monētor monentor

## Infinitive

PRES. monērī

PERF. monitus esse

FUT. monitum irī

## Participle

PERF. monitus

FUT. monendus (*Gerundive*)<sup>1</sup> Omitted forms are like those of laudō.

## 32.

## THIRD CONJUGATION

## ACTIVE VOICE

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum*

## Indicative

PRES.	<i>regō, regis, regit</i> <i>regimus, regitis, regunt</i>
IMPF.	<i>regēbam</i>
FUT.	<i>regam, regēs, reget, etc.</i>
PERF.	<i>rēxī</i>
PLUP.	<i>rēxeram</i>
F. P.	<i>rēxerō</i>

## Subjunctive

PRES.	<i>regam, regās, etc.</i>
IMPF.	<i>regerem</i>
PERF.	<i>rēxerim</i>
PLUP.	<i>rēxissem</i>

## Imperative

SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRES. <i>rege</i>	<i>regite</i>
FUT. <i>regitō</i>	<i>regitōte</i>
	<i>reguntō</i>

## Participle

PRES.	<i>regēs</i>
FUT.	<i>rēctūrus</i>

## Infinitive

PRES.	<i>regere</i>
PERF.	<i>rēxisse</i>
FUT.	<i>rēctūrus esse</i>

## Gerund

*regendī, etc.*

## Supine

*rēctum, -ū*

## 33.

## PASSIVE VOICE

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *regor, regī, rēctus sum*

## Indicative

PRES.	<i>regor, regeris, regitur</i> <i>regimur, regimini, reg-</i> <i>untur</i>
IMPF.	<i>regēbar</i>
FUT.	<i>regar, regēris, rēgētur, etc.</i>
PERF.	<i>rēctus sum</i>
PLUP.	<i>rēctus eram</i>
F. P.	<i>rēctus erō</i>

## Subjunctive

PRES.	<i>regar, regāris, etc.</i>
IMPF.	<i>regerer</i>
PERF.	<i>rēctus sim</i>
PLUP.	<i>rēctus essem</i>



Imperative		Infinitive
SINGULAR	PLURAL	
PRES. regere	regimini	PRES. regi
FUT. regitor		PERF. rēctus esse
regitor	reguntor	FUT. rēctum iri

## Participle

PERF. rēctus
FUT. regendus ( <i>Gerundive</i> )

## 34. THIRD CONJUGATION IN -IŌ

## ACTIVE VOICE

PRINCIPAL PARTS: capiō, capere, cēpī, captum

Indicative	Subjunctive
PRES. capiō, capis, capit capimus, capitis, capiunt	PRES. capiam, capiās, <i>etc.</i>
IMPF. capiēbam	IMPF. caperem
FUT. capiam, capiēs, <i>etc.</i>	
PERF. cēpī	PERF. cēperim
PLUP. cēperam	PLUP. cēpissem
F. P. cēperō	

Imperative		Participle
SINGULAR	PLURAL	
PRES. cape	capite	PRES. capiēns
FUT. capitō	capitōte	FUT. captūrus
	capitō	
	capiuntō	
		Gerund
	Infinitive	capiendī, <i>etc.</i>
PRES. capere		
PERF. cēpisse		Supine
FUT. captūrus esse		captum, -ū

## 35.

## PASSIVE VOICE

PRINCIPAL PARTS: capior, capī, captus sum

Indicative		Subjunctive
PRES.	capior, caperis, capitur capimur, capimini, capiuntur	PRES. capiar, capiāris, <i>etc.</i>
IMPF.	capiebar	IMPF. caperer
FUT.	capiar, capieris, <i>etc.</i>	
PERF.	captus sum	PERF. captus sim
PLUP.	captus eram	PLUP. captus essem
F. P.	captus erō	

Imperative		Infinitive
SINGULAR	PLURAL	PRES. capi
PRES.	capere capimini	PERF. captus esse
FUT.	capitor capiuntor	FUT. captum iri

## Participle

PERF. captus  
FUT. capiendus (*Gerundive*)

## 36.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

## ACTIVE VOICE

PRINCIPAL PARTS: audiō, audire, audivī, auditum

Indicative		Subjunctive
PRES.	audiō, audīs, audit audīmus, audītis, audiunt	PRES. audiam, audiās, <i>etc.</i>
IMPF.	audiebam	IMPF. audirem
FUT.	audiam, audiēs, <i>etc.</i>	
PERF.	audivī	PERF. audiverim
PLUP.	audiveram	PLUP. audivissem
F. P.	audiverō	

Imperative		Participle
SINGULAR	PLURAL	PRES. audiēs
PRES.	audi audite	FUT. auditūrus
FUT.	auditō auditōte auditō audiuntō	

Infinitive	Gerund
PRES. audire	audiendī, etc.
PERF. audivisse	
FUT. auditūrus esse	Supine
	audītum, -ū

## PASSIVE VOICE

37.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: audior, audīrī, audītus sum

Indicative	Subjunctive
PRES. audior, audīris, audītur audimur, audimini, audiuntur	PRES. audiar, audiāris, etc.
IMPF. audiēbar	IMPF. audīrer
FUT. audiar, audiēris, etc.	
PERF. audītus sum	PERF. audītus sim
PLUP. audītus eram	PLUP. audītus essem
F. P. audītus erō	

Imperative	Infinitive
SINGULAR PLURAL	
PRES. audire audimini	PRES. audīrī
FUT. auditor audiuntor	PERF. audītus esse
	FUT. audītum irī

## Participle

PERF. audītus

FUT. audiendus (*Gerundive*)

## 38. ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

Indicative	Subjunctive
PRES. laudātūrus sum, <i>I am about to praise</i>	PRES. laudātūrus sim
IMPF. laudātūrus eram	IMPF. laudātūrus essem
FUT. laudātūrus erō	
PERF. laudātūrus fui	PERF. laudātūrus fuerim
PLUP. laudātūrus fueram	PLUP. laudātūrus fuissem
F. P. laudātūrus fuerō	

## Infinitive

PRES. laudātūrus esse  
 PERF. laudātūrus fuisse

## 39. PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

Indicative	Subjunctive
PRES. laudandus sum, <i>I am to be praised</i>	PRES. laudandus sim
IMPF. laudandus eram	IMPF. laudandus essem
FUT. laudandus erō	
PERF. laudandus fui	PERF. laudandus fuerim
PLUP. laudandus fueram	PLUP. laudandus fuisset
F. P. laudandus fuerō	

## Infinitive

PRES. laudandus esse
PERF. laudandus fuisse

## 40. DEPONENT VERBS

## PRINCIPAL PARTS

CONJ. I.	hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum, <i>exhort</i>
CONJ. II.	vereor, verēri, veritus sum, <i>fear</i>
CONJ. III.	sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, <i>follow</i>
CONJ. IV.	potior, potiri, potitus sum, <i>become master of</i>

## Indicative

	I	II	III	IV
PRES.	hortor	vereor	sequor	potior
	hortāris	verēris	sequeris	potiris
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	potitur
	hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	potimur
	hortāmini	verēmini	sequimini	potimini
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	potiuntur
IMPF.	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
FUT.	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
PERF.	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potitus sum
PLUP.	hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	potitus eram
F. P.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potitus erō

## Subjunctive

PRES.	horter	verear	sequar	potiar
IMPF.	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	potirer
PERF.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potitus sim
PLUP.	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potitus essem

## Imperative

PRES. hortāre	verēre	sequere	potīre
FUT. hortātor	verētor	sequitor	potitor

## Infinitive

PRES. hortārī	verērī	sequī	potīrī
PERF. hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potitus esse
FUT. hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potitūrus esse

## Participles

PRES. hortāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
FUT. hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potitūrus
PERF. hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potitus
GER. hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus

## Gerund

hortandī	verendī	sequendī	potiendī
----------	---------	----------	----------

## Supine

hortātum	veritum	secūtum	potitum
----------	---------	---------	---------

NOTE.—There are four semi-deponent verbs, having the active form in the present system, but the passive in the perfect system, with the active meaning throughout: *audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare; gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, rejoice; soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed; fidō, fidere, fīsus sum, trust.*

## 41.

## IRREGULAR VERBS

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *sum, esse, fuī,*

## Indicative

## PRESENT

*I am*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
sum	sumus
es	estis
est	sunt

## Subjunctive

## PRESENT

*I may be*

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
sim	simus	sīs	sītis
es	estis	sīs	sītis
est	sunt	sit	sint

## IMPERFECT

*I was*

eram	erāmus
erās	erātis
erat	erant

## IMPERFECT

*I might be*

essem	essēmus
essēs	essētis
esset	essent

## FUTURE

*I shall be*

erō	erimus
eris	eritis
erit	erunt

## PERFECT

*I have been, I was*

fuī	fuimus
fuistī	fuistis
fuit	fuērunt (-ēre)

## PERFECT

*I may have been*

fuerim	fuerimus
fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerint

## PLUPERFECT

*I had been*

fueram	fuerāmus
fuerās	fuerātis
fuerat	fuerant

## PLUPERFECT

*I might have been*

fuissem	fuissemus
fuisēs	fuisētis
fuisset	fuisissent

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have been*

fuerō	fuerimus
fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerint

## Imperative

SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRES. es, be thou	este
FUT. estō	estōte
estō	suntō

## Infinitive

PRES. esse, to be
PERF. fuisse, to have been
FUT. futūrus esse, to be about to be

## Participle

futūrus, about to be

## 42. PRINCIPAL PARTS: possum, posse, potui

## Indicative

PRES.	possum, potes, potest possumus, potestis, possunt
IMPF.	poteram
FUT.	poterō
PERF.	potui
PLUP.	potueram
F. P.	potuerō

## Subjunctive

PRES.	possim, possis, etc.
IMPF.	possem, possēs, etc.
PERF.	potuerim
PLUP.	potuissem



Infinitive	Participle
PRES. posse	PRES. potēns
PERF. potuisse	

**43. PRINCIPAL PARTS: fiō, fierī, factus sum**

Indicative	Subjunctive
PRES. fiō, fīs, fit fimus, fītis, fiunt	PRES. fiam, fias, <i>etc.</i>
IMPF. fiēbam	IMPF. fierem
FUT. fiam, fiēs, <i>etc.</i>	
PERF. factus sum	PERF. factus sim
PLUP. factus eram	PLUP. factus essem
F. P. factus erō	

Imperative	Participle
PRES. fī, fite	PERF. factus
	FUT. faciendus ( <i>Gerundive</i> )

Infinitive
PRES. fierī
PERF. factus esse
FUT. factum irī

**44. PRINCIPAL PARTS: eō, ire, ivī (iī), itum**

Indicative	Subjunctive
PRES. eō, īs, it, imus, itis, eunt	PRES. eam
IMPF. ibam	IMPF. irem
FUT. ibō	
PERF. ivī (iī)	PERF. iverim (ierim)
PLUP. iveram (ieram)	PLUP. ivissem (issem)
F. P. iverō (ierō)	

Imperative	Participle
PRES. ī, ite	PRES. iēns ( <i>Gen. euntis</i> )
FUT. itō, itōte itō, euntō	FUT. itūrus

Infinitive	Gerund
PRES. ire	eundi, <i>etc.</i>
PERF. ivisse (isse)	
FUT. itūrus esse	Supine
	itum, -ū

45. PRINCIPAL PARTS: *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum*

ACTIVE VOICE	
Indicative	Subjunctive
PRES. <i>ferō, fers, fert</i> <i>ferimus, fertis, ferunt</i>	PRES. <i>feram, ferās, etc.</i>
IMPF. <i>ferēbam</i>	IMPF. <i>ferrem</i>
FUT. <i>feram, ferēs, etc.</i>	
PERF. <i>tulī</i>	PERF. <i>tulerim</i>
PLUP. <i>tuleram</i>	PLUP. <i>tulissem</i>
F. P. <i>tulerō</i>	

Imperative	Participle
PRES. <i>fer</i> <i>ferē</i>	PRES. <i>ferēns</i>
FUT. <i>fertō</i> <i>fertōte</i> <i>fertō</i> <i>feruntō</i>	FUT. <i>lātūrus</i>

Infinitive	Gerund
PRES. <i>ferre</i>	<i>ferendī, etc.</i>
PERF. <i>tulisse</i>	
FUT. <i>lātūrus esse</i>	Supine
	<i>lātum, -ū</i>

PASSIVE VOICE	
Indicative	Subjunctive
PRES. <i>feror, ferris, fertur</i> <i>ferimur, ferimini, feruntur</i>	PRES. <i>ferar, ferāris, etc.</i>
IMPF. <i>ferēbar</i>	IMPF. <i>ferrer</i>
FUT. <i>ferar, ferēris, etc.</i>	
PERF. <i>lātus sum</i>	PERF. <i>lātus sim</i>
PLUP. <i>lātus eram</i>	PLUP. <i>lātus essem</i>
F. P. <i>lātus erō</i>	
Imperative	Infinitive
PRES. <i>ferre, ferimini</i>	PRES. <i>ferri</i>
FUT. <i>fertor</i>	PERF. <i>lātus esse</i>
<i>fertor, feruntor</i>	FUT. <i>lātum iri</i>

## Participle

PERF. lātus

FUT. ferendus (*Gerundive*)

46.	PRINCIPAL PARTS:	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{volō, velle, voluī} \\ \text{nōlō, nōlle, nōluī} \\ \text{mālō, mälle, māluī} \end{array} \right.$
-----	------------------	--

## Indicative

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult (volt)	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis (vultis)	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPF.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam	mālam
PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

## Subjunctive

PRES.	velim, velīs, etc.	nōlim	mālim
IMPF.	vellem, vellēs, etc.	nōllem	māllem
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

## Imperative

PRES.	nōlī	nōlīte
FUT.	nōlitō	nōlitōte
	nōlitō	noluntō

## Infinitive

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mälle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

## Participle

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns
-------	--------	--------

## 47.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS

## Indicative

PERF. coepī	meminī	ōdī
PLUP. coeperam	memineram	ōderam
F. P. coeperō	meminerō	ōderō

## Subjunctive

PERF. coeperim	meminerim	ōderim
PLUP. coepissem	meminissem	ōdissem

## Imperative

SINGULAR  
mementō

PLURAL  
mementōte

## Infinitive

PERF. coepisse	meminisse	ōdisse
FUT. coeptūrus esse		ōsūrus esse

## Participle

PERF. coeptus, <i>begun</i>	ōsus
FUT. coeptūrus	ōsūrus

## 48.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS

## Indicative

## Subjunctive

PRES. licet	liceat
IMPF. licēbat	licēret
FUT. licēbit	
PERF. licuit (licitum est)	licuerit (licitum sit)
PLUP. licuerat (licitum erat)	licuisset (licitum esset)
F. P. licuerit (licitum erit)	

## Infinitive

licēre, licuisse, licitūrum esse

## B. SYNTAX

The references to Latin Grammars are indicated as follows: A., Allen and Greenough; B., Bennett; Bur., Burton; G., Gildersleeve and Lodge; H., Harkness; HB., Hale and Buck; W., West.

**49. Sentences.** A sentence is a complete thought expressed in words. A sentence making a statement is called *declarative*; one that asks a question, *interrogative*; one that expresses a command, *imperative*: 1. **oppidum mūnītur**: *the town is fortified*; 2. **oppidumne mūnītur**: *is the town fortified?* 3. **mūnite oppidum**: *fortify the town*.

A. 269; B. 161; Bur. 352, 362; G. 201; H. 377; HB. 220; W. 277.

### 50. Subject and Predicate.

a. Every sentence consists of a subject and a predicate. The subject is that which is spoken of. The predicate is that which is said of the subject.

b. In Latin the simple subject may be expressed by a noun, by some word or group of words used as a noun, or by the ending of the verb. The simple predicate may be a verb alone, or it may be a form of **sum** together with an adjective or noun used to describe or define the subject.

SUBJECT	PREDICATE
1. <b>Caesar</b> . . . . .	<b>vēnit</b> : <i>Caesar came</i> .
2. <b>Caesarem vēnisse</b> . .	<b>dicitur</b> : <i>it is said that Caesar came</i> .
3. (Ending of verb) . .	<b>vēnit</b> : <i>he came</i> .
4. <b>Helvētiī</b> . . . . .	<b>erant fortēs</b> : <i>the Helvetians were brave</i> .
5. <b>Helvētiī</b> . . . . .	<b>erant Galli</b> : <i>the Helvetians were Gauls</i> .

A. 270; B. 163; Bur. 355, 356 ff; G. 201; H. 381; HB. 229; W. 277.

**51. Object.** The action of a verb may be exerted directly or indirectly on an object. In the sentence **militibus signum dedit**: *he gave the soldiers a signal*; **signum** is the direct object, and **militibus** the indirect.

A. 274; B. 173; G. 328; W. 308.

**52. Appositive Noun.** A noun *added to* another noun to explain or describe it, and meaning the same person or thing, is called an *appositive noun*: **Cassius cōsul**: *Cassius, the consul*.

A. 282; B. 169; Bur. 380; G. 321; H. 383, 3; HB. 317; W. 291.

**53. Predicate Noun.** A noun *in the predicate* used with an intransitive verb, or a verb in the passive voice, and meaning the same person or thing as the subject, is a *predicate noun*. (62.)

1. **Cassius erat cōsul**: *Cassius was consul*; 2. **Cassius cōsul appellātus erat**: *Cassius had been called consul*.

A. 283; B. 167; Bur. 389; G. 211; H. 382, 2; HB. 230; W. 290.

#### 54. Modifiers.

a. The simple subject may be modified by a noun in apposition, a noun in the genitive or ablative, or by an adjective or group of words used as an adjective: **rēx Germānōrum, Ariovistus nōmine, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerat, bellum gerēbat**: *the king of the Germans, Ariovistus by name, who had lived beyond the Rhine, was carrying on war*.

b. The simple predicate may be modified by a direct object, an indirect object, a noun in the ablative or genitive, or by an adverb or group of words used as an adverb: **tubā militibus sīgnum dedit, ut parātī in armīs essent**: *he gave a signal to the soldiers with a trumpet, that they might be armed*.

A. 276; G. 288, 327; H. 383-384.

**55. Phrases.** A phrase is a group of words not containing subject and predicate, often used as a single part of speech: **māgnō cum periculō**: *with great danger*, I. 10; **māгнаe virtūtis**: *of great bravery*, II. 15.

A. 277; Bur. 361; HB. 224.

**56. Sentences Classified.** Sentences may be simple, compound, or complex.

a. A simple sentence contains a single statement, with one subject and one predicate: **pōns factus est**: *a bridge was built*.

b. A compound sentence consists of two or more simple statements of equal rank: **haec eōdem tempore mandāta referēbantur et lēgātī veniēbant**: *at the same time these messages were brought, and envoys came*, I. 37.

c. A complex sentence consists of a principal statement modified by one or more subordinate statements: *pōns factus est, ut exercitus trādūcerētur*: a bridge was built, that the army might be led over.

A. 278; B. 164; Bur. 354; H. 377; HB. 228; W. 279.

**57. Clauses.** The separate statements of a compound or complex sentence are called clauses. Clauses may be principal (independent) or subordinate (dependent).

a. Subordinate clauses may be used as adjectives, adverbs, or nouns: 1. *pōns quī erat ad Genāvam*: the bridge that was near Geneva, I. 7; 2. *pūgnant ut sint liberī*: they fight that they may be free; 3. *accidit ut esset lūna plēna*: it happened that there was full moon, IV. 29.

b. Adverbial clauses may be causal, conditional, concessive, temporal, final, consecutive. For illustrations see 135-140.

A. 279; Bur. 353; H. 386; HB. 224; W. 286, 498.

**58. Connectives.** In a compound sentence the connective is a coördinate conjunction (170). In a complex sentence the connective may be a subordinate conjunction, a relative pronoun, or a relative adverb.

## NOUNS

**59. Agreement.** A noun used as an appositive or predicate of another noun or pronoun agrees with it in case: *persuādet Casticō, Sēquanō*: he persuades Casticus, the Sequanian, I. 3; *Casticus erat Sēquanus*: Casticus was a Sequanian.

A. 281; B. 169, 2; Bur. 381, 389; G. 321; H. 393; HB. 319; W. 291.

## Nominative Case

A noun in the nominative case may be used as follows:—

**60.** Subject of a finite verb: *Germānī trāns Rhēnum incolunt*: the Germans live beyond the Rhine, I. 1.

A. 339; B. 166; Bur. 397; G. 203; H. 387; HB. 335; W. 289.

**61.** Subject of an "historical" infinitive (152): *Caesar frūmentum flāgitāre*: Caesar kept demanding grain, I. 16.

A. 463; B. 335; Bur. 397; G. 647; H. 610; HB. 595; W. 631.



## 62. Predicate nominative, after

a. The intransitive verbs *be, become, seem, etc.*: **Helvētīi erant Gallī**: the Helvetii *were Gauls*.

b. The passive verbs *be made, be called, be chosen, etc.*: **Gallī Celtae appellantur**: the Gauls *are called Celts*.

A. 284; B. 168; Bur. 358 ff.; G. 211; H. 393; HB. 319; W. 270.

**Note.** The person or thing *addressed* is put in the *vocative* case, which is spelled like the nominative except in the singular of *-us* nouns of the second declension, which have the vocative in *-e*: **quid dubitās, Vorēne?** Why do you hesitate, *Vorenius*?

A. 340; B. 171; Bur. 398; G. 201; H. 402; HB. 400; W. 307.

## Genitive Case

The uses of the genitive case are as follows:—

## 63. Genitive with Nouns.

a. Possessive genitive, denoting the *possessor*: **exercitus Caesaris**: *Caesar's army*.

A. 343; B. 198; Bur. 401; G. 362; H. 440; HB. 339; W. 353.

b. Subjective genitive, denoting the *agent* or *subject* of an action or feeling implied by another noun: **prō Helvētiōrum iniūriis**: for the *wrongs of (i.e. done by) the Helvetii*, I. 30.

A. 343, note 1; B. 199; Bur. 402; G. 363; H. 440, 1; HB. 344; W. 350.

c. Objective genitive, denoting the *object* of an action or feeling implied by another noun: **rēgnī cupiditās**: the *desire of royal power*, I. 2; **prō iniūriis populī**: for the *wrongs of (i.e. inflicted upon) the people*, I. 30.

A. 348; B. 200; Bur. 425 ff.; G. 363; H. 440, 2; HB. 354; W. 351.

d. Descriptive genitive, used to *describe* another noun. In this use the genitive is modified by an adjective: **trium mēnsium cibāriā**: food for *three months*, I. 5; **mūrum pedum sēdecim**: a wall of *sixteen feet* (in height), I. 8; **hominēs māgnae virtūtis**: men of *great bravery*, II. 15.

A. 345; B. 203; Bur. 421 ff.; G. 365; H. 440, 3; HB. 355; W. 354.

e. Genitive of the whole, depending on a word denoting a part: **quārum ūnam (partem)**: *one part of which*, I. 1; **cōpia frūmentī**: a supply of *grain*, I. 3; **hominum decem mīlia**: *ten thousand*

(of) *men*, I. 4; *nihil reliquī*: *nothing* (of) *left*, I. 11; *mīlia passuum*: (thousands of paces) *miles*.

**Note.** The genitive of the whole is used not only with nouns, but also with pronouns (indefinite or interrogative), adjectives (chiefly numeral, comparative, or superlative), and adverbs (denoting quantity or place): *hōrum fortissimī*: *the bravest of these*, I. 1; *minus dubitātiōnis*: *less* (of) *hesitation*, I. 14; *satis causae*: *enough* (of) *reason*, I. 19; *plūs dolōris*: *more* (of) *grief*, I. 20.

A. 346; B. 201; Bur. 412 ff.; G. 367; H. 441 ff.; HB. 346; W. 355.

**64. Genitive with Adjectives.** The objective genitive is used with adjectives, denoting *desire*, *knowledge*, *memory*, *fullness*, *power*, or their opposite: *bellandī cupidus*: *desirous of fighting*, I. 2; *militāris rei perītus*: *skilled in warfare*, I. 21.

A. 349; B. 204; Bur. 425; G. 374; H. 450; HB. 354; W. 352.

**65. Genitive with Verbs.** The genitive is used with certain verbs:—

a. Of memory: *reminīscerētur virtūtis*: *he should remember the bravery*, I. 13; *contumēliae oblivīscī*: *to forget the insult*, I. 14.

A. 350; B. 206; Bur. 438 ff.; G. 376; H. 454; HB. 350; W. 364.

b. Of feeling: *quōrum eōs paenitēre necesse est*: *of which it is necessary for them to repent*, IV. 5.

A. 354; B. 209; Bur. 443 ff.; G. 377; H. 457; HB. 352; W. 368.

c. Of interest: *rei pūblīcae intersit*: *it concerns the public welfare*, II. 5.

A. 355; B. 210; Bur. 434; G. 381; H. 449; HB. 345; W. 369.

d. Sometimes with *potior* (88): *tōtius Gallīae potīrī*: *to get possession of all Gaul*, I. 3.

A. 410, a; B. 212, 2; Bur. 446; G. 407; H. 458, 3; HB. 353.

e. With *est* and verbs of value, the genitive adjectives *māgnī*, *tantī*, denote indefinite value: *tantī ēius grātia est*: *his favor is so great*, I. 20.

A. 417; B. 203, 3; Bur. 578; G. 380; H. 448, 1; HB. 356.

**66. Predicate Genitive.** A possessive or descriptive genitive may be used in the predicate: *iūdicium imperātōris esse*: *the decision is the commander's*, I. 41; *est hōc Gallicae cōsuētūdinis*: *this is (of) a Gallic custom*, IV. 5.

A. 343, b; B. 203, 5; Bur. 408; G. 366; H. 447; HB. 340.

## Dative Case

The uses of the dative case are as follows: —

67. Dative of *indirect object*,

a. With transitive verbs: *eī filiam suam dat*: he gives him his daughter, I. 3; *Caesarī nūntiātur*: it is reported to Caesar, I. 7.

A. 362; B. 187; Bur. 450; G. 345; H. 424; HB. 365, a; W. 327.

b. With intransitive verbs meaning *favor, help, please, trust; believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist; envy, threaten, pardon, spare*: *civitatī persuāsīt*: he persuaded the tribe, I. 2; *novīs rēbus studēbat*: he was eager for a revolution, I. 9; *favēre Helvētiis*: favor the Helvetii, I. 18.

Note. In the passive these verbs are used only impersonally (119, b).

A. 367; B. 187; Bur. 456, 459; G. 346; H. 426; HB. 362; W. 330.

c. With many verbs compounded with *ad, ante, circum, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super*: *omnibus praestārent*: they excelled all, I. 2; *sibi lēgatiōnem suscēpit*: he undertook the mission (took upon himself), I. 3; *mūnitiōnī praefēcīt*: he put in charge of the fortification, I. 10; *calamitatē populō intulerat*: it had brought disaster upon the people, I. 12.

Note. Verbs of *motion* (*accēdō, accurrō*) take an accusative with *ad* or *in*: *ad eum accurrit*: he runs up to him, I. 22.

A. 370; B. 187; Bur. 464; G. 347; H. 429; HB. 376; W. 332.

68. Dative of *separation*, with verbs meaning *take away*: *Haeduīs libertatē eripere*: take away liberty from the Haedui, I. 17; *scūtō militī detrāctō*: seizing a shield from a soldier, II. 25.

A. 381; B. 188, d; Bur. 477; G. 345; H. 427; HB. 371; W. 337.

69. Dative of *purpose or tendency* denoting the purpose or object for which anything is or is done; *equitātum auxiliō miserant*: they had sent the cavalry as (for) an aid, I. 18.

A. 382; B. 191; Bur. 483; G. 356; H. 433; HB. 360; W. 343.

70. Dative of *reference*, denoting the person or thing concerned by the action: *molita cibāria sibi efferre*: take along ground grain for himself, I. 5; *equitātum auxiliō Caesarī mīse-*

**rant**: they had sent the cavalry as an aid to *Caesar*, I. 18; **pur-gātī sibi**: blameless in his sight, I. 28.

a. The dative of reference may be equivalent to a possessive genitive: **Caesarī ad pedēs**: at *Caesar's* feet, I. 30.

A. 376; B. 188; Bur. 470; G. 356; H. 433; HB. 366; W. 335.

71. Dative of the *agent*, used with a passive periphrastic form: **expectandum** (esse) **sibi statuit**: decided *he ought to wait* (lit. it ought to be waited by him), I. 11; **Caesarī omnia erant agenda**: *Caesar had to do everything* (lit. everything had to be done by *Caesar*), II. 20.

A. 374; B. 189; Bur. 480; G. 354; H. 431; HB. 373; W. 339.

72. Dative of the *possessor*, used with forms of **sum**: **sibi esse in animō**: *they had it in mind* (lit. it was in mind to them), I. 7; **potestās erat nullī**: *no one had the power* (lit. the power was to no one), II. 6.

A. 373; B. 190; Bur. 479; G. 349; H. 430; HB. 374; W. 340.

73. Dative with adjectives meaning *near, like, fit, sufficient, friendly, etc.*: **proximī sunt Germānīs**: they are *next to the Germans*, I. 1; **cōnsimilis fugae**: *quite like a flight*, II. 11; **idō-neum castrīs**: *suitable for a camp*, II. 17.

A. 384; B. 192; Bur. 487; G. 359; H. 434; HB. 362; W. 333.

### Accusative Case

The uses of the accusative case are as follows:—

74. Direct object of a transitive verb: **bellum gerunt**: they *carry on war*, I. 1.

A. 387; B. 172; Bur. 493; G. 330; H. 404; HB. 390; W. 308.

#### 75. Secondary Object.

a. Some verbs meaning *ask, demand, or teach* may take two objects, one of the person (direct object), the other of the thing (secondary object): **Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre** (152): *Caesar kept demanding grain of the Haedui*, I. 16.

A. 396; B. 178; Bur. 507; G. 339; H. 411; HB. 393; W. 318.

b. Some transitive verbs compounded with **trāns** or **circum** may take a direct and a secondary object: **trēs partēs cōpiārum**

**flūmen trādūxerant:** they had led three fourths of their troops across the river (secondary obj.), I. 12.

A. 395; B. 179; Bur. 511; G. 331; H. 413; HB. 386; W. 320.

**Note.** In the passive these verbs retain the secondary object: **Belgās Rhēnum trādūctōs esse:** the Belgae had been brought over the Rhine, II. 4. — Bur. 509.

#### 76. Predicate Accusative.

a. The verbs *make, call, choose, regard, show, etc.*, may take two accusatives, one the direct object, the other a *predicate accusative*: **quem vergobretum appellant:** whom they call vergobret, I. 16.

A. 393; B. 177; Bur. 392; G. 340; H. 410; HB. 392; W. 317.

**Note.** In the passive these verbs take a predicate nominative (62, b): **Liscus appellātus est vergobretus:** Liscus was called vergobret.

b. Certain infinitives like *esse*, with a subject accusative, may take a predicate accusative in agreement with the subject: (**dīxit**) **populum Rōmānum esse testem:** (he said) the Romans were a witness, I. 14.

**77. Subject of an Infinitive.** An infinitive, with subject accusative, is used with verbs meaning *say, know, think, perceive, etc.*; also with *iubeō, vetō, prohibeō, sinō, cōgō (compel), cupiō, volō, etc.*: **sē habēre arbitrābantur:** they thought they had, I. 2; **quemque efferre iubent:** they order each man to take along, I. 5; **certior fiēbat Belgās coniūrāre:** he was informed that the Belgae were conspiring.

A. 397, c; B. 184; Bur. 526; G. 343, 2; H. 415; HB. 398; W. 322.

#### 78. Object of Certain Prepositions. See 169, a.

a. An accusative may follow the adjectives **propior, proximus**, and the adverbs **propius, proximē**: **propius tumulum:** nearer the mound, I. 46; **proximī Rhēnum:** next to the Rhine, I. 54.

A. 220, a; B. 141; Bur. 1025; G. 416; H. 420; HB. 380; W. 242.

**79. Accusative of place to which, with ad, in, or sub:** **ad montem:** to the mountain, I. 8; **in prōvinciam:** into the province, I. 33; **sub iugum:** under the yoke, I. 7.

A. 426, 2; B. 182; Bur. 513; G. 337; H. 418; HB. 385; W. 325.

a. A preposition is not used with names of towns or **domum**, but the names of towns may take **ad** when it means *towards* or *near to*; **domum reditiōnis spēs**: the hope of returning home, I. 5; **ad Genāvam pervenit**: he arrives near Geneva, I. 7; **Bibracte ivit**: he went to Bibracte, I. 23. — Bur. 514.

80. Accusative denoting *duration of time* or *extent of space*: **rēgnum multōs annōs obtinuerat**: he had held the royal power many years, I. 3; **mīlia passuum octō ab castris**: eight miles from the camp, I. 21.

A. 423, 425; B. 181; Bur. 518 ff.; G. 335, 336; H. 417; HB. 387; W. 324.

81. Cognate Accusative. A verb may take the accusative of a noun having a meaning similar to its own. Such an accusative is called *cognate*: **cum trīduī viam prōcessisset**: when he had gone forward a three days' journey, I. 38.

A. 390; B. 176, 4; Bur. 502; G. 333, 2; H. 409; HB. 396; W. 313.

82. Adverbial Accusative. An accusative, chiefly of neuter pronouns and adjectives, may be used as an adverb: **plūrimum posse**: have greatest power, be most powerful, I. 3; **aliquid sublevāre**: help to some extent, I. 40; **quid possent**: what strength they had, II. 4.

A. 397; B. 185; G. 333; H. 416, 2; HB. 387; W. 316.

## Ablative Case

The uses of the ablative are as follows:—

83. Ablative of *separation*, with or without **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**: **Gallōs ab Aquītānis dīvidit**: separates the Gauls from the Aquitanians, I. 1; **suīs finibus eōs prohibent**: keep them from their own country, I. 1; **ex māgnā cōpiā dēligere**: to choose from a great number, I. 30; **dē voluptāte dēminuerat**: had taken from pleasure, I. 53.

A. 400; B. 214; Bur. 528; G. 390; H. 461; HB. 408; W. 374.

a. This includes the ablative of *place from which*, generally used with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**: **ē finibus suīs exeunt**: they go out of their country, I. 5; **dē nāvibus dēsilite**: jump down from the ships, IV. 24. — Bur. 530.



b. With the ablative of the names of towns and **domō**, *from home*, the preposition is not used, except in the meaning *from the neighborhood of*: **domō efferre**, to take *from home*, I. 5; **ab Ocelō**: *from the neighborhood of Ocelum*, I. 10.

A. 426; B. 229; Bur. 530; G. 390; H. 491; HB. 409; W. 404.

84. Ablative of *source* or *material*, generally with **ab** or **ex**: **Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs**: the Belgians sprang *from the Germans*, II. 4; **scūtīs ex cortice factīs**: shields made *of bark*, II. 33.

A. 403; B. 215; Bur. 532; G. 395, 396; H. 467; HB. 413; W. 378.

85. Ablative of the *agent*, with **ab**: **sī obsidēs ab eīs dentur**: if hostages should be given *by them*, I. 14.

A. 405; B. 216; Bur. 535; G. 401; H. 468; HB. 406; W. 379.

86. Ablative of *comparison*, after a comparative without **quam**, *than*: **amplius quīnīs mīlibus passuum**: *more than five miles*, I. 15; **celerius omnium opīniōne**: *more quickly than any one would suppose* (lit. than the expectation of all), II. 3.

a. If **quam** is used, the two words compared are in the same case: **quī plūs possunt quam ipsī magistrātūs**: who have *more power than the officers themselves*, I. 17.

b. **Amplius**, **longius**, **plūs**, or **minus** may be used without affecting the case of the noun following: **amplius pedum mille sexcentōrum**: *more than 1600 feet*, I. 38.

A. 406; B. 217; Bur. 541; G. 296; H. 471; HB. 416; W. 380.

87. Ablative of *means* or *instrument*, without a preposition: **hīs rēbus adductī**: influenced *by these arguments*, I. 2; **suīs cōpiīs rēgnū conciliābit**: he will secure the royal power *by means of his forces*, I. 3; **gladiīs pūgnātum est**: the battle was fought *with swords*, I. 52.

A. 409; B. 218; Bur. 570; G. 401; H. 476; HB. 423; W. 386.

88. The ablative is used with the verbs **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, and **vēscor**: **imperio potiri**: *to secure command*, I. 2; **eōdem ūsī cōsiliō**: *using the same plan*, I. 5.

a. **Potior** may take the genitive (65, d).

A. 410; B. 218; Bur. 572, 446; G. 407; H. 477; HB. 429; W. 387.



89. The ablative is used with *opus* and *usus*, meaning *need*: *sī quid* (82) *opus factō esset*: if there should be any *need of action*, I. 42.

A. 411; B. 218, 2; Bur. 573; G. 406; H. 477; HB. 430; W. 389.

90. Ablative of *cause*, without a preposition: *hīs rēbus fiēbat*: *because of this situation* it came about, etc., I. 2; *eō magis*: *all the more* (lit. more because of this), I. 23.

A. 404; B. 219; Bur. 546; G. 408; H. 475; HB. 444; W. 384.

91. Ablative of *manner*, with or without *cum*: *flūmen influit incrēdibili lēnitātē*: the river flows *with unusual slowness*, I. 12; *māgnō cum strepitū ēgressī*: having gone out *with great uproar*, II. 11.

A. 412; B. 220; Bur. 554; G. 399; H. 473, 3; HB. 445; W. 390.

92. Ablative of *accordance*, denoting that in accordance with which something is done: *mōribus suis*: *according to their customs*, I. 4; *mōre et exemplō*: *according to the custom and precedent*, I. 8.

A. 418, a; B. 220, 3; Bur. 534; G. 399; H. 475, 3; HB. 414; W. 391.

93. Ablative of *attendant circumstance*, expressing the situation or circumstance of an action: *imperio populī Rōmānī*: *under the rule of the Romans*, I. 18; *suā voluntātē*: *with his consent*, I. 20; *quō cōnsuērat intervāllō*: *at the usual distance apart*, I. 22.

B. 221; Bur. 556; G. 399; H. 473, 3; HB. 422; W. 391.

94. Ablative of *accompaniment*, with *cum*: *cum omnibus cōpiis exivērunt*: they went out *with all their forces*, I. 2.

A. 413; B. 222; Bur. 550; G. 392; H. 473, 1; HB. 418; W. 392.

a. *Cum* may be omitted in military phrases, when the noun is modified by any adjective except a numeral: *pedestribus cōpiis*: *with the infantry*, III. 11. — Bur. 551.

b. *Cum* is an enclitic with the ablative of the personal, reflexive, and relative pronouns: *quibuscum, sēcum*. — Bur. 1024.

95. Ablative of *degree of difference*, used (a) with comparatives and words implying comparison; (b) with *absūm, cōsīdō*, etc., to denote the interval of space: *nihilō minus*: (by nothing

less) *nevertheless*, I. 5; **multō facilius**: (more easily by much) *much more easily*, I. 6; **eō gravius . . . quō minus**: lit. *the more heavily . . . the less*, I. 14; **passibus ducentis ab eō tumulō**: *two hundred paces from that hill*, I. 43; **ā milibus passuum duōbus**: *two miles away*, II. 7.

A. 414; B. 223; Bur. 582; G. 403; H. 479; HB. 424; W. 393.

96. Ablative of *description*. This ablative is always modified by an adjective or genitive: **bonō animō nōn vidērentur**: they did not seem (of good disposition) *well-disposed*, I. 6; (**vir**) **summā audāciā**: a man of the greatest boldness, I. 18.

A. 415; B. 224; Bur. 557; G. 400; H. 473, 2; HB. 443; W. 394.

97. Ablative of *specification*, denoting that in respect to which anything is or is done: **linguā inter sē differunt**: they differ from one another *in language*, I. 1; **oppidum nōmine Bibrax**: a town named Bibrax (lit. Bibrax by name).

A. 418; B. 226; Bur. 586; G. 397; H. 480; HB. 441; W. 396.

98. Ablative of *price*: **parvō pretiō**: at a small price, I. 18; **mercēde arcesserentur**: they were called in as mercenaries (lit. summoned by pay), I. 18.

A. 416; B. 225; Bur. 577; G. 404; H. 478; HB. 427; W. 395.

### 99. Ablative Absolute.

a. A phrase consisting of the following may form an ablative absolute:—

1. A noun or pronoun + a participle: **rēgnō occupātō**: (the royal power having been seized) *by seizing the royal power*, I. 3;

2. A noun or pronoun + an adjective: **sē invītō**: (he being unwilling) *against his will*, I. 8;

3. A noun or pronoun + a noun: **eō dēprecātōre**: (he being a mediator) *with him as mediator*, I. 9. — Bur. 558.

b. An ablative absolute may express:—Bur. 559 ff.

1. Time: **Messālā et Pīsōne cōsulibus**: *during the consulship of Messala and Piso*, I. 2; **omnibus rēbus comparātis**: *when all things were ready*, I. 6;

2. Cause: **male rē gestā**: *because of bad management*, I. 40;

3. Condition: **locō opportūnō**: *since the place was convenient*, II. 8; **datā facultāte**: *if an opportunity were given*, I. 7;

4. Concession: **paucis dēfendentibus**: *though there were few defenders*, II. 12;

5. Means: **nāvibus iūctis**: *by joining boats*, I. 8.

c. When the agent of the action expressed by a passive participle is the same as the subject of the main verb, the ablative absolute is best translated by an active participle with an object: **eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit**: *having completed this work*, he stationed guards, I. 8. Otherwise the phrase may be translated by a clause; see 99, b.

A. 419; B. 227; G. 409; H. 489; HB. 421; W. 397.

100. Ablative denoting *time when or within which*: **diē cōnstitūtā**: *on the appointed day*, I. 4; **eōrum adventū**: *upon their arrival*, I. 18; **paucis annis**, *within a few years*, I. 31.

A. 423; B. 230; Bur. 599; G. 393; H. 486; HB. 439; W. 406.

101. Ablative of the *place in which*, with **in**: **Rhodanus nōn nullis locis trānsitur**: *the Rhone is crossed in some places*, I. 6.

A. 426; B. 228; Bur. 588; G. 385; H. 483; HB. 433; W. 401.

102. The "locative" case is used instead of the ablative in the singular of the names of towns of the first, second, and sometimes third declension; also in **domī**, *at home*, **militiae**, *in military service*, etc. The ending of the locative is **-ae** in the first declension, **-ī** in the second, and **-ī** or **-e** in the third.

A. 427, 3; B. 232; Bur. 606 ff.; G. 411; H. 483; HB. 449; W. 403.

## ADJECTIVES

103. **Agreement**. An adjective or participle (158), whether attributive or predicate, agrees with noun in gender, number, and case: **Gallia est omnis dīvisa in partēs trēs**, I. 1.

A. 286; B. 234; Bur. 629; G. 289; H. 394; HB. 320; W. 293.

a. With two or more nouns connected by **et**, **-que**, or **atque**, the adjective or participle is usually plural, but it may be singular if the nearest noun is singular: **filia atque ūnus ex filiis captus est**: *the daughter and one of the sons were taken captive*, I. 26. — Bur. 631.

b. With two or more nouns of different genders an attributive.

adjective takes the gender of the nearest; a predicate adjective or participle is generally masculine if the nouns denote living things, neuter if they denote things without life: *eādem alacritate ac studiō*: *with the same eagerness and zeal*, IV. 24; *filia atque ūnus ex filiis captus est* (103, a). — Bur. 632.

**Note.** An adjective is *attributive* when it describes the noun directly; *predicate*, when it forms part of the predicate with *sum*, or with a passive verb like *be named*, *be called*, etc. — Bur. 625 ff.

### Uses of Adjectives

**104.** An adjective may be used as a noun, chiefly in the plural: *omnibus praestarent*: they excelled *all*, I. 2; *nōbilissimōs civitātis*: *the noblest (men) of the tribe*, I. 7; *suīs*: *to their (people)*, I. 13; *sua*: *their (property)*, II. 3; *pēius accidis*: *a worse (fate) had happened*, I. 31.

A. 288; B. 236; Bur. 635 ff.; G. 204, note; H. 494 ff.; HB. 249; W. 409.

**105.** An adjective may be used with the force of an adverb: *tristēs terram intuērī*: looked upon the ground *in sadness* (sadly), I. 32.

A. 290; B. 239; Bur. 641; H. 497; HB. 245; W. 412.

**106.** Some adjectives may denote a part of an object: *summus mōns*: *the top of the hill*, I. 22; *in colle mediō*: (in the middle of) *half way up the hill*, I. 24; *extrēmās fossās*: *the ends of the trenches*, II. 8.

A. 293; B. 241; Bur. 646; G. 291, 2; H. 497, 4; HB. 244; W. 416.

**107.** A superlative adjective or adverb may be best translated by *very*, a comparative by *too*, *rather*, *unusually*: *lātissimō*: *very wide*, I. 2; *fortius factum*: a deed *unusually brave*, III. 14; *ipse aberat longius*: he himself was *too far* away, III. 9.

a. A superlative with *quam* may be translated as . . . *as possible*: *quam māximum numerum*: *as great a number as possible*, I. 3; *quam mātūrrimē*: *as soon as possible*, I. 33.

b. *Potest* is sometimes used with *quam* and a superlative: *quam māximās potest itineribus*: *by the greatest possible stages*, I. 7.

A. 291; B. 240; Bur. 642, 644; H. 498; HB. 241; W. 414.

**108. Adjective Clauses.** A clause may be used as an adjective to modify a noun. It is then introduced by a relative pronoun or a relative adverb: *pōns, quī erat ad Genāvam*: the bridge *which was near Geneva*, I. 7.

## PRONOUNS

**109.** When pronouns are used as nouns, the rules for the cases of nouns apply; when used as adjectives, they follow the rules for the agreement of adjectives (103).

A. 296, 1; H. 396; HB. 321 ff.

**110. Personal Pronouns.** There is no special pronoun of the third person, but a demonstrative pronoun may be so used: *ad eōs*: *to them*, I. 1; *in eōrum finibus*: *in their territory*, I. 1.

A. 295; B. 242; Bur. 661 ff.; G. 304; H. 500; HB. 254; W. 419.

**111. Reflexive Pronouns.** The reflexive *sē* and the possessive *suus* refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand (direct reflexive): *sē suaque dēdidērunt*: *they surrendered themselves and their property*, II. 15.

a. If *sē* or *suus* stands in a subordinate clause of an indirect quotation, it may refer to the subject of the verb upon which the quotation depends (indirect reflexive): *hīs mandāvit ut . . . ad sē referrent*: *he ordered them to report to him*, I. 47.

A. 299; B. 244; Bur. 666, 667; G. 309; H. 502; HB. 260; W. 421.

**112. Possessive Pronouns.** Possessive pronouns agree in gender, number, and case with the noun with which they are used, not with the noun denoting the possessor: *Orgetorix filiā suā dat*: Orgetorix gives *his* daughter, I. 3.

A. 302; B. 243; G. 312; H. 501; HB. 254; W. 424.

a. The possessive pronoun *suus* is used reflexively, that is, it refers to the subject of the sentence. When some other person or thing is meant *his*, *her*, *its*, or *their* is expressed by the genitive of a demonstrative, *ēius*, *eōrum*, etc.: *Helvētīi aut suīs finibus eōs prohibent aut in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt*: the Helvetii either keep them from *their own* boundaries or carry on war in *theirs* (*i.e.* the Germans'), I. 1. — Bur. 619 ff.

**113. Demonstrative Pronouns.** Demonstrative pronouns, when not used as adjectives, take the gender and number of the noun to which they refer: *is* (*i.e.* Orgetorix) *persuāsit*: *he* persuaded, I. 2. — Bur. 711.

*a.* *Hic* refers to what is near in place, time, or thought; *ille* to what is remote: *hanc Galliam . . . illam (Galliam)*: *this* (part of) Gaul, *that* (part), I. 44. — Bur. 712.

*b.* *Hic . . . ille* may mean *the latter . . . the former*: *hic cum auxilium ferret, illum ēripuit*: when *the latter* brought help, he rescued him (*the former*), IV. 12. — Bur. 715.

*c.* *Is* is frequently used as the antecedent of *quī*, or in agreement with the antecedent: *ea, quae pertinērent*: *those things* which had reference, I. 3; *eā legiōne, quam habēbat*: with *that* legion which he had, I. 8.

A. 296; B. 246; Bur. 716; G. 305; H. 505, 508; HB. 321, 271; W. 426.

**114. Intensive Pronoun.** The pronoun *ipse* emphasizes the word to which it refers: *ipse obtentūrus erat*: *he himself* was about to seize, I. 3. — Bur. 671.

*a.* *Ipse* may mean *very*: *ipsum esse Dumnorīgem*: Dumnorix was the *very* (man), I. 18; *in ipsīs ripīs*, on the *very* banks, II. 23.

*b.* The genitives *ipsius*, *ipsōrum*, may mean *his own*, *their own*: *ipsius castra*: *his own* camp, I. 21; *ipsōrum lingua*: *their own* language, I. 1. — Bur. 673, 678.

*c.* *Ipse* may be used as a reflexive pronoun: *sī ipsī (= sibi) opus esset*: if *he* needed anything (lit. if any need was *to himself*), I. 34.

A. 298; B. 249; Bur. 675; G. 311; H. 509; HB. 267; W. 428.

**115. Relative Pronoun.** The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; its case depends upon the structure of the clause in which it stands: *Germānīs, quī . . . incolunt, quibuscum bellum gerunt*: *to the Germans who . . . dwell, with whom* they fight, I. 1. — Bur. 703.

*a.* With two or more antecedents a relative pronoun may agree with the nearest or follow the rule for a predicate adjective (103, *b*): *ūsus atque disciplīna quam accēpissent*: *the experience and training* which they had received, I. 40. — Bur. 705.



b. The relative may not agree with its antecedent, but with an appositive or predicate noun in its own clause: *Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerāmus*: the *Belgae* who were a third part of Gaul, as we had said, II. 1. — Bur. 707.

c. The antecedent may stand in the relative clause: *quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā = cīvitās, quae est*, etc., I. 10. — Bur. 698.

d. The antecedent may be repeated, standing in both clauses: *erant duo itinera, quibus itineribus*: there were *two roads* by which, I. 6. — Bur. 695.

e. The antecedent may be omitted: (sc. *eōs*) *quī cognōscerent, mīsit*: he sent *men* to ascertain (lit. those who should ascertain), I. 21. — Bur. 701.

f. A relative at the beginning of an independent clause may be equivalent to a demonstrative or a personal pronoun, with or without a preceding conjunction (*et, nam, sed*): *quā dē causā = et eā dē causā*: and for this reason, I. 1; *quā in rē = et in eā rē*: and in this event, I. 12; *quī sī = nam sī eī*: for if they, I. 14; *quī cum = et cum eī*: and when they, I. 27.

A. 305; B. 250; Bur. 710; G. 614; H. 399, 510; HB. 322; W. 299.

**116. Indefinite Pronouns.** For the distinction of meaning of indefinite pronouns, see 27. *Quis, any*, is used chiefly after *sī nisi, nē, num*: *nē quis ēnūntiāret*: that *no one* (lit. not any one) should report, I. 30.

A. 309; B. 252; Bur. 682 ff.; G. 313; H. 512 ff.; HB. 276.

**117. Alius and Alter.** *Alius* and *alter* may be adjectives or pronouns.

a. *Alter . . . alter* mean *the one . . . the other*, *alius . . . alius*, *one . . . another*, *aliī . . . aliī*, *some . . . others*: *hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est*: of these *one* was killed, *the other* taken prisoner, I. 53.

b. Two different cases of *alius* may be used in the same clauses with the meaning *one (some) . . . one, another (others) . . . another*: *alius aliā causā inlātā*: *one* offering *one* excuse, *another* (offering) *another*, I. 39; *aliī aliam in partem*: *some* in *one* direction, *others* in *another* (or, in different directions), II. 24.

A. 315, c; B. 253, 2; Bur. 729; G. 319; H. 516, 1; HB. 279.



## VERBS

**118. Agreement.** A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person: *Gallia est divisa: Gaul is divided*, I. 1; *erant itinera duo: there were two ways*, I. 6.

a. If there are two or more subjects, connected by **et**, **-que**, or **atque**, the verb may agree with the nearest or be plural: *sī principēs ac senātus fidem fēcisset: if the chiefs and senate should give a pledge*, IV. 11.

b. If singular subjects are connected by words meaning *either, neither*, the verb is usually singular: *neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur: neither the cultivation of the land nor the theory and practice of war is interrupted*, IV. 1.

c. If two singular subjects form one idea, the verb is singular, *Matrona et Sēquana dividit: the Marne and Seine separate*, I. 1.

d. A collective noun generally takes a singular verb, but may take a plural: *ut (cīvitās) exīrent: that the tribe might go out*, I. 2; *cum multitudō conicerent: when a large number threw*, etc., II. 6.

A. 316; B. 254; Bur. 736-738; G. 211; H. 388; HB. 328; W. 296.

**119. Impersonal Verbs.** Some verbs are used only in the third person singular and in the infinitive, without a personal subject. To this class belong:—

a. Verbs meaning *it happens, it is permitted, it is necessary*, etc. Such verbs take a phrase or a clause as the subject: *poenam sequī (eum) oportēbat: it was necessary for punishment to be inflicted upon him* (lit. follow him), I. 4.

b. Intransitive verbs used in the third person singular of the passive (67, b, note): *pūgnātum est: fighting went on, they fought*, I. 26; *(dixit) sibi persuādērī: he said he was persuaded* (lit. it was persuaded to him), I. 40; *ventum est: (it was come) they came*, I. 43.

c. Verbs of feeling: *eōs paenitet: (it repents them) they repent*.

d. The passive periphrastic of deponent verbs: *nōn cunctandum (esse) existimāvit: he thought there must be no delay*, III. 23.

A. 208; B. 138; Bur. 346; G. 208; H. 302; HB. 287; W. 233.

## Tenses of the Indicative

**120. Present Indicative.** The present indicative represents action as taking place at the time of speaking or writing: **Germani trans Rhenum incolunt**: the Germans  *dwell* beyond the Rhine, I. 1. — Bur. 745.

*a.* The present is often used instead of a past tense to describe an action more vividly. It is then called the *historical present*: **Orgetorix deligitur**: Orgetorix  *was* (lit. is)  *chosen* , I. 3.

*b.* The historical present may be used with **dum**, *while*; see 137, *c.*

A. 465; B. 259; Bur. 748; G. 227; H. 532; HB. 468; W. 445.

**121. Imperfect Indicative.** The imperfect indicative represents action as going on in past time: **Helvetii populabantur**: the Helvetii  *were* devastating, I. 11.

*a.* The imperfect may be used in descriptions: **erant duo itinera**:  *there were* two ways, I. 6.

*b.* The imperfect may represent an action as customary or attempted, or begun: **in proeliis versabantur**: they  *were* accustomed to associate in battle, I. 48; **suspiciabatur**: he  *was* beginning to suspect, IV. 31.

A. 470; B. 260; Bur. 751, 752; G. 231; H. 534; HB. 468; W. 448.

**122. Future Indicative.** The future indicative represents action as taking place in time to come: **ibunt**: they  *will* go.

A. 472; B. 261; Bur. 754; G. 242; H. 536; HB. 468; W. 450.

**123. Perfect Indicative.** The perfect indicative has two uses:

*a.* The present perfect (translated by *have*), representing an action as completed in the present time: **didicerunt**: they  *have* learned.

*b.* The historical perfect (English past), representing the action as an historical fact: **coniuratiōnem fecit**: he  *made* a conspiracy, I. 2.

A. 473; B. 262; Bur. 758; G. 236; H. 537; HB. 468; W. 452.

**124. Pluperfect Indicative.** The pluperfect indicative represents action as completed before some other past action: **iam traduxerant**: they  *had* already led across, I. 11.

A. 477; B. 263; Bur. 763; G. 241; H. 539; HB. 468; W. 457.

**125. Future Perfect.** The future perfect represents action which is to be completed before some other future action: *officium praestiterō*: I *shall have done* (my) duty, IV. 25.

A. 478; B. 264; Bur. 764; G. 244; H. 540; HB. 468; W. 459.

**126. Primary and Secondary Tenses.** The present, future, and future perfect are primary tenses; the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect are secondary. The historical present (120, *a*) may be secondary, and the present perfect (123, *a*) may be primary.

A. 482; B. 258; Bur. 309; G. 225; H. 198; HB. 476; W. 161.

### Tenses of the Subjunctive

**127.** The four tenses of the subjunctive may denote the same time as the corresponding tenses of the indicative.

A. 400; B. 266; Bur. 781; G. 277; H. 541; HB. 469; W. 461.

*a.* In subordinate clauses future time may be expressed by the present subjunctive after a primary tense; by the imperfect after a secondary tense: *custōdēs pōnit ut scīre possit*: he *sets* guards that he *may be able* to know, I. 20; *remōtis equīs, ut spem fugae tolleret*: *having removed* the horses, that he *might take away* the hope of flight, I. 25.

*b.* In subordinate clauses future perfect time may be expressed by the perfect subjunctive after a primary tense; by the pluperfect after a secondary tense: *ſē nōn dubitāre dēbere, ſi Helvētiōs superāverint*: they *ought* not to doubt, etc., if they *shall have conquered* the Helvetians, I. 17; for the pluperfect so used see 155, *b*.

*c.* In both clauses of conditional sentences the present subjunctive may denote future time, and the imperfect, present time; see 140.

**128. Sequence of Tenses.** In subordinate clauses the tense of the subjunctive depends on the following rule: The present (or perfect) subjunctive is used after a primary tense; the imperfect (or pluperfect) subjunctive after a secondary; see illustrations under 127, *a*.

A. 483; B. 267; Bur. 781 ff.; G. 509; H. 543; HB. 476; W. 462.

### Uses of the Indicative

**129.** In principal clauses the indicative is used to express direct statements of fact and questions of fact: *fortissimī sunt*.

**Belgae:** the Belgae *are* the bravest, I. 1; **Belgaene sunt fortissimī:** *are* the Belgae the bravest?

A. 437; B. 271; Bur. 743; G. 254; H. 523; HB. 545; W. 478.

**130.** The indicative is used in the following subordinate clauses:—

*a.* Relative clauses (**133**).

*b.* Temporal clauses (**137**).

*c.* Causal clauses (**138**).

*d.* Concessive clauses (**139**).

*e.* Conditional clauses (**140**).

*f.* Parenthetical clauses with **ut, as: neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur:** suspicion is not lacking, *as the Helvetians think*, I. 4.

*g.* Clauses of comparison with **ut . . . sic, as . . . so: ut mihi concēdī nōn oportet, sic vōs estis inīquī:** *as I should not be allowed, so you are unjust*, etc., I. 44 (direct discourse).

Bur. 743, *d*; H. 524; HB. 547; W. 478.

### Uses of the Subjunctive

**131.** In principal clauses the subjunctive may express:—

*a.* An exhortation, in the first person plural of the present tense: **fortēs sīmus:** *let us be brave.* — Bur. 768.

*b.* A command, in the third person of the present tense: **fortiter pūgnent:** *let them fight bravely.* — Bur. 768.

*c.* A negative command, in the second person of the present or perfect tense: **nē eās (iveris):** *do not go.* — Bur. 768.

*d.* A wish or desire, generally with **utinam:** **utinam veniat:** *O that he would come.* — Bur. 773.

*e.* A possibility: **aliquis dicat:** *some one may say.* — Bur. 777.

*f.* Deliberation (see **141, a**): **quid agam?** *what shall I do?* or *what am I to do?* — Bur. 771.

A. 438, *a*; B. 272; G. 255–264; H. 551; HB. 499; W. 480.

**132.** The subjunctive is used in the following subordinate clauses:—

*a.* Descriptive clauses (**134**).

*b.* Purpose clauses (**135**).

c. Result clauses (136).

d. Temporal clauses (137).

e. Causal clauses (138).

f. Concessive clauses (139).

g. Conditional clauses (140).

h. Indirect questions (141).

A. 438, b; B. 280 ff.; Bur. 795; G. 543 ff.; H. 562, HB. 499.

### Relative Clauses

133. The indicative is used in the following relative clauses: —

a. Clauses that state *what person or thing* (determining clauses): *militēs, quī convēnerant*: the soldiers *who had assembled*, I. 8.

b. Clauses that state a fact parenthetically, or that add a fact not necessary to the main statement (parenthetical clauses): *Santonum finēs, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae civitās est in prōvinciā*, the country of the Santones, *which is not far from the country of the Tolosates, a tribe which is in the Province*, I. 10.

A. 535; B. 311; Bur. 797; G. 610-637; H. 589; HB. 499, 513; W. 580.

134. The subjunctive is used in relative clauses that state *what kind of person or thing the antecedent is*. Such clauses are called *descriptive or characteristic clauses*. The independent clause often contains a statement of existence like *est quī, sunt quī*: *ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent*: those things *which (or such things as) had reference to their departure*, I. 3; *erant duo itinera, quibus itineribus exire possent*: there were two ways, *by which they could go out*, I. 6.

a. The subjunctive is used in relative clauses that denote a *possible action*: (*iter*) *quā carrī dūcerentur*: (a road) *by which carts could be drawn*, I. 6.

b. The subjunctive is used in relative clauses that denote *purpose or result*: *diem dicunt, quā diē conveniant*: they appoint a day *on which they should assemble*, I. 6. — Bur. 809 ff.

c. The subjunctive is used in relative clauses to denote *cause*: see 138, b. — Bur. 807.

d. The subjunctive is used in relative clauses to denote *obligation*: *satis causae quārē in eum animadverteret*: enough reason *for which he should punish him*, I. 19.

A. 535; B. 283; Bur. 798; G. 631, 2; H. 591; HB. 521; W. 587.

### Purpose Clauses

135. The subjunctive with *ut*, *nē*, or a relative may express *purpose*: *sēmentēs facere, ut cōpia suppeteret*: to sow grain *that a supply might be on hand*, I. 3; *nē causam diceret*: *that he might not plead his cause*, I. 4; *lēgātōs mittunt, quī dicerent*: they send ambassadors, *who were to say*, I. 7.

a. In clauses containing a comparative, *quō* (= *ut eō*) is used instead of *ut* to express purpose: *castella commūnit, quō facilius prohibēre possit*: fortifies redoubts, *that he may be able to prevent more easily*, I. 8.

Note. Purpose may be expressed also by a gerund (165, c), a gerundive (164, c), or by a supine (166, a).

A. 531; B. 282; Bur. 810, 812; G. 545; H. 568; HB. 502; W. 506.

### Result Clauses

136. The subjunctive with *ut* or *ut nōn* may express *result*: *mōns impendēbat, ut perpaucī prohibēre possent*: a mountain was overhanging, *so that a very few could prevent*, I. 6.

a. There is often in the principal clause a correlative word meaning *so, such, so great*, as *ita, sic, tam, tālis, tantus*; see I. 11, 38, 39; II. 27.

A. 537; B. 284; Bur. 818; G. 552; H. 570; HB. 521, 2; W. 519.

### Temporal Clauses

137. In temporal clauses —

a. *Ubi, ut (when), postquam, posteaquam, cum primum, simul atque* take the indicative, usually the perfect, sometimes the historical present: *ubi sē parātos esse arbitrātī sunt*: *when they thought they were ready*, I. 5. — Bur. 870.

b. *Cum (when)* takes the indicative to *define* the time of the action of the main verb; the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive



to describe the circumstances of the main action: **cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit**, *principēs erant Haedui*: when Caesar came into Gaul, the Haedui were leaders, VI. 12; **cum civitās iūs suum cōnārētur**, *Orgetorix mortuus est*: when the tribe was attempting to enforce its right, Orgetorix died, I. 4; **cum dē improvīsō vēnisset**, *Rēmī lēgātōs mīsērunt*: when he had come unexpectedly, the Remi sent envoys, II. 3. — Bur. 856 ff.

**Note.** **Cum**, whenever, introducing a repeated action, is generally used by Caesar with the indicative: **ad quōs sē, cum ūsus est, recipiunt**: to whom they retreat, whenever it is necessary, IV. 2. — Bur. 904.

**c. Dum**, meaning *while*, generally takes the indicative historical present (120, a): **dum ea conquīruntur**: while these were (lit. are) brought together, I. 27; **dum morātur**: while he delayed (lit. delays), I. 39. — Bur. 878.

**d. Dum, dōnec, or quoad**, meaning *as long as*, take the indicative: **quoad potuit**: as long as he could, IV. 12. — Bur. 876.

**e. Dum, dōnec, or quoad**, meaning *until*, take the indicative of an *actual* event, but the subjunctive of an *expected* event: **dum milītēs convenīrent**: until the soldiers should assemble, I. 7.

A. 541; B. 287; Bur. 881; G. 559-588; H. 600-605; HB. 524, 557 ff.; W. 529 ff.

**f. Antequam and priusquam** takē the indicative to denote an *actual* event, but the subjunctive to denote an *expected* event: **priusquam pervēnērunt**: before they arrived, I. 53; **priusquam quicquam cōnārētur**: before he should attempt anything, I. 19. — Bur. 863.

### Causal Clauses

138. In causal clauses —

**a. Quod, quia, quoniam, and quandō** take the indicative when the speaker or writer gives his own reason, but the subjunctive when he gives another's reason, or a reason not surely known by himself: **Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat**, etc.: Caesar, because he remembered, I. 7; **legiō eī grātiās ēgit, quod optimum iūdicium fēcisset**: the legion thanked him, because he had expressed a very favorable opinion, I. 41. — Bur. 886.

**b. Cum**, meaning *since* or *because*, and **quī** (= *cum is*) take



the subjunctive: *cum praestarent*: *since they surpassed*, I. 2; *Caesarem iniūriam facere, quī vectigālia dēteriōra faceret*, Caesar did wrong (who) *because he was making the taxes less valuable*, I. 36.

A. 540; B. 286; Bur. 892; G. 538-542; H. 588, 598; HB. 523, 535, 555, 569; W. 541.

### Concessive Clauses

139. In concessive clauses —

a. *Quamquam* and, in Caesar, *etsī* and *tametsī* take the indicative: *quamquam sunt ēiusdem generis*: *although they are of the same race*, IV. 3; *etsī vidēbat*: *although he saw*, I. 46.

b. *Cum* or *ut*, meaning *although*, and *quamvis* take the subjunctive: *cum ea ita sint*: *although these things are so*, I. 14; *ut omnia acciderent*: *although all things happened*, III. 9.

A. 527; B. 309; Bur. 894, 900; G. 603-609; H. 586, 598; HB. 525, 556, 569; W. 569.

### Conditional Sentences

140. Conditional sentences are complex sentences, one clause of which (beginning with *sī*, *nisi*, *sīn*, or a relative) expresses a condition, the other a conclusion. The condition may be of the following kinds:—

- |                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| a. Present condition: | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 4em; line-height: 1;">{</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <p>1. Stated as a fact; present indicative: <i>sī vincit, bene est</i>: <i>if he is conquering, it is well.</i></p> <p>2. Contrary to fact; imperfect subjunctive: <i>sī vinceret, bene esset</i>: <i>if he were conquering, it would be well.</i></p> </div>     |
| b. Past condition:    | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 4em; line-height: 1;">{</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <p>1. Stated as a fact; a past indicative: <i>sī vicit, bene fuit</i>: <i>if he conquered, it was well.</i></p> <p>2. Contrary to fact; pluperfect subjunctive: <i>sī vīcisset, bene fuisset</i>: <i>if he had conquered, it would have been well.</i></p> </div> |

## c. Future condition:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| { | 1. More probable ( <i>shall, will</i> );<br>future or future perfect: <i>sī vincet, bene erit: if he conquers</i> (shall conquer), it will be well. |
|   | 2. Less probable ( <i>should, would</i> );<br>present or perfect subjunctive: <i>sī vincat, bene sit: if he should conquer</i> , it would be well.  |

**Note.** For conditional sentences in indirect discourse, see 157.

A. 514; B. 301; Bur. 907, 911, 915, 919; G. 589; H. 571-583; HB. 573 ff.; W. 550 ff.

### Indirect Questions

141. The verb in indirect questions is in the subjunctive: in *utram partem fluat, iudicārī nōn potest*: it cannot be determined *in what direction it flows*, I. 12; *tribūnīs nōn cōstābat quid agerent*: it was not clear to the tribunes *what they should do*, III. 14.

A. 574; B. 300; Bur. 846; G. 467; H. 649; HB. 537; W. 590.

a. The direct form of the question in the last illustration is *what shall we do?* Such a question involving perplexity is called *deliberative*, and takes its verb in the subjunctive: *quid agāmus?*

A. 591, 2; B. 324; Bur. 771; G. 629; HB. 539; W. 620.

### Subjunctive by Attraction

142. In clauses depending on a subjunctive or on an infinitive, the verb may be put in the subjunctive by attraction, as *esset* in the following: *cum eōs in eō locō, quō tum essent, suum adventum expectāre iussisset*: when he had ordered them to await his coming, in that place *in which they then were*, I. 27. — Bur. 905.

### Noun Clauses

143. A clause may be used as the subject or object of a verb, or in some other case relation. It is then called a *noun clause* or substantive clause. Noun clauses may have the verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or infinitive.

A. 561; B. 294; Bur. 821; H. 564; HB. 238; W. 498.

**144. Indicative Noun Clauses.** A noun clause beginning with the conjunction *quod*, *that*, takes the indicative: *accēdēbat quod dolēbant*: an additional reason was (lit. it was added) *that they were grieved*, III. 2.

A. 572; B. 299; Bur. 822; G. 525; H. 588, 3; HB. 552; W. 549.

**145. Subjunctive Noun Clauses.** Subjunctive noun clauses may begin with *ut*, *nē*, *quīn*, *quōminus*, or an interrogative word.

a. Noun clauses with *ut* or *nē*, after verbs meaning *advise*, *command*,<sup>1</sup> *induce*, *permit*,<sup>2</sup> *persuade*, *request*, *urge*, *wish*:<sup>2</sup> *civī-tātī persuāsīt ut exīrent*: he persuaded the tribe *to go out* (that they should go out), I. 2; *obsidēs utī dent, perficit*: causes *hostages to be given*, I. 9; *nē quis ēnūntiāret sānxērunt*: they ordained *that no one should tell*, I. 30.

**Note.** After verbs meaning *command* the subjunctive may be used without *ut*. The subjunctive then is a quoted imperative (154, c). — Bur. 826.

b. Noun clauses with *ut* or *nē* after verbs meaning *fear*. Here *nē* means *lest* or *that*; *ut* means *that . . . not*: *verēbātur nē Dīviciācī animum offenderet*: he feared *that he might hurt* the feelings of Diviciacus, I. 19; *ut supportārī posset, timēre*: feared *that it could not be brought up*, I. 39. — Bur. 838.

c. Noun clauses with *ut* after verbs meaning *accomplish*, *cause*, etc., and with impersonal verbs meaning *it happens*, *it is necessary*, etc.: *fiēbat ut vagārentur*: it resulted *that they wandered*, I. 2. — Bur. 842.

d. Noun clauses with *ut*, forming a clause in apposition with a noun or pronoun: *poenam, ut ignī cremārētur*: the penalty *that he be burned to death*, I. 4. — Bur. 828.

e. Noun clauses with *nē*, *quīn*, or *quōminus*, after verbs meaning *hinder*, *prevent*, *refuse*, and with *quīn* after words meaning *doubt* and sometimes *hesitate*: *nōn est dubium, quīn plūrimū possint*: there is no doubt *that they are the most powerful*, I. 3; *detrerrēre nē frūmentum cōferant*: prevent *from collecting grain*, I. 17. — Bur. 829.

<sup>1</sup> Except *iubeō*, which takes the infinitive (77).

<sup>2</sup> With verbs meaning *permit* or *wish* the infinitive may be used (77).

*f.* Noun clauses beginning with an interrogative word. These are indirect questions (141).

A. 563, 568; B. 295-298; Bur. 825, 846; G. 546, 553; H. 564-571; HB. 499; W. 510, 521.

**146. Infinite Noun Clauses.** An infinitive with subject accusative may be used in a noun clause, after verbs meaning *say*, etc.; see 154.

A. 563, *a*, 579; B. 329; Bur. 954; G. 527; H. 613; HB. 589; W. 623, 625.

### Use of the Imperative

**147.** The imperative is used to express *command* in the second person of the present tense, and in the second and third persons of the future: *dēsilitē*, *jump down*, IV. 25.

A. 448; B. 281; Bur. 931; G. 266 ff.; H. 560; HB. 496; W. 495.

*a.* Negative command is expressed by: 1. *Nōli* (*nōlite*) + a present infinitive: *nōli nōs dēspicere*, *do not despise us*, I. 13 (direct form). 2. *nē* + a present or perfect subjunctive: *nē eās*: *don't go*. — Bur. 934.

### Tenses of the Infinitive

**148.** The present infinitive denotes the *same time* as that of the principal verb; the perfect, *time before*; the future, *time after* that of the principal verb: *perfacile esse probat*: *proves that it is very easy*, I. 3; *sē conciliātūrū cōfirmat*: *declares he will win*, I. 3; *intellēxit diem instāre*: *knew the day was approaching*, I. 16; *certior factus hostēs cōsēdisse*: *having been informed that the enemy had encamped*, I. 21.

A. 486; B. 270; Bur. 939 ff.; G. 653; H. 617; HB. 472; W. 632.

### Uses of the Infinitive

**149.** The infinitive with or without a subject may be used as the subject of a verb, in apposition with the subject, or as a predicate nominative: *quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est*: *which has been said to be held by the Gauls* (lit. which it has been said the Gauls hold), I. 1. Here *quam Gallōs obtinēre* is the subject of *dictum est*.

A. 452; B. 327, 330; Bur. 943 ff.; G. 422, 535; H. 609; HB. 595; W. 622.

**150.** The infinitive without a subject may be used as the *object* of transitive verbs, or the *complement* of verbs meaning *can, dare, begin, ought, seem, hesitate, etc.*: *cōstituērunt comparāre*: *they decided to prepare*, I. 3; *facere cōnantur*: *they attempted* (120, a) *to do*, I. 5; *obsecrāre coepit*: *he began to implore*, I. 20.

A. 456; B. 328; Bur. 951; G. 423; H. 607; HB. 586; W. 626.

a. *Parātus* may take either a complementary infinitive, or *ad* with a gerund or gerundive: *parātōs obsidēs dare*, *ready to give hostages*, II. 3; see 164, c.

A. 459; B. 331; G. 527; H. 613; HB. 589; W. 628.

**151.** The infinitive with subject accusative may be used after verbs meaning *say, know, think, perceive, etc.*; also with *iubeō, vetō, prohibeō, sinō, cōgō (compel), cupiō, patior, and volō*: (*dixit*) *perfacile esse*: *said it was easy*, I. 2; *dixērunt sē meritōs esse*: *said they had deserved*, I. 11; *liberōs addūcī iussit*: *ordered the children to be brought*, II. 5. — Bur. 954.

**152. Historical Infinitive.** The infinitive may be used with a subject nominative in lively narration. It is then called the *historical infinitive*, and is equivalent to an imperfect or perfect indicative: *Caesar frūmentum flāgitāre*: *Caesar kept demanding grain*, I. 16.

A. 463; B. 335; Bur. 963; G. 647; H. 610; HB. 595; W. 631.

### Indirect Discourse

**153.** When a sentence is quoted in dependence upon a verb of *saying, knowing, or the like*, the quotation is said to be an *indirect statement* or *indirect discourse*: direct, *ibimus*, *we shall go*; indirect, (*dixērunt sē*) *itūrōs esse*: *they said they would go*, I. 13.

A. 577 ff.; B. 313 ff.; Bur. 964; G. 648–663; H. 641 ff.; HB. 533 ff.; W. 597 ff.

**154. Moods in Indirect Discourse.** When direct discourse is made indirect:—

a. A principal declarative verb in the indicative becomes infinitive: direct, *meritī sumus*: *we have deserved*; indirect, *dixērunt sē meritōs esse*: *they said they had deserved*, I. 11. — Bur. 964.

b. A subordinate verb becomes or remains subjunctive: direct, *id sī fiet*: *if this happens* (shall happen); indirect, *intelligēbat id sī fieret*: he knew that *if this should happen*, I. 10.

c. An imperative verb becomes subjunctive: direct, *revertiminī* (imperative), *return*; indirect, (*dixit*) *reverterentur*, he said *they should return*, I. 7. — Bur. 977.

d. Most interrogative verbs become subjunctive, but those in rhetorical<sup>1</sup> questions become infinitive with subject accusative: direct, *num memoriā dēpōnere possum?* *can I forget* (blot out memory)? indirect, *num . . . posse?* *could he forget?* I. 14; *quid venīrent*, for *quid venītis*: *why do you come?* I. 47. — Bur. 975.

**Note.** Briefly, in indirect discourse, a principal verb is generally in the *infinitive*, standing for a direct indicative; a subordinate verb is in the *subjunctive*, standing for a direct indicative or subjunctive.

A. 580 ff.; B. 314; Bur. 965; G. 650; H. 642; HB. 534 ff.

**155. Tenses in Indirect Discourse.** The tenses of the infinitive are used according to 148; those of the subjunctive, according to the rule for sequence (128).

A. 584, 585; B. 317; Bur. 966; G. 653; H. 644; HB. 593; W. 608.

a. A future tense in a direct subordinate clause becomes present subjunctive in indirect discourse, if it depends on a verb in the present; imperfect, if it depends on a verb in a past tense: direct, *sī cōnābiminī*: *if you (shall) attempt*; indirect, *sī cōnentur*: *if they attempt*, I. 8; direct, *sī pācem populus faciet*: *if the people (shall) make peace*; indirect, *sī . . . faceret*: *if the people should make peace*, I. 13. — Bur. 794.

b. A future perfect tense in a direct subordinate clause becomes perfect subjunctive, depending on a verb in the present; pluperfect, depending on a verb in a past tense: direct, *sī superāverint* (fut. perf.): *if they shall have conquered*; indirect, *sī superāverint* (perf. subjunct.), I. 17; direct, *ubi eōs cōstitueris*: *where you shall have stationed them*; indirect, *ubi eōs cōstituisset*: *where he had stationed them*, I. 13. — Bur. 794.

<sup>1</sup> A rhetorical question is one that is asked for effect and implies its own answer.



**156. Pronouns in Indirect Discourse.** In changing from the first person to the third, *ego* becomes *sē*, *meus* or *noster* become *suus*. In changing from the second person to the third, *tū* becomes *ille* or *is*, *tuus* or *vester* becomes *suus* or the genitive of *is*: see notes on I. 13 and 14 for illustrations.

G. 660; H. 645; HB. 533; W. 609.

**157. Conditions in Indirect Discourse.** The verb of the conditional clause in indirect discourse is always in the subjunctive (154, *b*), the tense depending on the rule for sequence (128). The verb of the conclusion is generally in the infinitive (154, *a*, *c*, *d*), the subjunctive of a condition less probable (140) becoming future infinitive. — Bur. 979.

In conditions contrary to fact (140) note the following:—

*a.* The verb of the conditional clause remains unchanged.

*b.* The conclusion, if active, is expressed by an infinitive consisting of the participle in *-ūrus* + *fuisse*: direct, *vēnissem*, *I would have gone*; indirect, *sēsē ventūrum fuisse*, *he would have gone*, I. 34.

*c.* The conclusion, if passive, is expressed by *futūrum fuisse ut* with an imperfect subjunctive: direct, *sī pūgnāvissent*, *victi essent*; indirect, *sī pūgnāvissent*, *futūrum fuisse ut vincerentur*, *if they had fought, they would have been conquered*. — Bur. 981.

*d.* The conclusion, if indicative, is expressed by the perfect infinitive: direct, *nōn fuit difficile*; indirect, *nōn fuisse difficile*, *it would not have been difficult*, I. 14.

A. 589; B. 319; Bur. 982; G. 656; H. 646; HB. 536; W. 613.

### Participles

**158.** Participles are verbal adjectives, and agree with nouns in gender, number, and case (103). The active participles are the present and future; the passive are the perfect and future (or gerundive).

A. 488; B. 336; Bur. 984; G. 282, 283; H. 636; HB. 599; W. 645.

**159.** The present and perfect participles are sometimes to be translated by a relative clause, or a clause expressing time, cause, condition, etc.: *damnātum* = *sī damnātus esset*: *if he should be found guilty*, I. 4; *Caesari petenti* = *cum peteret*:

when he requested, I. 42; *rogātus* = *quod rogātus esset*: because he had been asked, I. 44; (*nostris*) *labōrantibus* = *qui labōrābant*, who were hard pressed, I. 52

A. 496; Bur. 991; G. 664 ff.; H. 637, 638; HB. 604; W. 651.

160. The present and perfect participles are sometimes used as nouns or adverbs: *victis*: the conquered, I. 25; *venientēs*, those who were advancing, I. 25.

A. 494, a; Bur. 635 ff.; G. 437; H. 494; HB. 245, 249; W. 650.

161. The perfect participle is used in forming the compound tenses of the passive voice: *amicus appellātus erat*: he had been called friend, I. 3.

162. The future active participle is used with the verb *sum* to form the active periphrastic conjugation, and denotes future or intended action: *imperium obtentūrus esset*: he intended to seize (was about to seize) the supreme power, I. 3.

A. 498, a; B. 337, 4; Bur. 998; G. 247; H. 531; HB. 600, 2.

163. The future passive participle is used with *sum* to form the passive periphrastic conjugation, and denotes necessity or obligation: *neque cōferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō*: the land of the Gauls must not be compared with that of the Germans, I. 31; *Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda*: everything had to be done by Caesar at once.

a. The passive periphrastic forms of intransitive verbs are often used impersonally: *concēdendum (esse sibi) nōn putābat*, he thought he ought not to make concession (it ought not to be conceded), I. 7; *nōn exspectandum sibi statuit*: he decided he ought not to wait (lit. it ought not to be waited by him), I. 11; *nē cōnfligendum sit*: that he might not have to contend (lit. that it might not have to be contended), II. 5; *dubitandum nōn existimāvit*: he thought he ought not to hesitate (lit. it ought not to be hesitated), II. 2.

A. 500, 2; B. 337, 7; Bur. 1000; G. 251; H. 621; HB. 600, 3.

### The Gerundive

164. The future passive participle (158), when used in direct (attributive) agreement with a noun, is called the *gerundive*. It is so used in the following cases:—

a. Genitive: *facultās itineris faciundī*: an opportunity of marching, I. 7; *suī mūniendī causā*: for the purpose of protecting himself, I. 44. — Bur. 1006 ff.

b. Dative: *ut rēbus conlocandīs tempus darētur*: so that there was no time for arranging things, III. 4. — Bur. 1011.

c. Accusative: *ad effēminandōs animōs*: to weaken the character, I. 1; *ad perīcula subeunda*: to undergo dangers, I. 5; *pontem faciendum cūrat*: he causes a bridge to be built, I. 13; *obsidēs dandōs cūrasset*: had caused hostages to be given, I. 19. — Bur. 1013.

**Note.** An accusative gerundive with *ad* may express purpose. *ad eas rēs cōficiendās*: to accomplish these undertakings, I. 3.

d. Ablative: *dē expūgnandō oppidō*: with regard to capturing the town, II. 10; *lapidibus tēlisque subministrandīs*: by supplying stones and weapons, III. 25. — Bur. 1014.

A. 503; B. 339; Bur. 1003; G. 425 ff.; H. 621 ff.; HB. 609; W. 638.

### The Gerund

**165.** The gerund is a verbal noun, found in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The present infinitive is used for the nominative.

a. Genitive: *bellandī cupidus*: desirous of carrying on war, I. 2; *pūgnandī causa*: for the purpose of fighting, II. 10. — Bur. 1006 ff.

b. Dative: rare in classical Latin. — Bur. 1011.

c. Accusative: *ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent*: those things which belonged to the departure, I. 3; *diem ad dēliberandum*: time to deliberate, I. 7. — Bur. 1013.

**Note.** An accusative gerund with *ad* may express purpose; see last example.

d. Ablative: *in quaerendō reperiēbat*: he found out on inquiring, I. 18. — Bur. 1014.

e. The gerund may take an object, but the equivalent gerundive construction is generally used instead: *spatium pīla coni-ciendī*: time for hurling javelins, I. 52.

A. 501; B. 338; Bur. 1004; G. 425 ff.; H. 624 ff.; HB. 611; W. 637.

### The Supine

**166.** The supine is a verbal noun, found in the accusative and ablative cases.

*a.* The supine in **-um** is used with verbs of motion to express purpose: **lĕgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium**: they send envoys to ask for aid, I. 11. — Bur. 1015.

*b.* The supine in **-ū** is used to denote specification, with adjectives meaning *easy, good, strange*, or the opposite: **perfacile factū**: *very easy to do* (lit. in doing), I. 3.

A. 509; B. 340; Bur. 1017; G. 434; H. 632; HB. 618; W. 653.

### ADVERBS

**167.** Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs. They may express time, manner, degree, place, etc.

*a.* Negative adverbs. **Nōn** is the usual negative adverb; **nē** is used with subjunctives expressing will or desire (**135, 145**).

A. 217; B. 140; Bur. 647, 657; G. 439; H. 654; HB. 295; W. 656.

**168.** Adverbial Clauses. A clause may be used as an adverb, chiefly to modify verbs; see **135-140**.

A. 279, *b*; HB. 239; W. 501.

### PREPOSITIONS

**169.** A preposition shows a relation between a word in the accusative or ablative case and some other word.

*a.* The prepositions used with the accusative are **ad, adversus, ante, apud, circā, circum, circiter, cis, citrā, contrā, ergā, extrā, in, infrā, inter, intrā, iūxtā, ob, penes, per, post, praeter, prope, propter, secundum, sub, suprā, trāns, ultrā, versus** — Bur. 1019.

*b.* The prepositions used with the ablative are **ā, ab, abs, cum, dē, ē, ex, in, prae, prō, sine, sub**. — Bur. 1020.

*c.* With the accusative, **in** and **sub** denote *motion to* a place, with the ablative, *rest in* a place.

A. 220; B. 141; Bur. 1022; G. 412-418; H. 420, 490; HB. 303; W. 242 ff.

### CONJUNCTIONS

**170.** Conjunctions connect words, phrases, or clauses of equal rank, or principal with subordinate clauses. — Bur. 1028.

a. Coördinate conjunctions (connecting expressions of equal rank): *et*, *-que*, *ac*, *atque*, *etiam*, *quoque*; *aut*, *sive*, *vel*; *nec*, *neque*; *at*, *autem*, *enim*, *nam*, *sed*, *tamen*. — Bur. 1029 ff.

b. Subordinate conjunctions (connecting subordinate with principal constructions): 1. Temporal, denoting time: *cum*, *ubi*; *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*; *antequam*, *priusquam*; *postquam*, *posteaquam*, *simul*. 2. Causal, denoting cause: *cum*; *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *quandō*. 3. Conditional, denoting condition: *sī*, *sīn*, *nisi*. 4. Concessive, granting something: *cum*, *etsī*, *tametsī*, *quamquam*, *quamvis*. 5. Comparative, denoting comparison: *ac*, *atque*, *quam*, *ut*. 6. Final, denoting purpose: *ut* (*utī*), *quō*, *nē*. 7. Consecutive, denoting result: *ut*.

A. 223; B. 341; Bur. 1028; G. 474–503; H. 314 ff.; HB. 304; W. 248.

### WORD ORDER

171. There is no fixed rule for the order of words in a Latin sentence. A common order is (1) the subject with its modifiers, (2) the modifiers of the verb, (3) the verb: *equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōstitērunt*: *the horsemen of Ariovistus took their stand at an equal distance*, I. 43. — Bur. 1056.

a. Nouns in the genitive usually follow the words they modify but precede *causā*, *for the sake, for the purpose*: *commeātūs causā*: *for the sake of supplies* I. 39; *equitēs Ariovistī*: *the horsemen of Ariovistus*, I. 43; demonstrative and intensive pronouns and adjectives of quantity usually precede; other adjectives precede or follow their nouns: *eam partem*: *that part*, I. 13; *ipsis rēbus*: *on the very banks*, II. 23; *multōs annōs*: *many years*, I. 3. — Bur. 1057.

b. A preposition frequently stands between its object and an adjective modifier: *quā dē causā*: *for which reason*, I. 1; *ūnā ex parte*: *on one side*, I. 2. — Bur. 1062.

c. To produce emphasis, a word may be put at the beginning or end of a clause or sentence: *extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est . . . Genāva*: *the farthest town of the Allobroges is Geneva*, I. 6; *Caesarī cum id nūtiātum esset*: *when this had been reported to Caesar*, I. 7; *relinquēbātur ūna via*: *one way remained*, I. 9; *id sī fieret*: *if this should happen*, I. 10. — Bur. 1064 ff.



d. In a phrase of four words, if the first agrees with the third, and the second with the fourth, the order is said to be interlocked: **complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs = hīs pulsīs** (99, b, 1) **complūribus proeliīs** (87): *after defeating these (tribes) in many battles*, I. 10.

e. The conjunctions **autem**, **enim**, and **verō** do not stand first in a sentence, but second or third: **prō multitudīne autem hominū**, etc.: *furthermore, considering the great number of men*, I. 2.

f. **Ferē**, *almost, nearly*, follows the word it modifies: **tōtis ferē castrīs**: *nearly all the camp*, II. 23.

A. 598; B. 348; Bur. 1055 ff.; G. 671; H. 663 ff.; HB. 620; W. 664.

### ROMAN CALENDAR

172. a. The Roman year was designated by the names of the two consuls for that year, as if we should say, "during the presidency of Washington." The names were in the ablative case with **cōsulibus**, forming an ablative absolute (99): **M. Messālā (et) M. Pisōne cōsulibus**: *during the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso*, I. 2.

b. The Romans did not number the days of the month as we do, but called the first day the *Calends* (**Kalendae**), the fifth (seventh of Mar., May, July, and Oct.) the *Nones* (**Nōnae**), and the thirteenth (fifteenth of Mar., May, July, and Oct.) the *Ides* (**Īdūs**).

The days between the Calends and the Nones were reckoned as so many days each before the Nones; the days between the Nones and the Ides as so many days each before the Ides; the days after the Ides as so many days each before the Calends of the next month. But they counted both the day *from* which and the day *to* which they reckoned. Therefore, to determine a date falling before the Calends, add two to the number of days in the current month before subtracting the given ordinal.

Thus, the phrase **ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs** (a. d. v. **Kal. Apr.**) means *March 28*, for  $31 + 2 - 5 = 28$ .

c. A phrase like **ante diem quīntum Kal. Apr.** is idiomatic, for which we should expect **diēs quīntus** (or **diē quīntō**) **ante Kal. Apr.**

A. 631; B. 371; Bur. 603, 604; G. App.; H. 754; HB. 660.



## FIGURES OF SPEECH

**173. Hendiadys.** Two nouns in the same case connected by a conjunction are sometimes used when we should expect one noun to modify the other. This construction is called *hendiadys* ("one through two"): *glōria bellī atque fortitūdinis*: (*fame*) *for bravery in war*, I. 2; *fidēs et iūsiūrandum*: *a pledge (sealed) by an oath*, I. 3; *spē māgnisque praemiis*: *with hope of great reward*, I. 44. A. 640; B. 374; Bur. 107; G. 698; H. 751.

**174. Asyndeton.** The omission of a connective is called *asyndeton*: *linguā, institūtis, lēgibus* (= *et lēgibus*), I. 1; *concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet* (*sed Liscum retinet*), I. 18. A. 640; B. 341, 4; Bur. 1054; G. 473, Rem.; H. 657, 6.

**175. Polysyndeton.** *Et* is often repeated in connecting several words or clauses. This repetition is called *polysyndeton*: *et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō*: *in bravery, in influence, and in number of men*, II. 4. A. 640; B. 341, 4.

## FORMATION OF WORDS

## Noun Suffixes

**176.** The suffix *-tor* (*-sor*) denotes the agent or doer of an action: *imperātor*, *one who commands* (*imperō*); *dēfēnsor*, *one who defends* (*dēfendō*).

**177.** The suffixes *-iō*, *-siō*, *-tiō*, *-sus*, *-tus* (Gen. *tūs*), *-ium*, *-īna*, *-tūra*, denote action: *legiō*, *a levying* (*legō*); *excursiō*, *a running out* (*excurrō*); *ōrātiō*, *a speaking* (*ōrō*); *vīsus*, *a looking* (*videō*); *adventus*, *a coming* (*adveniō*); *studium*, *zeal* (*studeō*); *rapīna*, *act of robbery* (*rapiō*); *iactūra*, *a throwing* (*iaciō*).

**178.** The suffixes *-men*, *-mentum*, *-nus*, *-num*, denote the means, or the result of action: *agmen*, *that which is led* (*agō*); *impedimentum*, *that which hinders* (*impediō*); *facinus*, *that which is done* (*faciō*); *dōnum*, *that which is given* (*dō*).

**179.** The suffix *-or* denotes a mental state: *timor*, *fear* (*timeō*).

**180.** The suffixes *-ulus*, *-ula*, *-culus*, *-cula*, form diminutives: *adulēscēntulus*, *a mere boy* (*adulēscēns*); *nāvicula*, *little boat* (*nāvis*).

**181.** The suffixes *-ia*, *-tia*, *-tās*, *-tūs*, *-tūdō*, form abstract nouns denoting quality or condition: *audācia*, *boldness* (*audāx*);

*amīcitia*, friendship (*amīcus*); *bonitās*, goodness (*bonus*); *virtūs*, manliness (*vir*); *māgnitūdō*, greatness (*māgnus*).

### Adjective Suffixes

182. The suffixes *-āx*, *-icus* (*-icus*), *-idus*, form adjectives with the meaning of the present active participle: *ferāx*, fruit-bearing (*ferō*); *amīcus*, loving, friendly (*amō*); *timidus*, fearing, fearful (*timeō*).

183. The suffixes *-ilis*, *-bilis*, *-tīvus*, form adjectives chiefly with a passive meaning: *facilis*, that may be done (*faciō*); *crēdibilis*, that may be believed (*crēdo*); *captivus*, captured (*capīō*).

184. The suffixes *-cus*, *-icus*, *-ius*, *-nus*, *-ānus*, *-ēnus*, *-ālis*, *-ēlis*, *-ilis*, *-āris*, *-ārius*, *-timus*, *-ester*, form adjectives meaning belonging to, relating to, derived from: *bellicus*, of war (*bellum*); *patrius*, fatherly (*pater*); *frāternus*, brotherly (*frāter*); *hūmānus*, of man (*homō*); *terrēnus*, of earth (*terra*); *nāvālis*, of ships (*nāvis*); *fidēlis*, trustworthy (*fidēs*); *cīvilis*, belonging to citizens (*cīvis*); *mīlitāris*, of a soldier (*mīles*); *frūmentārius*, of grain (*frūmentum*); *maritimus*, of the sea (*mare*); *pedester*, on foot (*pēs*).

185. The suffix *-ōsus* forms an adjective meaning full of; *-eus*, an adjective denoting material: *periculōsus*, full of danger (*periculum*); *aureus*, golden (*aurum*).

### Derivation of Verbs

186. Verbs derived from nouns or adjectives are called *denominatives*: *liberō*, set free (*liber*); *nōminō*, name (*nōmen*).

187. Frequentative or intensive verbs, denoting repeated or intense action, are derived from other verbs, and end in *-tō*, *-itō*, *-titō*: *iactō*, hurl (*iaciō*); *terrītō*, put in terror (*terreō*); *ventitō*, come often (*veniō*).

188. Inceptive or inchoative verbs, denoting the beginning of an action, end in *-scō*: *inveterāscō*, grow old (*vetus*).

### Prefixes

189. Besides the prepositions which are used as prefixes, the following inseparable prefixes are used: *con-* (*com-*, *co-*), together; *dī-* (*dis-*), apart; *im-* (*in-*), not; *re-* (*red-*), back.

# LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

## INTRODUCTORY NOTE

No attempt has been made in the following exercises to give a complete view of Latin syntax. It is hoped, however, that the constructions presented will be found sufficiently numerous and comprehensive to give the pupil a command of most of the essentials of Caesarian usage.

Exercise 1 of each lesson has been made primarily to give practice in writing sentences involving the grammatical principles set forth in the references and notes of the lesson immediately concerned, and, secondarily, to give a review of the principles already considered. Exercise 2 of each lesson supplements Exercise 1 in both these particulars, but more especially in the latter.

It is probable that in many schools there will be time for the writing of only the sentences of Exercise 1. This section, though covering all the constructions dealt with in any lesson, has been made short in order to render it possible to finish it in one recitation period. Exercise 2 has been added to accommodate such classes as may have time to write more than Exercise 1, which is thought to be the minimum requirement.

Though Exercise 2 has regularly been based on the text of Caesar, the prescribed portion of which should be reviewed preparatory to writing the sentences based thereon, yet the English-Latin vocabulary will give adequate help for all the sentences.

Proper names and proper adjectives have not, except

in a few cases, been put into the English-Latin vocabulary, as they can readily be found in the Latin-English vocabulary.

In view of the great frequency with which the ablative absolute and indirect discourse occur in Caesar, and in all Latin literature, emphasis has been placed on these two constructions by bringing them in early and giving practice on both of them in every subsequent lesson.

## LESSON I

(References are to the Grammatical Appendix.)

1. Case of Subject: 60.
2. Case of Direct Object: 74.
3. Agreement of Adjectives and Participles: 103, *a*, *b*, and note; 158.
4. Agreement of Appositive and Predicate Nouns: 52, 53, 59, 62.
5. Agreement of Finite Verbs: 118, *a*, *b*.
6. Adjectives used as Nouns: 104.

## VOCABULARY

always, <i>semper</i> .	endure, <i>perferō</i> , - <i>ferre</i> , - <i>tulī</i> , - <i>lātum</i> .
away, be (be distant), <i>absum</i> , - <i>esse</i> , - <i>fuī</i> ( <i>āfuī</i> ), - <i>futūrus</i> .	general, <i>imperātor</i> , - <i>ōris</i> , <i>m</i> .
baggage-animals, <i>iūmenta</i> , - <i>ōrum</i> , <i>n</i> .	girl, <i>puella</i> , - <i>ae</i> , <i>f</i> .
both . . . and, <i>et</i> . . . <i>et</i> .	good, <i>bonus</i> , <i>melior</i> , <i>optimus</i> .
boy, <i>puer</i> , <i>puerī</i> , <i>m</i> .	hostage, <i>obses</i> , - <i>idis</i> , <i>m</i> . or <i>f</i> .
capture, seize, <i>capiō</i> , - <i>ere</i> , <i>cēpī</i> , <i>captum</i> .	informed, be, <i>certior fiō</i> , <i>fieri</i> , <i>factus sum</i> .
certain, sure, <i>certus</i> , <i>certior</i> , <i>cer-</i> <i>tissimus</i> .	labor, <i>labor</i> , - <i>ōris</i> , <i>m</i> .
danger, <i>periculum</i> , - <i>i</i> , <i>n</i> .	lieutenant, ambassador, envoy, <i>lēgātus</i> , - <i>i</i> , <i>m</i> .
daughter, <i>filia</i> , - <i>ae</i> , <i>f</i> .	lose, <i>amittō</i> , - <i>ere</i> , - <i>misī</i> , - <i>missum</i> .
	pledge, faith, <i>fidēs</i> , - <i>eī</i> , <i>f</i> .
	quickly, <i>celeriter</i> .

## EXERCISE 1

1. The soldiers quickly seized arms. 2. The enemy captured twenty baggage-animals. 3. The Gauls gave many hostages. 4. The general sent Titus Labienus, the lieutenant. 5. Caesar was quickly informed of (*dē*) the victory. 6. Dumnorix, the Haeduan, gives a pledge. 7. Good boys and girls have always been loved. 8. Both ships and sailors were lost. 9. Many have come as hostages. 10. Great labor and danger have often been endured. 11. Neither the son nor the daughter was found. 12. The brave are the best soldiers.

## EXERCISE 2 (B. G. I. 1)

1. The Belgians inhabited one part. 2. Merchants very seldom visited them. 3. The Gallic country touches the Rhine River. 4. The Garonne and the Seine were very deep rivers. 5. The Pyrenees mountains are between Aquitania and Spain. 6. The very brave will wage war. 7. Daily battles do not enfeeble courage. 8. The rivers and mountains were very far away. 9. All the Gauls have prevented the Germans. 10. All have been called Gauls.

## LESSON II

1. Pronouns: Demonstrative, Relative, Intensive; 109, 110, 113, *a, c*; 114, 115, *a, b*.

2. Genitive of Possession: 63, *a*.

3. Perfect and Imperfect Tenses: 121, *a, b*; 123, *a, b*.

*Note 1.* Adjectives and participles agree with their substantives in *three* points—gender, number, and case; pronouns with their antecedents in *two* of these points—gender and number; and appositives and predicate nouns with the words which they modify in *one* point—case.

*Note 2.* While both the perfect and the imperfect tense are alike in expressing past action, the imperfect carries the further notion of action in progress or action repeated. Thus *iit* and *ibat* both signify a *going* in past time, but *iit* says simply, *he went*, while *ibat* adds the notion of action in progress, *he was going*, or of action repeated, *he was accustomed to go*. The perfect definite, e.g., *iī*, *I have gone*, is not so apt to be confused with the imperfect.

## VOCABULARY

already, now, <i>iam</i> .	hill, <i>collis</i> , -is, m.
bear, carry, <i>gerō</i> , -ere, <i>gessī</i> , <i>gestum</i> .	I, <i>ego</i> , <i>meī</i> .
buy, <i>emō</i> , -ere, <i>ēmī</i> , <i>emptum</i> .	javelin, <i>pilum</i> , -ī, n.
dangerous, <i>periculōsus</i> , -a, -um.	king, <i>rēx</i> , <i>rēgis</i> , m.
depart, <i>discēdō</i> , -ere, -cessī, -cessum.	marsh, <i>palūs</i> , -ūdis, f.
do, make, <i>faciō</i> , -ere, <i>ficiī</i> , <i>factum</i> .	our, <i>noster</i> , -tra, -trum.
forest, <i>silva</i> , -ae, f.	sword, <i>gladius</i> , -ī, m.
heavy, <i>gravis</i> , -e.	tribe, nation, <i>nātiō</i> , -ōnis, f.
hereafter, <i>posted</i> .	warlike, <i>bellicōsus</i> , -a, -um.
	wooded, <i>silvestris</i> , -e.

## EXERCISE 1

1. This hill is not high. 2. We have already done these things, those we shall do hereafter. 3. The marsh which was between our men and the enemy was not large. 4. The marsh which you see is dangerous. 5. Here are the very fields and forests which we bought. 6. The sword and javelin which that soldier was-accustomed-to-carry were heavy. 7. The king's son and daughter, who came into the camp, have departed. 8. The Belgians, who are a very warlike tribe, were collecting an army. 9. The tenth legion itself was captured. 10. That which prevents us does not prevent them. 11. Their mountains were wooded.

## EXERCISE 2 (B. G. I. 2)

1. This man is very noble, that man is very rich.  
2. Between the Helvetians and the Sequanians there is a



lofty mountain. 3. The hope of the Helvetians who went forth was very great. 4. One part of this river is very deep. 5. He who was making that conspiracy was high-born. 6. Those troops had gone forth, these were going. 7. The Helvetians themselves will roam less widely. 8. That which they have done is not easy. 9. The Helvetians, who were a neighboring tribe, were waging war. 10. Orgetorix himself had not easily made the conspiracy.

## LESSON III

1. Indirect Object: 67, *a*.
2. Accusative of Place to Which: 79, *a*.
3. Ablative of Place from Which, or Separation: 83, *a*, *b*.
4. Complementary Infinitive: 150.

*Note.* A phrase like *to the soldiers* cannot be translated into Latin with certainty unless considered in connection with the word which it modifies. One may say, *he gave money to the soldiers*, in which case the dative (*mīlitibus*) of indirect object would be employed; or one may say, *he came to the soldiers*, in which case the accusative would be used with a preposition (*ad mīlitēs*). The idea of motion in the verb *came* (*vēnit*) demands the accusative of the place (person) to which (whom). This accusative is also called the accusative of limit of motion, or the terminal accusative.

## VOCABULARY

aid, help, <i>auxilium</i> , -ī, n.	journey, march, <i>iter</i> , <i>itineris</i> , n.
attack, <i>impetus</i> , -ūs, m.	make a journey, march, <i>iter faciō</i> .
be far distant, <i>longē absum</i> .	set out, proceed, depart, <i>proficī-scor</i> , -ī, -fectus sum.
beautiful, <i>pulcher</i> , -chra, -chrum.	shield, <i>scūtum</i> , -ī, n.
bring, bear, <i>ferō</i> , <i>ferre</i> , <i>tulī</i> , <i>lātum</i> .	small, <i>parvus</i> , <i>minor</i> , <i>minimus</i> .
end, limit, border, <i>fīnis</i> , -is, m.	sustain, <i>sustineō</i> , -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
(pl., borders, territory).	try, attempt, <i>cōnor</i> , -ārī, <i>cōnātus sum</i> .
father, <i>pater</i> , <i>patris</i> , m.	with difficulty, hardly, <i>vix</i> .
from there, thence, <i>inde</i> .	
go, <i>eō</i> , <i>īre</i> , <i>ivī</i> ( <i>ivī</i> ), <i>itum</i> .	
help, to, <i>auxilium ferre</i> .	

## EXERCISE 1

1. I gave my father (not acc.) the letter which you gave me. 2. The general hastened to the tenth legion, which was sustaining the attack with difficulty. 3. We came [as]<sup>1</sup> ambassadors from our tribe to him. 4. Our land extends from this hill to the forest yonder. 5. Caesar's camp was far distant from the borders of the Belgians. 6. The sword and shield which (App. 115, *a*) were smallest he gave to me. 7. This son and daughter whom you praise are trying to help everybody (all). 8. My father brought home beautiful (App. 103, *b*) swords and shields. 9. The legion, having set out from Rome, was marching (App. 121) to the army. 10. We shall try to go to Capua and from there to Brundisium.

## EXERCISE 2 (B. G. I. 3)

1. They decided to make peace and to buy baggage-animals and carts. 2. The father of Casticus the Sequanian was holding the royal power. 3. Orgetorix was willing to give his daughter in marriage to Dumnorix the Haeduan. 4. Three very powerful men gave pledge and oath to each other. 5. His father had been called friend. 6. Being influenced (perf. part.) by these considerations (*rēs*), he had made peace. 7. Both the father and the son were attempting the same thing. 8. He set out for the nearest state (not dat.). 9. He who has seized the royal power will not be acceptable. 10. Those who had come from that people to the senate obtained the leadership.

## LESSON IV

1. Pronouns, Reflexive and Possessive: 111; 112, *a*.
2. Genitive of the Whole: 63, *e*, Note.
3. Dative with Certain Intransitive Verbs: 67, *b*.
4. Dative with Compound Verbs: 67, *c*.

<sup>1</sup> English words in parentheses are explanatory; those in brackets are not to be translated.

*Note.* Observe how possession is indicated in each of the following instances:—

Labienus praises Caesar's soldiers, *Labiēnus Caesaris milītēs laudat.*

Labienus praises his (e.g., Caesar's) soldiers, *Labiēnus eius milītēs laudat.*

Labienus praises his (own) soldiers, *Labiēnus suōs* (not the genitive *sui*, of himself) *milītēs laudat.*

Labienus praises my soldiers, *Labiēnus meōs* (not the genitive *mei*, of me) *milītēs laudat.*

A possessive adjective pronoun is used wherever possible; the genitive of possession, only where no possessive will do.

## VOCABULARY

able, <b>am</b> , <i>possum</i> , <i>posse</i> , <i>potuī</i> .	go out, <i>exeō</i> , <i>-īre</i> , <i>-ivī</i> ( <i>-ivī</i> ), <i>-itum</i> .
afraid, <b>am</b> , <i>fear</i> , <i>timeō</i> , <i>-ēre</i> , <i>timuī</i> .	levy, <i>imperō</i> , <i>-āre</i> , <i>-āvī</i> , <i>-ātum</i> .
brave, <i>fortis</i> , <i>-e</i> .	make war on, <i>bellum inferō</i> , <i>-ferre</i> , <i>-tulī</i> , <i>-lātum</i> , with dative.
collect, gather, <i>cōgō</i> , <i>-ere</i> , <i>cōgī</i> , <i>coāctum</i> .	persuade, <i>persuādēō</i> , <i>-ēre</i> , <i>-suāsī</i> , <i>-suāsum</i> .
conquer, <i>vincō</i> , <i>-ere</i> , <i>vīcī</i> , <i>victum</i> .	put in command, <i>praeficiō</i> , <i>-ere</i> , <i>-fēcī</i> , <i>-fectum</i> .
defeat, <i>superō</i> , <i>-āre</i> , <i>-āvī</i> , <i>-ātum</i> .	resist, <i>resistō</i> , <i>-ere</i> , <i>-stitī</i> .
defend, <i>dēfendō</i> , <i>-ere</i> , <i>dēfendī</i> , <i>dēfēnsum</i> .	surrender, <i>sē dēdō</i> , <i>-ere</i> , <i>-didī</i> , <i>-ditum</i> .
enough, sufficiently, <i>satis</i> , adv., often used as a noun.	valor, <i>virtūs</i> , <i>-tūtis</i> , <b>f</b> .
fleet, <i>classis</i> , <i>-is</i> , <b>f</b> .	

## EXERCISE 1

1. The warlike tribes of Gaul defended themselves and all their [possessions]. 2. Caesar himself, who had conquered the Gauls, was accustomed to praise their valor. 3. Being defeated, the Gauls gave themselves up (surrendered themselves) to Caesar. 4. All the Helvetians had gone out of their own territory. 5. The bravest of the foot-soldiers were not afraid. 6. Our men have not collected enough ships (enough of ships). 7. These tribes, which are attempting to go away from home, will not be

able to resist the Romans. 8. Caesar had put a very brave man in command of the fleet. 9. The general has sent into Gaul the soldiers whom he levied on (commanded to) this tribe. 10. The Romans made war upon those who were trying to go through the province.

### EXERCISE 2 (B. G. I. 4 and 5)

1. Orgetorix rescued himself. 2. All his household had been gathered to the trial. 3. He had brought together to-the-same-place a large number of his retainers. 4. Many magistrates have committed suicide. 5. The Helvetians, the people from which Orgetorix had come to the Sequanians, were aroused. 6. A multitude of men will be ready to-set-fire-to (complementary infinitive) the buildings (not dative). 7. They will carry meal (ground provisions) from home. 8. The great number of the dangers does not take away hope. 9. Many of those who had been magistrates were undergoing peril. 10. He persuaded his retainers and debtors.

## LESSON V

1. Ablative of Place Where, and Time When or Within Which : 100, 101, 102.
2. Accusative of Extent of Space and Duration of Time : 80.
3. Ablative of Degree of Difference : 95.
4. Ablative after a Comparative without *quam* : 86, *a*.

*Note 1.* Observe that location in space and location in time are expressed by the same case, the ablative. Thus, whether we say *in that place* (*in eō locō*) or *in (at) that time* (*eō tempore*) we use the ablative. The preposition is apt to be used with expressions of place where, and apt to be omitted in expressions of time when.

*Note 2.* Observe that *space through which* and *time through (during) which* are expressed by the same case, the accusative. Thus, whether we say, *the soldiers followed for four miles* (*mīlītēs*

*mīlia passuum quattuor sequēbantur*) or the soldiers followed for four days (*militēs quattuor diēs sequēbantur*), we use the accusative.

## VOCABULARY

abundance, <i>cōpia</i> , -ae, f. In pl., forces or supplies.	hasten, strive, contend, <i>contendō</i> , -ere, -tendī, -tentum.
arrive, <i>pervenīō</i> , -īre, -vēnī, -ventum. Used with prep. <i>ad</i> or <i>in</i> .	high, deep, <i>altus</i> , -a, -um.
build, <i>aedificō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum.	month, <i>mēnsis</i> , -is, m.
camp, <i>castra</i> , -ōrum, n. In sing., fortress.	remain, <i>maneō</i> , -ēre, <i>mānsī</i> , <i>mānsum</i> .
daybreak, <i>prīma lūx</i> .	retreat, <i>recipiō</i> , -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, w. reflexive.
earth, <i>terra</i> , -ae, f.	see, <i>videō</i> , -ēre, <i>vīdī</i> , <i>vīsum</i> .
grain, <i>frūmentum</i> , -ī, n.	there, <i>ibi</i> .
happen, <i>accidō</i> , -ere, -cidī.	tower, <i>turris</i> , -is, f.
	wine, <i>vīnum</i> , -ī, n.
	year, <i>annus</i> , -ī, m.

## EXERCISE 1

1. In the enemy's camp there was a great abundance of grain and wine. 2. On the seventh day we shall arrive in (come through into) the territory of the Belgians. 3. At daybreak we shall be able to see those mountains. 4. These animals remain on the mountains [during] a large part of the year. 5. On that night they retreated twenty miles (order: thousands of paces twenty). 6. The Romans had thrown up there an agger eighty feet high. 7. This month is one day longer (longer by one day). 8. The sun is larger than the earth. 9. The tower is ten feet higher than the agger. 10. Crassus was hastening into Aquitania, whose borders were thirty miles away. 11. Within one year all these things happened.

## EXERCISE 2 (B. G. I. 6)

1. This way is much easier than that. 2. In those places very high mountains overhung. 3. On that day

all will come together into the town. 4. During all that day they were taking (leading) the wagons in single file (one by one) between the mountain and the river. 5. They will with difficulty be able to cross the river at that place. 6. Some of those mountains are higher than Mt. Jura. 7. Not yet had the Helvetians persuaded the Allobroges. 8. Very few roads are more practicable than this. 9. With ease (adverb) will they go through their own territory, but with difficulty through the territory of the Sequanians. 10. Within those days they had prepared everything.

## LESSON VI

1. Ablative of Cause: 90.
2. Ablative of Means or Instrument: 87.
3. Ablative of Manner: 91.
4. Ablative of Accompaniment: 94, a.
5. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance: 93.

*Note 1.* The English *with* conveys a variety of ideas which are variously expressed in Latin; *e.g.*—

They crossed with (by means of) boats, *nāvibus* — means.

They crossed with great swiftness, *māgnā cum celeritāte* — manner.

They crossed with (in company with) others, *cum aliīs* — accompaniment.

They crossed with the consent of their leader, *voluntāte ducis* — attendant circumstance.

*Note 2.* Instead of an ablative of means, *per* with the accusative is freely used; *e.g.*, *per vim*, by (lit., through) violence; *per cruciātum*, by (lit., through) torture.

*Note 3.* Instead of the ablative of cause, the prepositions *ob* and *propter* with the accusative are frequently used; *e.g.*, instead of *quā rē* (lit., on account of which thing) we may use *quam ob rem* (lit., on account of which thing). So one finds such expressions as *ob eās causās*, for these reasons, and *propter timōrem*, on account of fear.



Note 4. The ablative *causā* preceded by its genitive expresses cause; e.g., *commeātūs causā* (lit. for the sake of supplies).

## VOCABULARY

abandon, <i>relinquō</i> , -ere, -līquī, -līctum.	neighbors, <i>fīnitīmī</i> , -ōrum, m.
bank, <i>rīpa</i> , -ae, f.	peril, <i>perīculum</i> , -ī, n.
break up (move) camp, <i>castra moveō</i> .	scarcity, <i>inopia</i> , -ae, f.
disturb, <i>permovēō</i> , -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.	sovereignty, <i>imperium</i> , -ī, n.
ditch, <i>fossa</i> , -ae, f.	speed, <i>celeritās</i> , -tātis, f.
fear, <i>timor</i> , -ōris, m.	talk, <i>conloquor</i> , -ī, -locūtus sum.
fortify, <i>mūniō</i> , -īre, -īvī (-īvī), -ītum.	there (thither), <i>eō</i> .
hour, <i>hōra</i> , -ae, f.	tumult, <i>tumultus</i> , -ūs, m.
	wall (rampart), <i>vāllum</i> , -ī, n.
	watch, <i>vigilia</i> , -ae, f.
	wife, <i>uxor</i> , -ōris, f.

## EXERCISE 1

1. This camp was abandoned on-account-of the scarcity of grain. 2. Caesar fortified the bank of the Rhone with a wall and a ditch. 3. In the third watch the Belgians broke up camp with great tumult. 4. The lieutenant had wintered there with two legions. 5. During the whole day Caesar talked with the ambassadors. 6. Under our sovereignty, those tribes will never make war on their neighbors. 7. Within one hour they forced a passage through the river (crossed the river by violence). 8. Disturbed by the peril of the lieutenant, Caesar set out with great speed. 9. For these reasons Ariovistus had brought (led) his wife from home with him. 10. On account of fear the soldiers were unwilling to go there to secure grain (lit., for the sake of grain).

## EXERCISE 2 (B. G. I. 7)

1. The legion which was in farther Gaul hastened to Geneva by a forced march. 2. The Helvetians will not

march through the province with Caesar's consent. 3. On account of this march of the Helvetians, Caesar will levy a legion on the province. 4. By reason of the hostile spirit of these men, Caesar broke down the bridge. 5. Nammeius, being informed of the arrival of Caesar, set out with Verucloetius. 6. Lucius Cassius the consul was slain and his army sent under the yoke. 7. The soldiers whom he has levied will come together on that day. 8. The ambassadors who were sent to him will remember that day. 9. They will inform the noblest men of the state with respect to the number of our soldiers. 10. The army will not be willing to refrain from mischief.

## LESSON VII

### The Ablative Absolute: 99, *a*, *b*.

*Note.* The frequency with which the ablative absolute occurs in Latin, and the variety of ideas which it expresses, make it necessary to study this construction with especial care. It is not often obvious to the beginner when to use the ablative absolute, because the English phraseology seldom plainly suggests it, the equivalent nominative absolute of the English being ordinarily avoided. We may say in English, —

1. After this had been done (*hōc factō*), we were ready.
2. Because this had been done (*hōc factō*), they were afraid.
3. Although this had been done (*hōc factō*), they were not afraid.
4. If we shall have done this (*hōc factō*), we shall be safe.
5. By doing this (*hōc factō*), we shall win the victory.
6. Having done this (*hōc factō*), we shall win the victory.

The introductory clause or phrase in all these sentences may be rendered, as indicated, by the same Latin expression, *hōc factō*, lit., *this having been done*.

Conversely, if one finds in Latin the combination *hōc factō*, one may render it by clauses introduced by *after* (time), *because* (cause), *although* (concession), *if* (condition), or by phrases beginning with *by* (means) or *having* (non-committal), and one must judge by the context which mode of translation is most suitable.

Caution: The ablative absolute should be avoided when its

governing substantive would mean the same person or thing as the subject or object of the sentence. Thus, in translating, *the cavalryman, being wounded, was thrown from his horse*, we must not use *equite vulnerātō*, because *equite*, the substantive which would govern *vulnerātō* in the ablative absolute, would mean the same as the subject of the verb for *was thrown*. In such cases the participle is regularly made to agree with the subject, as, *eques vulnerātus equō dēiectus est*.

Likewise, for *having led out his forces, he drew them up*, we should write *cōpiās ēductās instrūxit*, not *cōpiīs ēductīs* (abl. abs.) *eās instrūxit*. In this latter mode of translation *cōpiīs* would mean the same as the object *eās*, hence the ablative absolute should be avoided.

## VOCABULARY

call together, <i>convocō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum.	no (adj.), <i>nūllus</i> , -a, -um.
conspiracy, <i>coniūrātiō</i> , -ōnis, f.	peace, <i>pāx</i> , <i>pācis</i> , f.
consul, <i>cōsul</i> , -is, m.	report, <i>nūntiō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
go away, <i>abeō</i> , -īre, -īvī (-ī), -itum.	return, <i>redeō</i> , -īre, -īvī (-ī), -itum.
join, <i>iungō</i> , -ere, <i>iūnxī</i> , <i>iūctum</i> .	sad, be, <i>doleō</i> , -ēre, <i>dolui</i> , <i>dolitum</i> .
magistrate, <i>magistrātus</i> , -ūs, m.	subdue, <i>pācō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
nevertheless, <i>tamen</i> .	surrender, <i>trādō</i> , -ere, -didī, -ditum.
	through, <i>per</i> , prep. with accus.

In the following exercises, employ the ablative absolute whenever possible. In some of the sentences, however, as is frequently the case in writing Latin, one really has a choice between the ablative absolute and some other construction.

## EXERCISE 1

1. After peace had been made, the Helvetians returned home. 2. Ariovistus was-sad at losing his wives. 3. If this tribe shall be subdued, the other tribes will not form (make) a conspiracy. 4. Although these things had been reported, nevertheless the magistrates did not see the danger. 5. By joining our forces we shall be able to capture the town. 6. In the consulship of Caesar, Ariovistus had been a friend of the Roman people. 7. They will not

be able to go through the province without Caesar's consent (Caesar being unwilling). 8. Being disturbed by this message, Caesar called together the lieutenants. 9. The Gauls, having surrendered their arms, went away. 10. As no enemy prevented (no enemy preventing), he led his troops back into the province.

### EXERCISE 2 (B. G. I. 8)

1. By reason of having constructed this ditch (abl. abs.) he more easily prevented them. 2. Having stationed the guards, the lieutenants will return to him. 3. They will not be able to break through against his will. 4. By day and by night they-kept-constructing the wall and the ditch. 5. The depth of the lake is greater than (*quam*) [that] of the river. 6. Those who had come together to the river, having built rafts, attempted to cross. 7. Being disappointed in (lit., thrown down from) this hope, he will cease from the attempt. 8. Javelins will repel the Helvetians who are joining together those boats. 9. Caesar did not give boats to the legion which drove back the Helvetians. 10. With this legion Caesar had finished the work on that day.

### LESSON VIII

Simple Declarative Sentences in Indirect Discourse: 154, *a*; 148.

*Note.* Indirect discourse is, as is the ablative absolute, an exceedingly important matter in the reading or writing of Latin. A due understanding of the essential features of this construction will be, by reason of the frequency of its occurrence, of inestimable service to every student of Latin. Fortunately, these essential features, if properly approached, are not difficult to master. The only feature to be taken up here is the most common and most simple one, the behavior of simple declarative sentences after verbs that may introduce indirect discourse; viz., verbs of saying and

thinking. Luckily, all these simple declarative sentences after verbs of saying and thinking behave alike, so far as the mood of their verb is concerned. Take *the night is long* (*nox est longa*). We may quote it in two ways. First, we may quote it directly, using the exact words of the original speaker, as, *the captive said: the night is long* (*captīvus dixit: nox est longa*). Here no change occurs, for, if any did occur, there would be no direct quotation. Caesar very seldom uses direct quotation like this. Second, we may quote indirectly, keeping the general sense, but altering the form, as, *the captive said that the night was long* (*captīvus dixit noctem esse longam*). Here there is no pretense of giving the captive's exact words either in English or in Latin. Only his meaning is conveyed. Such indirect quotation is the plainest kind of indirect discourse. The same changes would be made in this sentence if it stood after any other appropriate verb of saying or any verb of thinking; *e.g.*:—

<i>the captive replied</i>	<i>that the</i>	<i>captīvus respondit</i>	<i>noctem esse</i>
<i>night was long,</i>		<i>longam.</i>	
<i>the captive reported</i>	<i>that the</i>	<i>captīvus nūtiāvit</i>	<i>noctem esse</i>
<i>night was long,</i>		<i>longam.</i>	
<i>the captive suggested</i>	<i>that the</i>	<i>captīvus subiēcit</i>	<i>noctem esse</i>
<i>night was long,</i>		<i>longam.</i>	
<i>the captive called out</i>	<i>that the</i>	<i>captīvus exclāmāvit</i>	<i>noctem esse</i>
<i>night was long,</i>		<i>longam.</i>	
<i>the captive thought</i>	<i>that the</i>	<i>captīvus putāvit</i>	<i>noctem esse</i>
<i>night was long,</i>		<i>longam.</i>	
<i>the captive learned</i>	<i>that the</i>	<i>captīvus cognōvit</i>	<i>noctem esse</i>
<i>night was long,</i>		<i>longam.</i>	
<i>the captive supposed</i>	<i>that the</i>	<i>captīvus finxit</i>	<i>noctem esse</i>
<i>night was long,</i>		<i>longam.</i>	
<i>the captive dreamed</i>	<i>that the</i>	<i>captīvus somniāvit</i>	<i>noctem esse</i>
<i>night was long,</i>		<i>longam.</i>	

Be on the watch, therefore, for words which in any way convey the idea of speaking or of mental activity. If a declarative sentence follows one of these, its main verb must be in the infinitive form.

To get at the proper tense of the infinitive, a good way is to recast the English sentence so as to employ an English infinitive, and then translate accordingly; *e.g.*:—

Change, —

*the captive thinks that the night is long*

to *the captive thinks the night to be long (captivus putat noctem esse longam).*

Change, —

*the captive thinks that the night was long*

to *the captive thinks the night to have been long (captivus putat noctem fuisse longam).*

## VOCABULARY

hear, <i>audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.</i>	memory, <i>memoria, -ae, f.</i>
know, <i>intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.</i>	remember, <i>memoriā teneō, -ēre,</i> <i>tenuī, tentum (lit., hold in</i>
learn, <i>cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nītum.</i>	memory). say, tell, <i>dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.</i>

## EXERCISE 1

1. You say that the general has sent Titus Labienus, the lieutenant. 2. We all know that the brave are the best soldiers. 3. He heard that both ships and sailors had been lost. 4. You told us that those mountains were far away. 5. We have learned that the tenth legion itself has been captured. 6. You see that one part of this river is very deep. 7. Caesar has been informed that they will come as ambassadors from that tribe to him. 8. You remember that the Gauls, having surrendered their arms, went away. 9. The messenger said that in the third watch the Belgians would break up camp with great tumult. 10. The consul reports that the camp was abandoned on account of the scarcity of grain.

## EXERCISE 2 (B. G. I. 9)

1. With Dumnorix as intercessor (Dumnorix being intercessor), they-will-obtain-their-request. 2. He has put very many Helvetians under obligation (has very many



Helvetians bound) [to him] by his bribery. 3. They said that they wished to marry daughters of Helvetians. 4. We saw that they would not undertake the matter, if Caesar were unwilling (Caesar being unwilling). 5. Friends of Orgetorix reported that Dumnorix was very powerful. 6. We thought that they could not go by this route (way) on-account-of-the-narrowness-of-the-passage. 7. The Helvetians learned that Orgetorix had sent very many ambassadors to Dumnorix. 8. He knew that he would prevent them from [making] the journey. 9. They reported that he had been influenced by the kindness of friends. 10. His daughters know that they cannot go against his will (he being unwilling).

## LESSON IX

1. Review of Ablative of Separation: 83, *a*.
2. Ablative of Source or Material: 84.
3. Ablative of Agent: 85.
4. Dative of Agent with Passive Periphrastic: 71.

*Note 1.* Carefully review passive periphrastic forms and meanings: (38, 39, 162, 163).

*Note 2.* It is of interest to note the close relationship which the ablatives of separation, source, and material bear to one another. Compare,—

he was driven from the city (*ex urbe*) — separation.

the Rhine rises in (from) [the country of] the Lepontii (*ex Lepontiis*) — source.

the ships were made of (from) oak (*ex rōbre*) — material.

odors are breathed from flowers (*ē flōribus*) — source, but close to separation.

they were bringing grain into camp from those regions (*ex eīs regiōnibus*) — separation, but close to source.

*Note 3.* Ablatives of agent and datives of agent regularly denote persons and modify passive verbs. The preposition *ab* must go with ablatives of agent. Examples:—

*haec omnia ab eīs facta sunt*, all these things have been done by them.

*haec omnia eīs (dat.) facienda sunt*, all these things must be done by them.

## VOCABULARY

attack (storm), <i>oppugnō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum.	messenger, <i>nūntius</i> , -ī, m.
bad, <i>malus</i> , -a, -um.	mountain, <i>mōns</i> , <i>montis</i> , m.
children, <i>liberī</i> , -ōrum, m.	next (following), <i>posterus</i> , -a-um.
country (field), <i>ager</i> , <i>agrī</i> , m.	same, <i>īdem</i> , <i>eadem</i> , <i>idem</i> .
cross, <i>trānsēdō</i> , -īre, -īvī (-īvī), -itum.	scout, <i>explōrātor</i> , -ōris, m.
decide, <i>statuō</i> , -ere, -uī, -ūtum.	send, <i>mittō</i> , -ere, <i>mīsī</i> , <i>missum</i> .
enemy, <i>hostis</i> , -is, m.	short, <i>brevis</i> , -e.
immediately, <i>statim</i> .	slavery, <i>servitūs</i> , -tūtis, f.
man, <i>homō</i> , -inis, m. and f.; <i>vir</i> , <i>virī</i> , m.	spring from (in sense of originate), <i>orior</i> , -īrī, <i>ortus sum</i> .

## EXERCISE 1

1. The magistrates will collect men from the country (fields). 2. These Gauls are descendants of (have sprung from) the Germans who crossed the Rhine. 3. The scouts whom he had sent were not far distant from the enemy. 4. Those short swords are always made of (from, *ex*) the best iron. 5. Good men are sometimes made from bad boys. 6. The same mountain was held the next day by the enemy. 7. All these things must be announced (reported) by messengers at daybreak. 8. The Haedui said that their children had been enslaved (led away into slavery) by the Helvetians. 9. Having received this information (these things having been learned), Caesar decided that he ought to attack the town (the town ought to be attacked by him) immediately. 10. Everybody knows (all know) that boys learn very much (very-many-things) from their fathers.

## EXERCISE 2 (B. G. I. 10)

1. The march of the Helvetians must be reported.
2. Two legions have been enrolled in Italy by Caesar.
3. He knew that those warlike men would not be far away from the province.
4. For this reason Titus Labienus himself was wintering there.
5. This must be done by the Sequanians.
6. Having led the legions from winter quarters, he will try to prevent the Caturiges from their march.
7. The Ceutrones, being beaten (not abl. abs.), hurried through the Alps by forced marches.
8. The Roman people had put Caesar in command of a large army.
9. It was reported that for three days the Helvetians had been marching.
10. Farther Gaul is larger than the nearer province (86, a).

## LESSON X

1. Genitive of Description (Quality or Characteristic): 63, d; 66.
2. Ablative of Description (Quality or Characteristic): 96.
3. Ablative of Specification (Respect): 97.

*Note.* Phrases of Description.

## I. Genitive of Description.

1. *māgnī ponderis saxa dēvolvuntur*, rocks of great weight are rolled down.
2. *homīnēs erant ferī māгнаeque virtūis*, the men were warlike and of great courage.

## II. Ablatives of Description.

1. *Iccius Rēmūs summā nōbilitāte nūntiāvit*, Iccius, a Roman of the most aristocratic lineage, reported.
2. *Germānī sunt ingentī magnitūdine corporum*, the Germans are [men] of huge physical proportions.

## III. Ablatives of Specification.

1. *Helvētīū reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praeceḏunt*, the Helvetians excel the rest of the Gauls in (in respect to) valor.
2. *oppida sua numerō ad duodecim incendunt*, they set fire to their towns, about twelve in number.

Genitives of description and ablatives of description are adjectives in use, *i.e.*, they modify nouns. They are, indeed, sometimes connected with adjectives by coördinating conjunctions, as in I, 2, above (*ferī māgnaeque virtūtis*). These descriptive phrases may be used, as are ordinary adjectives, either attributively (I, 1; II, 1, above) or in the predicate (I, 2; II, 2, above).

While the genitive of description and the ablative of description are frequently interchangeable, the genitive should regularly be employed in expressions involving numerals, as, *fossa trium pedum*, a three-foot ditch (ditch of three feet [in depth]), and the ablative to describe parts of the body, as, *puella oculis nigris*, a black-eyed girl.

## VOCABULARY

carry from (out of), <i>efferō</i> ,	horse, <i>equus</i> , -ī, m.
<i>efferre</i> , <i>extulī</i> , <i>clātum</i> .	inflict, <i>injerō</i> , <i>injerre</i> , <i>intulī</i> , <i>in-</i>
differ, <i>differō</i> , <i>differre</i> , <i>distulī</i> ,	<i>lātum</i> .
<i>dilātum</i> .	influence, <i>auctoritās</i> , -tātis, f.
disposition, mind, <i>animus</i> , -ī,	kill, slay, <i>occidō</i> , -ere, <i>occidī</i> ,
m.	<i>occisum</i> .
elderly men, <i>māiōrēs nātū</i>	light-armed, <i>levis armātūrae</i> .
(greater in respect to birth).	marvelous, <i>mīrus</i> , -a, -um.
equal, <i>pār</i> , <i>paris</i> .	name, <i>nōmen</i> , -inis, n.
excel, surpass, conquer, <i>superō</i> ,	population, <i>multitūdō hominum</i> .
-āre, -ārī, -ātum.	renown, glory, <i>glōria</i> , -ae, f.
flee, <i>fugō</i> , -ere, <i>fūgī</i> , <i>fugitum</i> .	size, <i>māgnitūdō</i> , -inis, f.
fleet, swift, <i>vīlōx</i> , <i>vīlōcis</i> .	strength, <i>vīs</i> , <i>vīs</i> , f.

## EXERCISE 1

1. Men of unfriendly disposition often inflict injuries on their neighbors. 2. In this legion were men of the greatest valor. 3. The Bellovaei were a tribe of great influence. 4. Caesar said that the Gauls differed from each other (among themselves) in language. 5. In that place a fifteen-foot trench had been drawn (*dūcō*) by the soldiers. 6. That large-eyed (abl.) boy seems to see everything. 7. A town of the Aquitanians, Tolosa by

(in respect to) name, was six miles distant from our camp. 8. Each carried from home provisions for (of) three months. 9. Father and son are of equal height, but the son excels the father in strength. 10. Caesar knew that after peace had been made (abl. abs.) the Gauls would be kindly disposed (of good mind) toward (*in*) the Romans.

EXERCISE 2 (Last five sentences based on B. G. I. 11)

1. The horses were fleet and of marvelous size. 2. Marius, who conquered the Teutons, was [a man] of great renown. 3. Rome surpassed in population the rest-of-the (*reliquus*) cities of Italy. 4. All the elderly men had come to Caesar on that day to-arrange-for (*dē*) a surrender. 5. The light-armed infantry (foot-soldiers of light equipment), [now that] the bravest centurions had been killed (abl. abs.), fled in (into) all directions (parts). 6. The Helvetians ravaged the fields of the Haedui and carried away their children into slavery. 7. During those days the Haedui kept the enemy off from their towns. 8. The Haedui had informed Caesar that all their fortunes had been wasted by the enemy. 9. Nothing except the Roman army can defend the fields and towns of the Haedui. 10. We must show (pass. periphrastic) that there is nothing left.

LESSON XI

1. Subjective Genitive: 63, *b*.
2. Objective Genitive with Nouns: 63, *c*.
3. Objective Genitive with Adjectives: 64.
4. Genitive and Accusative with *meminī*, *oblīvīscor*, and *reminīscor*: 65, *a*.

Note 1. The student should not be troubled if he has difficulty in distinguishing between the subjective genitive and the

genitive of possession (63, a). In the expression *adventus militum*, the arrival of the soldiers, it is as well to call *militum* a possessive genitive as to call it, as is often done, a subjective genitive.

Note 2. The objective genitive with nouns primarily denotes the person or thing whereon the action or feeling of the governing noun terminates, as on a sort of grammatical object. Examples:—

*imperium magnae partis*, rule over a large part (much like *ruling a large part*).

*legionis cohortatiō*, the exhorting of the legion (much like *exhorting the legion*).

To feel that the genitive is, after certain adjectives (App. 64), a kind of object is perhaps easier still, as,

*iniuriæ cōsciū*, conscious of wrong (much like *recognizing wrong*).

Note 3. When they govern words denoting persons:—

*oblīvīscor* (forget) regularly takes the genitive.

*remīnīscor* (recall) regularly takes the accusative.

*meminī* (remember) takes either the genitive or the accusative.

When they govern words denoting things, all of these verbs take either the genitive or the accusative, except that neuter adjectives and neuter pronouns are regularly in the accusative, as, *ea meminī*, I remember those things.

Note 4. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of the defective verb *meminī* are used for the present, imperfect, and future, respectively.

## VOCABULARY

animal, *animal*, -ālis, n.

bravely, *fortiter*.

calamity, *calamitās*, -tātis, f.

desire, *cupiditās*, -tātis, f.

desirous of, *cupidus*, -a, -um.

fame, glory, *glōria*, -ae, f.

forget, *oblīvīscor*, -līvisci, -lītus sum.

forgetful of, *oblītus*, -a, -um (part. of *oblīvīscor*).

hope, *spēs*, -eī, f.

know, *sciō*, scīre, scīrī, scītum.

merchant, *mercātor*, -ōris, m.

military science, *rēs militāris*.

pleasure, *voluptās*, -tātis, f.

remember, *meminī*, *meminisse* or *remīnīscor*, *remīnīscī*.

skilful in, *perītus*, -a, -um.

so, *tam* or *ita*.

summer, *aestās*, -tātis.

take away, *tollō*, -ere, *sustulī*, *sublātum*.

victory, *victōria*, -ae, f.

winter, *hiems*, *hiemis*, f.



## EXERCISE 1

1. We know that the strength of animals is frequently marvelous. 2. A desire for fame has brought calamity on (*inferō*) many. 3. The hope of victory was taken away when the leader was killed (abl. abs.). 4. Brave soldiers are desirous of life but more desirous of victory. 5. The boy did that, [being] forgetful of the wish of his father and mother. 6. Considius, who had been sent forward with scouts, was considered (*habeō*) most skilful in military science. 7. In winter we all remember with pleasure the days of summer. 8. The people will never forget the soldiers who defended the city so bravely on that day. 9. That which you said to me about the nature of the mind I have not forgotten. 10. The Romans always remembered Caesar and the battles in (by) which he conquered the brave Gauls. 11. The merchant whom you<sup>1</sup> say you remember, I<sup>1</sup> have forgotten.

## EXERCISE 2 (B. G. I. 12)

1. That canton remembered Piso, and that not only he but Cassius also had been killed. 2. The legions had not yet forgotten Cassius and that his army had been sent under the yoke. 3. Caesar could remember wrongs done-to-the-state (public) and forgot wrongs done-to-himself (private). 4. The scouts informed Caesar of the smoothness of that river. 5. Rafts and boats had to be joined in the river by the Helvetians (App. 71). 6. Caesar avenged the wrongs to the Roman people in the same battle in which he cut to pieces a quarter (fourth part) of the Helvetian state. 7. On account of the memory of his father-in-law he will inflict a signal calamity on them.

<sup>1</sup> The personal pronouns *ego* and *tū* are expressed as subjects in cases of contrast or emphasis.

8. Three quarters (parts) of the Helvetians had already crossed and now (*nunc*) about a quarter (fourth part) was-on-its-way-across (was crossing). 9. They paid the penalty for (of) the calamity which they had inflicted on Cassius. 10. In the third watch the forces which were crossing were informed that the Romans had come.

## LESSON XII

### 1. Direct Questions.

### 2. Indirect Questions: 141.

*Note 1.* Direct questions are often introduced in Latin by some interrogative word which corresponds to an English interrogative, as, *quis es?* who are you? *ubi sumus?* where are we? *cūr hōc facis?* why are you doing this?

*Note 2.* Often, however, the Latin has an interrogative word (particle) where the English lacks it, English giving the interrogative notion by the order only. This occurs in the case of single questions that may be answered by "yes" or "no," and in the case of certain double (alternative) questions.

*Note 3.* Single direct questions that may be answered by "yes" or "no": —

1. *timēsne?* are you afraid? ♪

2. *nōnne timēs?* are you not afraid? *i.e.*, you are afraid, are you not?

3. *num timēs?* are you afraid? (Uttered with such expression as to show it to mean, you are not afraid, are you?)

The enclitic *-ne* of *timēsne* (1) merely gives warning that the sentence is a question.

*Nōnne* (2) indicates that the speaker expects the answer "yes."

*Num* (3) indicates that the speaker expects the answer "no."

*Note 4.* Double (alternative) direct questions: —

1. *utrum pūgnat an fugit?* is he fighting or running away?

2. *pūgnatne an fugit?* is he fighting or running away?

3. *pūgnat an fugit?* is he fighting or running away?

The alternative part may be the bare negative (*nōn*) with *an*, as: —

1. *utrum pūgnat an nōn?* is he fighting or not?

*Note 5.* Direct questions, both single and double, become indirect by being associated (e.g., as subject or object) with verbs of asking, knowing, doubting, or any form of expression which can suggest an interrogative idea. *The verb of the indirect question is regularly in the subjunctive mood.* Examples:—

1. *nesciō ubi sīmus*, I do not know where we are.

2. *rogat timeāsne* or *rogat num timeās*, he asks whether you are afraid.

Observe that here *-ne* and *num* have the same force, *num* not having with indirect questions the power of suggesting “no” as an answer, which it has with direct questions.

3. *Tibi dicam utrum pūgnet* { *an nōn* } , I will tell you whether he is fighting or not. { *necne* }

*Note 6.* Skeleton showing particles serviceable for double questions both direct and indirect:—

*utrum . . . an . . .*

*-ne . . . an . . .*

*. . . an . . .*

## VOCABULARY

accustomed (to become), <i>cōn-suēscō</i> , - <i>suēscere</i> , - <i>suēvī</i> , - <i>suētum</i> ; in perf., be accustomed.	how many, <i>quot</i> (indecl.).
ancients, <i>antīquā</i> , - <i>ōrum</i> (from adj., <i>antīquus</i> , - <i>a</i> , - <i>um</i> , ancient).	island, <i>īnsula</i> , - <i>ae</i> , f.
army, <i>exercitus</i> , - <i>ūs</i> , m.	large, <i>māgnus</i> , - <i>a</i> , - <i>um</i> .
ask, <i>rogō</i> , - <i>āre</i> , - <i>āvī</i> , - <i>ātum</i> .	long, <i>longus</i> , - <i>a</i> , - <i>um</i> .
cavalryman, <i>eques</i> , - <i>itis</i> , m.	much, more, most, <i>multus</i> , <i>plūs</i> , <i>plūrimus</i> .
come, <i>veniō</i> , - <i>īre</i> , <i>vēnī</i> , <i>ventum</i> .	ocean, <i>ōceanus</i> , - <i>ī</i> , m.
day, <i>diēs</i> , - <i>ēī</i> , m. or f.	receive, <i>accipiō</i> , - <i>ere</i> , - <i>cēpī</i> , - <i>cep-tum</i> .
fight, <i>pūgnō</i> , - <i>āre</i> , - <i>āvī</i> , - <i>ātum</i> .	way, journey, road, <i>iter</i> , <i>itineris</i> , n.
find out, learn (by investigating), <i>reperiō</i> , - <i>īre</i> , <i>repperī</i> , <i>reper-tum</i> .	whether, in single questions, <i>num</i> or <i>-ne</i> ; in double questions, <i>utrum</i> or <i>-ne</i> .
friend, <i>amīcus</i> , - <i>ī</i> , m.	write, <i>scribō</i> , - <i>ere</i> , <i>scripsī</i> , <i>scrip-tum</i> .

## EXERCISE 1

1, *a.* How-many rivers flow into that ocean? *b.* I do not know. 2, *a.* Who came to the general at daybreak?

b. I have not been able to learn. 3. a. Where are the armies, the victories, and the renown of the ancients? b. Can you ask? 4. Have you received the long letter which I wrote you (either ind. obj. or acc. with *ad* after *scribō*)? 5. Have you not heard that so large a tribe will send more soldiers than the smaller [ones]? 6. Are your friends on their way (in the journey), or<sup>1</sup> have they already arrived? 7. Were the Helvetians accustomed (pluperf.) to receive hostages or give [them]? 8. Did the cavalrymen fight more bravely on that day or not? 9. Do you ask whether Britain is a large island? 10. I am trying to find out whether the winters in Britain are long or short. 11. I forget whether she is beautiful or not.

## EXERCISE 2 (B. G. I. 13)

1. Do you see the bridge which Caesar is building (plain relative clause)? 2. Do you see what-sort-of (*quālis*) a bridge Caesar is building (indirect question)? 3. Having seen this, we can understand why the Helvetians are sending Divico [as an] ambassador. 4. After this battle had been fought, the Helvetians did not despise the Roman army. 5. They have done in one day that which we did with the utmost difficulty in twenty (*use word, not abbreviation*) days. 6. We do not know what they can do in twenty days. 7. Did the Helvetians learn the more (*plūs*) from their fathers and ancestors, or from Caesar? 8. Did Caesar contend rather by trickery than by valor? 9. Did the former valor of the Helvetians disturb the Romans on that day? 10. We remember Divico but we have forgotten that which he said (Lesson XI, note 3).

<sup>1</sup> "In double questions *an* or *-ne*,  
Not *aut* or *vel*, the word must be."

## LESSON XIII

1. Dative of Possession with *esse*: 72.

2. Dative with adjectives: 73.

*Note 1.* Examples of Dative of Possession: —

*erant ei trēs filiae*, he had three daughters (lit., three daughters were to him).

*est tibi cōnsilium*, you possess prudence (lit., prudence is to you).

*Note 2.* Of this type are datives after certain compounds of *esse* (e.g., *dēsse*, to be wanting), which signify the opposite of possession, as : —

*hōc ūnum Caesarī dēfuit*, This was the only thing Caesar lacked (lit., this alone was wanting to Caesar).

*Note 3.* A predicate possessive adjective or a predicate possessive genitive differs somewhat in meaning from the dative of possession by emphasizing the possessor, while the dative merely expresses the fact of possession; e.g.: —

*equus est meus*, the horse belongs to me;

*equus est Mārci*, the horse belongs to Marcus;

*equus est Mārcō*, Marcus has a horse.

*Note 4.* Of practically the same meaning with the last example of Note 3 is : —

*Mārcus equum habet*, Marcus has a horse.

*Note 5.* Examples of Dative with Adjectives: —

*cōnsimilis fugae profectionē vidēbatur*, the departure seemed very similar to a flight.

*castris idōneum locum dēligit*, he chooses a place suitable for a camp.

## VOCABULARY

cavalry, *equitātus*, -ūs, m.  
 dwell, live, *incolō*, -ere, -coluī.  
 friendly, *amīcus*, -a, -um.  
 gate, *porta*, -ae, f.  
 infantry, pl. (usually) of *pedes*,  
     -itis, m.  
 judgment, *iūdicium*, -ī, n.

lack, be wanting in, *dēsūm*,  
     -esse, -fuī.  
 like, *similis*, -e.  
 suitable, *idōneus*, -a, -um.  
 unfriendly, *inimīcus*, -a, -um.  
 wish, *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*.

## EXERCISE 1

1. The camp had four gates. 2. Who has a better sword? 3. Caesar had a large fleet and a brave army. 4. Caesar was informed that the enemy had both cavalry and infantry. 5. This boy wishes to be like his father. 6. Do you know what nations dwell next to the Germans? 7. Those tribes were friendly to the Germans but unfriendly to the Romans. 8. Sabinus thought that this place was suitable in all respects (in respect to all things — abl. of spec.) for a camp. 9. The soldiers did not lack (*dēsum*) courage but javelins. 10. Gaul did not belong to (was not of) Ariovistus rather (*potius*) than to the Roman people. 11. The judgment with-respect-to (*dē*) these matters lies not with (is not of) the soldiers but with the general.

## EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 1)

1. The Belgians, who (App. 115, *b*) were a third part of Gaul, were giving hostages to each other. 2. The Romans were informed by rumors that the Germans had wished (perf. infin.) to subdue all Gaul. 3. After the Germans had been subdued, our army was led against the Belgians. 4. The more powerful, by hiring men (abl. abs.), seize the royal power. 5. Some Gauls on account of fickleness of mind are eager for Roman rule. 6. Under our rule the Roman army will generally winter in Gaul. 7. It has been shown above that the Belgians were instigated (perf. infin.) by some Gauls. 8. As they were-unwilling (*nōlō*) to-take-oath-together, so they were-unwilling to exchange hostages (give hostages among themselves). 9. The Germans said that they (reflexive) had been in Gaul a-longer-time than the Romans.



## LESSON XIV

1. Dative of Purpose or Tendency: 69.
2. Dative of Reference: 70, a.
3. Dative of Separation: 68.

*Note 1.* Examples of Dative of Purpose or Tendency: —

1. *diēs conloquiō dictus est*, a day was set for the conference.
2. *quae ad oppugnandum ūsuī erant*, whatever things were of use (lit., for use) for making an attack.

*Note 2.* Examples of Dative of Purpose or Tendency combined with Dative of Reference: —

1. *ūna rēs nostrīs māgnō ūsuī erat*, one thing was of great service (lit., for great service) to our men.
2. *tertiām aciem nostrīs subsidiō mīsīt*, he sent the third line as (for) a relief to our men.

3. *Gallīs māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedimentō*, it was [for] a great hindrance to the Gauls for fighting.

*Note 3.* Examples of Dative of Separation: —

1. *hostibus spēs potiundī oppidī discessit*, the hope of getting possession of the town left the enemy (lit., went away for, — i.e., in the case of, — the enemy).

2. *scūtō milīti detrāctō*, having snatched a shield from a soldier (lit., having snatched away a shield in the case of a soldier).

*Note 4.* While the dative of purpose or tendency cannot mean persons, the dative of reference is commonly a personal word. Further, the dative of reference usually means persons benefited or injured, helped or hindered, or persons with reference to whom, or in whose case, something happens, is true, or of interest. Thus in Note 2, 1 and 2, *nostrīs* denotes the persons helped; *Gallīs* in 3, the persons hindered. The datives *hostibus* and *milīti* of Note 3, though loosely called datives of separation, are in reality datives of reference, showing *in whose case* something happened.

## VOCABULARY

brother, *frāter*, *frātris*, m.

care, *cūra*, -ae, f.

cohort, *cohors*, *cohortis*, f.

detriment, *detrīmentum*, -ī, n.

other, *alius*, -a, -ud.

protection, *praesidium*, -ī, n.

ravage, *vāstō*, -āre, -āvī,

-ātum.

rescue, (snatch away, take away), <i>ēripīō</i> , -ere, -ripuī, -reptum.	summon, <i>arcessō</i> , -ere, <i>arcessivī</i> , <i>arcessitum</i> .
safety, <i>salūs</i> , -ūtis, f.	take away (draw away), <i>dētrahō</i> , -ere, -trāxī, -trāctum.
sorrow, <i>dolor</i> , -ōris, m.	war, <i>bellum</i> , -i, n.

## EXERCISE 1

1. These things will receive my attention (will be for a care to me). 2. Your friendship will be [for] a protection to us all. 3. The Germans were summoned by the Belgians for aid. 4. How many cohorts did he leave as a guard for the camp? 5. Did you say that this war would be detrimental (for a detriment) to all the neighboring peoples? 6. He had been a-means-of safety (for safety) to others, but he himself was killed. 7. I wish to take away the sword from (for, in the case of) that boy. 8. By his valor he rescued his brother from (*ex*) peril. 9. One victory removed (*ēripīō*) from the soldiers their fear of the warlike Germans. 10. After peace had been made, the ravaged fields were a-source-of-sorrow to the conquered Belgians.

## EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 2)

1. Within fifteen days he will be informed of this by Caesar. 2. What commission was given the Gauls on that day by him? 3. The army must be led out of hither Gaul by Q. Pedius (App. 71) the lieutenant. 4. The Gauls were disturbed in the beginning of the summer on-account-of-this. 5. When the army had been gathered into one place (*abl. abs.*), Caesar set out for the Belgians. 6. We think [that] the Senones are finding that out. 7. An uniformly announce [that] there is an abundance of fodder in the territory of the Belgians. 8. Are you able to find out what is-going-on (App. 141) among the Bel-

gians? 9. The Gauls, being-disturbed (not abl. abs.; Lesson VII, Caution) on account of these messages, are beginning to secure supplies of grain. 10. Have they broken up camp or not (Lesson XII, Note 4, 6)?

## LESSON XV

1. Ablative with Certain Deponents: 88.
2. Genitive with *potior*: 88, *a*; 65, *d*.
3. Ablative with *opus* and *usus*, when they mean *need*: 89.
4. Ablative of Accordance: 92.

*Note 1.* The ablative with *usus* is not frequently found.

*Note 2.* *Opus* sometimes stands in the predicate, while the thing needed, especially if it be expressed by a neuter pronoun or adjective, is made the subject, *e.g.*, *sī quid ipsī opus esset*, if he himself wanted anything (lit., if anything were a need to himself).

## VOCABULARY

advantage, <i>commodum</i> , -ī, n.	and accus. with this meaning).
all, whole, the whole of, <i>tōtus</i> , -a, -um.	now, <i>nunc</i> .
capture, <i>expūgnō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum.	opinion, <i>sententia</i> , -ae, f.
courage, <i>fortitūdō</i> , -īnis, f.	possession, get . . . of, <i>potior</i> , -īrī, <i>potītus sum</i> .
crowded together, <i>cōnfertus</i> , -a, -um.	something, <i>aliquid</i> ( <i>aliquis</i> , -qua, -quid).
custom, <i>mōs</i> , <i>mōris</i> , m.	spare, save, <i>servō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
dare, <i>audeō</i> , -ēre, <i>ausus sum</i> .	supreme, superlative of <i>superus</i> , superior, <i>suprēmus</i> or <i>summus</i> .
easily, <i>facile</i> .	townspeople, <i>oppidānī</i> , -ōrum, m.
enjoy, <i>fruor</i> , <i>fruī</i> , <i>frūctus sum</i> .	use, <i>utor</i> , <i>ūtī</i> , <i>ūsus sum</i> .
fortune, <i>fortūna</i> , -ae, f.	
need, <i>opus</i> , n. (only in nom.	

## EXERCISE 1

1. The soldiers, [being] crowded together, could not use their swords readily (easily). 2. The townspeople said that they wished (themselves to wish) to enjoy (*utor*)

peace. 3. The children of kings often enjoy (*fruo*) fortune and renown. 4. The advantages which you enjoy are not for me. 5. The Nervii had not yet got possession of (*potior* with abl.) the camp and baggage of the Romans. 6. The Helvetians who went forth from home with their wives and children were unable to get possession of (*potior* with gen.) all Gaul. 7. Now we need (there is need — *opus* — to us) good hope and supreme courage. 8. Did you say that you needed something (Note 2)? 9. In (according to) my opinion, those cavalymen will not dare to attack our [men]. 10. Having captured the town (abl. abs.), Caesar spared the townspeople according to his custom.

#### EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 3)

1. The Suessiones enjoy the same laws as (relative pro.) the rest-of-the Belgians. 2. Not even the Remi conspired with the Suessiones, but they intrusted themselves to the power of the Romans. 3. The ambassadors said that the Remi and the Suessiones had one and the same magistrate. 4. Their brothers and kinsmen who dwell on-this-side-of the Rhine will assist the Romans with grain. 5. Hostages must be given by all the states (App. 71). 6. The frenzy of the Germans was not so great as (*quantus*) [was that] of the Belgians. 7. Did the Germans intrust themselves and all their possessions to the protection of Caesar? 8. All will be in arms sooner than any one expects it (lit. than the opinion of all). 9. One of (from, ex) the ambassadors who had been sent by the Remi (App. 85) was Iccius, the first [man] of the state. 10. After they had given hostages (abl. abs.), they did the things commanded.

## LESSON XVI

1. Ablative of Price: 98.
2. Genitive of Indefinite Value (*māgnī, tantī*): 65, c.
3. The Comparatives *amplius, longius, plūs*, and *minus*, not requiring the Ablative or *quam*: 86, b (Review 86, a).

*Note 1.* The Ablative of Price is often very similar to the ablative of means. Compare *buy for ten dollars* (price), and *buy with ten dollars* (means).

*Note 2.* The Genitive of Indefinite Value is akin to the genitive of description (Lesson X, Note). Compare:—

1. *vir summae virtutis*, a man of the greatest courage.
2. *vir minimī pretī*, a man of very little worth.
3. *vir est tantī*, the man is of so much (account).

*Note 3.* Indefinite value is expressed by the ablative also: *māgnō equum vēndidit*, he sold the horse at a high figure.

## VOCABULARY

avoid, <i>rītō, -āre, -ārī, -ātum</i> .	pay, reward, <i>mercēs, -ēdis, f.</i>
city, <i>urbs, urbis, f.</i>	place, pitch, <i>pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum</i> .
fifty, <i>quīnquāgintā</i> .	price, value, <i>pretium, -ī, n.</i>
injury, <i>iniūria, -ae, f.</i>	ship, <i>nāvis, -is, f.</i>
land, <i>ager, agrī, m.</i>	time, <i>tempus, -oris, n.</i>
little (by a little), <i>paulō, abl.</i>	two hundred, <i>ducentī, -ae, -a.</i>
of <i>paulus, -a, -um</i> .	weep, <i>fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum</i> .
more, <i>plūs (multus, plūs, plūrimus)</i> , or <i>amplius (amplus, amplior, amplissimus)</i> .	

## EXERCISE 1

1. You have bought this land at a very small price.
2. This man has inflicted many injuries on the city (App. 67, c) for pay.
3. It is of great [importance] to us to avoid that danger.
4. I shall not weep: the matter (*rēs*) is not of such (so much) [moment] to me.
5. The consul was away from the city more (*plūs* or *amplius*) than ten days (acc.).
6. He had gone a little (App. 95)

more than two hundred paces from the camp. 7. They themselves did not have more than fifty ships. 8. A messenger reported that less (*minus*) than three thousand men had defeated (*infin.*) the whole army. 9. At that time Caesar had not more than two thousand soldiers. 10. The Romans pitched a camp less than three miles (thousands of paces less than three) from the camp of the Helvetians.

#### EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 4)

1. The Bellovaci have very great influence among the Belgians on account of their valor. 2. We do not inquire from whom (App. 84) the Belgians are descended. 3. The Germans, having overrun Gaul (*abl. abs.*), were unable (not able) to enter within the borders of the Belgians. 4. Caesar is finding out through the Remi what strength the Belgians have (what the B. are able) in war. 5. How large a number of men did the warlike Nervii promise? 6. Very extensive (wide) and fertile lands were possessed by the Suessiones. 7. Galba with the consent (App. 93) of the Suessiones demanded for himself the sovereignty over a large part of Britain. 8. Do you think that Britain is more fertile than Gaul or not (Lesson XII, Note 4)? 9. Galba, a man of the utmost fairness (justice) and discretion (prudence), was a very powerful king. 10. Blood relationship and marriage ties united the Remi with the Bellovaci.

#### LESSON XVII

1. Secondary Object with Direct Object: 75, *a*.
2. Verbs compounded with *trāns* and *circum*: 75, *b*, Note.
3. Predicate Accusative with Direct Object: 76, *a*, Note.

*Note 1.* After both verbs of asking, demanding, teaching, etc., and verbs of making, calling, choosing, etc., two objects are found,



but the predicate accusative is different from the secondary object in this, that it seems to be a sort of predicate after *esse* understood. Compare:—

1. *hōs sententiam* (secondary obj.) *rogō*, I ask them their opinion.

2. *Cicerōnem cōsulem* (pred. acc.) *populus creāvit*, the people elected Cicero [to be] consul.

Note 2. *Petō* (ask, seek, beg) and *postulō* (demand) take *ab* with the ablative in place of the accusative of the person: *auxilium ab Rōmānīs petiērunt*, they sought aid of the Romans. *Quaerō* (inquire about, ask) takes *ab*, *dē*, or *ex* with the ablative: *quaerit ex perfugis causam*, he asks from deserters the reason.

## VOCABULARY

again, <i>iterum</i> .	inquire about, ask, seek, <i>quaerō</i> , -ere, <i>quaesīvī</i> or <i>quaesīi</i> , <i>quaesī-</i> <i>tum</i> .
appoint, place, <i>cōstituō</i> , -ere, -stitūī, -stitūtum.	
bridge, <i>pōns</i> , <i>pontis</i> , m.	lead across, <i>trādūcō</i> , -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
call, name, <i>appellō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum.	overcome, <i>superō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
certain (indef.), <i>quādam</i> , <i>quae-</i> <i>dam</i> , <i>quoddam</i> (adj.) or <i>quid-</i> <i>dam</i> (subst.).	promise, <i>polliceor</i> , -ēri, <i>pollicitus</i> <i>sum</i> .
chief, first, leading, <i>prīnceps</i> , <i>prīncipis</i> .	prudence, <i>prūdētia</i> , -ae, f.
demand, <i>flāgitō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, or <i>postulō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum.	senate, <i>senātus</i> , -ūs, m.
few, <i>paucī</i> , -ae, -a.	teach, show, <i>doceo</i> , -ēre, <i>docuī</i> , <i>doctum</i> .

## EXERCISE 1

1. I wish to ask (*rogō*) you your opinion. 2. Few are able to teach children prudence. 3. The Roman senate had in Caesar's consulship called Ariovistus friend. 4. He demanded (*flāgitō*) again of the Haeduans the cavalry which they had promised. 5. Caesar, having overcome this tribe (abl. abs.), will appoint a-certain-man [as] king there. 6. With your help we shall make him very friendly (adj. as pred. acc.) to us. 7. The tribes that

dwelt beyond (across) the Rhine were called Transrhenani. 8. The Romans quickly led two thousand soldiers across the bridge. 9. The Germans who had been led across the Rhine into Gaul said that they were unwilling (did not wish) to return home. 10. The chief [men] of the city demanded (*postulō*) this of the consul. 11. Will you inquire-about these [things] of (from) others?

### EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 5)

1. All the forces which had been collected from those states were led across this river. 2. The Remi showed (*doceō*) him that the Belgians had pitched (*inf.*) a camp not far from that bridge. 3. The river will be a protection to one side of the camp. (Translate in two ways. Lesson XIV, Note 2, suggests one.) 4. Children of leading men must be brought as hostages by the Remi (App. 71). 5. A wall twelve feet high will make the camp safe. 6. Caesar had found out that there was a bridge over this river. 7. The Remi will be safer than the Bellovaci. (Translate in two ways — App. 86, *a.*) 8. Did Caesar greatly encourage the chief men of the Remi or not (Lesson XII, Note 4)? 9. Quintus Titurius the lieutenant was fortifying the camp with a wall and a ditch. 10. Having placed a garrison there, he sent a part of his troops into the most distant territory of the Bellovaci.

### LESSON XVIII

1. Cognate Accusative: 81.
2. Accusative used adverbially: 82.
3. Accusative with *propior* and *propius*, *proximus* and *proximē*: 78, *a* (cf. 73).

*Note 1.* The Cognate Accusative (Accusative of Kindred Meaning) is illustrated by such expressions as *mīrum somnium*

*somniāre*, to dream a strange dream, and *vītam dūram vīvere*, to live a hard life. Less obvious are *pauca querī*, to make a few complaints (to complain a few [complaints]) and *facta respondēre*, to make false reply (to respond false [responses]).

Note 2. As *prope*, near, governs the accusative, it is not strange that the kindred words *propior*, *propius*, *proximus*, *proximē* should govern that case. The adverbs *propius* and *proximē* take the accusative frequently, the adjectives *propior* and *proximus* show a marked preference for the dative.

## VOCABULARY

advise, <i>moneō</i> , -ēre, <i>monuī</i> , <i>monitum</i> .	nearer, <i>propior</i> , <i>ius</i> (adj.), <i>propius</i> (adv.).
battle, <i>pūgna</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i> , or <i>proelium</i> , -ī, <i>n.</i>	nearest, <i>proximus</i> , -a, -um (adj.); <i>proximē</i> (adv.).
centurion, <i>centuriō</i> , -ōnis, <i>m.</i>	sea, <i>mare</i> , -is, <i>n.</i>
command, be in command of, <i>praesum</i> , -esse, -fui.	seem, be seen, <i>videor</i> , <i>vidērī</i> , <i>vīsus sum</i> .
large, great, <i>māgnus</i> , <i>māior</i> , <i>māximus</i> ( <i>māximam partem</i> , for the most part).	think, <i>sentio</i> , -īre, <i>sēnsī</i> , <i>sēnsū sum</i> .
near, <i>prope</i> , adv., and prep. with accus.	winter, <i>hiemō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ūtum.

## EXERCISE 1

1. You seem to have the same thoughts (to think the same) as (rel. pro.) I about this. 2. How many battles did the legions fight during all those years? 3. My father will give you this advice (advise you this). 4. All of us (we all) know that a general has greater power (is able more) than a lieutenant or a centurion. 5. At that time Diviciacus was very strong (was able very much) in Gaul and Dumnorix was very weak (was able very little). 6. The cavalry which Caesar used (App. 88) had for the most part been gathered from the Gallic tribes. 7. Near the camp was a large town by the name of Alesia (Alesia in respect to name — App. 97). 8. Having

learned this, Caesar on the next day moved his camp nearer Ariovistus. 9. The Aquitanians, on whom Crassus is making war (App. 67, c), are next to Spain. 10. The legions which Crassus commanded (App. 67, c) were wintering next to the sea.

## EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 6)

1. The Belgians had begun to throw a multitude of men about the town. 2. They threw stones from every direction against the defenders of the wall. 3. With great violence the Belgians stripped the wall of its defenders. 4. Having thrown a shower (multitude) of stones and javelins (abl. abs.), they could easily approach the gates. 5. Did Iccius hold out easily or with difficulty on that day (Lesson XII, Note 4)? 6. On the same night the messenger whom Iccius had sent came to them. 7. Caesar says that Iccius was (perf. inf.) a Roman of most aristocratic lineage (of highest nobility — App. 96). 8. One of those who had stood on the wall as defenders the whole day became (was made) their messenger (messenger for them). 9. That town must be attacked by us (App. 71) on the march. 10. The Belgians knew that Caesar's camp was eight miles distant.

## LESSON XIX

1. Gerundive: 164, a, b, c, Note, d.
2. Gerund: 165, a, b, c, d, e.

*Note 1.* The gerundive is peculiar in that while it is a participle (future passive) or verbal adjective, thus being of a class of words which are ordinarily wholly subordinate to the substantives which they modify, it has partly outgrown this subordinate relation and shows a desire, so to speak, to become a verbal noun and govern an object. In the phrase *dē expūgnandō oppidō*, with regard to capturing the town, the gerundive

*expūgnandō* seems not to be content with its subordinate relation, as a modifier of *oppidō*, a relation which might roughly be expressed by the translation *with regard to the town being (or to be) captured*, but to desire to be the chief word of the phrase and to govern *oppidō*. Grammatically, *expūgnandō* modifies *oppidō* — with regard to the town being (or to be) captured — but logically, it governs *oppidō* as its object — with regard to capturing the town.

*Note 2.* The gerund, on the other hand, is a complete verbal noun and is equal to the task of governing its object both grammatically and logically; e.g., *spatium pīla coniciendī*, time for hurling javelins. Here *coniciendī* is a genitive modifying *spatium*, and *pīla* is the object of *coniciendī*. The corresponding gerundive construction would be *spatium pīlōrum coniciendōrum*.

*Note 3.* The two constructions sometimes appear in one sentence: *neque cōnsilī habendī* (gerundive modifying *cōnsilī*) *neque arma capiendī* (gerund modifying *spatiō* and governing *arma*) *spatiō datō*, time being given neither for taking counsel nor for seizing arms.

*Note 4.* After prepositions the gerund is not used with an object, the gerundive construction alone being then permissible; e.g., *ad pācem petendam*.

*Note 5.* When it seems possible to use either the gerund or gerundive of a transitive verb, a good rule for the beginner is to use the gerundive. But of intransitive verbs only gerunds can be employed. The deponents *ūtor*, *potior*, etc., having originally been transitive, may appear in the gerundive construction; e.g., *spem potiundōrum castrōrum*, the hope of capturing the camp.

## VOCABULARY

barbarian, <i>barbarus</i> , -a, -um.	proximity, <i>propinquitās</i> , -tātis, f.
begin battle, <i>proelium committō</i> , -ere, -mīsī, -missum.	signal, <i>signum</i> , -ī, n.
come together, <i>conveniō</i> , -īre, -vērī, -ventum.	take, assume, <i>sūmō</i> , -ere, <i>sūmpsī</i> , <i>sūmptum</i> .
crush, <i>opprimō</i> , -ere, -pressī, -pressum.	there, thither, <i>eō</i> .
deliberate, <i>dēliberō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum.	wage war, <i>bellum gerō</i> , -ere, <i>gessī</i> , <i>gestum</i> .
plunder, <i>praedor</i> , -ārī, -ātus sum.	wait for, <i>expectō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
	war, <i>bellō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

## EXERCISE 1

1. The cavalry did not dare to begin to cross (make a beginning of crossing). 2. Will you take time for (*ad*) deliberation (deliberating)? 3. Change the following so as to use the gerundive in place of the gerund: —

*a. causa arma capiendī*, reason for seizing arms.

*b. cupidus urbem videndī*, desirous of seeing the city.

4. Two great nations that live near the Rhine are desirous of waging war (warring: use gerund of *bellō*). 5. After this had been reported (abl. abs.), the Belgians no longer (*nōn iam*) had hope of waging war (use proper form of *bellum* and the gerundive of *gerō*). 6. On account of the proximity of the enemy, our soldiers did not wait-for the signal for (of) beginning battle. 7. We shall all come together to defend (for — *ad* — defending) them. 8. A part of the cavalry had gone there (*cō*) to plunder (for the sake of plundering: gerund followed by *causā*). 9. All hope of getting possession of the camp immediately departed. 10. We have learned that the barbarians have formed a plan for (of) crushing this legion.

## EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 7)

1. The smoke and fires indicated that the camp extended (pres. inf.) more than eight miles. 2. Caesar will use as guides those who have come as messengers. 3. All those troops had been sent as help to the Remi (Lesson XIV, Note 2). 4. Having set fire to this village, the Belgians made-haste to lay waste the country districts (fields). 5. An eagerness to get (of getting) possession of these buildings was inspired in (came to) the enemy. 6. For this reason the enemy had pitched a camp two miles away (away by two miles — App. 95). 7. The slingers and bowmen whom Caesar had sent there (thither)



were unable to get possession of the town (App. 88, *a*).  
 8. [Their] keenness for the fray (desire for fighting) left the enemy (went away for the enemy — Lesson XIV, notes 3 and 4) at the arrival of the slingers and bowmen.  
 9. They did not linger near the town, but laid waste the lands of the Remi which they could reach (whither they were able, etc.). 10. The Remi had less hope (gen. of the whole) than Caesar.

## LESSON XX

1. Certain Indefinite Pronouns (or Adjectives): *aliquis, quivis, ullus, nullus, nōn nullus, quisquam, quisque, quidam*: 116.

2. Two different cases of *alius* in one clause: 117, *b*.

Example: *aliī aliam in partem ferēbantur*, they rushed, some in one direction and others in another.

3. Adjectives used adverbially, *e.g.*, *frequēns, princeps*: 105.

Example: *ea pars princeps poenās persolvit*, this part first paid (*i.e.*, was the first to pay) the penalty.

4. Adjectives denoting a part, *e.g.*, *summus, medius, imus*: 106.

Example: *media nox*, the middle part of the night, midnight.

*Note 1.* The indefinite pronoun *quisquam* and the corresponding adjective *ullus* are used mostly with negative expressions or with expressions implying a negative; *e.g.*, *neque repertus est quisquam*, nor has any one been found: *sine ullō labōre*, without any labor.

## VOCABULARY

<b>any</b> , <i>ullus, -a, -um</i> (neg., <i>nullus</i> ).	<b>deserter, fugitive</b> , <i>perfuga, -ae, f.</i>
<b>any one</b> , <i>quisquam</i> , no fem., <i>quidquam</i> or <i>quicquam</i> .	<b>die</b> , <i>morior, morī</i> or <i>moriri</i> , <i>mortuus sum</i> .
<b>any one, some one</b> , <i>aliquis (-quī)</i> , <i>aliqua, aliquid (-quod)</i> .	<b>each, each one, every</b> , <i>quisque, quaeque, quidque</i> or <i>quodque</i> .
<b>any you please</b> , <i>quivis, quavis, quidvis</i> or <i>quodvis</i> .	<b>follow, pursue</b> , <i>sequor, sequi, secutus sum</i> .
<b>certain</b> , <i>quidam, quaedam, quiddam</i> or <i>quoddam</i> .	<b>late at night</b> , <i>multā nocte</i> . <b>long, for a long time</b> , <i>diū</i> .

middle, <i>medius</i> , -a, -um.	robber, <i>latrō</i> , -ōnis, m.
native land, fatherland, <i>patria</i> , -ae, f.	secretly, in secret, <i>sēcrētō</i> .
numerous, in large numbers, <i>frequēns</i> , -entis (in pl.).	some (pl.), <i>nōn nullī</i> , -ae, -a.
refuse, <i>recūsō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum.	take, capture, <i>capiō</i> , -ere, <i>cēpī</i> , <i>captum</i> .
reward, <i>praemium</i> , -ī, n.	trouble, <i>negōtium</i> , -ī, n.
	way, manner, <i>modus</i> , -ī, m.

## EXERCISE 1

1. Some one of (*ex*) the soldiers reported that the general was afraid (the general to be afraid). 2. This one legion dares to attack any number you please (*quīvīs*) of the enemy. 3. This man has never been of (for) any assistance (help) to us. 4. [In] no way can we find out what reward has been given to each one. 5. After this had been announced, some went forth from the camp late at night. 6. These men are all most valiant (very brave), and no one (nor has any one) of them ever refused to die for (*prō*) his native land. 7. I have learned that a certain man talked with him in-secret for-a-long-time. 8. Six cohorts are-pursuing, and it will be no trouble (nor will it be anything of trouble) to capture the deserters. 9. Robbers from all parts of Gaul had gathered (come together) there in-very-large-numbers. 10. The messengers were sent, one in one direction, another in another. 11. On the middle of the hill was seen a large number of infantry.

## EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 8)

1. This place is not suitable for drawing up a line of battle. 2. Caesar had placed the engines of war at the ends of the ditches. 3. On account of the great numbers (multitude) of the foe, the soldiers had need of great valor (to the soldiers was need, etc. — App. 89). 4. The soldiers do not know why (*quā dē causā*) Caesar has decided (App. 141) to refrain from battle. 5. The enemy, having

led their troops out of the camp (abl. abs.), were unable to surround our men. 6. Caesar was the first to do (first did) this. 7. A line of battle in array (drawn up) cannot occupy so much space (so much of place). 8. He knew that our men were not inferior in valor (App. 97) but (*sed*) in number. 9. Every-day (daily) he formed a battle-line on the top of the hill in front of the camp. 10. The legions which have been enlisted most recently will construct a ditch four hundred paces [long] (of four hundred p.).

## LESSON XXI

Examine carefully the following, particularly the examples, which will not only serve as models for the sentences for translation in this lesson, but will serve also to make plain the real force of certain subordinate subjunctive constructions to be treated in subsequent lessons. (Read App. 131.)

### I. Imperative Mood: 147.

*ēdūc cōpiās*, lead out the troops.

*discēdite a fīnibus nostrīs*, depart from our country.

### II. Certain Independent Uses of the Subjunctive:—

#### 1. In Exhortations or Commands — Volitive Subjunctive (the negative is *nē*).

*pontem faciāmus*, let us make a bridge.

*uterque cum equitātū veniat*, let each come with cavalry.

*nē dīcant*, let them not say.

#### 2. In Wishes (negative is *nē*).

a. Possible. *nē longius prōgrediātur*, may he not advance farther! (Present subjunctive used.)

b. Unfulfilled in present. *utinam nē longius prōgrederētur*, would that he were not advancing farther! (Imperfect subjunctive used.)

- c. Unfulfilled in past. *utinam nē longius prōgressus esset*, would that he had not advanced farther! (Pluperfect subjunctive used.)

### III. Prohibitions (negative is *nē*): 147, a, 1, 2.

1. *nōlī* with infinitive.

*nōlī iniuriās inferre*, do not inflict injuries.

2. *nē* with present or perfect subjunctive, perfect usually.

*nē iniuriās intuleris*, do not inflict injuries.

*Note 1.* Observe that prohibitions are not expressed by an imperative with a negative, as one might expect they would be.

*Note 2.* Observe that we have no use for *nōn* in sentences like these. Subjunctive sentences expressing will (volition) and wish are negated by *nē*. Certain rare exceptions to this rule need not here be taken into account.

## VOCABULARY

bring, lead to, <i>adducō</i> , -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.	insult, <i>contumēlia</i> , -ae, f.
finish (do up), complete, weaken, <i>cōnficiō</i> , -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.	ready, prepared, <i>parātus</i> , -a, -um.
indignity, <i>indignitās</i> , -tātis, f.	three days, space of, <i>trīdium</i> , -ī, n.

## EXERCISE 1

1. Bring (*adducō*) the hostages to me within three days (App. 100).
2. Hurry (hasten) home and tell your brother (not acc.) that we have need of him (need of him — App. 89 — to be to us).
3. Let us hold (*teneō*) in memory the valor and the victories of our fathers.
4. Let us not endure these indignities and insults.
5. Let him not rescue himself through-the-help-of (*per*) his friends.
6. May our cavalry return at day-break!
7. Would that we were ready for (*ad* with gerundive construction) waging war!
8. Oh! that (would that) we had not gone forth from

home! 9. Do not forget friends. 10. Do not think that the war has been finished by the capture of this town (this town having been captured).

### EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 9)

1. Hasten (use plural) to the river and tear down the bridge. 2. After the bridge has been torn down (abl. abs.), lead back the troops to (*in*) camp. 3. In-the-meantime we shall have a cavalry battle (shall contend in a cavalry battle) between the camp and the marsh. 4. The enemy will attempt to keep our men from supplies. 5. May they not find the ford which is behind our camp! 6. We must begin to cross (a beginning of crossing must be made by us, App. 71) at that point (there). 7. A ford of the Axona was found by the cavalrymen (App. 85) of the enemy, which<sup>1</sup> was of great service to them. 8. The Belgians knew that the lieutenant Quintus Titurius was-in-command-of (ind. disc.) this fort (App. 67, *c*). 9. Oh! that (would that) they had not attacked our men entangled (impeded) in the river! 10. Do not carry on this great war with a part of your army.

## LESSON XXII

1. Sequence of Tenses: 128.
2. Commands in Indirect Discourse: 154, *c*; 145, *a*, Note.
3. Noun or Substantive Clauses Defined: 143.
4. Certain Substantive Clauses with *ut* or *nē*: 145, *a*.

*Note 1.* The use of the Latin tenses in both principal and subordinate clauses is more a matter of common sense than of rule. A student who has a good idea of the meanings of the tenses of

<sup>1</sup> When the antecedent of a relative pronoun is a clause, the demonstrative *id* is frequently used to represent the clause before the relative is brought in; hence here, *id quod*, instead of merely *quod*.

the indicative in principal clauses should have little difficulty with tenses of the indicative or subjunctive in subordinate clauses. Speaking generally, the tenses are managed about as we should expect. Examples:—

they do not know where they are, *nesciunt ubi sint*.

they did not know where they were, *nesciēbant ubi essent*.

they do not know where they have been, *nesciunt ubi fuerint*.

they did not know where they had been, *nesciēbant ubi fuissent*.

Now without any rule for the sequence of tenses, one would most naturally use the present subjunctive for *are*, the imperfect for *were*, the perfect for *have been*, and the pluperfect for *had been* in the above sentences.

A little less obvious is the use in such sentences as the following:—

I advise you to go (that you should go), *moneō ut eās*.

I advised you to go (that you should go), *monuī ut irēs*.

Here both *eās* and *irēs* refer to time subsequent (future) to that of the verb on which they depend. (Any subjunctive tense has this power of expressing relatively future time.) But as *eās* expresses futurity reckoned from a present point of view (*moneō*), it naturally stands in the present tense, and as *irēs* expresses futurity reckoned from a past point of view (*monuī*), it naturally stands in an appropriate past tense.

Note 2. Substantive clauses with *ut* and *nē* are in many cases independent commands, exhortations, wishes, or prohibitions, that have been somewhat disguised by being made to serve as subordinate clauses. Examples:—

*petunt Bellovacī ut clēmētiā ūtātur*, the Bellovaci beg that he may show (use) mercy. (Original — a request, which may be classed as a wish: may you show mercy, *clēmētiā ūtāris*).

*dat negotium Senonibus ut cognōscant*, he gives to the Senones the commission that they should find out. (Original — a command: find out, *cognōscite*.)

## VOCABULARY

arms, weapons, <i>arma</i> , -ōrum, n.	cut off, shut off, <i>interclūdō</i> , -ere, -clūsī, -clūsūm.
beg, seek, <i>petō</i> , -ere, <i>petīvī</i> , <i>petitum</i> .	decide, <i>cōstituō</i> , -ere, -stitūī, -stitūtum.
council, <i>concilium</i> , -ī, n.	flank, side, <i>latus</i> , -eris, n.



former, <i>prīstinus</i> , -a, -um.	supplies, <i>commeātus</i> , -ūs, m.
grant, <i>concēdō</i> , -ere, -cessī, -cessum.	surround, come around, <i>circumveniō</i> , -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum.
nothing, <i>nihil</i> (indecl.).	throw, hurl, <i>coniciō</i> , -cre, -iēcī, -iectum.
remain, <i>remaneō</i> , -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsū.	unprotected, open, <i>apertus</i> , -a, -um.
retain, <i>retineō</i> , -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.	urge, exhort, <i>cohortor</i> , -ārī, -hortātus sum.
return, go back, <i>redeō</i> , -īre, -īvī (-ī), -itum.	woman, <i>mulier</i> , <i>mulieris</i> , f.

## EXERCISE 1

1. Concerning your opinion that the shortest road is (infin.) the best, I will say nothing. 2. Concerning your opinion that we should go back by the same road (original: you should go back, etc.), I will say nothing. 3. Find out these things. What did he say? He said that we should find out these things. 4. Do not throw javelins. What did he say? He said that you should not throw javelins. 5. They have persuaded the Aquitanians (not acc.) to cut (that they should cut) the Romans off from supplies. 6. He urged the soldiers to keep in mind (retain the memory of) former victories. 7. Caesar advised Labienus to surround the enemy on the unprotected flank. 8. They begged that he should not remain in the camp. 9. I cannot grant you the privilege of retaining your arms (I cannot grant that you should retain, etc.). 10. Having called a council (abl. abs.), they decided that the women and children should go out of the town (original: let the women and children go, etc.).

## EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 10)

1. We cannot persuade them to delay [any] longer. 2. They decided that the cavalry should be the first to cross (should first [adj. — Lesson XX, 3] cross) the river.

3. A great number of them attacked our men floundering (impeded) in the river. 4. Our men knew that the enemy were drawing-near (approaching) to fight (for the sake of fighting). 5. They will convene from-all-quarters to defend the Bellovaci (for defending, etc. — App. 164, c). 6. Caesar was informed that a council had been called (inf.) by the enemy. 7. The slingers and bowmen who had been sent with the light-armed Numidians did not use javelins. 8. Though the first had been repulsed (abl. abs.), nevertheless (*tamen*), the rest, with-the-utmost-daring, made-an-attempt (attempted) to cross. 9. Let us defend our own territories rather than those of others. 10. Each-man knows that his hope in-regard-to seeing his home has disappointed him.

### LESSON XXIII

1. Impersonal Verbs: 119, *a, b*; 67, *b*, Note.
2. Certain Substantive Uses of the Infinitive with or without Subject Accusative: 149.
3. The Infinitive Construction after Certain Verbs — *iubeō, velō, patior, cōgō*, etc.: 151.
4. The impersonal *interest* with Genitive Case: 65, *c* (Review 65, *e*).

*Note 1.* It would seem natural that *iubeō* (command) and *imperō* (command), having the same meaning, should govern the same construction, but such is not the case. *iubeō* regularly takes the infinitive, and *imperō* regularly takes a subjunctive substantive clause (Lesson XXII, Note 2). Examples: —

*cōs accēdere iussit*, he ordered them to approach.

*cīs imperāvit ut accēderent*, he ordered them to approach.

*Note 2.* After some verbs, *e.g.*, *cōgō, interest, licet, oportet, permittō* (oftener with *ut* clause), *placet*, either an infinitive or a subjunctive substantive clause may be used.

*placuit ei ut lēgātōs mitteret*, he decided (it pleased him) to send (that he should send) ambassadors.

*māiōrī partī placuit castra dēfendere*, the majority preferred (it pleased, etc.) to defend the camp.

Note 3. Subjunctive substantive clauses with *oportet* are never to be introduced by *ut*; such clauses with *licet*, seldom.

*hōc faciāmus oportet*, we ought to do this.

This usage applies to some extent to many other verbs.

## VOCABULARY

allow, suffer, permit, <i>licet</i> , -ēre, <i>licuit</i> ; or <i>pator</i> , -ī, <i>passus sum</i> ; or <i>permittō</i> , -ere, -mīsi, -missum.	interest, be of importance, <i>interest</i> , -esse, -fuit.
command, order, <i>imperō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum.	order, command, <i>iubeō</i> , -ēre, <i>iussī</i> , <i>iussum</i> .
compel, <i>cōgō</i> , -ere, -ēgī, -āctum (see Vocab. of Lesson IV).	ought, is necessary or proper, <i>oportet</i> , -ēre, <i>oportuit</i> .
decide (when meaning it is pleasing), <i>placet</i> , -ēre, <i>placuit</i> .	tear down, <i>interscindō</i> , -ere, -scidī, -scissum.
easy, <i>facilis</i> , -e.	take away, <i>abripīō</i> , -ere, -ripuī, -reptum.

## EXERCISE 1

1. It is not easy to remember everything (all things — Lesson XI, Note 3). 2. It has been said that the Germans are braver than the Gauls. 3. They are not allowed (it is not allowed to them) to do this. 4. Caesar decided (it pleased Caesar) to put Decimus Brutus in command of the fleet (67, c). 5. He ordered (use *iubeō*) the Aduatuci to give themselves up (surrender themselves) and all their possessions. 6. He had commanded (use *imperō*) the Britons to send hostages into Gaul. 7. We cannot suffer you to take away (*ēripīō*) lands (fields) from our friends (App. 68). 8. This Roman cannot by the capture of one town (abl. abs.) compel us to beg peace of (Lesson XVII, Note 2) him (reflex.). 9. It is to the interest of the Germans (it interests the Germans) to tear down the bridges. 10. It is of great (*māgnī*) [importance] that the Romans should return to (*in*) Gaul immediately. 11. They have

been persuaded (App. 67, *b*, note) to resist the king.  
12. Our children ought not to be taken away from us (dat.).

### EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 11)

1. Although their ranks were in great disorder (abl. abs.), still (*tamen*) those-in-front seemed to be out of (absent-from) danger. 2. The cavalry, over whom (App. 67, *c*) Quintus Pedius is in command, will delay the rear according to orders (as has been ordered). 3. Caesar had ordered the soldiers to return to camp toward sunset. 4. We do not clearly see why they are decamping (App. 141) in the second watch. 5. On account of the exceedingly large number (very great multitude) of the fugitives (fleeing [ones]) the van was many miles (acc. or abl.) distant from the rear. 6. He gave immediate command to (immediately commanded) scouts to investigate (find out) the matter. 7. He saw that each one could do this without any danger. 8. The scouts learned at daybreak that the departure of this great multitude was very similar to a flight. 9. The men-in-the-rear, who had made a stand and were fighting bravely, were a protection (App. 69) to those-in-front. 10. Caesar, fearing a trick, kept his men in camp a large part (App. 80) of the night.

### LESSON XXIV

1. Substantive Clauses introduced by *ut* (that not) and *nē* (that) after Verbs of Fearing: 145, *b*.
2. Purpose Clauses introduced by *ut* (that), *nē* (that not), or a Relative: 135.
3. *Quō* introducing Purpose Clause containing Comparative: 135, *a*.
4. Other ways of expressing Purpose: 135, *a*, Note.

*Note 1.* To a student familiar with *ut* meaning *that* and *nē* meaning *that not*, as, for example, in the substantive *ut* and *nē* clauses already considered and in purpose clauses, it naturally seems peculiar that these meanings should be exactly reversed after verbs of fearing, *ut* with these meaning *that not* and *nē* meaning *that*. The reason is a simple one. Take the following: *nē audiat . . . timeō*, let him not hear . . . I am afraid (he will). *Nē* is naturally used here (Lesson XXI, II. 1). Now put *timeō* first: *timeō . . . nē audiat*, I am afraid . . . let him not hear. Considered as one sentence this practically means, I am afraid that he will hear. Thus *nē* gets the meaning *that*. *Ut*, which in other kinds of clauses is in meaning the opposite of *ne*, contrasts with it here also, and to do so must mean *that not*.

*Caution.* Do not try to express purpose by using the Latin infinitive.

### VOCABULARY

before, <i>ante</i> , prep. with acc.	from all directions (sides), <i>undique</i> .
climb, ascend, <i>ascendō</i> , -ere, <i>ascendī</i> , <i>ascēsum</i> .	set [ob-cadō, fall], <i>occidō</i> , -ere, -cidī, -cāsum.
command, order . . . according to, <i>iussū</i> (only in abl. sing.).	son, <i>filius</i> , -ī, m.
defender, <i>dēfēnsor</i> , -ōris, m.	storm, tempest, <i>tempestās</i> , -tātis, f.
	sun, <i>sōl</i> , <i>sōlis</i> , m.

### EXERCISE 1

1. I fear that this will be a severe (great) storm.
2. The soldiers were afraid that the cavalry might not return before the battle.
3. These remained to talk (that they might talk) with the general in private (secretly).
4. He said this that we might not think him to-be-afraid.
5. Caesar sent scouts to find out (who should, etc.) in what direction the Helvetians were marching (App. 141).
6. The Gauls fortified the camp according-to-the-command of Vercingetorix that they might be able more easily to withstand (sustain) the attacks of the Romans.
7. The townspeople, after their bravest defenders had been slain (abl. abs.) sent men (use proper

form of *is*) to say that they would surrender all their weapons. 8. They are afraid that envoys will come to demand the king's son as a hostage. 9. We climbed the mountain in order longer to see the setting sun. 10. Translate in three ways (*ut* clause; *ad* with gerundive — App. 164, *c*; and *causā* with gerundive — App. 164, *a*): They came together from all directions to defend the town.

### EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 12)

1. Translate in two ways: The Suessiones had a very large town. 2. The Gauls had heard that Caesar was coming to attack Noviodunum. 3. Caesar was afraid that the Suessiones would try to defend that town. 4. Having seen the height of the wall (*abl. abs.*), he knew that there was need (*opus*) of a very large agger (App. 89). 5. They mounted (*ascendō*) the wall in order to see the works. 6. The Gauls had not heard with how great (*quantus*) swiftmess the Romans could (were able to — App. 141) throw-up an agger. 7. Sheds, which were useful (for use) for attacking, were being prepared. 8. The Remi were afraid that Caesar would not be able to capture this town. 9. Ambassadors were sent by the Suessiones to beg that the town might be spared. 10. The Remi will beg Caesar (Lesson XVII, Note 2) to spare the Suessiones.

### LESSON XXV

1. Relative Clauses with the Indicative: 133, *a, b*.
2. Descriptive (Characteristic) Clauses: 134.

*Note 1.* In the sentence *secūtae sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castris continērent*, the meaning is not, there followed storms, and they kept our men in camp, but rather, as shown by the mood, there followed storms such as kept our men in camp. The relative clause is not loosely attached to the main clause to



add something of possible interest, but is closely attached to its antecedent *and describes it* (What kind of storms? Storms severe enough to keep, etc.). Such closely attached descriptive clauses regularly take the subjunctive mood. Frequently indicative relative clauses are closely attached, but they regularly do not describe, but merely point out, as, *eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat*, with that legion which he had with him. Here the relative clause does not tell *what kind of* a legion, but *what legion*, therefore the mood is indicative.

*Note 2.* After negative expressions like *nēmō erat quī . . .* (there was no one who . . .) and *neque repertus est quisquam quī . . .* (nor has any one been found who . . .) a descriptive subjunctive clause is *always* used; also *generally* after similar positive expressions like *sunt quī . . .* (there are [some] who . . .) and *multī erant quī . . .* (there were many who . . .):—

*neque repertus est quisquam quī morī recūsāret*, and no one has been found who refused to die (*What sort of a person? A refusing-to-die person*).

*Note 3.* Instead of being introduced by the relative pronoun, relative clauses, either determining or descriptive, may be introduced by relative adverbs, *quā* (where), *cum* (when), etc.:—

*fuit tempus cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent*, there was a time when the Gauls surpassed the Germans in valor. (The *cum*-clause *describes tempus* and therefore is subjunctive.)

## VOCABULARY

all the others, the rest, <i>cēterī</i> , -ae, -a.	Italy, <i>Ītalia</i> , -ae, f.
along with, together with, <i>ūnā</i> <i>cum</i> .	leadership, <i>prīncipātus</i> , -ūs, m. multitude, <i>multitūdō</i> , -inis, f. (powerful), be very powerful, <i>plūrimum posse</i> (lit., be able very much).
at home, <i>domī</i> .	when, <i>cum</i> .
commend, praise, <i>laudō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum.	where, <i>quā</i> .
here, <i>hīc</i> .	

## EXERCISE 1

1. Along with all-the-others was Dumnorix the Haeduan, of (*dē*) whom mention has been made by us (it has been spoken, etc.) before. 2. Dumnorix was a man who had

always wished to be very powerful at home. 3. Two men were striving for (*dē*) leadership, one of whom sought help from Caesar. 4. There were in this legion *two* centurions who were not afraid on account of the multitude of the foe. 5. Gaius Fabius led a legion into the territory of the Atrebates, where he knew Caesar must march (a journey must be made by Caesar). 6. Who is there that has not heard that Ariovistus was a German king? 7. There is no one in this legion who is braver than you. 8. There were no other ships in which they could return, if these were lost (*abl. abs.*). 9. The soldiers did nothing which the general could not commend. 10. There was a time when there were no cities in Italy.

#### EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 13)

1. There was not a woman in the town who did not stretch out her hands to the Romans. 2. The women and children who were on (*in*) the wall had no weapons. 3. They begged (sought from) the Romans not to come (App. 145, *a*) into the town. 4. The older men hastened to the camp and put themselves under the protection of Caesar. 5. All had come out of the town to beg for peace. 6. The Bellovaci indicated that they would give themselves up and all their possessions. 7. Caesar, according to his custom, commanded (*iubeō* or *imperō*) the Bellovaci (Lesson XXIII, Note 1) to bring to him the first [men] of the state. 8. They did not know whether (Lesson XII, Note 5, 3) Caesar would accept (*act. periphrastic*) their capitulation (receive them into surrender) or not. 9. After peace had been concluded (*faciō*), the weapons which were in the town were given up. 10. They led to the Roman camp two sons of Galba, whom Caesar had accepted as hostages.

## LESSON XXVI

1. Review of Purpose Clauses: 135, *a*.
2. Review of Descriptive (Characteristic) Clauses: 134; Lesson XXV, Note 1.
3. Clauses of Result introduced by *ut* and *ut nōn*: 136, *a*.
4. Clauses of Result introduced by a relative: 134, *b*.

*Note 1.* Ordinarily a sharp line may be drawn between clauses of purpose and clauses of result: —

*quam ob rem mānsit? mānsit ut mēcum conloquerētur.* Why did he stay? He stayed *to converse with me*. (Purpose.)

*quam prope accesserant hostēs? tam prope accesserant ut oculōs vidēre possēmus.* How near had the enemy come? They had come so near *that we could see their eyes*. (Result.)

*Note 2.* No sharp line can be drawn between descriptive clauses and clauses of result. Indeed, all descriptive clauses contain a consecutive (result) idea; hence both these kinds of clauses might rationally be called consecutive, or result, clauses. Still, in some the descriptive idea seems more prominent, and in others the result idea. The use of words meaning *such* or *so* in the antecedent clause brings the result idea into greater prominence.

*reperit̃ sunt complūrēs quī scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent,* many were found *who pulled away the shields with their hands and inflicted wounds from above*. (Descriptive.)

*nēmō tam stultus erit quī nōn videat,* no one will be so foolish *as not to (that he will not) see*. (Result.)

*Note 3.* The negative of result clauses is *nōn*, but negative purpose clauses, being of volitive origin, require *nē*.

## VOCABULARY :

fear, vereor, -ēri, veritus sum.

(inflict), inflict punishment on

any one, dē aliquō supplicium

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum.

live, vivō, -ere, vixī, vīctum.

punishment, supplicium, -ī, n.

region, regiō, -ōnis, f.

severe, heavy, gravis, -e.

so great (large), tantus, -a, -um.

state, rēs pūblica, rei pūblicae, f.,  
or civitās, -tātis, f.

terrify (thoroughly), perterreō,  
-ēre, -terruī, -territum.

throw away, abiciō, -ere, -iēcī,  
-iectum.

trick, ambush, īnsidiae, -ārum, f.

wound, vulnus, -eris, n.

wretched, miser, -era, -erum.

## EXERCISE 1

1. Ariovistus said that he had led so great an army across the Rhine in order to help (bear aid to) the Sequani-ans. 2. There were many who wished to help us, but few who could. 3. Men (*eī*) who are enemies to the state ought (*oportet* — Lesson XXIII, Notes 2 and 3) not be made consuls. 4. Few have been found so wretched as not to wish to live. 5. Crassus proceeded into Aquitania that auxiliaries might not be sent from those regions into Gaul. 6. A certain Greek general inflicted on his soldiers so severe punishment that they feared him more (*potius*) than [they did] the enemy. 7. Many of them were so terrified that they threw away their weapons (abl. abs.) and fled. 8. Publius Sextius has been weakened by wounds so severe that he cannot hold himself up (sustain himself). 9. They went out of camp with so great a tumult that Caesar feared a trick. 10. The Haeduans had suffered (received) such a calamity that they could no longer (*nōn iam*) defend themselves from the Germans.

## EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 14)

1. A friendship which brings slavery on the state must not be sought by us (App. 71). 2. The Haeduans have so long (*tam diū*) been under the protection of the Romans that they are accustomed (perfect) to endure wars in their behalf. 3. We know how great indignities and insults have been inflicted (App. 141) on them (App. 67, *c*). 4. They said that by those wars the state had been reduced to slavery. 5. The authority of the Haeduans must be increased by the Roman people. 6. The chief-men of the Haeduan state employed (used) this policy (*cōnsilium*) at all times. 7. Those men fled to Britain to seek help (genitive with *causā*). 8. Diviciacus begged the Haeduans

not to revolt (App. 145, *a*) from the Romans. 9. It has been said that the influence of that state had been increased by the friendship of the Roman people. 10. Having suffered all these calamities, they dismissed their troops.

## LESSON XXVII

1. Substantive Clauses with *quod*: 144.

2. Review of Substantive Clauses with *ut* and *nē*: 145, *a*, *b*;  
Lesson XXII, Note 2.

3. Substantive Clauses (of the result type) with *ut*: 145, *c*.

*Note 1.* It is instructive to note how a pure clause of result, which is adverbial, may pass into a substantive clause which, though retaining the consecutive (result) form, may have little or none of the consecutive meaning: —

1. They made such an outcry that their departure seemed like a flight, *tantōs clāmōrēs fēcērunt ut similis fugae projectiō vidērētur*. Plainly result.

2. They made their departure seem like a flight, *fēcērunt ut . . . vidērētur*. Result idea not so plain, as the *ut*-clause is a sort of object.

3. The result was that their departure seemed like a flight, *factum est ut . . . vidērētur*. The *ut*-clause is felt to be the subject, so that the result idea seems practically extinguished.

With the last (3) compare *accēdēbat ut tempestātem ferrent*, there was the additional fact (it was added) that they [the ships] rode out the storm. Here there is not the faintest idea of result, although the *ut*-clause is, in origin, related to result clauses.

*Note 2.* After *accēdit* and *accidit* either an indicative *quod*-clause or a subjunctive *ut*-clause may be used, though *accidit* prefers the *ut*-clause: —

*accēdēbat hūc quod Dumnorīx dixerat*, furthermore (it was added to this that) Dumnorix had said.

Compare *accēdēbat ut*, etc., above.

*Note 3.* Substantive *quod*-clauses frequently explain a noun, pronoun (e.g., *id*, *illud*), or adjective used substantively: —

*hīs rēbus ūnum repūgnābat quod cognōverat*, etc., one [consideration] opposed these views, [viz.,] that he had learned, etc.

*Note 4.* Substantive *ut*-clauses may be used, as indicated, after *faciō*, *factum est*, *accēdit*, *accidit*; also after *fit* (it happens), *consuētūdō est* (it is the custom), *iūs est* (it is the law), *fore* (it would be [that]), and similar expressions: —

*iūs est bellī ut quī vicerint imperent*, etc., it is the law of war that those who have conquered should rule, etc.

## VOCABULARY

(add), be added, <i>accēdo</i> , -ere, -cessī, -cessum (lit., go to, approach; used as pass. of <i>addō</i> ).	lucky, fortunate, <i>opportūnus</i> , -a, -um.
against, <i>contrā</i> , prep. with acc.	number, <i>numerus</i> , -ī, m.
bring up, <i>supportō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum.	plan, counsel, <i>cōnsilium</i> , -i, n.
conveniently, <i>commodē</i> .	plunder, <i>praedor</i> , -ārī, <i>praedātus sum</i> .
custom, <i>cōnsuētūdō</i> , -inis, f.	prepare, make ready, <i>parō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
delay, <i>moror</i> , -ārī, <i>morātus sum</i> .	(result), the result was, <i>factum est</i> (lit., it was made).
hasty, <i>repentīnus</i> , -a, -um.	

## EXERCISE 1

1. The result was that grain could not be brought up conveniently enough (sufficiently c.). 2. There was the additional fact (it was added) that he had a large army and a large number of cavalry. 3. We saw that it would happen (be — *fore*) that no one would be able (imperf. subj.) to resist him (App. 67. b). 4. For (*dē*) these reasons (causes) it happened that this tribe, though having made all preparations (all things having been prepared) for (*ad*) departing, nevertheless delayed. 5. A very lucky thing happened [namely], that (*quod*) the enemy's cavalry went away on that day to plunder. 6. This was the custom of the Gauls, to form<sup>1</sup> (take) hasty plans. 7. The reason for (of) returning was that (*quod*) the Germans had fled into the forests. 8. Furthermore (it was added that) the Britons knew that the Romans must win-

<sup>1</sup> Either an *ut*-clause or an infin. may be used.



ter in Gaul. 9. This has always been a great help to me [namely], that I have a good memory. 10. Vercingetorix tried to persuade all the Gauls to contend in arms against the Romans.

### EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 15)

1. Caesar found out that these were men of great influence. 2. The Nervii surpassed the Ambiani in all respects (in respect to all things). 3. They considered (thought) that the rest of the Belgians had thrown away their ancestral courage. 4. There is nothing which weakens (Lesson XXV, Note 2) courage more (*plūs*) than wine. 5. These warlike men did not permit merchants to bring in articles tending to luxury. 6. Caesar inquired (Lesson XVII, Note 2) of Diviciacus why the Nervii had not sent (App. 141) ambassadors. 7. According to their customs the Nervii ordered (Lesson XXIII, Note 1) merchants who had brought in wine to depart (*discēdō*) from their territory. 8. It is not the custom among warlike men to surrender arms and give hostages. 9. Having found out these facts (things), the Nervii declared that they would not surrender. 10. Out of respect to Diviciacus the Ambiani were taken by Caesar (App. 85) under his protection and spared.

### LESSON XXVIII

Clauses with *nē*, *quīn*, and *quōminus*: 145, *e*.

*Note 1.* The conjunction *quīn* is said originally to have meant "whereby not," being made up of an old pronominal form *quī* (whereby) and *nē*, while *quōminus* (*quō*+*minus*) means "whereby the less" (= "whereby not").

*Note 2.* *Quīn* is used only after negative expressions; *quōminus* after either a positive or a negative; *nē* usually after a positive: —

*retinērī nōn poterant quīn tēla conicerent*, they could not be prevented from throwing javelins (whereby they should not, etc.).

*ventō tenēbantur quōminus venīre possent.* they (the ships) were held by the wind from being able to come (whereby they were not able, etc.).

*nōn recūsāvit quōminus poenam subīret,* he did not refuse to submit to punishment.

*impedior nē plūra dicam.* I am hindered from saying more.

Note 3. *Nōn dubitō* (I do not doubt) and *nōn est dubium* (it is not doubtful) are regularly used with *quīn*. But *dubitō* meaning *hesitate* regularly takes the infinitive.

Note 4. A few frequently occurring words of opposition that may be followed by a *quīn* or *quōminus* clause are *dēterreō* (deter), *impediō* (hinder), *prohibeō* (prevent), and *recūsō* (refuse). Of these *prohibeō* is much oftener followed by the infinitive (App. 151).

## VOCABULARY

deter, prevent, *dēterreō*, -ēre, -ter-  
ruī, -territum.

doubt, hesitate, *dubitō*, -āre, -āvī,  
-ātum.

doubtful, *dubius*, -a, -um.

hinder, impede, *impediō*, -īre,  
-īvī, -itum.

however, moreover, *autem* (never  
first in a sentence).

(personal) enemy, *inimīcus*, -ī,  
m. (distinguished from *hostis*,  
public enemy).

pity, mercy, *miserīcordia*, -ae, f.  
Pompey, *Pompēius*, -ī, m.

prevent, prohibit, *prohibeō*, -ēre,  
-uī, -itum.

surpass, excel, *praecēdō*, -ere,  
-cessī, -cessum.

swiftness, speed, *celeritās*, -tātis, f.  
(that), but that, *quīn* (used after  
negative expressions) or *quō-*  
*minus* (used after expressions  
either positive or negative).

toward, *in* with acc.

## EXERCISE 1

1. Will they try to hinder us from returning by this road? 2. The boys could not be deterred from going through this field. 3. The storm did not prevent them from marching twenty miles on that day. 4. He always prohibited the soldiers from killing women and children. 5. No one doubts that Caesar often had pity on (used pity towards) personal enemies and the foes of the state. 6. There is no doubt (it is not doubtful) that this will be (act. periphrastic) most dangerous to our state. 7. No

one can doubt that many animals surpass men in swiftness. 8. There was no doubt that Caesar, having subdued all Gaul, wished to enjoy (use) peace. 9. He did not long hesitate, however, to lead his legions into Italy to crush Pompey. 10. Do you say that the army refused to follow him on that occasion?

## EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 16)

1. The Nervii had been persuaded (App. 67, *b*, Note) to await there the arrival of the Atrebatas. 2. They had learned from captives that Caesar had been marching for three days (App. 80) through their territory. 3. Nothing can prevent the Atrebatas from trying the fortune of war along with the Nervii. 4. These swamps were more than ten miles distant from the camp. 5. Captives had found out that the Nervii, having hastily gathered (thrown together) the women into the marsh-lands (*abl. abs.*), were waiting for the forces of their neighbors. 6. The army had no access to this place on account of the swamps. 7. The women did not hesitate to go to a place where the Romans could not find them (App. 134). 8. Let us prevent (Lesson XXI, II. 1) them from encamping in our own territory or that of our neighbors (order — our own or of our neighbors territory). 9. The Nervii had encamped there in order to wait for their neighbors, who were on the march. 10. Those who are useless for fighting will not refuse to remain (*maneō*) in the marsh-lands many days.

## LESSON XXIX

1. The temporal Conjunctions *ubi*, *ut* (when), *postquam*, *postea quam*, *cum primum*, and *simul atque* with the Indicative: 137, *a*.

2. *Cum*-temporal: 137, *b*. (Review Lesson XXV, Note 3.)

*Note 1.* *Cum*-temporal clauses, being relative, follow the rules which govern other relative clauses; that is, they take the indicative when their main function is to point out (determine which), and the subjunctive when their main function is to describe.

*Note 2.* *Cum*-temporal Clauses with Indicative:—

1. *tum cum in Asiā rēs māgnās permultī āmiserant, scīmus Rōmae fidem concidisse*, at that time when very many had lost large fortunes in Asia, we know that credit failed at Rome. The main intention of the *cum*-clause is to point out the time, to establish a temporal connection between financial disaster in Asia and financial disaster at Rome.

2. *cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prīncipēs erant Aedui*, when Caesar came into Gaul, the Aedui were leaders of the one party. The temporal idea of the *cum*-clause is uppermost. The leadership may have shifted from tribe to tribe, but at the time of Caesar's arrival, the Aedui were leaders.

*Note 3.* If the main intention of a *cum*-temporal clause is not to point out a time or date, but rather to describe a situation or to give the circumstances under which something happened, the subjunctive is used:—

1. *in secundo proelio cecidit Critiās cum fortissimē pugnāret*, in the second battle Critias fell while bravely fighting. Here the main intention of the *cum*-clause is plainly not to tell the time or date of the man's death, — *in secundo proelio* does that, — but rather to tell the circumstances of it. He died fighting.

2. *cum ex captivīs quaereret Caesar, reperiūbat*, etc., when Caesar inquired of captives, he found out, etc. The main intention of the *cum*-clause is not to show when Caesar found out. To be sure, it does show that, but the main bearing of the clause is to show the circumstances, the way, the manner of his finding out. He found out on inquiring.

*Note 4.* Sometimes it is hard to tell whether a *cum*-clause is in its main signification a *when*-clause (temporal) or a *since* (causal) or *although* (concessive or adversative) clause. Fortunately this causes no extra trouble in writing Latin, for when the temporal *cum*-clause can be regarded as expressing, in any degree, cause or concession, the subjunctive is used:—

1. *Germānī cum suōs interficī vidērent, sē ex castrīs eīēcērunt*, when the Germans saw that their men were being killed, they rushed from the camp. Here a causal idea is associated with

the temporal: when (and because) they saw . . ., they rushed . . .

2. *cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātam Galliam exāstimāret, subitum bellum coörtum est*, when for all reasons Caesar considered Gaul to have been subdued, a sudden war arose. The temporal clause contains an adversative (concessive) idea: when (and although) he considered . . . war arose.

*Note 5.* It is helpful to remember that *cum* with a *perfect* is generally used to point out a time, and so takes the *indicative*, while *cum* with an *imperfect* or *pluperfect* is generally used to give the circumstances, and so with these tenses takes the *subjunctive*. To express present or future ideas *cum*-temporal regularly takes the *indicative*, but the descriptive notion is sometimes strong enough in clauses of future reference to require the *subjunctive*.

## VOCABULARY

after, <i>postquam</i> or <i>postea</i> <i>quam</i> .	lay waste, devastate, <i>vāstō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
arrival, <i>adventus</i> , -ūs, m.	night, <i>nox</i> , <i>noctis</i> , f.
as soon as (when), <i>simul atque</i> , <i>cum primum</i> .	pursue, <i>cōnsector</i> , -ārī, -ātus sum.
began, <i>coepī</i> , <i>coepisse</i> , <i>coep-</i> <i>tus</i> .	reason, cause, <i>causa</i> , -ae, f.
booty, <i>praeda</i> , -ae, f.	safe, <i>tūtus</i> , -a, -um.
conceal, hide, <i>cēlō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum.	scatter, disperse, <i>dispergō</i> , -ere, -spersī, -spersum.
disembark, <i>nāvī ēgredior</i> , -ī, -gressus sum.	shore, <i>lītus</i> , -oris, n.
inside, <i>intrā</i> , prep. with acc.	when, <i>ubi</i> , <i>ut</i> , <i>cum</i> .
	winter-quarters, <i>hīberna</i> , -ōrum, n.

## EXERCISE 1

1. After Caesar arrived there, he for (*dē*) two reasons decided to cross the Rhine. 2. When (use *ubi*) the enemy began to retreat, Caesar sent the cavalry to pursue them. 3. Indutiomarus fled as soon as he was informed of Caesar's arrival. 4. As soon as the ships came to land, the legions disembarked. 5. When (use *ubi*) the Britons saw that a large number of boats was coming, they brought

together all their forces to the shore. 6. When (use *cum*) it is necessary (*opus*), the army marches all night. 7. When (use *cum*) they saw that the Romans were inside the gates, they rushed (*sē ēiciō*) from (*ex*) the town. 8. When (*cum*) Volusenus had come with the cavalry, he learned that the Germans had on that day attacked the camp. 9. When they had retreated across the Rhine with that booty which they had concealed in the woods (forests), they were safe. 10. When he had scattered the enemy (abl. abs.) [and] laid waste their fields (abl. abs.), he led his army into winter-quarters.

### EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 17)

1. Certain-ones of those who were following Caesar during those days observed closely the legions' customary-manner (*cōnsuētūdō*) of march. 2. When they had shown this to the Nervii, all thought that the Roman army could easily be checked. 3. Not daring (when — *cum* — they did not dare) to attack all the legions simultaneously (*simul*), they decided (*statuō*) to attack the first. 4. They had learned from the Gauls that this legion was a long distance away from the rest of the legions. 5. The Nervii had no cavalry, but were very strong (*plūrimum valeō*) in infantry. 6. Moreover (*autem*, not first) hedges prevented Caesar's cavalry from coming (Lesson XXVIII, Note 2) against (*ad*) them. 7. Having adopted (*capiō*) this plan, they selected a suitable place for a camp. 8. When (*ubi*) Caesar learned that the Nervii were not far away, he sent forward the cavalry.

### LESSON XXX

1. *Dum*, meaning "while," with present Indicative: 137, *c*.
2. *Dum*, *dōnec*, or *quoad*, meaning "as long as," with Indicative: 137, *d*.



3. *Dum, dōnec*, or *quoad*, meaning "until": 137, *e*.

4. *Antequam* and *priusquam*: 137, *f*.

Examples:—

- |                  |  |  |
|------------------|--|--|
|                  | 1. <i>dum haec geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est</i> , while these things were going on, it was reported to Caesar. (Note the Latin historical present with <i>dum</i> [while].) |  |
| <i>dum</i>       | {  | 2. <i>dum anima est, spēs esse dīcitur</i> , as long as there is life, there is said to be hope. (Any tense of the indicative may be used with <i>dum</i> , etc., meaning "as long as.")   |
| <i>dōnec</i>     |  |  |
| <i>quoad</i>     |  |  |
| <i>dum</i>       | {  | 3. a. <i>in senātū fuit eō diē quoad senātus est dīmissus</i> , he was in the senate that day until the senate was dismissed. ("Until" clause of past fact — indicative.)  |
| <i>dōnec</i>     |  |  |
| <i>quoad</i>     |  |  |
| <i>dum</i>       | {  | b. <i>dum nāvēs eō convenīrent, expectāvit</i> , he waited until the ships should assemble at that place. ("Until" clause of anticipation from past point of view — always subjunctive.)   |
| <i>dōnec</i>     |  |  |
| <i>quoad</i>     |  |  |
| <i>antequam</i>  | {  | 4. a. <i>nec prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt</i> , and they did not cease to flee before they arrived at the Rhine. ( <i>priusquam</i> with clause of past fact — indicative. Note that <i>prius</i> stands in the main clause, while <i>quam</i> stands in the subordinate one. Both <i>antequam</i> and <i>priusquam</i> may be thus divided, especially after negatives.) |
| <i>priusquam</i> |  |  |
|                  |  |  |
| <i>antequam</i>  | {  | b. <i>priusquam sē hostēs reciperent, Noviodūnum contendit</i> , before the enemy should recover themselves, he hastened to Noviodunum. ( <i>priusquam</i> clause of anticipation from past point of view — always subjunctive. <i>Antequam</i> might have been used.)   |
| <i>priusquam</i> |  |  |

Note 1. In clauses introduced by *dum, dōnec*, or *quoad*, meaning "until," or by *antequam* or *priusquam*, futurity (anticipation)

from the present point of view, that is, *real futurity*, is expressed by the present or future perfect indicative or the present subjunctive : —

1. *dēliberā hōc dum ego*  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{redeō}^1 \\ \text{redierō} \\ \text{redeam} \end{array} \right\}$ , consider this till I return.
2. *antequam*  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{veniat}^1 \\ \text{vēnerit} \\ \text{venit} \end{array} \right\}$ , *litterās mittet*, before he comes he will send a letter.

### VOCABULARY

<b>approach, draw near,</b> <i>accēdō</i> , -ere, -cessī, -cessum.	<b>(near), be near, be at hand,</b> <i>subsum, -esse, -fui, -futurus.</i>
<b>as long as,</b> <i>dum, dōnec</i> . or <i>quoad</i> .	<b>new, novus, -a, -um.</b>
<b>back,</b> <i>tergum, -i, n.</i> ( <i>tergum vertere, to flee</i> ).	<b>turn, vertō, -ere, vertī, versum.</b>
<b>battle-line,</b> <i>aciēs, -ēi, f.</i>	<b>until, dum, dōnec, or quoad.</b>
<b>before,</b> <i>antequam</i> or <i>priusquam</i> .	<b>unwilling . . . be, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.</b>
<b>enroll, enlist,</b> <i>cōnscribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum.</i>	<b>while, dum.</b>
	<b>why, quā dē causā.</b>

### EXERCISE 1

1. While Caesar was building (making) the bridge, the Germans retreated into the forests. 2. As long as he lived, he defended us. 3. Wait until you become (*fīō*) consul. 4. The children were afraid until their father returned. 5. While he was delaying there, it was reported that the Germans were attacking the winter-quarters of these legions. 6. He held the soldiers in camp until he should find out why the Belgians were-going-away (departing). 7. The Germans were unwilling to begin battle before their cavalry should return. 8. Winter was at hand (near) before he was able to capture this town. 9. Having enrolled a new legion, he arrived at the winter-

<sup>1</sup> The tense actually used by the Latin author of this sentence. The others would have been equally good.

quarters before the Gauls should find out that he had departed from Italy. 10. Before our men should approach nearer, the whole battle-line of the Gauls took flight (turned their backs).

### EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 19)

1. While the Nervii were arranging their ranks within the forests, our cavalry crossed the river. 2. The enemy did not attack before they saw that the legions were engaged (occupied) in the work. 3. They lay-concealed in the woods until the legions should begin to fortify the camp. 4. The Roman legions could fortify a camp with incredible swiftness. 5. When the Nervii saw the legions and the baggage, they suddenly sent forward their cavalry. 6. According to their custom, they made the attack suddenly, so that our cavalry was thrown into great confusion. 7. Behind the six legions which Caesar was leading all the baggage had been placed. 8. We must fortify the camp before the two legions come which are bringing up the rear. 9. After the camp has been fortified (abl. abs.), we shall have a place to which we may retreat. 10. The Belgians cannot see from the forest how many (*quot*) legions have come.

### LESSON XXXI

1. Mood of Subordinate Verbs in Indirect Discourse: 154, *b*.
2. Tense of Subordinate Verbs in Indirect Discourse: 155, *a, b*; 128.
3. Causal Clauses with *quia*, *quoniam*, *quandō*, *quod*, *cum*, or a relative pronoun: 138, *a, b*.

*Note* 1. Observe in the following how the English does not suggest the *subjunctive*, the proper *mood* for subordinate verbs of indirect discourse, but does suggest the proper *tense* — which is very frequently the case.

## Direct Discourse.

The army which Caesar leads is valiant, *exercitus quem Caesar dūcit fortis est.*

## Indirect Discourse after Primary Tense.

he says that the army which Caesar leads is valiant, *dīcit exercitum quem Caesar dūcat fortem esse.*

## Indirect Discourse after Secondary Tense.

he said that the army which Caesar led was valiant, *dīxit exercitum quem Caesar dūceret fortem esse.*

*Note 2.* When *quod*-causal takes the subjunctive in what is, in form, direct discourse, the clause is *really*, that is, *logically*, in a sort of indirect discourse (informal indirect discourse): *Brūtus irātus erat, quod Caesar vellet rēx fieri*, Brutus was angry because [as he thought] Caesar wished to become king. The subjunctive *vellet* shows that the reason is quoted.

*Note 3.* Subjunctive with *quī* (= *cum* is, since he; *cum* ego, since I, etc.):—

*peccāsse mihi videor quī ā tē discesserim*, it seems to me that I have done wrong in separating from you (lit. I seem . . . who have [i.e., since I have] separated . . .).

## VOCABULARY

because, *quod*.

believe, *crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditum*.

hate, *ōdī, ōdisse* (defective verb).

power, *potentia, -ae, f.*

since, *quia, quoniam, quandō, or cum*.

## EXERCISE 1

1. All believe that when winter comes Caesar will go to Italy. 2. It was reported that the cavalry which had been sent by the Treveri, having heard of this battle, had returned home. 3. I wrote you this because I thought that you wished to be informed of it. 4. Since (*cum*) these things are so (*ita*), we must immediately send help to them.

5. Dumnorix hated Caesar because through him his power had been taken away (*ēripīō*). 6. Since we know that they are trying to form a conspiracy, let us crush them. 7. Since (*quoniam*) I cannot save myself along (*ūnā*) with you, I wish to die for (*prō*) you. 8. Dumnorix was unwilling to go to Britain with Caesar, because [as he said] he was afraid of the sea. 9. Ariovistus, who (since he) had assumed (*sūmō*) such lofty airs (*tantus spīritus*), did not seem endurable (fut. pass. part. of *ferō*).

### EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 20)

1. He displayed the flag because he saw that the enemy were rushing to arms. 2. Since the enemy seem to be rushing to arms, we must draw up a line of battle. 3. We know that the soldiers who were fortifying the camp did many things of their own accord (through themselves). 4. Caesar said that he had forbidden those who were looking-for materials-for-a-rampart to advance too far. 5. After the signal had been given, a line of battle was drawn up. 6. The signal which had been given with the trumpet recalled the soldiers. 7. The near-approach of the enemy did not prevent Caesar from (Lesson XXVIII, Note 2) haranguing the soldiers. 8. Former battles have taught the lieutenants what they should do. 9. Soldiers who have been trained in former battles (App. 134) can suggest to themselves what ought to be done. 10. When the lieutenants saw that the foe was advancing, they thought that the soldiers ought to be recalled from the work.

### LESSON XXXII

Conditional Sentences: 140, *a*, *b*, *c*. (Study this reference carefully before reading the following notes, which are intended merely to supplement the information given in the appendix.)

*Note 1.* The *if*-part of a conditional sentence is called the protasis, the conclusion is called the apodosis.

*Note 2.* In the most regular types of conditional sentences, the verbs of both protasis and apodosis are in the same mood and tense. Very frequently, however, there is disagreement between the verb of the protasis and that of the apodosis in point of mood, or tense, or both. These variations from the so-called regular types furnish no real difficulty, for when a different mood or tense is used in the protasis from that used in the apodosis, *the thought requires that variation*, and so it seems, and is, natural. The English sentence, If you did that for me yesterday, I shall always feel grateful to you (*sī id prō mē hesternō diē fēcistī, semper tibi grātiām habēbō*), is, according to the so-called types, irregular, because in the protasis the perfect tense is used, and in the apodosis, the future. But the student could hardly make a mistake in the Latin tenses here. The "irregularity" is not a difficulty. Take the scriptural "If you love me, keep my commandments" (*sī diligitis mē, praecepta mea cōservāte*). This comes under none of the regular types, for the indicative is in the protasis while the imperative is in the apodosis. Here, too, the irregularity is not a difficulty.

*Note 3.* Distinguish carefully in the translation into Latin of "shall . . . will," "should . . . would" in conditions, the former taking indicative forms denoting future time and the latter subjunctive forms referring to the future:—

1. If you command, (shall command), (shall have commanded), he will go, *sī (iubēs), iubēbis, (iusseris), ibit*.

In future conditions English (commonly) and Latin (occasionally) use the present indicative with a future force. The future perfect in future conditions is much more common in Latin than in English. It represents the action of the protasis as finished before that of the apodosis begins: If you shall have commanded, (then) he will go. *The future is the tense ordinarily used in indicative future conditions.*

2. If you should command (should have commanded), he would go, *sī iubeās (iusseris), eat*.

The perfect subjunctive (*iusseris*) would mean, "should have commanded." Compare the future perfect indicative above, "shall have commanded." *The present is the tense commonly used in subjunctive future conditions.*

*Note 4.* Consider the following:—



1. If you were my friend, you would not say this (implying, but you *are not* my friend, and so you *do*). The supposition of friendship is therefore contrary to the fact. In all such cases, use the subjunctive mood, and the *imperfect* to refer to *present time*: *sī amīcus meus essēs, hōc nōn dīcerēs*.

2. If you had been my friend, you would not have said this (implying, but you *were not*, and so you *did*). Again contrary to fact, being different from the other only in the time, so the Latin is different only in the tense, the *pluperfect* being necessary to refer to *past time*: *sī amīcus meus fuissēs, hōc nōn dīxissēs*.

3. If you were my friend [which you *are not*], you would not have said this [which you *did*]. Evidently this is a combination of the protasis of (1) and the apodosis of (2), and is, therefore, an irregular, or mixed, condition; but it is no harder to understand than the others: *sī amīcus meus essēs, hōc nōn dīxissēs*.

## VOCABULARY

foot, <i>pēs, pedis, m.</i>	if, <i>sī</i> .
forces, troops, supplies, <i>cōpiae, -ārum, f.</i> (The sing. means	moon, <i>lūna, -ae, f.</i>
abundance, plenty, supply.)	province, <i>prōvincia, -ae, f.</i>
full, <i>plēnus, -a, -um.</i>	tide, <i>aestus, -ūs, m.</i>

## EXERCISE 1

1. If the moon is full, the tides are high (great). 2. If the moon was full, the tides were high. 3. If the moon is (shall be) full, the tides will be high. 4. If the moon should be full, the tides would be high. 5. If the moon were full, the tides would [now] be high. 6. If the moon had been full, the tides would have been high. 7. If Caesar had known that the cavalry of the enemy was away, he would have attacked the camp immediately. 8. If you should attempt to march through the Roman province, I would prevent [you]. 9. If we gather far (much) greater forces (abl. abs.), we shall not be able to defend this town. 10. If the river were a foot (App. 95) deeper, we should not be able to cross. 11. If you

summon me, I will come. 12. If you should summon me, I would come.

### EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 21)

1. If the temper (mind) of the soldiers is ready for a fight, the signal for battle must be given. 2. If the soldiers retain the recollection of their former valor, they will bravely resist the attack. 3. If the enemy had been farther away, he would not have given the signal. 4. Every man would have fought most valiantly, if the signal had been given (abl. abs.). 5. Caesar hurried away to the tenth legion to give the necessary commands. 6. If the soldier saw that standard, he took-his-place near it. 7. He will urge them not to lose (App. 145, a) time for fighting. 8. The time is so short that we cannot hunt-up (*quaerō*) our own standards. 9. If the enemy should run-against the tenth legion, they would not long (*diū*) retain the memory of their former valor. 10. While Caesar was encouraging (App. 137, c) the tenth legion with no very lengthy exhortation, the soldiers were drawing the coverings from their shields.

### LESSON XXXIII

Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse: 157, a, b, c.

*Note 1.* Compare the following: —

1. If any one believes this, he is mistaken, *sī quis hōc crēdit, errat.*

2. Whoever believes this is mistaken, *quī* (or *quicumque*) *hōc crēdit, errat.*

Evidently the clause introduced by "whoever" is as much a condition as that introduced by "if." Words meaning *whoever*, *whatever*, *whenever*, etc., may introduce conditions of all types.

*Note 2.* Observe that *quis* after *sī* in (1) is indefinite, meaning "any one." This is regularly the meaning of *quis* when it follows *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, or *num.* See App. 116.

*Note 3.* Conditions are ordinarily introduced negatively by *sī nōn* (if not) or *nisi* (unless), *sī nōn* being used when *nōn* would modify a single word, and *nisi* when the whole condition is negated: —

1. *sī nōn praesēns perīculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne famēs timenda est*, if not present danger, still, at any rate, starvation by reason of a protracted siege, is to be feared.

2. *dēsilitē, commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere*, leap down, comrades, unless you wish to betray the standard to the enemy.

But often *nisi* and *sī nōn* seem interchangeable.

*Note 4.* Examples of changes occurring when conditions of direct discourse are put into indirect discourse after primary and secondary tenses. The direct forms are marked with numerals, the indirect by letters: —

1. *sī lacessimur, pūgnāmus*, if we are provoked, we fight.

a. *dīcunt sē, sī lacessantur, pūgnāre*, they say that if they are provoked, they fight.

b. *dīxērunt sē, sī lacesserentur, pūgnāre*, they said that if they were provoked, they fought.

2. *sī lacessēmur, pūgnābimus*, if we are (shall be) provoked, we shall fight.

a. *dīcunt sē, sī lacessantur, pūgnātūrōs esse*, they say that if they are (shall be) provoked, they will fight.

b. *dīxērunt sē, sī lacesserentur, pūgnātūrōs esse*, they said that if they should be provoked, they would fight.

3. *sī lacessāmur, pūgnēmus*, if we should be provoked, we would fight.

a. *dīcunt sē, sī lacessantur, pūgnātūrōs esse*, they say that if they should be provoked, they would fight.

b. *dīxērunt sē, sī lacesserentur, pūgnātūrōs esse*, they said that if they should be provoked, they would fight.

4. *sī lacessītī essēmus, pūgnāvissēmus*, if we had been provoked, we should have fought.

a. *dīcunt sē, sī lacessītī essent, pūgnātūrōs fuisse*, they say that if they had been provoked, they would have fought.

b. *dīxērunt sē, sī, etc.*, as in (a).

5. *sī pūgnent, vincantur*, if they should fight, they would be conquered.

- a. dīcō sī pūgnent, futūrum esse (or fore) ut vincantur, I say that if they should fight, they would be conquered (lit., it would be that they would be conquered).*
- b. dīxī sī pūgnārent, futūrum esse (or fore) ut vincerentur, I said that if they should fight, they would be conquered.*
6. *sī pūgnāvissent, victī essent, if they had fought, they would have been conquered.*
- a. dīcō sī pūgnāvissent, futūrum fuisse ut vincerentur, I say that if they had fought, they would have been conquered (lit., it would have been that they would be conquered).*
- b. dīxī sī, etc., as in (a).*

## VOCABULARY

any one, <i>quis</i> (usually after <i>sī</i> , <i>nisi</i> , <i>nē</i> , and <i>num</i> ).	reduce (drive back), <i>redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum</i> .
diminish, <i>dēminuō, -ere, -minuī, -minūtum</i> .	revolt, <i>dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum</i> .
expel, <i>expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum</i> .	slave, <i>servus, -ī, m</i> .
mistaken, be, <i>errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum</i> .	slavery, <i>servitūs, -tūtis, f</i> .
	terrify thoroughly, <i>perterreō, -ere, -terruī, -territum</i> .
	unless, <i>nisi</i> .
	whoever, <i>quī or quicumque</i> .

## EXERCISE 1

1. Whoever sees the army of the Germans will be thoroughly terrified. 2. If any one should believe that Britain is a small island, he would be mistaken. 3. If Procillus had not been rescued, the pleasure of Caesar's victory would have been diminished. 4. Unless we wish to become slaves, we must expel these Romans. 5. I tell you that if Caesar is giving the signal, I do not hear it. 6. I tell you that if Caesar gives the signal, I shall not hear it. 7. We know that if this town should be lost (abl. abs.), we should have no hope of safety. 8. We believe that if this town had been captured (abl. abs.), the Romans

would have wintered there. 9. We thought that if they should revolt from the Roman people, they would be reduced to (*in*) slavery. 10. We think that if they had revolted from the Roman people, they would have been reduced to slavery.

#### EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 22 and 23)

1. Unless I draw up the army as I have indicated (shown), the legions will fight some in one place (part) and others in another. 2. If any think (*putō*) that the Atrebates can be easily thrown into flight, let them try it. 3. The Nervii believed (*crēdō*) that if they should cross the river, they would put the legions to flight. 4. I think that the battle would not have been renewed, had not the legions advanced into an unfavorable situation (place). 5. Since the intervening hedges interfere-with (App. 138, *b*) the view, I cannot see whether the enemy is renewing the battle or not (Lesson XII, Note 5, 3). 6. The Atrebates were quickly driven into the river, because they were (App. 138, *a*) out-of-breath and weakened by wounds. 7. The nature of the ground (place) prevented Caesar from drawing up (Lesson XXVIII, Note 2) the army as the orderly arrangement (arrangement and order) of military science demanded. 8. Caesar said that under the leadership of Boduognatus, who held (App. 154, *b*) the chief command, the Nervii hastened to this place. 9. Throw into flight the Nervii, who are advancing in a very dense line. 10. The Nervii began to make-for (seek) this place to attack the legion on the unprotected flank.

#### LESSON XXXIV

Concessive Clauses introduced by:—

1. *Quamquam* taking the indicative: 139, *a*.
2. *Etsi* and *tametsi*: 139, *a*.

3. *Cum* and *quamvis* taking the subjunctive: 139, b.

4. A relative pronoun taking the subjunctive.

*Note 1.* *Quamquam* (although) is used with the indicative in *statements of fact* (note example in App. 139, a). Hence we should not use it in a sentence like the following: although I should see him, I should not recognize him. Here one might have *etsi*, *tametsi*, *cum*, or *quamvis*.

*Note 2.* *Etsi* is composed of *et* + *sī* and really means *even if* (= although); *tametsi* is composed of *tamen* + *et* + *sī* and really means *yet even if*, which is a sort of *although*. These words being compounds of *sī*, may, generally speaking, be used with any of the constructions with which *sī* can be used: —

*sī*<sup>a</sup> (*etsi*,<sup>b</sup> *tametsi*) *venit*,<sup>1</sup> *vēnit*,<sup>2</sup> *veniet*,<sup>3</sup> *veniat*,<sup>4</sup> *venīret*,<sup>5</sup> *vēnisset*,<sup>6</sup> etc., if<sup>a</sup> (although)<sup>b</sup> he is coming,<sup>1</sup> came,<sup>2</sup> comes<sup>3</sup> (shall come), should come,<sup>4</sup> were coming,<sup>5</sup> had come,<sup>6</sup> etc. But *tametsi* is rarely found with the subjunctive.

*Note 3.* *Quamvis* (*quam* + *vis*) really means *as much as you wish* (please), *however you please*: —

*hominēs, quamvis in turbidīs rībus sint, tamen interdum animīs relaxantur*, men, let them be in circumstances as troubled as you please (or, briefly, *although* they are in troubled circumstances), nevertheless sometimes relax their minds (lit., relax themselves — or, are relaxed — in their minds).

*Note 4.* In Lesson XXXI. Note 3, we learned that relative clauses denoting *cause* take the subjunctive. This is true also of relative clauses denoting *concession*: —

*Cicerō, quī omnēs superiōrēs diēs milītēs in castrīs continuisset, quīnque cohortēs frūmentātum mīsīt*, Cicero, who (= though he) all the preceding days had held the soldiers in camp, sent five cohorts to forage.

*Note 5.* Correlative with any of these concessive connectives, *tamen* may stand in the main clause, just as in English we say *yet* in correlation with *though* or *although*: "Though (*etsi*, etc.) he slay me, yet (*tamen*) will I trust in him." See example in Note 3.

## VOCABULARY

across, beyond, <i>trāns</i> , prep. with acc.		<i>etsi</i> (even if), <i>tametsi</i> , <i>cum</i> , <i>quamvis</i> .
although, though, <i>quamquam</i> ,		complain, <i>queror</i> , -ī, <i>questus sum</i> .



daily, <i>cotīdiē</i> .	obtain, <i>cōnsequor</i> , -ī, -secūtus sum.
discipline, training, <i>disciplīna</i> , -ae, f.	still, yet, nevertheless, <i>tamen</i> .
drive (from), <i>dēpellō</i> , -ere, -pulī, -pulsum.	visit (go to), <i>adeō</i> , -īre, -īvī (-īī), -itum.
labor, <i>labōrō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum.	worn out, <i>dēfessus</i> , -a, -um (past part. of <i>dējetīscor</i> , -ī, -fessus sum).
move, break up (as a camp), <i>moveō</i> , -ēre, <i>mōvī</i> , <i>mōtum</i> .	

## EXERCISE 1

1. Although the Germans (order — The Germans, although, etc.) are of great physical proportions (Lesson X, Note II, 2), yet they are not equal to the Romans in discipline. 2. Although the soldiers (order — The soldiers, although, etc.) were worn out with the march, still they did not complain. 3. Although Caesar saw that the enemy was breaking up (moving) camp, still he decided to wait until the scouts should return. 4. Good men perform (do) many good acts (things), although they see that they will obtain no reward. 5. He was a man of most aristocratic lineage (highest nobility), although he labored daily in the fields. 6. Even if I learn that this tribe hates traders (merchants), yet I shall try to visit it. 7. Let them be as brave as you please (Note 3), they cannot resist so great a multitude. 8. Though you are a Gaul, will you say that you are a Roman? 9. Though a large agger was thrown up (*iaciō*, abl. abs.), they could not drive the defenders from the wall. 10. Does he, who (=though he) is a boy, think that he can lead an army across the Alps?

## EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 24)

1. The legions, though they were hard pressed, were not routed. 2. However (*quāmvīs*) exceptional their reputation for valor was, the Treveri took-to-flight at that time. 3. Although the Belgians had scattered the cav-

alry and slingers in all directions, they could not get possession of the camp. 4. Though the cavalry had been routed by the first attack of the foe, yet the legions were victorious (victors). 5. If the camp-followers had not seen (App. 140, *b*, 2) that our men were victorious, they would not have gone out to plunder. 6. The cavalry were greatly terrified when they met the enemy face-to-face. 7. The soldiers reported to Caesar that the horsemen who had been sent (App. 154, *b*) by the Treveri had hurried home. 8. The light-armed infantry fled, some in one direction, others in another. 9. After these had been scattered, the enemy saw that the legions were coming. 10. While the cavalrymen were fleeing (App. 137, *c*) in all directions, those legions were busy in the enemy's camp.

ENGLISH-LATIN AND LATIN-ENGLISH  
VOCABULARIES



# VOCABULARY

## ENGLISH-LATIN

### A

abandon, *relinquō*.  
 able, *am, possum*.  
 about, concerning, *dē*.  
 about, nearly, *ferē, circiter*.  
 abundance, *cōpia*.  
 acceptable, *acceptus*.  
 access, approach, *aditus*.  
 (account), on account of, *propter, ob*.  
 (accustomed), become accustomed, *cōnsuēscō*.  
 across, *trāns*.  
 (add), be added, *accēdō*.  
 advance, *prōcēdō*.  
 advantage, *commodum*.  
 advise, *moneō*.  
 afraid, *am, timeō, vereor*.  
 after (conj.), *postquam, posteaquam*.  
 again, *iterum*.  
 against, *contrā, ad, in, cum* (with verb of contending).  
 agger, *agger*.  
 aid, *auxilium, subsidium*.  
 all, *omnis, tōtus*.  
 allow, *licet, patior*.  
 all the others, *cēterī*.  
 along with, *ūnā cum*.  
 already, *iam*.  
 although, *quāquam, etsī, tametsī, cum, quāmvīs*.

always, *semper*.  
 am, *sum*.  
 ambassador, *lēgātus*.  
 among, *inter, in, apud*.  
 ancestors, *māiōrēs*.  
 ancestral, *patrius*.  
 ancients, *antīquī*.  
 and, *et, atque, -que*.  
 animal, *animal*.  
 announce, *nūntiō*.  
 another, *alius*.  
 any, *ūllus* (after negatives).  
 any one (any thing, in neuter), *quisquam* (after negatives), *aliquis, quis* (usually after *sī, nisi, nē, or num*).  
 any you please, *quīvīs*.  
 appoint, *cōstituō*.  
 approach, *accēdō, succēdō, adpropinquō*.  
 arms, weapons, *arma*.  
 army, *exercitus*.  
 arouse, *incitō*.  
 arrange, *cōstituō*.  
 arrangement, *ratio*.  
 arrival, *adventus*.  
 arrive, *pervenio*.  
 article, thing, *rēs*.  
 as, *ut, quē*.  
 ascend, *ascendō*.  
 ask, *rogō*.  
 as long as, *dum, dōnec, quoad*.

assist, *iuvō*.  
 as soon as, *simul atque, cum*  
*primum*.  
 attack, *impetus*.  
 attack, *oppugnō, adeō*.  
 attack (make an attack on)  
 any one, *in aliquem impetum*  
*faciō*.  
 attempt, *cōnātus*.  
 attempt, *cōnor*.  
 authority, *auctoritās*.  
 auxiliaries, *auxilia*.  
 avenge, *ulcīscor*.  
 avoid, *vītō*.  
 await, *exspectō*.  
 away, *am, absum*.

## B

back, *tergum*.  
 bad, *malus*.  
 baggage, *impedimenta*.  
 baggage-animal, *iumentum*.  
 bank, *rīpa*.  
 barbarian, *barbarus*.  
 battle, *pugna, proelium*.  
 battle-line, *aciēs*.  
 bear, *ferō*.  
 beat, defeat, *superō, vincō*.  
 beautiful, *pulcher*.  
 because, *quod*.  
 become, *fiō*.  
 before, *ante* (prep. and adv.),  
*antē* (adv.).  
 before (conj.), *antequam, prius-*  
*quam*.  
 beg, beg for, seek, *petō*.  
 began, *coepī*.  
 begin, *incipiō, ineō*.  
 begin battle, *proelium com-*  
*mittō*.  
 beginning, *initium*.

behind, *post*.  
 (behalf), in behalf of, *prō*.  
 believe, *crēdō*.  
 best, *optimus* (superl. of *bonus*).  
 better, *melior* (comp. of *bonus*).  
 between, among, *inter*.  
 beyond, across, *trāns*.  
 bind, *obstringō*.  
 blood relationship, *propinqui-*  
*tās*.  
 boat, *nāvis*.  
 booty, *praeda*.  
 border, limit, *finis*.  
 both, *et*.  
 bowman, *sagittārius*.  
 boy, *puer*.  
 brave, *fortis*.  
 bravely, *fortiter*.  
 break down, *rescindō*.  
 break through, *perrumpō*.  
 break up, move, *moveō*.  
 (breath), out of breath, *exant-*  
*mātus*.  
 bribery, *largitiō*.  
 bridge, *pōns*.  
 bring, carry, *ferō, portō*.  
 bring, lead, *dūcō*.  
 bring, lead to, *addūcō*.  
 bring in, *inferō, importō*.  
 bring on, inflict, *inferō*.  
 bring together, *cōgō, condūcō*.  
 bring up, supply, *supportō*.  
 bring up the rear, *agmen claudō*.  
 brother, *frāter*.  
*Brundisium*, *ī*, n. (name of a  
 town in S. E. Italy).  
 build, *faciō, aedificō*.  
 building, *aedificium*.  
 busy, *am, versor* (frequently  
 about equivalent to *sum*).  
 but, *sed*.



buy, *emō*.

by, *ā, ab*.

## C

calamity, *calamitās*.

call, call together, *convocō*.

call, name, *appellō*.

camp, *castra*.

camp-follower, *cālō*.

can, am able, *possum*.

canton, *pāgus*.

captive, *captivus*.

capture, *capiō, expūgnō*.

*Capua*, *ae*, *f*. (name of a town near Naples).

care, *cūra*.

carry, *gerō, ferō*; carry on war, *bellum gerō*.

carry (lead) away, *abdūcō*.

carry from, *effērō*.

cart, *carrus*.

cause, *causa*.

cavalry, *equitātus*.

cavalry (adj.), *equester*.

cavalryman, *eques*.

cease, *dēsistō*.

centurion, *centuriō*.

certain, certain one, *quīdam*.

check, *impediō*.

chief, chief man, *prīnceps*.

chief command, *summa imperī*.

children, *puerī, liberī*.

city, *urbs*.

clearly see, *perspiciō*.

climb, *ascendō*.

cohort, *cohors*.

collect, *cōgō*.

come, *veniō*.

come (go) out, *ēgredior*.

come through, *pervenīō*.

come to, be added (be inspired in), *accēdō*.

come together, *conveniō*.

command (according to command), *iussū*.

command, be in command of, *praesum*; put in command of, *praeficiō*.

command, order, *imperō, iubeō*. (thing) commanded, order, *imperātum*.

commend, *laudō*.

commission, task, *negōtium*.

compel, *cōgō*.

complain, *queror*.

conceal, *cēlō*.

concerning, *dē*.

conquer, *superō, vincō*.

consent, willingness, *voluntās*.

consider, *habeō*.

conspiracy, *coniūrātiō*.

conspire, *coniūrō, cōnsentiō*.

construct (carry along) a ditch, *fossam obdūcō* or *perdūcō*.

consul, *cōnsul*.

consulship, *cōnsulātus*.

contend, *contendō*.

convene, *conveniō*.

conveniently, *commodē*.

could, was able, *poteram, potuī*.

council, *concilium*.

counsel, *cōnsilium*.

country, territory, *finēs*.

courage, *virtūs*.

covering, *tegimentum*.

cross, *trānseō*.

crowded together, *cōnfertus*.

crush, *opprimō*.

custom, *mōs, cōnsuetūdō*.

cut off, shut off, *interclūdō*.

cut to pieces, *concīdō*.

## D

daily (adj.) *cotidiānus*.  
 daily (adv.), *cotidiē*.  
 danger, *periculum*.  
 dangerous, *periculōsus*.  
 dare, *audeō*.  
 (daring), with the utmost daring, *audācissimē*.  
 daughter, *filia*.  
 day, *dies*.  
 (day) by day, *interdiū*.  
 (at) day-break, *prīmā lūce*.  
 debtor, *obaerātus*.  
 decamp, *castris ēgredior*.  
 decide, *statuō, constituō*.  
 decide (it is pleasing), *placet*.  
 declare, *cōfirmō*.  
 deep, *altus*.  
 defeat, *superō, vincō*.  
 defend, *dēfendō*.  
 defender, *dēfensor*.  
 delay, *moror*.  
 deliberate, *dēliberō*.  
 demand, *flāgitō, postulō, poscō*.  
 dense, crowded, *cōnfertus*.  
 depart, *discēdō, proficīscor, abeō*.  
 departure, *profectiō*.  
 depth, *altitūdō*.  
 descend, be descendant of, arise, *orior*.  
 deserter, *perfuga*.  
 desire, *cupiditās, studium*.  
 desirous, *cupidus*.  
 despise, *dēspiciō*.  
 deter, *dēterreō*.  
 detriment, *dētrīmentum*.  
 die, *morior*.  
 differ, *differō*.  
 (with) difficulty, *vix, aegrē*.  
 diminish, *dēminuō*.

direction, *pars*.  
 (from all) directions, *undique*.  
 disappoint, fail, *fallō*.  
 discipline, *disciplīna*.  
 disembark, *nāvi ēgredior*.  
 dismiss, *dimitto*.  
 (disorder), in great disorder, *perturbātus*.  
 display, show, *prōpōnō*.  
 disposition, *animus*.  
 distant, am, *absum*.  
 (most) distant, *extrēmus*.  
 disturb, *permovēō, commovēō*.  
 ditch, *fossa*.  
 do, *faciō*.  
 do you? -ne (enclitic).  
 doubt, *dubitō*.  
 doubtful, *dubius*.  
 draw from, *dētrahō*.  
 draw up, form, *instruō*.  
 drive, *compellō*.  
 drive back, *repellō*.  
 drive from, *dēpellō*.  
 dwell, *incolō*.

## E

each, *quisque*.  
 (to) each other, *inter sē*.  
 (am) eager for, desire, *studeō*.  
 eagerness, *studium*.  
 earth, *terra*.  
 (ease), with ease, easily, *facile*.  
 easy, *facilis*.  
 eight, *octō*.  
 elderly men, *māiorēs nātū*.  
 encamp, *castra pōnō; cōnsidō*.  
 encourage, *cohortor*.  
 end of the ditch, *extrēma fossa*.  
 endure, *perferō, sustentō*.

enemy, *hostis*.  
 enfeeble, *effeminō*.  
 engine of war, *tormentum*.  
 enjoy, *utor, fruor*.  
 enlist, *cōscribō*.  
 enough, *satis*.  
 enroll, *cōscribō*.  
 enter, enter within, *ingredior*.  
 envoy, *lēgātus*.  
 equal, *pār*.  
 even if, *etsi*.  
 ever, *umquam*.  
 everybody, every man, *omnēs, quisque*.  
 everything, *omnia*.  
 excel, *superō, praecēdō*.  
 except, *praeter*.  
 exceptional, *singulāris*.  
 exhortation, *cohortātiō*.  
 expel, *expellō*.  
 extend, *pertineō, pateō*.  
 eye, *oculus*.

## F

face to face, *adversus*.  
 fame, *glōria*.  
 far, by far, *longē*; too far, *longius*.  
 farther (adj.), *ulterior*.  
 father, *pater*.  
 father-in-law, *socer*.  
 fear, *timor*.  
 fear, *timeō, vereor*.  
 fertile, *ferāx*.  
 few, *paucī*.  
 fickleness of mind, *mōbilitās animi*.  
 field, *ager*.  
 fifteen, *quīndecim*.  
 fifty, *quīnquāgintā*.

fight, *pugnō, dimicō*.  
 fight, fighting, *pugna, proelium*.  
 find, come upon, *inveniō*.  
 find, find out, discover, *reperiō, cognōscō*.  
 finish, complete, *cōficiō*.  
 fire, *ignis*.  
 first, *primus, princeps*.  
 flag, *vērillum*.  
 flank, side, *latus*.  
 flee, *fugiō*.  
 fleet, *classis*.  
 fleet, swift, *vēlōx*.  
 flight, *fuga*.  
 flow, *fluō*.  
 fodder, *pābulum*.  
 foe, *hostis*.  
 follow, *sequor*.  
 foot, *pēs*.  
 foot-soldier, *pedes*.  
 for (prep.), *ad, pro* (in behalf of).  
 for (concerning), *dē*.  
 forbid, *vetō*.  
 forced (march), *māgnum (iter)*.  
 forces, *cōpiae*.  
 ford, *vadam*.  
 forest, *silva*.  
 forget, *oblīvīscor*.  
 forgetful of, *oblītus*.  
 form, make, *faciō, instruō*.  
 form (take) a plan, *cōsilium, capiō*.  
 former, *prīstinus, superior*.  
 fort, *castellum*.  
 fortify, *mūniō*.  
 fortunate, *opportūnus*.  
 fortune, *fortūna*.  
 four, *quattuor*.  
 four hundred, *quadrīngentī*.

fourth, *quārtus*.  
 frenzy, *furor*.  
 frequently, *saepe*.  
 friend, *amīcus*.  
 friendly, *amīcus*.  
 friendship, *amīcītia*.  
 from (prep.), *ab, dē, ex*.  
 from (conj.), *quōminus, quīn*.  
 from there, thence, *inde*.  
 (front), in front of, *prō*.  
 (front), those in front, *priōrēs*.  
 full, *plēnus*.

## G

garrison, *praesidium*.  
 gate, *porta*.  
 gather, *cōgō*.  
 general, *imperātor*.  
 generally, *vulgō, ferē*.  
 get possession of, *potior*.  
 girl, *puella*.  
 give, *dō*.  
 give up, surrender, *trādō, dēdō*.  
 go, *eō*.  
 go away (out, forth), *exeō*.  
 go away, *abēō, discēdō*.  
 go back, *redeō, revertor*.  
 good, *bonus*.  
 go on, is going on (happening),  
     passive of *gerō*.  
 go out, *exeō, ēgredior*.  
 grain, *frūmentum*.  
 grant, *concēdō*.  
 great, large, *māgnus*.  
 greatly, *māgnopere*.  
 Greek, *Graecus*.  
 grind, *molō*.  
 guard, *praesidium*.  
 guide, leader, *dux*.

## H

hand, *manus*.  
 happen, *accidō*.  
 (would) happen, would be, *fore*.  
 harangue, *cohortor*.  
 hasten, make haste, *contendō*.  
 hasty, *repentīnus*.  
 hate, *odī*.  
 have, *habēō*.  
 he, is, *ille, hīc*.  
 hear, hear of, *audiō*.  
 heavy, *gravis*.  
 hedge, *saepēs*.  
 height, *altitūdō*.  
 help, *auxilium, subsidium*.  
 help, to, *auxilium ferre*.  
 here, *hīc*.  
 hereafter, *postea*.  
 hesitate, *dubitō*.  
 high, *altus*.  
 high-born, *nōbilis*.  
 highest, *summus* (superl. of *superus*).  
 hill, *collis*.  
 himself, him (intensive), *ipse*.  
 himself, him (reflexive), *suī, sibi*, etc.  
 hinder, impede, *impediō, prohibeō*.  
 hire, *condūcō*.  
 hither, nearer, *citerior*.  
 hold, *teneō, obtineō*.  
 hold out (sustain an attack),  
     *sustineō*.  
 home, *domus*; at home, *domī*;  
     from home, *domō*.  
 hope, *spēs*.  
 horse, *equus*.  
 horseman, *eques*.  
 hostage, *obses*.

hostile, *inimicus*.  
 hour, *hōra*.  
 household, *familia*.  
 however (conj.), *quamvis*.  
 however (adv.), *autem*.  
 how great (large), *quantus*.  
 how many, *quot*.  
 hunt up, search for, *quaerō*.  
 hurry, hasten, *contendō*.  
 hurry away, *dēcurrō*.

I

if, *sī*.  
 immediately, *statim*.  
 impede, *impediō*.  
 in, *in*.  
 increase, *amplificō*.  
 incredible, *incrēdibilis*.  
 indicate, *sīgnificō*.  
 indignity, *indignitās*.  
 infantry, *peditēs*.  
 inferior, *īnferior*.  
 inflict, *īnferō*.  
 inflict punishment on any one, *dē aliquō supplicium sūmō*.  
 influence, *auctōritās*.  
 (influence), am of (have) very great influence, *plūrimum valeō, plūrimum possum*.  
 influence, lead to, *addūcō*.  
 inform, *certiōrem faciō*; be informed, *certior fīō*.  
 inhabit, *incolō*.  
 injury, *iniūria*.  
 in order that, to . . . *ut, quō* (with comparatives).  
 inquire, inquire about, *quaerō*.  
 inside, *intrā*.  
 instigate, *sollicitō*.  
 insult, *contumēlia*.

intercessor, *dēprecātor*.  
 (it) interests, is of interest to, *interest*.  
 interfere with, obstruct, *impediō*.  
 intervening, thrown between, *interiectus*.  
 into, *in*.  
 intrust, *permittō, commendō*.  
 iron, *ferrum*.  
 island, *īnsula*.  
 itself, *ipse*.

J

javelin, *pīlum*.  
 join, join together, *iungō*.  
 journey, *iter*.  
 judgment, *iūdicium*.  
 justice, *iūstitia*.

K

keep from, prohibit, *prohibeō*.  
 keep, hold, *contineō*.  
 keep off, *prohibeō*.  
 kill, *occidō, interficiō*.  
 kindness, *beneficium*.  
 king, *rēx*.  
 kinsman, *cōnsanguineus*.  
 known, *sciō* (not know, *nesciō*), *intellegō*.

L

labor, *labor*.  
 labor, to, *labōrāre*.  
 lack, be wanting in, *dēsum*.  
 lake, *lacus*.  
 land, *ager*.  
 language, *lingua*.  
 large, *māgnus*.

late at night, *multā nocte*.

law, *lēx*.

lay waste, *vāstō*.

lead, *dūcō*.

lead across, *trādūcō*.

lead away, *abdūcō*.

lead back, *redūcō*.

leading man, *prīnceps*.

lead to, *addūcō*.

leader, *dux*.

leadership, *prīncipātus*.

learn, *cognōscō*.

leave, *relinquō*.

left, remaining, *reliquus*; nothing left, *nihil reliquū*.

legion, *legiō*.

lengthy, *longus*.

less (adv.), *minus*.

letter, *epistola*, *litterae*.

levy, *imperō*.

lie concealed, *lateō*.

lieutenant, *lēgātus*.

life, *vita*.

light-armed, *levis armātūrae*.

like, similar, *similis*.

line, line of march, *agmen*.

line of battle, *aciēs*.

linger, tarry, *moror*.

little, by a little, *paulō*.

little, small, *parvus* (*minimum posse*, to be very weak).

live, dwell, *incolō*.

live, am alive, *vivō*.

lofty, *altus*.

long, *longus*.

long, for a long time, *diū*.

look for, seek, *petō*.

lose, *āmittō*.

love, *amō*.

lucky, *opportūnus*.

luxury, *luxuria*.

## M

made, am, become, *fīō*.

magistrate, *magistrātus*.

make, do, *faciō*.

make, render, *reddō*.

make war, *bellum īnferō*.

man, *vir*, *homō*.

many, *multī*.

march, *iter*; on the march, *in itinere*.

march, *iter faciō*.

marriage, *mātrimōnium*; give in marriage, *in mātrimōnium dō*.

marriage tie, alliance, *adfinitās*.

marry, take a wife, *in mātrimōnium dūcō*.

marsh, marsh land, *palūs*.

marvelous, *mīrus*.

matter, thing, *rēs*.

meantime, in the meantime, *interim*.

meet, *occurrō*.

memory, *memoria*.

merchant, *mercātor*.

mercy, *miserīcordia*.

message, *nūntius*.

messenger, *nūntius*.

middle, *medius*.

mile, *mīlle passūs*.

miles, *mīlia passuum*.

military science, *rēs militāris*.

mind, *animus*.

mischievous, *malefīcium*.

mistaken, am, *errō*.

month, *mēnsis*.

moon, *lūna*.

more, *plūs*, *amplius*, *potius*.

(for the) most part, *māximam partem*.



mother, *māter*.  
 mount, climb, *ascendō*.  
 mountain, *mōns*.  
 move, *moveō*.  
 much, *multus*.  
 multitude, *multitūdō*.  
 my, *meus*.

N

name, *nōmen*.  
 narrowness of the passage,  
     *angustiae*.  
 nation, *nātiō*.  
 native land, *patria*.  
 nature, *nātūra*.  
 near, am, am at hand, *subsum*.  
 near, *ad, prope, apud*.  
 near approach, coming up,  
     *successus*.  
 nearer, *propior* (adj.), *citerior*;  
     *propius* (adv.).  
 nearest, next, *proximus* (adj.),  
     *proximē* (adv.).  
 necessary, *necessarius*.  
 necessary, is, is' fitting, *oportet*.  
 need, *opus, ūsus*.  
 neighboring, *finitimus*.  
 neighbors, *finitimī*.  
 neither, *neque, nec*.  
 never, *numquam*.  
 nevertheless, *tamen*.  
 new, *novus*.  
 next, following, *proximus, pos-*  
     *terus*.  
 night, *nox*.  
 (night), by night, *noctū*.  
 no (not any), *nullus*.  
 nobility, *nōbilitās*.  
 noble, *nōbilis*.  
 no longer, *nōn diūtius, nōn*  
     *iam*.

no one, *nēmō*.  
 nor, *neque, nec*.  
 not, *nōn, nē*.  
 not . . . even, *nē . . . quidem*.  
 nothing, *nihil*.  
 not yet, *nōndum*.  
 now, *nunc*.  
 number, *numerus*.  
 (in large) numbers, *frequēns*  
 (in pl.).

O

oath, *iūsiurandum*. (See take  
     oath together.)  
 observe closely, *perspicīō*.  
 obtain, *cōsequor, obtineō*.  
 obtain a request, *impetrō*.  
 (occasion), on that occasion,  
     *tum, eō tempore*.  
 occupy, *occupō*.  
 ocean, *ōceanus*.  
 of (concerning), *dē*.  
 of (from), *ā, ab, ex, dē*.  
 often, *saepe*.  
 older men, *māiōrēs nātū*.  
 on, *in*.  
 on account of, *propter, ob*.  
 one, *ūnus*.  
 one . . . another, *alius . . .*  
     *alius*.  
 only (adv.), *sōlum*; not only  
     . . . but also, *nōn modo . . .*  
     *sed etiam*.  
 on this side of, *cis*.  
 opinion, *sententia, opīniō*.  
 or, *aut, vel, an* (in double ques-  
     tions).  
 (order), at the order of, *iussū*.  
 order, arrangement, *ōrdō*.  
 order, *iubeō, imperō*.

(order), in order to, *ut, quō*  
(with comparative).

or not, *an nōn, necne*.

other, *alius*.

(others'), of others, *aliēnus*.

ought, is necessary, proper,  
*oportet*.

our, *noster*; our men, *nostrī*.

out of, *ex*.

over, in, *in*.

overcome, *superō, vincō*.

overhang, *impendeō*.

overrun, harass, *vexō*.

## P

pace, *passus*.

part, *pars*.

(parts), from all parts, on  
every side, *undique*.

pay, *mercēs*.

pay, *persolvō*.

peace, *pax*.

penalty, *poena*.

people, *populus*.

peril, *periculum*.

permit, *permittō, patior, licet*.

personal enemy, *inimicus*.

persuade, *persuādeō*.

pitch, place, *pōnō*.

pity, *misericordia*.

place, *locus*.

place, *pōnō*.

plan, *cōnsilium*.

please, *placet*.

pleasure, *voluptās*.

pledge, *fidēs*.

plunder, *praedor*.

policy, *cōnsilium*.

Pompey, *Pompēius*, ī, m.

population, *multitūdō homi-  
num*.

possess, *possideō*.

possession, *possessiō*.

possession, get possession of,  
*potior*.

power, *potentia, potestās*.

powerful, *potēns*.

powerful, am very, *plūrimum*  
*possum* or *valeō*.

practicable, *expeditus*.

praise, *laudō*.

prepare, *parō*.

prepared, ready, *parātus*.

press (hard), *premō*.

prevent, prohibit, *prohibeō, im-  
pediō*.

price, *pretium*.

private, *privātus*.

proceed, *proſiciscor*.

prohibit, *prohibeō*.

promise, *polliceor*.

protect, defend, *dēfendō, mūniō*.

protection, *praesidium, fidēs*.

province, *prōvincia*.

provisions, *cibāria*.

proximity, *propinquitās*.

prudence, *prudentia*.

public, *pūblicus*.

punishment, *supplicium*.

pursue, *sequor, cōsector*.

put in command of, *praeficiō*.

put one's self under protection,  
*in fidem veniō*.

put to flight, *in jugam dō*  
(*coniciō*); *fugō*.

## Q

(quarters), from all quarters,  
*undique*.

quickly, *celeriter*.

R

raft, *ratis*.  
 rampart, materials for a rampart, *agger*.  
 rank, *ōrdō*.  
 rather, *potius, magis*.  
 ravage, *vāstō*.  
 reach, come to, *adeō*.  
 readily, *facile, commodē*.  
 ready, *parātus*.  
 rear, *novissimum agmen*.  
 (rear), men in the rear, (*eī*) *ab extrēmō agmine*.  
 reason, *causa*; for this reason, *eā (quā) dē causā*.  
 recall, *revocō*.  
 receive, *accipiō*.  
 (most) recently, *proximē*.  
 recollection, *memoria*.  
 reduce, *redigō*.  
 refrain from, *temperō, super-sedeō*.  
 refuse, *recūsō*.  
 (regard), in regard to, *dē*.  
 region, *regiō*.  
 remain, *maneō, remaneō*.  
 remember, *memoriā teneō, meminī, reminīscor*.  
 renew, *redintegrō*.  
 renown, *glōria, fāma*.  
 repel, *repellō*.  
 report, *nūntiō*.  
 repulse, *repellō*.  
 reputation, opinion, *opīniō*.  
 rescue, *ēripiō*.  
 resist, *resistō*.  
 (respect), out of respect, *honōris causā*.  
 (respecting), with respect to, *dē*.  
 rest, rest of, remaining, *reli-quus*.

(all the) rest, *cēterī*.  
 (result), the result was, *factum est*.  
 retain, *retineō*.  
 retainer, vassal, *cliēns*.  
 retreat, *sē recipere*.  
 return, *revertor, redeō*.  
 revolt, *dēficiō*.  
 revolution, *rēs novae*.  
 reward, *praemium*.  
 reward, hire, pay, *mercēs*.  
 rich, *dīves*.  
 river, *flūmen*.  
 road, *iter, via*.  
 roam, *vagor*.  
 robber, *latrō*.  
 rout, *pellō, dispergō* (scatter).  
 royal power, *rēgnum*.  
 rule, sway, *imperium*.  
 rumor, *rūmor*.  
 run against, *occurrō*.  
 rush to arms, *ad arma concurrō*.

S

sad, am, *doleō*.  
 safe, *tūtus*.  
 safety, *salūs*.  
 sailor, *nauta*.  
 sake, cause, *causa*.  
 same, *īdem*; to the same place, *eōdem*.  
 save, *servō*.  
 say, tell, *dīcō*.  
 scarcity, *inopia*.  
 scatter, *dispergō, dissipō*.  
 scout, *explōrātor*.  
 sea, *mare*.  
 second, *secundus*.  
 (in) secret, privately, *sēcrētō*.  
 secure, get, *comparō*.

see, *videō*.  
 seek, *petō*.  
 seem, *videor*.  
 seize, *capiō*, *occupō*.  
 (very) seldom, *minimē saepe*.  
 select, choose, *dēligō*.  
 senate, *senātus*.  
 send, *mittō*.  
 send forward, *praemittō*.  
 service, use, *ūsus*.  
 set, go down, *occidō*.  
 set fire to, *incendō*.  
 set out, proceed, *proficīscor*.  
 seventh, *septimus*.  
 severe, *gravis*.  
 shed, *vīnea*.  
 shield, *scūtum*.  
 ship, *nāvis*.  
 shore, *litus*.  
 short, *brevis*.  
 show, *dēmōnstrō*, *doceō*.  
 side, flank, *latus*.  
 signal, striking, *īnsignis*.  
 signal, *signum*.  
 (very) similar, *cōnsimilis*.  
 simultaneously, *simul*.  
 since, *cum*, *quoniam*, *quod*.  
 (in) single (file), *singulī*.  
 six, *sex*.  
 size, *māgnitūdō*.  
 skilful, *perītus*.  
 slave, *servus*.  
 slavery, *servitūs*.  
 slay, *occidō*, *interficiō*.  
 slinger, *funditor*.  
 small, *parvus*.  
 smaller, *minor*.  
 smoke, *fūmus*.  
 smoothness, gentleness, *lēnitās*.  
 so, *ita*, *sic*, *tam*.  
 so large (great), *tantus*.

so much, *tantus*.  
 soldier, *mīles*.  
 some, *aliquī*, *nōn nūllī*, *aliī*  
 (when some form of another  
*alius* is used with it).  
 some one, *aliquis*.  
 something, *aliquid*.  
 sometimes, *nōnnumquam*.  
 son, *filius*.  
 soon, *mox*, *celeriter*.  
 sorrow, *dolor*.  
 so that, *ut*.  
 sovereignty, *imperium*.  
 spare, *servō*, *cōnservō*.  
 speak, *dīcō*.  
 speed, *celeritās*.  
 spirit, *animus*.  
 spring, arise, *orior*.  
 stand, make a stand, *cōnsistō*.  
 standard, *signum*.  
 state, *cīvitās*, *rēs pūblica*.  
 station, *dispōnō*.  
 still, nevertheless, *tamen*.  
 stone, *lapis*.  
 storm, *tempestās*.  
 strength, *vīs*.  
 stretch out, extend, *pandō*.  
 strip, *nūdō*.  
 strive, *contendō*.  
 subdue, *pācō*.  
 suddenly, *subitō*.  
 suffer, endure, *perferō*, *accipiō*  
 (receive).  
 suffer, permit, *patior*, *permittō*.  
 sufficiently, *satis*.  
 suggest, prescribe, *praescribō*.  
 suicide (commit), *sibi mortem*  
*cōnscīscere*.  
 suitable, *idōneus*.  
 summer, *aestās*.  
 summon, *arcessō*.

sun, *sōl*.  
 sunset, *occūsus sōlis*.  
 supplies, *cōpiae, commeātus*.  
 supplies of grain, *rēs frūmen-  
 tāria*.  
 supreme, *suprēmus* or *summus*,  
 superl. of *superus*.  
 surpass, excel, *praecēdō*.  
 surrender, *dēditiō*.  
 surrender, give up, *dēdō, trādō*.  
 surround, come around, *cir-  
 cumveniō*.  
 sustain, *sustineō*.  
 swamp, *palūs*.  
 swiftness, speed, *celeritās*.  
 sword, *gladius*.

T

take, assume, *sūmō*.  
 take, capture, *capīō, expūgnō*.  
 take a (one's) stand (place),  
*cōnsistō*.  
 take away, *tollō, dētrahō, ēripiō,  
 abripiō*.  
 take oath together, conspire,  
*coniūrō*.  
 take to flight, flee, *fugiō*.  
 take under protection, *in fidem  
 recipiō*.  
 talk, converse, *conloquor*.  
 teach, *doceō*.  
 tear down, *intercindō*.  
 tell, *dīcō*.  
 ten, *decem*.  
 tend to, pertain to, *pertineō*.  
 tenth, *decimus*.  
 terrify thoroughly, greatly, *per-  
 terreō*.  
 territory, *finēs*.  
 than, *quam*.

that, *is, ille*.  
 that (as conj. introducing  
 subst. cl.), *quod, ut*.  
 that (who), *quī*.  
 that, but that, *quīn, quōminus*.  
 that, in order that, *ut, quō*  
 (with comparatives); that  
 (after verbs of fearing), *nē*.  
 that, so that, *ut*.  
 that not, lest (with purpose  
 cl.), *nē*, that not (with re-  
 sult cl.), *ut nōn*; that not  
 (after verbs of fearing), *ut*.  
 themselves (intensive), *ipsī*;  
 themselves (reflexive), *suī*,  
*sibi*, etc.  
 there, *ibi*.  
 there (thither), *eō*.  
 thing, *rēs*.  
 thing commanded, *imperātum*.  
 think, *putō, existimō, arbitror,  
 sentiō*.  
 third, *tertius*.  
 thirty, *trīgintā*.  
 this, *hīc, is*.  
 those in front, *priōrēs*.  
 though, see although.  
 thousand, *mīlle*; pl. *mīlia*.  
 three, *trēs*.  
 three days, *trīdium*.  
 through, *per*.  
 throw, hurl, *coniciō*.  
 throw about (around), *cir-  
 cumciciō*.  
 throw away, *abiciō*.  
 throw down, *dēiciō*.  
 throw into flight, *in fugam  
 coniciō*.  
 throw into great disorder (con-  
 fusion), *perturbō*.  
 throw together, *coniciō*

throw up, heap up, *iaciō*.  
 tide, *aestus*.  
 time, *tempus*.  
 to, *ad*; to which, *quō*, or *ad*  
     with *rel.*  
 top of, *summus* (with noun).  
 touch, *attingō*.  
 toward, *in, ad, sub*.  
 tower, *turris*.  
 town, *oppidum*.  
 townspeople, *oppidānī*.  
 train, *exerceō*.  
 trench, *fossa*.  
 tribe, *nātiō*.  
 trial, *iudicium*.  
 trick, ambush, *insidiae*.  
 trickery, *dolus*.  
 troops, *cōpiae*.  
 trouble, difficulty, *negōtium*.  
 trumpet, *tuba*.  
 try, *cōnor, experior*.  
 tumult, *tumultus*.  
 turn, *vertō*.  
 twelve, *duodecim*.  
 twenty, *vīgintī*.  
 two, *duo*.  
 two hundred, *ducentī*.

## U

unable, *am, nōn possum*.  
 under, *sub, in* (*in fidē*, under  
     protection).  
 undergo, *subeō*.  
 understand, *intelligō*.  
 undertake, *suscipiō*.  
 unfavorable, *iniquus*.  
 unfriendly, *inimicus*.  
 uniformly, *cōstanter*.  
 unite, *coniungō*.  
 unless, *nisi*.

unprotected, open, *apertus*.  
 until, *dum, dōnec, quoad*.  
 unwilling, *invītus*.  
 unwilling, *am, nōlō*.  
 urge, exhort, *cohortor*.  
 use, *ūsus*.  
 use, *ūtor*.  
 useless, *inūtilis*.  
 utmost, *summus*.

## V

valiantly, *fortiter*.  
 valor, *virtūs*.  
 van, *primum agmen*.  
 Vercingetorix, *īgis, m.*  
 very, *ipse*.  
 victor, *victor*.  
 victory, *victōria*.  
 view, sight, *prōspectus*.  
 village, *vīcus*.  
 violence, *vīs, impetus*.  
 visit, *commeō, adeō*.

## W

wage, carry on, *gerō*.  
 wait, wait for, *expectō*.  
 wall, *vāllum, mūrus*.  
 war, *bellum*.  
 war, wage war, *bellō*.  
 warlike, *bellicōsus*.  
 waste, consume, *cōnsūmō*.  
 waste, lay waste, ravage, *vāstō*  
     *populor, dēpopulor*.  
 watch, *vigilia*.  
 way, journey, road, *iter, via*.  
 way, manner, *modus*.  
 weaken, *cōnficiō, remittō*.  
 weapons, *arma*.



weep, *flēō*.

what (interrog.), *quid, quae*  
(pl.).

when, *cum, ubi*.

where, *ubi, quā*.

whether, *num, -ne, sī*.

whether (in double questions),  
*utrum, -ne*.

which, what, *quī (quīs)*.

while, *dum*.

who (rel.), *quī*.

who (interrog.), *quīs*.

whoever, *quī, quicumque*.

whole, *tōtus*.

why, *quā dē causā, cūr*.

wide, *lātus*.

widely, *lātē*.

wife, *uxor*.

wine, *vīnum*.

winter, *hiems*.

winter, *hiemō*.

winter-quarters, *hīberna*.

wish, *volō*.

wish, desire, *voluntās*.

with, *cum*.

within, *intrā*.

woman, *mulier*.

wooded, *silvestris*.

woods, *silva*.

work, *opus*.

worn out, *dēfessus*.

would that (oh! that), *utinam*  
(literally, how).

wound, *vulnus*.

wretched, *miser*.

write, *scribō*.

wrong, injury, *iniūria*.

# Y

year, *annus*.

yet, nevertheless, *tamen*.

yoke, *iugum*.

yonder, *ille*.

you, *tū*.

your, *tuus, vester*.

# VOCABULARY

## LATIN-ENGLISH

THE English pronunciation of proper names is in accordance with the general rules of the dictionaries. The sounds of the vowels are as follows: —

1. a as in fat, man.
2. ā as in fate, mane.
3. ă as in far, father.
4. â as in fall, talk.
5. ą as in idea, Persia.

1. e as in met.
2. ē as in me.
3. ĕ as in ablegate,
4. é as in her, fern.
5. ę as in prudent.

1. i as in pin.
2. ī as in pine.

1. o as in not.
2. ō as in no.
3. ȝ as in democrat.
4. ȝ as in move.

1. u as in tub.
2. ū as in mute.
3. ū as in singular, education.

### A

A., see Aulus.

ā (before cons.), ab (before vowels or cons.), prep. w. abl. (away from), *from, by, on the side of, at, at the hands of, of; on, in; as adv., off, away, II, 7; as prefix, away, off, un-*.

abditus, -a, -um [abdō], *hidden, concealed*.

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum [ab+dō], tr., *put away, hide, conceal*.

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -duc-tum [ab+dūcō], tr., *lead away, carry away*.

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [ab+iaciō], tr., *throw away*.

abiēs, abietis, F., *fir-tree*.

abscidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum [abs+caedō], tr., *cut off*.

absēns, absentis, adj. [absum], *absent*.

absimilis, -e [ab+similis], *different*.

abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -ten-tum [abs+teneō], tr. and intr., *keep back, restrain, refrain*.

abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāc-tum [ab+trahō], (drag away), tr., *carry off*.

absum, abesse, āfuī [ab+sum], intr., *be away, be distant, be*

- lacking, be of no value*, I. 36;  
*take no part in*, VI. 14.
- ac**, see *atque*.
- accēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum  
 [ad+cēdō], intr., *go to, approach, be added*, I. 19, IV. 22; **accēdēbat** (or *accessit*) *quod*, *another reason was that*, etc.
- accelerō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum  
 [celer], intr., *hasten*.
- acceptus**, -a, -um, part. of *accipiō*, as adj., *pleasing (to), popular (with)*; used w. dat.
- accidō**, -cidere, -cidī, — [ad+cadō], intr., (fall to), *fall, happen, occur, befall*; *accidit*, *impers.*, *it happens*.
- accidō**, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum  
 [ad+caedō], tr., *cut into*.
- accipiō**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum  
 [ad+capiō], tr., *receive, accept, learn, hear*.
- acclivis**, -e, *ascending, rising*.
- acclivitās**, -tātis, F. [ad+clivus], *ascent*.
- accommodātus**, -a, -um, part. as adj. [*accommodō*], *suited, adapted*.
- accommodō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum  
 [ad+commodō], tr., *fit, adjust, put on*, II. 21.
- accūrātē**, adv., *carefully*.
- accurrō**, -currere, -currī, -cursum  
 [ad+currō, run], intr., *run to, hasten to*.
- accūsō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad+causa], tr., *call to account, blame, find fault with*.
- ācer**, *ācris*, *ācre*, *sharp, keen, active*.
- acervus**, -ī, M., *heap, pile*.
- aciēs**, -ēī, F., (edge), *line, battle-line, army* (in battle-array); w. *oculōrum*, *keenness*; **aciē**, II. 23, another form of genitive=*aciēī*.
- ācritēr**, adv. [ācer], *sharply, fiercely*.
- āctus**, part. of *agō*.
- ad**, prep. w. acc., *to, toward, near, on; for, to the vicinity of, according to*; adv. (w. numerals), *about*; as prefix, *to, at*.
- adāctus**, part. of *adigō*.
- adaequō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad+aequō], tr., *make equal; reach* (by equaling), II. 32; *equal*; w. *cursum*, *keep up with*.
- adamō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad+amō, love], tr., *become fond of, greatly like*.
- addūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum  
 [ad+dūcō], tr., *lead to, bring to; induce, influence; draw taut*, III. 14.
- adēptum**, part. of *adimō*.
- adeō**, -īre, -īvī (īī), -itum [ad+eō], intr., *go to, approach, attack*, II. 7; *visit*, IV. 21.
- adequitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad+equitō], intr., *ride up to*.
- adferō**, *adferre*, *attulī*, *adlātum*  
 [ad+ferō], tr., *bring to; bring forward; offer, cite*, VI. 22; *cause, produce*.
- adficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum  
 [ad+faciō], tr., *do to, treat, affect*; w. *dolōre*, *fill*; *supplicio* *adficere*, *punish*; w. *morbus*, *afflict*.

- adfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum [ad + figō], tr., *attach to*.
- adfinītās, -tātis, F. [adfinis], *relationship, connection; ties of marriage*, II. 4.
- adflīctō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad + flīgō], tr., (dash against), *wreck, shatter*.
- adflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flīctum [ad + flīgō], tr., (dash at), *damage; throw down*.
- adgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum [ad + gradior, *step*], dep., *approach, attack*.
- adgregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad + gregō; grex, *herd*], tr., *join, attach; sē adgregāre, gather around, attach oneself*.
- adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [ad + habeō], tr. (hold toward), *summon, invite, admit; use, employ; bring*, IV. 13.
- adhūc, adv., *hitherto, up to this time*.
- Adiatunnus, -ī, M., *Adiatunnus* (ā-di-a-tun'us), a chief of the Sotiates, III. 22.
- adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [ad + iaciō], tr., *throw to, add to; adiectus, adjoining*, III. 1.
- adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum [ad + agō], tr., *drive to, drive down*, IV. 17; w. *tēlum, hurl*, II. 21.
- adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēemptum [ad + emō], tr., *take away*.
- aditus, -ūs, M. [adeō], *access, approach; means of access*.
- adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum [ad + iungō], tr., *join to, annex to*, III. 2.
- adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum [ad + iuvō], tr., *help, aid, support*, II. 17.
- administer, -trī, M. [ad + minis-ter, *servant*], *assistant, helper*.
- administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad + ministrō, *serve*], tr., *execute, perform, do*, II. 20; *give, issue*, II. 22; *carry out*, III. 4; *manage*, IV. 29, VI. 20.
- admīror, -mīrārī, -mīrātus sum [ad + mīror], dep., *wonder at, be surprised at, wonder*.
- admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mis-sum [ad + mittō], tr., *send to, let go; commit, permit*, IV. 25; *in sē admittere, commit*, III. 9; *equō admissō, at full speed*.
- admodum, adv. [ad + modum, *to a degree*], *very, exceedingly*.
- adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvī, -ultum [ad + olēscō, *grow*], intr., *grow up*.
- adorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum [ad + orior], dep. (rise against), *attack*.
- adpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum [ad + pellō], tr. (drive to); w. *nāvēs, land, bring to land*.
- adpetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petitum [ad + petō], tr. and intr., *strive for, seek to obtain; approach*.
- adplicō, -āre, -āvī (uī), -ātum [ad + plicō, *fold*], tr., *bend toward; sē adplicāre, lean against*.
- adpropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad + propinquō], intr., *draw near to, approach*.
- adscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scī-tum [ad + scīscō, *approve*], tr.,

*attach to, add to; sibi ad-sciscere, unite with themselves.*

**adsiduus, -a, -um** [ad, sedeō, sit], *constant, continuous, incessant.*

**adistō, -sistere, -stitī, —** [ad + sistō], *intr., stand near, appear.*

**adsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum** [adsuētus, faciō], *tr., accustom, train.*

**adsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum** [ad + suēscō], *intr., become accustomed.*

**adsum, -esse, -fuī** [ad + sum], *intr., be near, be at hand, be present.*

**Aduatucī, -ōrum, M. pl., the Aduatuci** (ad-ū-at'ū-sī), a Belgian tribe, II. 4, etc.

**adulēscēns, -entis, M. [adolēscō], young man, youth; the younger** (w. a proper name, to distinguish one from his father).

**adulēscēntia, -ae, F. [adulēscēns], youth.**

**adulēscēntulus, -ī, M. [adulēscēns], very young man.**

**adventus, -ūs, M. [ad + veniō], arrival, approach, coming.**

1. **adversus, -a, -um** [part. of advertō], *as adj., opposite; unfavorable, adverse; in front, II. 8; face to face, II. 24; adversō colle, up the hill, II. 19.*

2. **adversus, prep. w. acc., against.**

**advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum** [ad + vertō], *tr., turn to; animum advertere, notice.*

**aedificium, -ī, N. [aedificō, build], building.**

**aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [aedēs house, faciō], *tr., build. aegrē, adv. [aeger], with difficulty, scarcely; aegerrimē, with the greatest difficulty.*

**Aemilius, -ī, M., Aemilius** (ē-mil'i-us), name of a Roman gens; *Lucius, a Gaul, an officer in Caesar's cavalry, I. 23.*

**aequāliter, adv. [aequālis], evenly, uniformly.**

**aequinoctium, -ī, M. [aequus, nox], the equinox.**

**aequitās, -tātis, F. [aequus], (evenness), fairness; animī aequitās, contentment.**

**aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [aequus], *tr., make equal, equalize.*

**aequus, -a, -um, even, equal; fair, just, favorable.**

**aerāria, -ae, F. [aes], copper-mine.**

**aes, aeris, N., copper, money; aes aliēnum** (the money of another), *debt.*

**aestās, -tātis, F., summer.**

**aestimātiō, -ōnis, F. [aestimō], valuation, an estimate.**

**aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., regard, consider, estimate.**

**aestuārium, -ī, N. [aestus], inlet, sea-marsh.**

**aestus, -ūs, M., tide.**

**aetās, -tātis, F., age, advanced age.**

**aeternus, -a, -um, everlasting, perpetual.**

**āfutūrus, see absum.**

- ager, agrī, M.**, *field, country, territory.*
- agger, aggeris, M.** [ad + gerō], (what is carried to a place), *mound* (as used in sieges), *rampart* (of a camp, etc.); *materials for a rampart*, II. 20; *earth* (stones, timber, etc.); see *Intro.* 52.
- agmen, -minis, N.** [agō], *army* (on the march); *novissimum agmen*, *rear* (of an army); *primum agmen*, *van* (the foremost division of an army).
- agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, tr.** (put in motion), *drive, do; speak, parley, plead, discuss; w. cum tribūnīs*, I. 41, *arrange; w. vinea*, II. 12, *move forward*, etc.; *w. cuniculus*, III. 21, *extend*; see *grātia*.
- alacer, -cris, -cre, eager.**
- alacritās, -tātis, F.** [alacer], *liveliness, eagerness*,
- ālārius, -a, -um** [āla, *wing*], *of a wing; ālārii, -ōrum, M. pl.* as noun, *auxiliary troops* (stationed on the wings of the army).
- albus, -a, -um, white.**
- alcēs, alcis, F.**, *elk.*
- Alesia, -ae, F.**, *Alesia* (a-lē-shi-ā), a city of the Mandubii, now *Alise Sainte Reine*.
- aliās, adv.** [alius], *at another time; aliās . . . aliās, at one time . . . at another.*
- aliēnus, -a, -um** [alius], *belonging to another, foreign; unfavorable, inappropriate*, VI. 11.
- aliō, adv.** [alius], *to another place elsewhere.*
- aliquamdiū, adv.** [aliquam + diū], *for some time.*
- aliquandō, adv.** [ali + quandō], *sometime, finally.*
- aliquantō, adv.**, *somewhat, considerably.*
- aliquis, -quid, indef. pron.** (App. 27), *some, any; as adj., aliquī, -qua, -quod, some, any; as adv., aliquid*, I. 40, *to some extent.*
- aliquot, indecl. adj.**, *some, several.*
- aliter, adv.** [alius], *otherwise.*
- alius, -a, -ud, adj. or pron.** (App. 12, and 117), *another, other* (of more than two); before *ac* or *atque*, *different; pl., some, others; alius . . . alius, one . . . another; aliī . . . aliī, some . . . others; for alius aliā, aliī aliam in partem, etc., see App. 117.*
- Allobrogēs, -um** (acc. *Allobrogas*), *M. pl., the Allobroges* (a-lob'rō-jēz), a tribe southwest of Lake Geneva, conquered by the Romans in 121 B.C., I. 6, 10, 11, 14, etc.
- alō, alere, alui, altum** (or *alitur*), *tr., feed, nourish, support, increase; raise*, V. 12.
- Alpēs, -ium, F.**, *the Alps*, I. 10, etc.
- alter, -era, -erum, adj. or pron.** (App. 12), *the other* (of two), *second* (in a series), *another; alter . . . alter, the one . . . the*



- other; alterī . . . alterī, one party (or division) . . . the other; alterius, or alterius of another, used as gen. of alius.*  
**altitūdō, -inis, F.** [**altus**], *height, depth.*  
**altus, -a, -um** [**alō**], *high, deep; neut. as noun, the deep (sea),* III. 12, IV. 24.  
**alūta, -ae, F.,** *leather.*  
**ambactus, -ī, M.,** *vassal.*  
**Ambarrī, -ōrum, M. pl.,** *the Ambarri (am-bar'ri), a tribe on the Arar, related to the Haedui, I. 11, etc.*  
**Ambiānī, -ōrum, M. pl.,** *the Ambiani (am-bi-ā'nī), a Belgian tribe, II. 4, etc.*  
**Ambiliatī, -ōrum, M. pl.,** *the Ambiliati (am-bi-lī'a-tī); their location is uncertain.*  
**Ambiorix, -īgis, M.,** *Ambiorix (am-bī'ō-riks), chief of the Eburones.*  
**Ambivaretī, -ōrum, M. pl.,** *the Ambivareti (am-bi-var'e-tī), a tribe on the Loire.*  
**Ambivaritī, -ōrum, M. pl.,** *the Ambivariti (am-bi-var'i-tī), a tribe on the left bank of the Meuse.*  
**ambō, -ae, -ō, adj. (declined like duo),** *both (together).*  
**āmentia, -ae, F. [āmēns],** *want of reason, folly, madness.*  
**amīcitia, -ae, F. [amīcus],** *friendship.*  
**amīcus, -a, -um** [**amō, love**], *friendly; masc. as noun, friend.*  
**āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum** [**ā+mittō**], *tr., send away, dismiss; lose.*  
**amor, amōris, M. [amō],** *love.*  
**amplē, adv. [amplus],** *largely, abundantly.*  
**amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [**amplus, faciō**], *tr., enlarge, increase, extend.*  
**amplitūdō, -inis, F. [amplus],** *size, extent, greatness.*  
**amplius, adv. [comp. of amplē],** *more, further.*  
**amplus, -a, -um,** *large, great; w. mūnera, lavish; w. genus, illustrious; important, distinguished, IV. 12; neut. comp., amplius, as noun, more.*  
**an, conj.,** *or, introducing the second part of a double question; sometimes to be omitted in trans., I. 37.*  
**Anartēs, -ium, M. pl.,** *the Anartes (an-ār'tēz), a tribe of the Daci.*  
**anceps, ancipitis, adj. [ambō+caput],** *(two-headed), double; anceps proelium, i.e., facing in two directions.*  
**ancora, -ae, F.,** *anchor.*  
**Andebrogius, -ī, M.,** *Andebrogius (an-de-brō'ji-us), a leader of the Remi, II. 3.*  
**Andēs, -ium, M. pl.,** *the Andes (an'dēz), a tribe on the Loire.*  
**angulus, -ī, M.,** *angle, corner.*  
**angustē, adv. [angustus],** *closely.*  
**angustiae, -ārum, F. pl. [angustus],** *narrowness, narrow pass; difficulties, III. 18.*  
**angustus, -a, -um** [**angō, squeeze**], *narrow, small; neut. as noun,*

- in angustō, II. 25, *in a critical situation.*
- anima, -ae, F., *soul.*
- animadvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum [animum + ad + vertō], tr. (turn the mind to), *perceive, notice, attend to; punish*, I. 19.
- animal, animālis, N. [anima], *animal.*
- animus, -ī, M., *soul, mind, feeling, heart, attention; spirit, courage.*
- annus, -ī, M., *year.*
- annuus, -a, -um [annus], *yearly, every year.*
- ānser, ānseris, M., *goose.*
- ante, prep. w. acc., *before; adv., before, ago, previously*, I. 31, l. 606; as prefix, *before, in advance.*
- anteā, adv. [ante+ea], *before, previously.*
- antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [ante+cēdō] tr., *go before, go in advance; excel, surpass.*
- anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [ante+ferō], tr. (bear before), *prefer.*
- antemna, -ae, F., *sail-yard.*
- antepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum [ante+pōnō], tr., *place before.*
- antiquitus, adv. [antiquus], *in former times, anciently.*
- antiquus, -a, -um [ante], *former, ancient, of old times.*
- Antistius, -ī, M., *Antistius* (antis'ti-us), name of a Roman gens; *Antistius Reginus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- Antōnius, -ī, M., *Antonius* (antō'ni-us), a Roman family name; *Marcus* ("Mark Antony"), one of Caesar's lieutenants, and member of the second triumvirate.
- apertē, adv. [apertus], *openly, manifestly.*
- apertus, -a, -um [aperiō], *open, exposed, unprotected; see latus.*
- Apollō, Apollinis, M., *Apollo* (a-pol'ō), a god of the Greeks and Romans.
- appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *call (by name), name.*
- Apr., see *Aprilis.*
- Aprilis, -e, *of April.*
- aptus, -a, -um, *fitted, suitable.*
- apud, prep. w. acc., *among, before, near, in the presence of, with.*
- aqua, -ae, F., *water.*
- aquatiō, -ōnis, F. [aqua], *getting water.*
- aquila, -ae, F., *eagle*, the standard of a legion; see *Introd.* 49.
- Aquilēia, -ae, F., *Aquileia* (ak-wi-lē'ya), a town at the head of the Adriatic, I. 10.
- Aquitānia, -ae, F., *Aquitania* (ak-wi-tā'ni-a), the southern division of Gaul, I. 1, III. 11, etc.
- Aquitānus, -a, -um, *Aquitanian*; masc. pl. as noun, *the Aquitani* (ak-wi-tā'nī), Aquitanians, people of Aquitania, I. 1, etc.
- Arar, Araris, acc. -im, abl., -ī, M., *the Arar* (ā'rār), modern

- Sabne* (sōn), a tributary of the Rhone, I. 12, etc.
- arbitrium**, -ī, N. [arbitr, judge], decision, judgment; will, pleasure.
- arbitror**, -ārī, -ātus sum [arbitr, judge], dep., think, judge, consider.
- arbor**, -oris, F., tree.
- arcessō**, -ere, arcessivī, arcessitum, tr. (cause to come), summon, send for, invite.
- arduus**, -a, -um, steep.
- argentum**, -ī, N., silver.
- āridus**, -a, -um, dry; neut. as noun, dry land, IV. 24.
- ariēs**, arietis, M., battering-ram; buttress; *prō ariete*, as a buttress, IV. 17.
- Ariovistus**, -ī, M., *Ariovistus* (ā-ri-ō-vis'tus), a German king, I. 31-53.
- arma**, -ōrum, N. pl., arms, equipment.
- armāmenta**, -ōrum [armō], equipment, rigging, III. 14.
- armātūra**, -ae, F. [armō], armor, equipment.
- armātus**, -a, -um [armō], part. as adj., armed; *armāta milia*, thousands of armed men; masc. pl. as noun, armed men, III. 3.
- armō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., arm, equip.
- arroganter**, adv. [arrogāns], presumptuously, haughtily.
- arrogantia**, -ae, F. [arrogāns], haughtiness, arrogance.
- ars**, artis, F., art, branch of industry.
- artē**, adv. [artus], closely, firmly.
- articulus**, -ī, M. [artus, joint], little joint, joint.
- artificium**, -ī, N. [artifex, artist], an art.
- Arvernī**, -orum, M., the *Arverni* (ār-vēr'nī), a Gallic tribe southwest of the Haedui, whose country is now Auvergne, I. 31.
- arx**, arcis, F., fortress, citadel.
- ascendō**, -scendere, -scendī, -scēsum [ad+scandō, climb], tr., climb, ascend.
- ascēsus**, -ūs, M. [ascendō], ascent, climbing.
- aspectus**, -ūs, M. [aspiciō, look at], appearance, sight.
- at**, conj., but; at least, I. 43.
- atque** (before vowels or cons.), **ac** (before cons.), conj., and, and also; after *par*, as; after a comparative or word implying comparison, than.
- Atrebās**, *Atrebātis*, M., one of the *Atrebates*; pl., the *Atrebates* (at-re-bā'tēz), a tribe of the Belgae, II. 4, etc.
- attingō**, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum [ad+tangō], tr., touch upon, border upon, reach.
- attribuō**, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum [ad+tribuō], tr., assign.
- attulī**, see *adferō*.
- auctor**, -ius, comp. of *auctus* [augeō], w. *honōre*, richer in, I. 43.
- auctor**, -ōris, M. [augeō], originator, promoter.
- auctōritās**, -tātis, F. [auctor],

- influence, authority, prestige; advice.*
- audācia**, -ae, F. [audāx], *daring, boldness, courage; audacity, presumption.*
- audācter**, adv. [audāx], *boldly.*
- audeō**, audēre, ausus sum, semi-dep., *dare.*
- audio**, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, tr., *hear, hear about.*
- auditiō**, -ōnis, F. [audiō], *report, hearsay.*
- augeō**, augēre, auxī, auctum, tr., *increase.*
- Aulerci**, -ōrum, M., *the Aulerci* (ā-ler'sī), a tribe of north-western Gaul.
- Aulus**, -ī, M., *Aulus* (ā'lus), a Roman personal name.
- aureus**, -a, -um [aurum], *of gold, golden.*
- aurīga**, -ae, M. [aurea, *bridle*], *charioteer, driver.*
- auris**, -is, F., *ear.*
- Aurunculēius**, -ī, M., *Lucius Aurunculeius* (ā-rung-kū-lē'yus) *Cotta*, one of Caesar's lieutenants, II. 11, etc.
- Ausci**, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Ausci* (ā'sī), an Aquitanian tribe.
- ausus**, part. of audeō.
- aut**, conj., *or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.*
- autem**, conj., *on the other hand, but; furthermore, besides.* (App. 171, e.)
- auxiliāris**, -e [auxil'um], *auxiliary; masc. pl. as noun, auxiliaries.*
- auxilior**, -ārī, -ātus sum [auxilium], dep., *give aid.*
- auxilium**, -ī, N. [augeō], *aid, help; pl., auxiliary forces, auxiliaries; auxili causā, as auxiliaries.*
- avāritia**, -ae, F. [avārus], *avarice, greed.*
- āversus**, -a, -um, part. as adj. [āvertō], *turned away; āversus hostis, the enemy in flight; āversī, in the rear, II. 26.*
- āvertō**, -vertere, -vertī, -versum [ā+vertō], tr., *turn away, turn aside.*
- avis**, -is, F., *bird.*
- avus**, -ī, M., *grandfather.*
- Axona**, -ae, F., *the Axona* (aks'o-na), modern *Aisne* (ān), a river of the Belgae, II. 5, etc.

## B

- Baculus**, -ī, M., *P. Sextius Baculus* (bac'u-lus), a centurion, II. 25, III. 5.
- Baleārēs**, -ium, M. pl., *the Balears* (bal-ē-ar'ēz), inhabitants of the Balearic Islands.
- Baleāris**, -e, adj., *Balearic* (bal-ē-ar'ik), II. 7.
- balteus**, -ī, M., *belt.*
- barbarus**, -a, -um, *foreign, uncivilized, rude; masc. pl. as noun, barbarian, foreigner.*
- Basilus**, -ī, M., *Basilus* (bas'i-lus); see *Minucius*.
- Batāvi**, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Batavi* (ba-tā'vī), *Batavians*, a tribe near the mouth of the Rhine.
- Belgae**, -ārum, M. pl., *the Belgae* (bel'jē), *Belgians*,

- inhabitants of northern Gaul, I. 1, II. 1-33, etc.; see *Intro.* 22.
- Belgium**, -ī, N., *Belgium*.
- bellicōsus**, -a, -um [*bellum*], *warlike*.
- bellicus**, -a, -um [*bellum*], *of war, in war*.
- bellō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., *make war, fight*.
- Bellovacī**, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Bellovaci* (be-lov'a-sī), the strongest tribe of the Belgae, II. 4, 5, 10, 13, etc.
- bellum**, -ī, N., *war*.
- bene**, adv. [*bonus*] (*App.* 19), *well*.
- beneficium**, -ī, N. [*bene+faciō*], (a well-doing), *kindness, favor, benefit*; **beneficiō sortium**, *thanks to the lots*, I. 53.
- Bibracte**, -is, N., *Bibracte* (bi-brak'tē), largest town of the Haedui, modern *Mont Beuvray*, I. 23, etc.
- Bibrax**, *Bibractis*, F., *Bibrax* (bi'braks), a town of the Remi, II. 6, 7.
- bīdūum**, -ī, N. [*bis+diēs*], *two days*.
- biennium**, -ī, N. [*bis+annus*], *two years*.
- Bigerriōnēs**, -um, M. pl., *the Bigerriones* (bi-ger-ri-ō'nēs), a tribe in Aquitania.
- bīnī**, -ae, -a, dist. num. adj., *two each, two at a time*.
- bipedālis**, -e [*bis+pedālis*], *two feet thick*.
- bipertitō**, adv. [*bis+partitus*], *in two divisions*.
- bis**, num. adv., *twice*.
- Biturigēs**, -um, M. pl., *the Bituriges* (bit-ū-rī'jēs), a tribe of central Gaul, in the vicinity of modern *Bourges*, I. 18, etc.
- Boduognātus**, -ī, M., *Boduognatus* (bod-ū-og-nā'tus), leader of the Nervii, II. 23.
- Bōiī**, *Bōiōrum*, M. pl., *the Boii* (bō'i-ī), a wandering Celtic tribe, allies of the Helvetii, I. 5, 25; later settled w. the Haedui, I. 28. (A kindred tribe north of the Danube gave the name to Bohemia.)
- bonitās**, -tātis, F. [*bonus*], *goodness, fertility*.
- bonus**, -a, -um, *good, friendly*. (*App.* 18); as noun, **bonum**, *good*, I. 40; pl., *goods, property*, VI. 19.
- bōs**, *bovis*, gen. pl., **boum**, M. or F., *ox, cow*; pl., *cattle*.
- bracchium**, -ī, N., *forearm, lower arm*; *arm*.
- Brātuspantium**, -ī, N., *Bratuspantium* (brat-us-pan'shi-um) a town of the Bellovaci, II. 13.
- brevis**, -e, *short, brief*.
- brevitās**, -tātis, F. [*brevis*], *shortness, brevity*.
- Britannī**, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Britons*.
- Britannia**, -ae, F. *Britain*, II. 4, 14, III. 8, IV. 20, etc., V. 8, 12, etc.
- brūma**, -ae, F. [*brevi-ma*], *shortest, sc. diēs, the shortest day*, the winter solstice.

**Brūtus, -ī, M.,** *Brutus* (brö'tus), a Roman family name; *D. Junius Brutus*, a lieutenant of Caesar, III. 11.

## C

**C, for centum.**

**C. for G.,** abbreviation of *Gāius*.

**Cabūrus, -ī, M. (*Gaius Valerius*)** *Caburus* (ka-bū'rus), a Gaul honored with Roman citizenship by C. Valerius Flaccus, I. 47.

**cadāver, -eris,** *dead body*.

**cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum,** intr., *fall*.

**caedēs, -is, F. [caedō],** *killing, murder, slaughter*.

**caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesum,** tr., *cut, cut down*.

**caelestis, -e [caelum, heaven],** *heavenly; as noun, god*.

**Caemānī, -ōrum, M. pl., the** *Caemani* (sē-mā'nī), a Belgian tribe, II. 4.

**Caerōsī, -ōrum, M. pl., the** *Caerosi* (sē-rō'sī), a Belgian tribe, II. 4.

**caeruleus, -a, -um [caelum, heaven],** *dark blue*.

**Caesar, -is, M., Caesar** (sē'zar), a Roman family name; *Gāius Iūlius, Gaius Julius*; see *Introd.* 1-21.

**caespes, caespitis, M.,** *sod*.

**calamitās, -tātis, F.,** *disaster, calamity, defect, loss, misfortune, harm*.

**Caletī, -ōrum, M. pl., the** *Caleti*,

(kal'e-tī), a Belgian tribe, II 4, etc.

**callidus, -a, -um [calleō, be** *wise], shrewd, clever*.

**cālō, -ōnis, M.,** *soldier's servant, camp-follower*.

**campester, -tris, -tre [campus],** *of the plain, on the plain*, VII. 81.

**campus, -ī, M.,** *plain, level country*.

**Canīnius, -ī, M., Caninius** (kan-in'i-us) name of a Roman gens; *Caninius Rebilus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

**Cantabrī, -ōrum, M. pl., the** *Cantabri* (kan'ta-brī), a tribe in northern Spain.

**Cantium, -ī, N.,** *Kent*.

**caper, caprī, M.,** *goat*.

**capillus, -ī, M. [caput],** *hair (of the head)*.

**capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, tr.,** *take; take captive; occupy, seize, deceive, I. 40; derive, get; reach (in sailing); choose, select; w. cōsilium, form, adopt; w. arma, take up*.

**capra, -ae, F.,** *she-goat*.

**captīvus, -ī, M. [capiō],** *captive, prisoner*.

**captus, -ūs, M. [capiō],** *capacity, standard*, IV. 3.

**caput, capitis, N.,** *head, person*, II. 33; *mouth (of a river)*, IV. 10.

**Carcasō, -ōnis, F.,** *Carcaso* (kār'ka-sō), a town of the Tectosages, modern *Carcas-sonne*.

**carīna, -ae, F.,** *keel*.



**Carnutēs, -um, M. pl.,** the *Carnutes* (kār'nū-tēz), a tribe north of central Gaul.

**carō, carnis, F.,** *flesh, meat.*

**carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum, tr.,** *criticise, ridicule.*

**carrus, -ī, M.,** *cart, wagon.*

**cāseus, -ī, M.,** *cheese.*

**Cassiānus, -a, -um, of Cassius;** *bellum Cassiānum, the war with Cassius, I. 13.*

**Cassius, -ī, M.,** *Cassius* (kash'ius), name of a Roman gens; *L. Cassius (Longinus), consul, 107 B.C., I. 7, 12.*

**castellum, -ī, N. [castrum],** *fort, redoubt, stronghold.*

**Casticus, -ī, M.,** *Casticus* (kas'ticus), a prominent Sequanian, I. 3.

**castra, -ōrum, N. pl. [castrum, fort],** *camp; see Introd. 43.*

**cāsus, -ūs, M. [cadō],** (a falling), *accident, chance, fate, calamity; condition, pass, II. 31; occurrence, III. 13; emergency, IV. 31.*

**Catamantāloedis, -is, M.,** *Catamantaloedis* (kat-a-man-tā-lē'dis), a king of the Sequani, I. 3.

**catēna, -ae, F.,** *chain.*

**Caturīgēs, -um, M. pl.,** the *Caturiges* (kat-ū-rī'jēz), an Alpine tribe, I. 10.

**causa, -ae, F.,** *cause, reason, excuse, I. 42; case, situation; causam dicere, plead a case, stand trial; causā* (following a genitive), *on account (of), for the sake (of), for the pur-*

*pose (of); multis dē causis, for many reasons.*

**cautēs, -is, F.,** *reef, sharp rock.*

**caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, intr.,** *take care, be on one's guard.*

**Cavillōnum, -ī, N.,** *Cavillonum* (kav-il-ō'num), a town of the Haedui.

**cecidī, cecidī, see cadō, caedō.**

**cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, intr.,** *go from, go away, depart, retreat, II. 19; yield.*

**celer, celeris, celere, quick, rapid.**

**celeritās, -tātis, F. [celer],** *quickness, speed.*

**celeriter, adv. [celer],** *quickly.*

**cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,** *conceal, hide.*

**Celtae, -ārum, M. pl.,** the *Celts* (selts), I. 1; *see Introd. 22.*

**cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsum, tr.,** *estimate, be of opinion, think; w. senātus, decree; w. sententia, favor.*

**cēnsus, -ūs, M. [cēnseō],** *enumeration, census.*

**centum, indecl. adj.,** *hundred.*

**centuriō, -ōnis, M. [centuria],** *centurion; see Introd. 37.*

**cēpī, see capiō.**

**cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum, tr. (separate),** *distinguish, see, see plainly, perceive.*

**certāmen, -inis, N. [certō],** *contest.*

**certē, adv. [certus],** *certainly, at least.*

**certus, -a, -um, certain, sure, fixed, definite, established, regular, II. 22; trustworthy; cer-**

- tiōrem facere, *inform*; certior fierī, *be informed*.
- cervus, -ī, M., *stag*.
- cēterus, -a, -um, *the rest*; usually pl., *the rest, the others*.
- Ceutronēs, -um, M. pl., *the Ceutrones* (sū'trō-nēz), an Alpine tribe, east of the Allobroges, I. 10.
- cibāria, -ōrum, N. pl. [cibus], *food, provisions, molita cibāria, ground grain*.
- cibus, -ī, M., *food*.
- Cicerō, -ōnis, M., *Cicero* (sis'e-rō), name of a Roman family; Q. Tullius Cicero, one of Caesar's lieutenants, brother of the orator.
- Kimberius, -ī, M., *Kimberius* (sim-bē'ri-us), a leader of the Suebi, I. 37.
- Cimbri, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Cimbri* (sim'brī), a German tribe, who together with the Teutoni, overran Gaul and invaded Italy. They were defeated by Marius, 101 B.C., I. 33, etc.
- cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctum, tr., *surround*.
- cippus, -ī, M., *pointed column, post*.
- circinus, -ī, M. [circum], *pair of compasses*.
- circiter, adv., and prep. w. acc., *about*.
- circuitus, -ūs, M. [circumeō], (a going around), *roundabout way, circuit, circumference*.
- circum, prep. w. acc., *around, about*; as prefix, *around*.
- circumclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, clūsum [circum+claudō], tr., *encircle, surround*.
- circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum [circum+dō], tr., *put around, build around, surround*; circumdatus, part. as adj., *encompassing*, I. 38.
- circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [circum+dūcō], tr., *lead around, draw around*.
- circumeō, -īre, -iī, -itum [circum+eō], intr., *go around*; tr., *inspect, make the rounds of*.
- circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [circum+iaciō], tr., *throw around, station around*.
- circummūniō, -īre, -iī, -itum [circum+mūniō], tr., *fortify (around), protect*.
- circumplector, -plectī, -plexus sum [circum+plector], dep., *surround, inclose*.
- circumsistō, -sistere, -stetī (-stitī), — [circum+sistō], tr., *stand around, surround, rally around*.
- circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum [circum+veniō], tr., *come around, surround*.
- cis=citrā.
- citātus, -a, -um [citō, put in motion], *swift, with a swift current*, IV. 10.
- citerior, -ius, comp. adj. [citrā, App. 18], *nearer, hither*; see Gallia.
- citissimē, adv., sup. of citō, *very quickly*.
- citrā (or cis), adv., and prep. w. acc., *on this side (of)*.

**citrō**, adv., *hither*; see **ultrō**.

**cīvis**, -is, M., *citizen*.

**cīvitās**, -tātis, F. [**cīvis**], *citizenship, state, tribe, nation*.

**clam**, adv., *secretly*.

**clāmitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**clāmō**], tr., *cry out*.

**clāmor**, -ōris, M., *shouting, uproar*.

**classis**, -is, F., *fleet*.

**claudō**, *claudere*, **clausī**, **clausum**, tr., *close, shut*; **agmen claudere**, *bring up the rear*.

**clāvus**, -ī, M., *nail, bolt*.

**clēmētia**, -ae, F. [**clēmēns**, *mild*], *kindness, mildness*.

**cliēns**, -entis, M. [**clueō**, *hear, obey*], *follower, retainer*, I. 4; *subject allies*, I. 31, IV. 6.

**clientēla**, -ae, F. [**cliēns**], *dependency, vassalage*; see **dicō**.

**Cn.**, abbr. of *Gnaeus*.

**coacervō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**con + acervō**], tr., *heap up*.

**coāctus**, see **cōgō**.

**Cocosātēs**, -um, M. pl., *the Cocosates* (kok-ō-sā'tēz), a tribe in Aquitania.

**coēmō**, -ēmere, -ēmī, -ēmtum [**con + emō**], tr., *buy up, purchase*.

**coeō**, -ire, -ivī (-iī), -itum [**con + eō**], intr., *come together, unite*.

**coepl**, def. verb (App. 47), *began*; w. a passive complementary infinitive, **coeptus sum**, etc., is used.

**coērcēō**, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitum [**con + arceō**, *confine*], tr., *restrain*.

**cōgitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**con +**

**agitō**], tr., *consider* (thoroughly), *ponder, think, plan*.

**cognātiō**, -ōnis, F. [**cognātus**], *kinship*; pl., *kinsmen, families*.

**cognōscō**, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum [**con + gnōscō**], tr., *learn, ascertain*; perf., *have learned, hence, know*; plup., *knew*.

**cōgō**, *cōgere*, **coēgī**, **coāctum** [**con + agō**], tr., *drive together, collect, assemble; compel*.

**cohors**, **cohortis**, F., *cohort*, tenth part of a legion; see **Introd.** 28.

**cohortātiō**, -ōnis, F. [**cohortor**], *encouraging, encouragement*.

**cohortor**, -hortārī, -hortātus sum [**con + hortor**], dep., *encourage, exhort, urge*.

**colligō**, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum [**con + legō**], tr., *gather, collect, acquire*, VI. 12; **sē colligere**, *recover one's self, rally*.

**collis**, -is, M., *hill*.

**colō**, *colere*, **coluī**, **cultum**, tr., *till, cultivate; worship*, VI. 17.

**colōnia**, -ae, F. [**colō**], *colony*.

**color**, -ōris, M., *color*.

**combūrō**, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstum [**con + ūrō**, *burn*], tr., *burn up, consume*.

**commeātus**, -ūs, M. [**commeō**], *supplies, provisions*.

**commemorō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**con + memorō**], tr., *call to mind, mention, relate, state*, IV. 16.

**commendō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum

- [con+mandō], tr., *intrust, surrender.*
- commeō, commeāre, commeāvī, commeātum, intr., *go back and forth*; commeāre ad, *visit.*
- commilitō, -ōnis, M. [mīles], *fellow-soldier, comrade.*
- comminus, adv. [con+manus], *in close quarters, in a hand to hand contest.*
- committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [con+mittō], tr. (send together), *commit, permit, allow, intrust; do, perpetrate, cause; w. proelium, join, fight.*
- Commius, -ī, M., *Commius* (kom'i-us), a chief of the Atrebates.
- commodē, adv. [commodus], *conveniently, easily, fitly, properly, effectively.*
- commodum, -ī, N. [commodus], *advantage, profit, convenience.*
- commodus, -a, -um [com+modus], *suitable, fitting, advantageous.*
- commonefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum [commoneō + faciō], tr., *remind, admonish.*
- commoror, -ārī, -ātus sum [com+moror], dep., *delay, stay.*
- commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum [con+moveō], tr., *move, disturb; alarm, influence.*
- communīcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [commūnis], tr., *communicate, share, impart; put along (with), VI. 19.*
- commūniō, -mūnīre, -mūnīvī, -mūnītum [con+mūniō], tr., *fortify strongly.*
- commūnis, -e [con+mūnus], *common, in common, general, public; commūnis rēs, a matter of common interest.*
- commūtatiō, -ōnis, F. [commūtō], *change.*
- commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con+mūtō, change], tr., *change completely, exchange (for), VI. 22.*
1. comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con+parō], tr., *prepare, make ready, arrange; procure, obtain, gain.*
2. comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con+par, like], tr., *compare, I. 31, VI. 24.*
- compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum [com+pellō], tr., *drive together, drive, II. 23.*
- comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertum [con+pariō], tr., *learn, discover, ascertain.*
- complector, -plectī, -plexus sum [con+plectō, fold], dep., *embrace.*
- compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum [con+pleō, fill], tr., *fill up, fill; w. montem, cover.*
- complūrēs, -a (-ia) [com+plūrēs, App. 16], *several, many, many of, I. 52.*
- comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con+porto], tr., *bring together.*
- comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus [com+prehendō], tr., *seize, grasp, capture, arrest; catch, VI. 16.*

- con-, com-, co-**, prefix, *with, together, completely, thoroughly, strongly.*
- cōnātum**, -ī, N., cōnātus, -ūs, M. [cōnor], *trial, attempt, undertaking.*
- concēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [con+cēdō], tr. (make way), *yield, concede, make concession, grant, allow.*
- concidō**, -cidere, -cidī, — [con+cadō], intr., *fall down, fall.*
- concīdō**, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum [con+caedō], tr., *cut to pieces, kill; cut off, III. 9.*
- conciliō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [concilium], tr., *bring together, win over, secure, gain.*
- concilium**, -ī, N. [con+calō, call], *assembly, council, meeting.*
- concitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con+citō], tr., *rouse, stir up.*
- conclāmō**, -āre; -āvī, -ātum [con+clāmō], intr., *cry out, exclaim.*
- conclūdō**, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum [con+claudō], tr., *in-close, shut in, confine.*
- concurrō**, -currere, -currī (-currī), -cursum [con+currō], intr., *run together, rush, charge; gather, VI. 13; pass. impers., concurrī, to rush, II. 20; concursus est, they rushed, II. 33.*
- concursum**, -ūs, M. [concurrō], *running together, running to and fro, onset.*
- condiciō**, -ōnis, F. [con+dicō], *agreement, terms; condition, state.*
- condōnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con+dōnō], tr., *give, give up, remit; pardon, overlook.*
- Condrūsī**, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Condrusi (kon-drū'sī), a Belgian tribe, II. 4, IV. 6.*
- condūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [con+dūcō], tr., *bring together, hire, II. 1.*
- cōnferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [con+ferō], tr., *bring together, collect, gather; attribute, I. 40, l. 842; w. ager, I. 31, compare; w. diem, I. 40, l. 854, postpone; sē cōnferre, betake ones self, go.*
- cōnfertus**, -ā, -um [part. of cōnferciō, pack together], *crowded together, dense.*
- cōnfestim**, adv., *immediately, at once.*
- cōnficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [con+faciō], tr., *do thoroughly, accomplish, complete, finish; muster, II. 4; w. tabula, write; w. ratiō, keep (an account); w. vulneribus, exhaust, overcome; w. alūta, tan.*
- cōnfidō**, -fidere, -fīsus sum [con+fīdō, trust], semi-dep., *trust (fully), have confidence, be confident, rely upon; believe, II. 30.*
- cōnfigō**, -figere, -fīxī, -fīxum [con+fīgō], tr., *fasten together, brace.*
- cōnfirmātiō**, -ōnis, F. [cōnfirmō], *assurance.*

- cōnfirmō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [con+firmō], tr., *make firm, establish, assure, declare*; w. *profectionem*, *fix*; w. *animōs*, *encourage*.
- cōnfligō**, -fligere, -fixi, -fictum [con+fligō, *strike*], intr., *contend with, have a combat*.
- cōnfluēns**, -entis [cōnfluō], M., *confluence, junction*.
- concredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum [con+gradior], dep., *come together, meet, meet in strife, contend*; *concredi armis*, *fight*.
- congressus**, -ūs, M. [concredior], *meeting, encounter, engagement*.
- coniciō**, conicere, conieci, coniectum [con+iaciō], tr., *throw together, hurl, cast*; *put, place* (hurriedly), II. 16; *in fugam conicere*, *put to flight*.
- coniūctim**, adv. [coniungō], *jointly, in common*.
- coniungō**, -iungere, -iūnxi, -iūntum [con+iungō], tr., *join together, unite*; *sē coniungere*, *combine*.
- coniūrātiō**, -ōnis, F. [coniūrō], *conspiracy, league*, I. 2; *confederacy*.
- coniūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [con+iūrō], intr. (swear together), *form a league, conspire, combine*.
- conlātus**, see *cōnferō*.
- conlaudō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [con+laudō], tr., *praise highly*.
- conligō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [con+ligō, *bind*], tr., *bind together*.
- conlocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [con+locō], tr., *place (together), put, place, station, settle*; with or without *nūptum*, *give in marriage*; w. *rēs*, *arrange*, III. 4.
- conloquium**, -i, N. [con+loquor], *conference*.
- conloquor**, -loqui, -locūtus sum [con+loquor], dep. (speak together), *talk, converse, confer, hold a conference*.
- cōnor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *try, attempt*.
- conquīrō**, -quīrere, -quīsivī, -quīsītum [con+quaerō], tr., *search for; bring together, collect, gather*.
- cōnsanguineus**, -a, -um [sanguis, *blood*], *related by blood, kindred*; as noun, *kinsman*.
- cōnscendō**, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsus [con+scandō, *climb*], tr., *mount*; w. *nāvēs*, *go aboard, embark*.
- cōnsciscō**, -sciscere, -scivī, -scītum [con+sciscō, *decree*], tr., *decide, resolve*; *cōnsciscere sibi mortem*, *commit suicide*.
- cōnscius**, -a, -um [con+sciō], *knowing, conscious, aware*; *sibi cōnscius*, *aware*.
- cōnscrībō**, -scrībere, -scripsi, -scriptum [con+scribō], tr. (write together), *enroll, enlist*.
- cōnsecrātus**, -a, -um [part. of cōnsecrō], *sacred, consecrated*.
- cōnsecrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [sacer], tr., *consecrate*.
- cōnsector**, -ārī, -ātus sum [cōn-



- sequor**], dep., *follow eagerly, overtake.*
- cōsēnsus**, -ūs, M. [cōsentiō], *agreement, consent.*
- cōsentiō**, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsūm [con+sentiō], intr. (think alike), *agree, unite.*
- cōnsequor**, -sequī, -secūtus sum [con+sequor], dep., *follow up, pursue, overtake; secure, obtain, accomplish.*
- cōnservō**, -servāre, -servāvī, -servātum [con+servō], tr., *save, spare, protect; observe, respect*, III. 16.
- Cōnsidius**, -ī, M., *Considius* (kon-sid'i-us), an officer in the Roman army, I. 21, 22.
- cōnsidō**, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum [con+sīdō], intr. (sit down), *encamp, settle, halt; hold a session*, VI. 13; *take position*, VII. 89.
- cōnsilium**, -ī, N. [cōnsulō], *counsel, plan, purpose, design; council* (of war), I. 40, I. 806, III. 3; *prudence*, III. 5; *judgment*, III. 16, IV. 21; *conduct*, IV. 22.
- cōnsimilis**, -e [con+similis], *very like, quite like.*
- cōnsistō**, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum [con+sistō, place], intr., *stand, halt, take a stand; dwell, settle; w. nāvēs, ride at anchor; cōnsistere in, consist of, depend upon.*
- cōnsōlor**, -ārī, -ātus sum [con+sōlor, comfort], dep., *encourage, cheer, console.*
- cōnspectus**, -ūs, M. [cōnspiciō], *sight, view.*
- cōnspiciō**, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum [con+spiciō], tr., *see, espy, catch sight of.*
- cōnspicor**, -ārī, -ātus sum [cōnspiciō], dep., *catch sight of, see, perceive.*
- cōnspirō**, -āre, -āvī, ātum [con+spirō, breathe], intr., *combine, conspire.*
- cōnstanter**, adv. [cōnstāns], *uniformly, steadily, resolutely.*
- cōnstantia**, -ae, F. [cōnstāns], *firmness, steadfastness.*
- cōnsternō**, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum [con+sternō], tr., *cover.*
- cōnstitī**, see **cōnsistō** or **cōnstō**.
- cōnstituō**, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum [con+statuō], tr. and intr., *place, station, draw up, arrange; decide, decide upon, resolve, appoint, fix, agree upon; w. turris, set up, erect; w. nāvēs, anchor.*
- cōnstō**, -stāre, -stitī, -statum [con+stō], intr., *stand firm; cōnstat, impers., it is certain, evident, established, known.*
- cōnsuēscō**, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum [con+suēscō], intr., *become accustomed; in perf., be accustomed, be used.*
- cōnsuētūdō**, -inis, F. [cōnsuēscō], *custom, way, manner, mode of life; familiarity*, I. 47; *ex cōnsuētūdine, according to custom.*
- cōnsul**, -is, M., *consul.*

- cōsulātus**, -ūs, M. [cōsul], *consulship*.
- cōsulō**, -sulere, -sulūī, -sultum, tr. and intr., *deliberate, consult, deliberate upon, consider*.
- cōsultō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of cōsulō], intr., *deliberate, take counsel*.
- cōsultum**, -ī, N. [cōsulō], *decree, decision*.
- cōsūmō**, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, sūmptum [con+sūmō], tr., *use up, consume, spend, destroy*.
- cōnsurgō**, -surgere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum [con+surgō, rise], intr., *rise together, rise in a body*.
- contāgiō**, -ōnis, F. [tangō], *contact, association*.
- contegō**, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum [con+tegō], tr., *cover up*.
- contemptiō**, -ōnis, F. [contemnō], *a despising, scorn; in contemptiōnem venīre, be despised*.
- contemptus**, -ūs, M. [contemnō], *a despising, contempt; contemptuī est, is an object of contempt*, II. 30.
- contendō**, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum [con+tendō], intr., *strive, fight, contend, attempt*, IV. 17; *hasten, endeavor to go, press on*, I. 7; w. verbs of motion, *endeavor, hasten*; tr., *strive for*, I. 31, l. 586; impers., *there is fighting*, II. 9.
- contentiō**, -ōnis, F. [contendō], *struggle, conflict, contest*.
- contexō**, -texere, -texūī, -textum [con+texō, weave], tr., *weave together, join*, IV. 17.
- continēns**, -entis (abl. -ī), part. as adj., *unbroken, continuous*; as noun, *continent, i.e. mainland of Europe*.
- continenter**, adv., *continually*.
- contineō**, -tinēre, -tinūī, -tentum [con+teneō], tr., *hold together, bound* (geographically), *restrain, keep*; w. mōns, I. 38, *fill*; sē continēre, *remain*.
- contingō**, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum [con+tangō], tr. and intr., *touch, border on*; w. dat., *happen*.
- continuātiō**, -ōnis, F. [continuō], *continuation*.
- continuus**, -a, -um, *continuous, successive*, I. 48.
- contrā**, prep. w. acc., *against, opposite, contrary to*; adv., *against, in opposition*, II. 17; *contrā atque, otherwise than*.
- contrahō**, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctum [con+trahō], tr., *draw together, bring together*; w. exercitum, *mass*.
- contrārius**, -a, -um [contrā], *facing, opposite*.
- contrōversia**, -ae, F., *dispute, quarrel, controversy*.
- contulī**, see cōnferō.
- contumēlia**, -ae, F., *insult, disgrace; buffeting, violence*, III. 13.
- convallis**, -is, F., *valley*.
- conveniō**, -venīre, -vēmī, -ventum [con+veniō], tr. and intr., *come together, assemble*;

- meet*, I. 27; *impers.*, *be agreed upon*, I. 36, II. 19; *it behooves, it is necessary*, VII. 85.
- conventus**, -ūs, M., [con+veniō], *assembly, meeting*; *ad conventūs agendōs*, *to hold the courts* (provincial courts of justice).
- convertō**, -vertere, -vertī, -versum [con+vertō], *tr.*, *turn around, turn, change*; *conversa signa inferre*, *face about and advance*.
- convincō**, -vincere, -vici, -victum [con+vincō], *tr.*, *overcome, convict*; *prove clearly*, I. 40; *expose*.
- convocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con+vocō], *tr.*, *call together, summon*.
- coōrior**, -oriri, -ortus sum [con+orior], *dep.*, *arise*; *break out*, III. 7.
- cōpia**, -ae, F., *plenty, abundance, supply, number*; *pl.*, *forces, troops, resources*, I. 31; *wealth, supplies*, IV. 4.
- cōpiōsus**, -a, -um [cōpia], *well-supplied, rich*.
- cōpula**, -ae, F., *grappling-hook*.
- cor**, cordis, N., *heart*; *cordi esse*, *to be dear, pleasing*.
- cōram**, *adv.* [con+ōs, *face*], *(face to face), in person*.
- Coriosolitēs**, -um, M. pl. (*acc.*, -as), *the Coriosolites* (kō-ri-ō-sol'i-tēz), a Gallic tribe on the northwestern coast.
- cornū**, -ūs, N., *horn*; *wing* (of an army).
- corōna**, -ae, F., *crown, wreath*; *sub corōnā vendere*, *sell as slaves*.
- corpus**, -oris, N., *body*.
- cortex**, corticis, M. and F., *bark* (of a tree).
- Cōrus**, -ī, M., *the northwest wind*.
- cotidiānus**, -a, -um [diēs], *daily*.
- cotidiē**, *adv.* [quot+diēs], *every day, daily*.
- Cotta**, -ae, M., *Cotta*, see *Aurunculēius*.
- crassitūdō**, -inis, F. [crassus], *thickness*.
- Crassus**, -ī, M., *Crassus* (kras'us), a Roman family name. 1. *M. Licinius Crassus*, the triumvir, noted for his wealth, I. 21. 2. *P. Licinius Crassus*, son of 1, a lieutenant of Caesar, I. 52, II. 34, III. 7-9, 11, 21-27.
- crātēs**, -is, F., *wickerwork, hurdle; fascines* (a bundle of rods or brush used in filling trenches, etc.).
- crēber**, -bra, -brum, *numerous, frequent*.
- crēdō**, *crēdere*, *crēdidī*, *crēditum*, *tr.*, *believe, suppose*.
- cremō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, *burn, consume*; *ignī cremāre*, *burn to death*.
- creō**, *creāre*, *creāvī*, *creātum*, *tr.*, *create, elect*.
- Crēs**, *Crētis*, *acc. pl.*, *Crētās* (Greek ending), M., *a Cretan*, II. 7.
- crēscō**, *crēscere*, *crēvī*, *crētum*, *intr.*, *grow, increase*.

**Critognātus, -ī, M.**, *Critognatus* (krit-og-nā'tus), a chief of the Arverni.

**cruciātus, -ūs, M.** [**cruciō, torture**], *torture, suffering, punishment; summum in cruciātum venīre, suffer extreme torture.*

**crūdēlītās, -tātis, F.** [**crūdēlis**], *cruelty, tyranny.*

**crūdēlīter, adv.** [**crūdēlis**], *cruelly.*

**crūs, crūris, N.**, *leg.*

**cubile, -is, N.**, [**cubō, lie down**] (App. 7), *couch, bed, resting-place.*

**culmen, culminis, N.**, *summit, height.*

**culpa, -ae, F.**, *blame, fault; culpam cōferre, lay the blame on.*

**cultūra, -ae, F.** [**colō, till**], *cultivation, tilling.*

**cultus, -ūs, M.** [**colō**], *civilization, culture, manner of life; w. corporis, care.*

1. **cum**, prep. w. abl., *with*; written as an enclitic after a personal, reflexive, or relative pronoun.

2. **cum**, conj., *when, while, since, although*; see **primum**; **cum . . . tum**, *not only . . . but also.*

**cumulus, -ī, M.**, *heap.*

**cunctātiō, -ōnis, F.** [**cunctor**], *hesitation, delay.*

**cūnctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.**, *hesitate, delay.*

**cūnctus, -a, -um** [**coniūnctus**], *all (taken together).*

**cunīculus, -ī, M.** (burrowing

rabbit), *mine, underground passage.*

**cupidē, adv.** [**cupidus**], *eagerly.*

**cupidītās, -tātis, F.** [**cupidus**], *desire.*

**cupidus, -a, -um** [**cupiō**], *desirous (of), eager (for).*

**cupiō, cupere, cupivī, cupitum**, tr. and intr., *desire, long for; wish well (to), be well-disposed.*

**cūr, adv.** (interrog. and rel.), *why.*

**cūra, -ae, F.**, *care, attention; sibi cūrae esse, be one's care*, App. 69.

**cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [**cūra**], tr. and intr., *care for; w. gerundives, have (something done), see to, cause.* App. 164, c.

**currus, -ūs, M.** [**currō**], *chariot.*

**cursus, -ūs, M.** [**currō**], *running, speed, course, direction*, IV. 28; **māgnō cursū**, *at full speed*; see **incitō**.

**custōdia, -ae, F.**, *guard.*

**custōs, custōdis, M.**, *guard, keeper, watch, spy.*

## D

**D**, symbol for **quīgentī**.

**Dācī, -ōrum, M.** pl., *the Daci* (dā'sī), *Dacians*, inhabitants of Dacia, a Roman province north of the Danube.

**damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, tr., *find guilty, condemn, convict.*

**Dānuvius, -ī, M.**, *the Danube.*

**dē, prep.** w. abl., *down from,*

- from, concerning, about, of, for; w. vigiliā, in, during; as prefix, down, off, away; completely; not.*
- dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum** [dē + habeō], tr., *owe; w. inf., ought.*
- dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum** [dē + cēdō], intr., *go away, depart, withdraw, retire; die, VI. 19.*
- decem, indecl. adj., ten.**
- dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum** [dē + cernō], tr., *decide, determine; decree, II. 35.*
- dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [dē + certō, fight], tr. and intr. (fight out), *fight (a decisive battle), contend.*
- dēcessus, -ūs, M. [dēcēdō], departure; w. aestus, ebbing, III. 13.**
- dēcidō, -cidere, -cidī, — [dē + cadō], intr., fall down, fall.**
- decimus, -a, -um** [decem], *tenth.*
- Decimus, -ī, M., Decimus** (des'imus), *a Roman personal name.*
- dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum** [dē + capiō], tr., *deceive.*
- dēclārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [dē + clārō], tr., *make clear, reveal, declare.*
- dēclivis, -e** [dē + clivus, slope], *sloping; dēclivia et dēvexa, steep declivities.*
- dēclivitās, -tātis, F. [dēclivis], downward slope.**
- dēcērētum, -ī, N. [dēcernō], decision, decree.**
- decumānus, -a, -um** [decimus], *belonging to the tenth, decuman;*
- decumāna porta, rear gate, where the tenth cohort was stationed on guard.**
- decuriō, -ōnis, M. [decuria], decurion, commander of a decuria or squad of cavalry.**
- dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī (or -currī), -cursum** [dē + currō], intr., *run down.*
- dēdecus, -oris** [dē + decus, honor], *disgrace.*
- dēditicius, -a, -um** [dēdō], *surrendered, subject; mase. pl. as noun, captives, prisoners.*
- dēditio, -ōnis, F. [dēdō], surrender; in dēditōnem accipere, receive the surrender of.**
- dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum, tr., give up, yield, surrender, devote.**
- dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum** [dē + dūcō], tr., *lead away, withdraw, lead; reduce, II. 31.*
- dēfatīgātiō, -ōnis, F. [dēfatīgō], weariness.**
- dēfatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [dē + fatīgō, weary], *wear out tr., exhaust.*
- dēfectiō, -ōnis, F., [dē + faciō], revolt, defection.**
- dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsūm** [dē + fendō, strike], tr., *ward off, keep off; protect, defend.*
- dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, F. [dēfendō] defense.**
- dēfēnsor, -ōris, M. [dēfendō] defender; defense, IV. 17.**
- dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum** [dē + ferō], tr., *carry, bring; report,*

- II. 17, 19; *give to, bestow upon*, II. 4, V. 6.
- dēfessus, -a, -um, *worn out, weary, exhausted*.
- dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [dē+faciō] tr. and intr., *fail; revolt*, II. 14.
- dēfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum [dē+figō, *fasten*], tr., *fix, fasten, plant firmly*, IV. 17.
- dēfiniō, -ire, -ivī, -itum [dē+finiō], tr., *fix, set; define*.
- dēfōrmis, -e [dē, fōrma], *ill-shaped, deformed, unsightly*.
- dēfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum [dē+fugiō], tr., *avoid, shun*.
- dēiciō, dēicere, dēiēcī, dēiectum [dē+iaciō], tr., *throw down, cast down, drive down*, IV. 28; *dislodge; w. spē, disappoint; destroy*, IV. 17.
- dēiectus, -ūs, M. [dēiciō], *slope, descent; lateris dēiectūs, lateral slopes*, II. 8.
- deinceps, adv. [deinde, capiō], *one after another, in succession, without interruption*, III. 29.
- deinde, adv., *denoting order, then, secondly, furthermore*.
- dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *please, delight; pass., take pleasure (in)*.
- dēlēctus, part. of dēligō.
- dēlēō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, tr., *blot out, destroy*.
- dēliberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+libra, *balance*], tr. and intr. (*weigh well*), *deliberate, ponder, consider*.
1. dēligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+ligō, *bind*], tr., *tie, bind fast*.
2. dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum [dē+legō, *gather*], tr., *choose, select*.
- dēlitēscō, -litēscere, -lituī, —, intr., *hide away, conceal oneself*.
- dēmentia, -ae, F. [dēmēns], *jolly*.
- dēmetō, -metere, -messuī, -messum [dē+metō], tr., *cut down, reap, harvest*.
- dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+migrō], intr., *move away*.
- dēminuō, -minuere, -minuī, -minūtum [dē+minuō], tr., *lessen, diminish, reduce, take away*.
- dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, tr., *send down; w. caput, lower, bow*, I. 32.
- dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+mōnstrō, *show*], tr., *point out, explain; mention*, II. 1.
- dēmōror, -ārī, -ātus sum [dē+moror], dep., *retard, delay*.
- dēmum, adv., *at length, at last*.
- dēnegō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+negō], tr., *refuse, deny*.
- dēnī, -ae, -a, dist. num. adj., *ten each, ten at a time*.
- dēnique, adv., *at last, finally; at least*, II. 33.
- dēnsus, -a, -um, *dense, thick*.
- dēnūntiō, -nūntiāre, -nūntiāvī, -nūntiātum [dē+nūntiō], tr., *announce, declare*.
- dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum [dē+pellō], tr., *drive away, avert*.



dēperdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditum [dē+perdō], tr. (destroy), *lose*, I. 43.

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum [dē+pōnō], tr., *put down, lay aside, place*; w. *memoria*, *blot out*.

dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus sum [dē+populor], dep., *ravage, plunder, lay waste*.

dēportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [de+portō], tr., *carry off*.

dēprecātor, -ōris, M. [dēprecor], *mediator*.

dēprecor, -ārī, -ātus sum [dē+precor, *pray*], dep., *plead for*, II. 31; *call for quarter*, IV. 7; *petition against*, V. 6.

dērēctē, adv. [dērēctus, *straight*], *in a straight line*.

dērēctus, -a, -um [dērigō], *straight*; *laid lengthwise*, IV. 17.

dērogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+rogō], tr., *take away, withdraw, refuse*.

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus [dē+scandō], intr., *come down, descend*; *resort to*, VI. 16.

dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum [dē, *not*+serō, *join*], tr., *leave, forsake, abandon, desert*.

dēsertor, -ōris, M. [dēserō], *deserter*.

dēsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *desire*.

dēsidia, -ae, F. [dēses, *idle*], *idleness*.

dēsignō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+signō], tr., *indicate, mean*.

dēsiliō, -silire, -siluī, -sultum [saliō, *leap*], intr., *leap down, dismount*.

dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum [dē+sistō], intr. (stand away from), *desist, cease*.

dēspectus, -ūs, M. [dēspiciō] (a looking down upon), *view, prospect*.

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+spērō], intr., *be hopeless, despair*; tr., *despair of*, II. 24, IV. 15.

dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum [dē+specio, *look*], tr., *look down upon, despise*.

dēspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+spoliō], tr., *deprive, despoil*.

dēstinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *fasten*.

dēstitī, see dēsistō.

dēstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutum [dē+statuō], tr. (set down), *leave, abandon, desert*.

dēstringō, -stringere -strinxī, -strictum [dē+stringō, *draw*], tr., *unsheathe, draw*.

dēsum, dēesse, dēfui [dē+sum], intr., *be lacking, be wanting, fail*.

dēsuper, adv. [dē+super], *from above*.

dēterior, -ius, comp. adj., *worse, inferior*; *less valuable*, I. 36.

dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [dē+terreō], tr. (frighten off), *prevent, hinder*.

dētineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [dē+teneō], tr., *hold back, detain*, III. 12.

- dētrahō**, trahere, -trāxī, -trāctum [dē+trahō], tr., take away, remove, withdraw.
- dētrimentum**, -ī, N. [dēterō, rub away], loss, injury, disadvantage.
- dēturbō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+turbō], tr., drive off (in disorder).
- deus**, -ī, M. (App. 10), god.
- dēvehō**, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum [dē+vehō], tr., carry away; convey, bring.
- dēveniō**, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum [dē+veniō], intr., came down, came.
- dēvexa**, -ōrum, N. pl. [dēvehō], steep places.
- dēvōtus**, -ī, M. [dēvoveō], devoted follower.
- dēvoveō**, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtum [dē+voveō], tr., consecrate, devote.
- dexter**, -tra, -trum, right; dextra (sc. manus), right hand.
- dī**, pl. of deus.
- Diablintēs**, -um, M. pl., the *Diablintes* (dī-ā-blin'tēz), a tribe in northwestern Gaul.
- diciō**, -ōnis, F. [dicō], sway, dominion (cf. English "say").
- dicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., dedicate; w. sē, give up.
- dīcō**, dīcere, dixī, dictum, tr., say, speak, name; w. diēs, appoint; w. causa, plead; w. sententia, express; w. iūs, declare.
- dictiō**, -ōnis, F. [dicō], a speaking, pleading.
- dictum**, -ī, N. [dicō], word, command, statement; **dictō** audiēns, obedient.
- dīdūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [dī+dūcō], tr. (lead apart), divide, III. 23.
- diēs**, -ēī, M. or F. sing., M. pl., day, time, season; multō diē, late in the day; ad diem, on the appointed day, II. 5; in diēs, daily.
- differō**, -ferre, distulī, dilātum [dis+ferō], intr. (bear apart), differ.
- difficilis**, -e [dis+facilis], not easy, difficult.
- difficultās**, -tātis, F. [difficilis], difficulty.
- diffuō**, -fluere, -fluxī, — [dis+fluō], intr., flow (in different directions).
- diffundō**, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum [dis+fundō], tr., pour out, spread out, VI. 26.
- digitus**, -ī, M., finger.
- dīgnitās**, -tātis, F. [dīgnus], worth, dignity, reputation, rank, authority, honor.
- dī**, see deus.
- dīiūdicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dis+iūdicō], tr., decide.
- diligenter**, adv. [diligēns], carefully, faithfully, II. 5; parum diligenter, with little care, III. 18.
- diligentia**, -ae, F. [diligēns], care, faithfulness, earnestness.
- diligō**, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctum [dī+legō], tr. (choose out), esteem, love.
- dīmētior**, -mētīrī, -mēnsus sum [dis+mētior], dep., measure,

- measure off, lay out; dīmēnsus, measured, IV. 17.*
- dīmīcātiō, -ōnis, F. [dīmīcō],**  
*contest, struggle.*
- dīmīcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dis+micō, brandish],** intr., *fight, contend, struggle.*
- dīmidium, -ī, N. [dis+medius],**  
*half.*
- dīmīttō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [dī+mittō],** tr., *send in all directions, send away, dismiss, let go; lose, II. 21, VI. 12.*
- dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptum [dis+emō],** tr., *take apart, break up, I. 46.*
- dīripīō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum [dī+rapiō],** tr. (snatch away), *seize, plunder.*
- dis-, dī-,** prefix, *apart, away, not.*
- Dīs, Dītis, M.,** *Pluto, god of the lower world.*
- discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [dis+cēdō],** intr. (go apart), *depart, go away, go, retire, leave.*
- discessus, -ūs, M. [discēdō],** *departure, withdrawal.*
- disciplīna, -ae, F. [discō],** *training, discipline, system of doctrine, instruction.*
- disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum [dis+claudō],** tr., *separate, hold apart.*
- discō, discere, didicī, —, tr.,** *learn.*
- dīsīcīō, disicere, dīsīcī, disiectum [dis+iaciō],** tr., *throw apart, drive apart, scatter, rout.*
- dispergō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersum [dis+spargō],** tr., *disperse, scatter about.*
- dispersus, -a, -um, part. of dispergō.**
- dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum [dis+pōnō],** tr., *place at intervals, arrange, station.*
- disputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dis+putō],** tr., *debate, discuss.*
- dissēnsiō, -ōnis, F. [dissentiō],**  
*disagreement, discussion, strife.*
- dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dis+simulō],** tr., *conceal.*
- dissipō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,**  
*scatter, disperse.*
- distineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [dis+teneō],** tr., *keep apart.*
- distō, -stāre, —, — [dis+stō],** *stand apart, be apart.*
- distribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum [dis+tribuō],** tr., *distribute, assign.*
- dītissimus, -a, -um, see dīves.**
- diū, adv. (App. 19),** *long (in time), for a long time; quam diū, as long as.*
- diurnus, -a, -um [diēs],** *by day, during the day.*
- diūtius, comp. of diū.**
- diūturnitās, -tātis, F. [diūturnus],** *length, long continuance.*
- diūturnus, -a, -um [diū],** *long, lasting.*
- dīversus, -a, -um, part. and adj. [dīvertō],** *turned away, opposite, different; separate, II. 23; separated, II. 22.*
- dīves, dīvitis, adj. (comp., dītior, sup., dītissimus),** *rich.*

- Diviciācus**, -ī, M., *Diviciacus* (div-i-shi-ā'kus). 1. A druid and statesman of the Haedui, the most famous and most intelligent Gaul mentioned by Caesar, I. 3, 16, 18, etc., II. 5, 10, etc. 2. A king of the Suessiones, II. 4.
- Divicō**, -ōnis, M., *Divico* (div'i-kō), a leader of the Helvetii, I. 13, 14.
- dividō**, -videre, -visī, -vīsum, tr., *divide, separate.*
- divīnus**, -a, -um, *sacred, religious, divine.*
- dō**, dare, dedī, datum, tr., *give.*
- doceō**, -ēre, -uī, doctum, tr., *teach, instruct; declare, show.*
- doleō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, intr., *suffer, grieve.*
- dolor**, -ōris, M. [*doleō*], *pain, grief, distress, indignation, resentment; dolōre adficere, fill with discontent.*
- dolus**, -ī, M., *treachery, deceit.*
- domesticus**, -a, -um [*domus*], of *one's home, of one's own, his own, their own*, II. 10.
- domicilium**, -ī, N. [*domus*], *dwelling-place, home.*
- dominor**, -arī, -ātus sum [*dominus*], dep., *be master, rule.*
- dominus**, -ī, M., *master.*
- domus**, -ūs, F. (decl. App. 8), *house, home; abl., domō, from home; loc., domī, at home.*
- dōnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [*dōnum*], tr., *give, present, honor.*
- dōs**, dōtis, F. [*dō*], *dowry, marriage portion.*
- druidēs**, -um, M. pl., *the druids, priests and wise men of Gaul and Britain.*
- Dūbis**, Dūbis, M., *the Dubis* (dū'bis), river, modern *Doubs*, a tributary of the Arar, I. 38.
- dubitātiō**, -ōnis, F. [*dubitō*], *doubt, hesitation.*
- dubitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [*dubius*], intr., *hesitate* (usually w. complementary inf.; *doubt* (usually followed by *quīn*).
- dubius**, -a, -um, *doubtful, uncertain.*
- ducentī**, -ae, -a [*duo+centum*], *two hundred.*
- dūcō**, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, tr., *lead, bring, draw; put off*, I. 16; *consider, think*, I. 3, IV. 30; w. *bellum*, I. 38, *prolong.*
- dum**, conj., *until, as long as, while.*
- Dumnorīx**, -īgis, M., *Dumnorix* (dum'nō-riks), a prominent Haeduan, younger brother of Diviciacus, I. 3, 9, 18-20, V. 6, 7.
- duo**, duae, duo, num. adj. (App. 16), *two.*
- duodecim**, indecl. adj. [*duo+decem*], *twelve.*
- duodēnī**, -ae, -a, dist. num. adj., *twelve each, every twelve*, III. 12.
- duodēvigintī**, indecl. adj., *eighteen.*
- duplex**, duplicis (abl., -ī), *double, twofold.*
- duplicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [*duplex*], tr., *double.*

**dūritia**, -ae, F. [dūrus], *hardness, hardship.*

**dūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dūrus], tr., *harden; toughen, train.*

**dūrus**, -a, -um, *hard, difficult.*

**dux**, ducis, M. [dūcō], *leader, guide.*

## E

**ē** (before cons.), **ex** (before vowels or cons.), prep. w. abl., *out of, from, of; according to*, I. 52, *in accordance with; in, on, by; as* prefix, *out, forth, completely, up, off.*

**Eburōnēs**, -um, M. pl., *the Eburones* (eb-ū-rō'nēz), a Belgian tribe, II. 4, etc.

**Eburovīcēs**, -um, M. pl., *the Eburovices* (eb-ū-rō-vī'sēz), a division of the Aulerci.

**ēdiscō**, -discere, -didicī, — [ex+discō], tr., *learn by heart, commit to memory.*

**ēditus**, -a, -um [ēdō], *elevated, rising.*

**ēdō**, ēdere, ēdidī, ēditum [ex+dō], tr., *give forth, produce, show, make*, I. 31.

**ēdoceō**, -docēre, -docuī, -doctum [ex+doceō], tr., *make known, tell.*

**ēducō**, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum [ē+ducō], tr., *lead out, draw out.*

**effēmīnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ex, fēmīna, *woman*], tr., *weaken, enervate.*

**efferō**, efferre, extulī, ēlātum [ex+ferō], tr., *bear out, take*

*away, carry along; in vulgus efferre, spread abroad among, disclose to.*

**efficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [ex+faciō], tr. (make out), *bring about, cause; complete, construct, accomplish; form*, I. 38, IV. 10; *cover*, IV. 35; *produce*, V. 14.

**effugiō**, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum [ex+fugiō], tr., *escape.*

**egeō**, egēre, eguī, —, intr., *want, need.*

**egestās**, -tātis, F. [egēns], *poverty, want.*

**ēgī**, see agō.

**ego**, meī (App. 21), *I.*

**ēgredior**, -gredī, -gressus sum [ex+gradior], dep., *go out, march out; (ē) nāvī* (nāvibus) *ēgredī, disembark.*

**ēgregiē**, adv. [ēgregius], *excellently, remarkably well.*

**ēgregius**, -a, -um [ex+grex, *herd, crowd*], *uncommon, extraordinary, distinguished.*

**ēiciō**, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectum [ex+iaciō], tr., *cast out, drive out; sē ēicere, rush out.*

**ēlātus**, see efferō.

**elephantus**, -ī, M., *elephant.*

**ēligō**, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum [e+legō], tr., *select, choose; ēlēctus*, II. 4, *chosen, picked.*

**Elusātēs**, -um, pl., *the Elusates* (el-ū-sā'tēz), an Aquitanian tribe.

**ēmigrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ē+migrō], intr., *move, emigrate.*

**ēmittō**, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [ē+mittō], tr., *send out, let*

- go, discharge, hurl, throw aside.*
- emō, emere, ēmi, ēmptum, tr. buy.**
- ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum [ē + nāscor], dep., grow out.**
- enim, conj. (App. 171, e), for, in fact, II. 17.**
- ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ē + nūntiō], tr. (tell out), report.**
1. **eō, ire, īvī (ii), itum, intr., go, march, proceed.**
2. **eō, adv. [is], to that place, thither; there, in that place; on this account.**
- eōdem, adv. [Idem], to the same place, to the same thing.**
- ephippiātus, -a, -um [ephippium], using saddles.**
- ephippium, -ī, N. [ἐπί, upon, ἵππος, horse], saddle.**
- epulum, -ī, N., epulae, -ārum, F., feast, banquet.**
- eques, equitis, M. [equus], horse-man; pl., cavalry; also, a knight, in Rome or Gaul.**
- equester, equestris, equestre [eques], of a horseman, of cavalry, cavalry.**
- equitātus, -ūs, M. [eques], cavalry.**
- equus, equī, M., horse; ex equīs, from horseback; ad equum rescribere, enroll among the knights (or, among the cavalry).**
- Eratosthenēs, -is, M., Eratosthenes (er-ā-tos'thē-nēs), a famous scholar of Alexandria, third century, B.C.**
- ērēctus, -a, -um [ērigō], part. as adj., high.**
- ergō, adv., then, therefore.**
- ērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum [ex+regō], tr., set up, raise, raise up.**
- ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum [ē+rapiō, seize], tr., snatch away, take away, wrest, rescue; sē ēripere, escape, I. 4.**
- ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum [ex+rumpō], tr. and intr., break forth, rush forth.**
- ēruptiō, -ōnis, F. [ērumpō], sudden rush, sortie, sally.**
- essedā, -ae, F., or essedum, -ī, N., war-chariot, of the Britons.**
- essedārius, -ī, M. [essedā], chariot-fighter, i.e. one fighting from a chariot.**
- Esuvii, -ōrum, M. pl., the Esuvii (ē-sū'vi-ī), a Gallic tribe on the northwestern coast.**
- et, conj., and; et . . . et, both . . . and.**
- etiam, conj., and adv., and also, also, even.**
- etsī, conj. [et+sī], although.**
- euntis, etc., see iēns, part. of eō.**
- ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum [ex+vādō], intr., escape.**
- ēvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum [ē+vellō], tr., pull out.**
- ēveniō, -venire, -vērī, -ventum [ē+veniō], intr. (come out), result.**
- eventus, -ūs, M. [ēveniō], outcome, result, issue, III. 3; fate, IV. 31.**
- ēvocātus, -ī, M., part. as noun [ēvocō], reenlisted veteran, i.e. one who reenlists after completing his term of service.**



- ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [ē+  
vocō], tr., *call out, summon.*
- ēvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [ē+  
volō], intr. (fly out), *rush  
forth.*
- ex**, see **ē.**
- exāctus**, see **exigō.**
- exagitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [ex+  
agitō], tr., *harass, disturb.*
- exāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [exā-  
men, tongue of a balance], tr.,  
*weigh.*
- exanimātus, -a, -um** [part. of  
exanimō], *out of breath, wearied,  
weakened.*
- exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [ex+  
anima], tr. (deprive of  
breath), *kill.*
- exaudiō, -audīre, -audīvī, -audīt-  
um** [ex+audiō], tr., *overhear.*
- excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum**  
[ex+cēdō], intr., *go out, de-  
part, withdraw, retire.*
- excellō, -cellere, -celluī, -celsum**,  
intr., *be eminent, surpass,  
excel.*
- excelsus, -a, -um** [excellō], *high.*
- excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum**  
[ex+capiō], tr., *take from,  
receive; w. impetus, meet; w.  
tēla, pick up; w. aestus, etc.,  
withstand; catch, VI. 28.*
- excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [ex+  
citō], tr., *arouse, incite, stir;  
raise, set up, III., 14.*
- excruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, tr.,  
*torture.*
- excursiō, -ōnis, F. [excurrō]** (a  
running out), *sortie, sally.*
- excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [ex+  
causa], tr., *excuse.*
- exemplum, -ī, N. [eximō, take  
out]** (sample), *precedent, ex-  
ample.*
- exeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum** [ex+  
eō], intr., *go out.*
- exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum** [ex+  
arceō, restrain], tr., *train,  
drill.*
- exercitātiō, -ōnis, F. [exerceō],**  
*practice, training.*
- exercitātus, -a, -um** [exercitō],  
*trained.*
- exercitus, -ūs, M. [exerceō]** (a  
trained body of men), *army;  
the infantry.*
- exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum** [ex+  
agō], tr., *complete, finish,  
spend.*
- exiguitās, -tātis, F. [exiguus,**  
*scanty], scantiness, shortness,*  
II. 21; *small number, scarcity,*  
IV. 1; *small size, IV. 30.*
- exiguus, -a, -um** [exigō], *small,*  
*limited.*
- eximius, -a, -um** [eximō], *ex-  
traordinary, excellent.*
- existimātiō, -ōnis, F. [existimō],**  
*judgment, opinion, regard.*
- existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [ex+  
aestimō, value], tr., *estimate,  
judge, consider; suppose,  
think.*
- exitus, -ūs, M. [exeō], outcome,**  
*result; end, conclusion.*
- expeditus, -a, -um**, part. as adj.  
[expediō, disentangle], *unin-  
cumbed, free; ready, IV.*  
33; *w. iter, free from obstacles,*  
*practicable; w. legiōnēs, with-  
out baggage.*
- expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum**

- [*ex+pellō*], tr., *drive out, remove*.
- experior*, -*perīrī*, -*pertus sum*, dep., *try, test, experience*; w. *eventus*, *await*, III. 3.
- expleō*, -*plēre*, -*plēvī*, -*plētum* [*ex+pleō*, *fill*], tr., *fill up*.
- explōrātor*, -*ōris*, M. [*explōrō*], *scout*.
- explōrātus*, -*a*, -*um*, part. as adj. [*explōrō*], *assured*.
- explōrō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum* [*ex+plōrō*], tr., *investigate, find out*.
- expōnō*, -*pōnere*, -*posuī*, -*positum* [*ex+pōnō*], tr., *set forth, display*, IV. 23; pass., *disembark*, IV. 37.
- exportō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum* [*ex+portō*], tr., *carry out, carry away*.
- exprimō*, -*primere*, -*pressī*, -*pressum* [*ex+premō*], tr., *force out, wrest, extort*.
- expūgnō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum* [*ex+pūgnō*], tr., *take by storm, capture*.
- exquīrō*, -*quīrere*, -*quīsivī*, -*quīsītum* [*ex+quaerō*], tr., *search out, inquire into, ascertain*, I. 41; *ask for*.
- exsequor*, -*sequī*, -*secūtus sum* [*ex+sequor*], dep., *follow out, follow up, enforce, execute*.
- existō*, -*sistere*, -*stitī*, — [*ex+sistō*], intr. (stand forth), *arise; protrude*.
- expectō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum* [*ex+spectō*], tr. and intr. (look out for), *wait for, await, wait to see expect; wait*.
- exspoliō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum* [*ex+spoliō*], tr., *deprive, rob*.
- exstruō*, -*struere*, -*strūxī*, -*strūctum* [*ex+struō*, *pile*], tr., *heap up, pile up, build up, raise*.
- exterior*, -*ius* (comp. of *exterus*, App. 18), *outer, outside, exterior*.
- exterreō*, -*terrēre*, -*terruī*, -*territum* [*ex+terreō*], tr., *frighten, alarm*.
- extimēscō*, -*timēscerē*, -*timuī*, — [*ex+timēscō*], tr., *dread*.
- extrā*, prep. w. acc., *outside of, beyond*.
- extrēmus*, -*a*, -*um* [*exterus*, App. 18], *outermost, farthest, extreme, last; the end of*, II. 8, III. 12; *ad extrēmum*, *as a last resort*, III. 3; *at last*, IV. 4.
- extrūdō*, -*trūdere*, -*trūsī*, -*trūsum* [*ex+trūdō*], tr. (thrust out), *shut out*, III. 12.
- exuō*, -*uere*, -*uī*, -*ūtum*, tr., *deprive, strip*.
- exūrō*, -*ūrere*, -*ussī*, -*ūstum* [*ex+ūrō*, *burn*], tr., *burn up*.

## F

- Fabius*, -*i*, M., *Fabius* (fā'bi-us), name of a Roman gens.
1. *Quintus Fabius Maximus*, conqueror of the Allobroges and Arverni, 121 B.C., I. 45.
  2. *Gaius Fabius*, a lieutenant of Caesar, VII. 90.
- facile*, adv. [*facilis*], *easily*.
- facilis*, -*e* [*faciō*], *easy* (comparison, App. 17).

- facinus, facinoris**, N. [faciō], (action, deed), *misdeed, crime*.  
**faciō, facere, fēcī, factum**, tr., *make, do, cause*; w. **proelium**, *fight*; w. **cōpiam**, *furnish*, I. 28; **iter facere**, *march*.  
**factiō, -ōnis**, F. [faciō], *faction, party*.  
**factum, -ī**, N. [faciō], *action, deed*.  
**facultās, -tātis**, F. [faciō], *opportunity (of doing), means, supply*; pl., *resources*.  
**fāgus, -ī**, F., *beech-tree*.  
**fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsum**, tr., *deceive*; **fallendō**, *by deception*.  
**falx, falcis**, F., *sickle*; *hook*, used in pulling down walls.  
**fāma, -ae**, F., *report, fame, reputation*.  
**famēs, famis**, F., *hunger*.  
**familia, -ae**, F., *household, vas-*  
*sals*, I. 4; *family*; see **māter**.  
**familiāris, -e** [familia], *belong-*  
*ing to the household, private*; as  
 noun, *intimate friend*; **rēs**  
**familiāris**, *private property*.  
**fās**, indecl. noun, N., *the will of*  
*the gods, right (in the sight of*  
*the gods)*.  
**fastīgātē**, adv. [fastīgātus],  
*sloping*.  
**fastīgātus, -a, -um**, part. as adj.  
 [fastīgō], *sloping, inclined*.  
**fastigium, -ī**, N. (peak), *slope,*  
*elevation*.  
**fātum, -ī**, N. [for, fātus, speak],  
 (that which is spoken), *fate*.  
**faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum**, intr.,  
*favor*.  
**fēlicitās, -tātis**, F. [fēlīx], *good*  
*fortune, success*.  
**fēliciter**, adv. [fēlīx], *success-*  
*fully, favorably*.  
**fēmina, -ae**, F., *woman; female*  
 (of animals).  
**fera, -ae**, F., *wild beast*.  
**ferāx, ferācis**, adj. [ferō], *fer-*  
*tile*.  
**ferē**, adv. (generally following  
 the word it modifies), *almost,*  
*nearly, about; usually, gener-*  
*ally*, III. 12.  
**ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum** (App. 45),  
 tr., *bear, carry, bring, offer;*  
*call*, VI. 17; *endure*; **feren-**  
**dus**, I. 33, *endurable*; w.  
**cōnsuētūdō, opīniō, be**; w.  
**laus, receive; signa ferre,**  
*advance, march, move*; pass.,  
*rush*, II. 24; *flow*, IV. 10.  
**ferreus, -a, -um** [ferrum], *of*  
*iron, iron (adj.)*.  
**ferrum, -ī**, N., *iron*.  
**fertilis, -e** [ferō], *fertile*.  
**fertilitās, -tātis**, F. [fertilis],  
*fertility*.  
**ferus, -a, -um**, *wild, savage,*  
*warlike*.  
**fībula, -ae**, F., *clasp, brace*, IV.  
 17.  
**fictus, -a, -um**, part. of **fingō**.  
**fidēlis, -e** [fidēs], *faithful*.  
**fidēs, fideī**, F., *faith, confidence,*  
*protection, pledge; good faith,*  
*faithfulness, trustworthiness;*  
*loyalty*; **per fidem**, I. 46, *in*  
*violation of good faith,*  
*treacherously*; **in fidem re-**  
**cipere**, *receive under (his)*  
*protection*.

**figūra**, -ae, F., *shape, form.*

**filia**, -ae, F., *daughter.*

**filius**, -i, M., *son.*

**figō**, **figere**, **fixī**, **fixtum**, tr.,  
*form, make, assume, feign*, I.  
39; *invent*, IV. 5.

**finiō**, -ire, -ivī, -itum [finis], tr.,  
*limit, bound; measure*, VI.  
18.

**finis**, -is, M., *end, boundary*; pl.  
*territory, country, boundaries.*

**finitimus**, -a, -um [finis], *bordering on, adjoining, neighboring*; **finitimī**, as noun, *neighbors.*

**fiō**, **fieri**, **factus sum**, irr. passive of **faciō** (App. 43), *be made, be done; arise, occur*; *impers., it happens, it comes about, the result is.*

**firmiter**, adv. [firmus], *firmly.*

**firmitūdō**, -inis, F. [firmus],  
*strength, firmness.*

**firmus**, -a, -um, *strong, firm.*

**fistūca**, -ae, F., *pile-driver, rammer.*

**Flaccus**, -i, M., *Flaccus* (flak'us), name of a Roman family; *Gaius Valerius Flaccus*, governor of the province of Gaul, 83 B.C., I. 47.

**flāgitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,  
*demand.*

**flamma**, -ae, F., *flame, fire.*

**flectō**, **flectere**, **flexī**, **flexum**, tr.,  
*turn aside, guide; sē flectere, bend, wind.*

**fleō**, **flēre**, **flēvī**, **flētum**, intr.,  
*weep.*

**flētus**, -ūs, M. [fleō], *weeping, lamentation.*

**flō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr.,  
*blow.*

**flōrēns**, -entis, adj. (blooming),  
*flourishing, prosperous.*

**fluctus**, -ūs, M., *wave.*

**flūmen**, **flūminis**, N. [fluō],  
*river.*

**fluō**, **fluere**, **fluxī**, **fluxum**, intr.,  
*flow.*

**fore** = **futūrus** (-a, -um) **esse.**

**fōrma**, -ae, F., *form, shape.*

**fors**, **fortis**, F., *chance; forte*,  
abl. used as adv., *by chance, perhaps.*

**fortis**, -e, *strong, brave.*

**fortiter**, adv. [fortis], *bravely.*

**fortitūdō**, -inis, F. [fortis],  
*bravery.*

**fortūna**, -ae, F., *chance, fortune, good fortune, lot*; pl., *property, possessions, chances of success*, III. 12.

**fossa**, -ae, F. [fodiō, dig], *ditch, trench.*

**fovea**, -ae, F., *pit, pitfall.*

**frangō**, -ere, **frēgī**, **fractum**, tr.,  
*break, crush, subdue*, I. 31;  
*shatter*, IV. 29.

**frāter**, **frātris**, M., *brother.*

**frāternus**, -a, -um [frāter],  
*brotherly, fraternal*; **frāternum**  
**nōmen**, *name of brothers.*

**fremitus**, -ūs, M. [fremō, roar],  
*din, loud noise, uproar.*

**frequēns**, -entis, adj., *in large numbers.*

**frēvus**, -a, -um, *relying on.*

**frigidus**, -a, -um [frigeō, be cold], *cold.*

**frigus**, -oris, N., *cold, cold weather*; pl., *cold seasons.*

**frōns, frontis**, F., *forehead, front*;  
in *frontem*, *ā fronte*, in *front*.

**frūctuōsus**, -a, -um [**frūctus**],  
*fruitful, productive*.

**frūctus**, -ūs, M. [**fruor**], *enjoy-*  
*ment; fruit, income, profit*,  
VI. 19, *advantage*, VII. 86.

**frūgēs**, -um, F. pl. [**fruor**],  
*crops, field products*.

**frūmentārius**, -a, -um [**frūmen-**  
**tum**], *abounding in grain,*  
*fruitful, pertaining to grain*;  
*rēs frūmentāria*, *supplies*.

**frūmentor**, -ārī, -ātus sum [**frū-**  
**mentum**], dep., *procure grain,*  
*forage*.

**frūmentum**, -ī, N., *grain*; pl.,  
*crops (standing grain)*.

**fruor**, **frui**, **frūctus sum**, dep.,  
*enjoy*.

**frustrā**, adv., *in vain, without*  
*effect*, III. 4.

**fuga**, -ae, F., *flight*; **fugā sē**  
**recipere**, *flee*; in **fugam dare**,  
*put to flight*.

**fugiō**, **fugere**, **fūgī**, **fugitum**  
[**fuga**], intr., *flee*.

**fugitivus**, -ī, M. [**fugiō**], *de-*  
*serter, fugitive; runaway slave*,  
I. 23.

**fūmus**, -ī, M., *smoke*.

**funda**, -ae, F., *sling*.

**funditor**, -ōris, M. [**funda**],  
*slinger*; see *Introd.* 29.

**fundō**, **fundere**, **fūdī**, **fūsum**, tr.,  
*pour out, scatter, put to flight*,  
III. 6.

**fūnebris**, -e [**fūnus**], *of a funeral*;  
pl. as noun, *funeral rites*.

**fūnis**, -is, M., *rope, cable*.

**fūnus**, **fūneris**, N., *funeral*.

**furor**, -ōris, M., *madness, rage,*  
*frenzy*.

**fūrtum**, -ī, N. [**fūr**, *thief*], *theft*.

## G

**Gabīnius**, -ī, M., *Gabinus* (ga-  
bin'i-us), name of a Roman  
gens; *Aulus*, consul, 58 B.C.  
I. 6.

**gaesum**, -ī, N., *javelin (of the*  
*Gauls)*.

**Gāius**, **Gāī**, **Gaiō**, etc., M.,  
*Gaius* (gā'yus), a Roman  
personal name, abbr. *C*.

**Galba**, -ae, M., *Galba* (gal'ba).  
1. King of the Suessiones,  
II. 4. 2. *Servius Sulpicius*  
*Galba*, a lieutenant of Caesar,  
III. 1-6.

**galea**, -ae, F., *helmet*.

**Gallī**, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Gauls*,  
*inhabitants of Gallia*; see  
*Introd.* 22-25.

**Gallia**, -ae, F., *Gaul* (gâl);  
*Gallia Cisalpīna* or *Citerior*,  
extending east and south of  
the Alps to the Apennines,  
now northern Italy, the valley  
of the Po, I. 24, etc.; *Gallia*  
*Trānsalpīna*, or *Uterior*, ex-  
tending west of the Alps and  
the Rhine to the Atlantic, I.  
7, etc.; see *Introd.* 14.

**Gallicus**, -a, -um [**Gallus**], *Gallic*.  
**gallīna**, -ae, F., *hen*.

**Gallus**, -a, -um, *Gallic*; see  
*Trebius*.

**Garumna**, -ae, M., *the Garonne*  
(gā-ron'), a river of south-  
western Gaul, I. 1.

**Garumnī, -ōrum, M.**, *the Garumni* (ga-rum'nī), an Aquitanian tribe.

**Gatēs, -ium, M. pl.**, *the Gates* (gā'tez), an Aquitanian tribe.

**gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum**, semi-dep., *rejoice, be glad*.

**Genāva, -ae, F.**, *Geneva* (je-nē'va), a town of the Allobroges, I. 6, 7.

**generātim, adv.** [genus], *by tribes*.

**gēns, gentis, F.**, *tribe, race, nation*.

**genus, generis, N.**, *birth, race, family; kind, class*, IV. 24; *method*.

**Germānī, -ōrum, M. pl.**, *the Germans*; see *Intro.* 26.

**Germānia, -ae, F.**, *Germany*, IV. 4, V. 13, VI. 11, etc.

**Germānicus, -a, -um, German**.

**Germānus, -a, -um, German**; masc. as noun, *a German*.

**gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, tr.**, *do, carry on, wage; pass., be carried on, be going on, happen*.

**gladius, -i, M.**, *sword*; see *Intro.* 41.

**glāns, glandis, F.**, *acorn; bullet* (of lead).

**glōria, -ae, F.**, *fame, renown, reputation, glory*.

**glōrior, -ārī, -ātus sum** [glōria], dep., *boast, glory*.

**Gnaeus, -i, M.**, *Gnaeus* (nē'us), a Roman personal name, abbr. *Cn.*

**Graecus, -a, -um, Greek, Grecian**; masc. pl. as noun, *the Greeks*.

**Grāiocelī, -ōrum, M. pl.**, *the Graioceli* (gra-yō'se-lī), an Alpine tribe, I. 10.

**grandis, -e, large, prominent**.

**grātia, -ae, F.** [grātus], *favor, good-will, influence; thanks, gratitude; grātiā referre, render thanks, make a grateful return; grātiās agere, thank*, I. 41.

**grātulātiō, -ōnis, F.** [grātulor], *expression of joy, congratulation; joy*, I. 53.

**grātulor, -ārī, -ātus sum** [grātus], dep., *congratulate*.

**grātus, -a, -um, pleasing, agreeable**.

**gravis, -e, heavy, hard, difficult; serious, severe; graviōris aetātis, of more advanced age**.

**gravitās, -tātis, F.** [gravis], *importance, influence, power*.

**graviter, adv.** [gravis], *heavily, severely, seriously; graviter ferre, be annoyed (at), be vexed (at); w. premere, hard*.

**gravō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [gravis], tr., *make heavy; pass., be reluctant, object*.

**gubernātor, -ōris, M.**, *pilot*.

**gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.**, *taste*.

## H

**habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, tr.**, *have, hold, consider, regard; w. ōrātiō, deliver, make; see satis*.

**Haeduī, -ōrum, M. pl.**, *the Haedui* (hed'ū-i), *Haeduians*, a Gallic tribe west of the



- Sequani, friendly to Caesar until 52 B.C.
- Haeduus**, -a, -um, of the *Haedui*, *Haeduan*; masc. as noun, a *Haeduan*.
- harpagō**, -ōnis, M., *grappling-hook*.
- Harūdēs**, -um, M. pl., the *Harudes* (ha-rō'dēz), a tribe of Germans, allies of Ariovistus, I. 31, 37, 51.
- Helvētia**, -ae, F., *Helvetia* (hel-vē'shiā), now Switzerland.
- Helvētiī**, -ōrum, M. pl., the *Helvetii* (hel-vē-shi-ī), *Helvetians*, a Gallic tribe inhabiting Helvetia.
- Helvētius**, -a, -um, of the *Helvetii*, *Helvetian*.
- Hercynius**, -a, -um, *Hercynian* (her-sin'i-an); *Hercynia silva*, a great forest of southern Germany.
- hērēditās**, -tātis, F. [hērēs, *heir*], *inheritance*.
- Hibernia**, -ae, F., *Ireland*.
- hībernus**, -a, -um [hiems], of *winter*; *hīberna*, -ōrum, N. pl. as noun (sc. *castra*), *winter-quarters*.
- hīc**, *haec*, *hōc*, dem. pron., *this*, *the following*, *such*; *he*, *she*, *it*; pl., *these*, *they*.
- hic**, adv., *here*, IV. 19.
- hiemō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [hiems], *winter*, *pass the winter*; impers. in pass. IV. 29.
- hiems**, *hiemis*, F., *winter*; in *hiemem*, for the *winter*, IV. 29; *storm*, *stormy season*.
- hinc**, adv., *hence*, *from this place*.
- Hispania**, -ae, F., *Spain*.
- homō**, *hominis*, M. or F. (human being), *man*.
- honestus**, -a, -um [honor], *regarded with honor*, *honored*, *distinguished*, *worthy*.
- honor** (or *honōs*), *honōris*, M., *honor*, *respect*; *honōris causā*, *out of respect* (for).
- honōrificus**, -a, -um [honor + faciō], *honorablē*.
- hōra**, -ae, F., *hour*, one twelfth of the time from sunrise to sunset, varying with the time of year.
- horreō**, *horrēre*, *horruī*, —, tr., *dread*, *shudder at*.
- horribilis**, -e [horreō + bilis], *terrible*, *dreadful*.
- hortor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *urge*, *encourage*, *exhort*; *induce*.
- hospes**, *hospitis*, M., *guest-friend*, *guest*, *friend* (bound by ties of hospitality).
- hospitium**, -ī, N. [hospes], *hospitality*; *alliance*, I. 31; *friendship*, I. 47; a sacred alliance between states or individuals, involving certain obligations and honors; hereditary in the case of individuals. See Smith's "Dict. of Greek and Roman Antiquities."
- hostis**, -is, M. (stranger), *enemy* (of the state); pl., *the enemy*.
- hūc**, adv., *to this place*, *hither*;

to this number, IV. 22;  
against these, VI. 27.

hūmānitās, -tātis, F. [hū-  
mānus], refinement.

hūmānus, -a, -um [homō], re-  
fined, civilized.

humilis, -e [humus, ground],  
low; weak, humble; comp.,  
less important, IV. 3; weaker,  
VI. 22.

## I

I, symbol for ūnus.

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, —, intr.,  
lie, lie dead, II. 27.

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, tr.,  
throw, cast; w. agger, throw  
up, construct.

iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of  
iaciō], tr., (throw often),  
throw, toss about; discuss, I.  
18.

iactūra, -ae, F. [iaciō] (a  
throwing away), loss; con-  
cession, sacrifice, VI. 12.

iam, adv., w. pres. tense, by  
this time, now; w. past tense,  
already, at length, now; w.  
fut. tense, presently; w. a  
negative, longer.

ibi, adv., there, in that place.

Iccius, -I, M., Iccius (ik'shi-us),  
a leader of the Remi, II. 3,  
6.

ictus, -ūs, M. [icō, strike], stroke,  
blow, thrust.

Īd., see Īdūs.

idem, eadem, idem, dem. pron.  
[is] (App. 23), the same.

identidem, adv. [idem+et+  
idem], again and again, re-  
peatedly.

idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, con-  
venient, fit.

Īdūs, -uum, F., the Ides (īdz),  
the fifteenth day of March,  
May, July, and October,  
thirteenth of other months,  
I. 7.

iēns, gen. euntis, pres. part. of  
eō, go.

ignis, -is, M., fire.

ignōminia, -ae, F. [in+nōmen],  
disgrace, dishonor.

ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., not  
to know, be ignorant of; pass.,  
be unnoticed.

ignōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnō-  
tum [in+(g)nōscō], intr. (not  
to know), pardon.

ignōtus, -a, -um, part. as adj.  
[ignōscō], unknown.

ille, illa, illud, dem. pron.  
(App. 23), that (yonder), he,  
she, it; pl., those, they.

illīc, adv. [ille], there, in that  
place.

illō, adv. [ille], to that place,  
there.

Īllyricum, -I, N., Illyricum  
(i-lir'i-kum), a country on  
the eastern coast of the  
Adriatic, one of Caesar's  
provinces, II. 35: see Introd.  
14.

imbēcillitās, -tātis, F. [imbēcil-  
lus], weakness.

imber, imbris, M., rain, rain-  
storm.

immānis, -e, enormous, huge.

immittō, -mittere, -misi, -mis-  
sum [in+mittō], tr., let down,  
put upon, place, hurl, V. 44.

**immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [in+  
mola], tr. (sprinkle w. sacri-  
ficial meal), *sacrifice*.

**immortālis, -e** [in+mortālis],  
*immortal*.

**immūnitās, -tātis, F.** [immūnis],  
*freedom* (from public bur-  
dens), *immunity*.

**impedimentum, -ī, N.** [impediō],  
*hindrance, impediment*; pl.,  
*baggage, baggage-train*.

**impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum** [in+  
pēs], tr., *entangle, hinder,*  
*interfere with, impede, in-*  
*cumber, obstruct, make diffi-*  
*cult*, II. 22.

**impeditus, -a, -um, part. as**  
adj. [impediō], *entangled,*  
*hindered, impeded, incum-*  
*bered; difficult*, II. 28, *im-*  
*passable; occupied*, V. 7.

**impellō, impellere, impulī, im-**  
**pulsum** [in+pellō], tr., *urge*  
*on, impel, induce, move*.

**impendeō, -ēre, —, —**  
[in+pendeō, hang], intr., *over-*  
*hang*.

**impēnsus, -a, -um** [impendō,  
weigh out], *expensive, great*,  
IV. 2.

**imperātor, -ōris, M.** [imperō],  
*commander in chief*; see In-  
trod. 33.

**imperātum, -ī, N.** [imperō],  
*command*.

**imperītus, -a, -um** [in+perītus],  
*inexperienced, unskilled, igno-*  
*rant*, IV. 22, 24.

**imperium, -ī, N.** [imperō], *com-*  
*mand, control, power, supreme*  
*power, sway; government*, I.

33; *nova imperia, a change of*  
*government*, II. 1.

**imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.**  
and intr., *command, demand,*  
*levy* (upon).

**impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,**  
*obtain one's request, obtain,*  
*procure, bring to pass*.

**impetus, -ūs, M., attack, onset;**  
*force, fury; current*, IV. 17.

**impius, -a, -um** [in+pius],  
*wicked*.

**implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [in+  
plōrō, cry], tr., *beseech, im-*  
*plore*.

**impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -posi-**  
**tum** [in+pōnō], tr., *place on;*  
w. *stipendium, levy, levy on*.

**importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [in+  
portō], tr., *bring in, import*.

**improbus, -a, -um** [in+probus]  
(not good), *base, bold, reckless*.

**imprōvisō, adv.** [in, not+prō+  
vīsus] (unforeseen), *unex-*  
*pectedly*; **dē imprōvisō** (of a  
sudden), *unexpectedly*.

**imprūdēns, -entis, adj.** [in+  
prūdēns], *not foreseeing, un-*  
*aware*.

**imprudentia, -ae, F.** [imprū-  
dēns], *imprudence, indiscre-*  
*tion*.

**impūbēs, impūberis, adj.** [in+  
pūbēs, grown up], *immature,*  
*youthful; unmarried*, VI. 21.

**impūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [in+  
pūgnō], intr., *attack, charge*.

**impulsus, see impellō.**

**impūne, adv.** [in+poena], *with-*  
*out punishment, unpunished*.

**impūnitās, -tātis, F.** [in+

- poena**], freedom from punishment, impunity.
- imus**, -a, -um, see **inimicus**.
- in**, prep. w. acc. (of motion), *into, to, toward, for, against, upon, in, into the country of, among, over*; w. abl. (of rest), *in, on, among, over*; as prefix, *in, into, over, on, at, against*; negative prefix, *not*.
- incendō**, -cendere, -cendī, -cēsum, tr., *set fire to, burn*.
- incertus**, -a, -um [in+certus], *uncertain, untrustworthy; disordered*, IV. 32.
- incidō**, -cidere, -cidī, — [in+cadō], intr., *fall in, fall into hands of*, I. 53; *happen, occur*, II. 14.
- incidō**, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum [in+caedō], tr., *cut into*, II. 17.
- incipiō**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [in+capiō], intr., *begin*.
- incitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [in+citō], tr., *set in motion, urge on, incite, rouse*; **cursū incitātō**, *at full speed*; **sē incitāre**, *rush in*, III. 12; **incitātōs**, *at full speed*, IV. 33.
- incognitus**, -a, -um [cognōscō], *unknown*.
- incolō**, -ere, -uī, tr. and intr., *inhabit, dwell in, dwell*.
- incolumis**, -e, *safe, unhurt, unharmed*.
- incommodum**, -ī, N. [incommodus], *disadvantage, misfortune, harm*.
- incrēdibilis**, -e [in, not+crēdō], *incredible, extraordinary, remarkable*.
- increpitō**, -āre, —, — [increpō, upbraid], tr. and intr., *taunt*.
- incursiō**, -ōnis, F. [incurrō], *raid, invasion, attack*.
- incursus**, -ūs, M. [incurrō], *advance, approach, attack*.
- incūsō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [in+causa], tr., *rebuke, censure, find fault with*.
- inde**, adv., *from that place, thence, from that source, from that position*, IV. 25; *then*, II. 19.
- indiciū**, -ī, N. [indicō, show], *information*; **per indicium**, *through informers*.
- indicō**, -dicere, -dixī, -dictum [in+dīcō], tr., *declare, appoint*; w. **concilium**, *summon*.
- indīgnitās**, -tātis, F. [indīgnus], *unworthiness, disgrace, insult*.
- indiligenter**, adv. [indiligēns], *carelessly*.
- indūcō**, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum [in+dūcō], tr., *lead into, lead on, induce*; **cover**, II. 33.
- indulgeō**, -dulgēre, -dulsī, -dultum, intr., *favor*.
- induō**, induere, induī, indūtum, tr., *put on*; w. **sē**, *impale*.
- indūtia**, -arum, F. pl., *truce*.
- ineō**, -īre, -ivī (-iī), -itum [in+eō], tr., *go into, enter, enter upon, begin*; w. **cōnsilium**, *form, adopt*; **initā aestāte**, *at the beginning of summer*.
- inermis**, -e [in, without+arma], *unarmed, without weapons*.

**iners**, -ertis, adj., *indolent, unmanly*, IV. 2.

**infāmia**, -ae, F., *disgrace, infamy*.

**infectus**, -a, -um [in+factus], *not done; infectā rē, without success*.

**inferior**, -ius, adj. (App. 18), *lower, inferior*.

**inferō**, -ferre, intulī, inlātum [in+ferō], tr., *bring into, bring in, bring upon, place upon; inflict, cause; w. bellum, make upon; w. alacritās, spēs, inspire (in); signa inferre, charge, attack; causā inlātā, I. 39, offering a reason*.

**inferus**, -a, -um, *below*.

**inficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [in+faciō], tr. (work into), *stain, dye*.

**infimus**, -a, -um, or **imū**s, -a, -um, sup. of **inferus** (App. 18), *lowest, lowest part of, base of; ab imō, from the base, at the bottom*, IV. 17.

**infinitus**, -a, -um [in+fīniō], *unlimited, countless*.

**infirmitās**, -tātis, F. [**infirmus**], *weakness, fickleness*.

**infirmus**, -a, -um [in+fīrmus], *weak, weakened*, VI. 27.

**inflectō**, -flectere, -flexī, -flexum [in+flectō], tr., *bend*.

**influo**, -fluere, -fluxī, -fluxum [in+fluō], intr., *flow into*.

**infrā**, adv. and prep. w. acc., *below*.

**ingēns**, ingentis, adj., *vast, huge, large*.

**ingredior**, -gredī, -gressus sum [in+gradior], dep., *enter*.

**iniciō**, inicere, iniēcī, iniectum [in+iaciō], tr., *throw into, inspire; lay on*, IV. 17.

**inimicitia**, -ae, F., [**inimicus**], *enmity, hostility*.

**inimicus**, -a, -um [in+amīcus], *unfriendly*.

**iniquitās**, -tātis, F. [**iniquūs**], *inequality, unevenness; unfavorable, difficulty*, II. 22.

**iniquus**, -a, -um [in+aequus], *uneven, unfair, unjust, unfavorable; iniquior, less favorable*, II. 10.

**initium**, -i, N. [ineō], *beginning; w. capit ā, I. 1, begins at*.

**initus**, see ineō.

**iniungō**, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-tum [in+iungō], tr., *impose upon*.

**iniūria**, -ae, F. [iūs], *wrong, injustice, outrage, injury; iniūriā, unjustly, without cause*, I. 35.

**iniussus**, -ūs, M., used only in abl., *without command*.

**inlātus**, see inferō.

**inligō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [in+ligō, bind], *bind fast*.

**inlustris**, -e, *bright; distinguished, prominent, illustrious*.

**innāscor**, -nāscī, -nātus sum [in+nāscor], dep. (be born in), *spring up*.

**innitor**, -nitī, -nixus or -nīsus sum [in+nitor], dep., *lean on*.

**innocēns**, -entis [in+noceō], adj., *innocent; used as noun*, VI. 16.

- innocentia**, -ae, F. [innocēns], *integrity, innocence.*
- inopia**, -ae, F. [inops, needy], *lack, scarcity.*
- inopīnāns**, -antis, adj. [opīnor, think], *not expecting, off one's guard, unaware.*
- inquam**, inquit, def. verb, pres. tense, *I say, he says, used w. a direct quotation.*
- inrīdeō**, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum [in+rīdeō], tr. and intr., *laugh at, ridicule, jeer.*
- inrīdiculē**, adv. [in+rīdiculē], *without wit.*
- inrumpō**, -rumpere, -rūpī, -rump-tum [in+rumpō], tr. and intr., *break into, rush into, attack.*
- īnsciēns**, -entis, adj. [in+sciō], *not knowing.*
- īnscientia**, -ae, F. [in+scientia], *lack of knowledge, ignorance.*
- īnscius**, -a, -um [in+sciō], *not knowing, ignorant.*
- īnsequor**, -sequī, -secūtus sum [in+sequor], dep., *follow up, pursue.*
- īnserō**, -serere, -seruī, -sertum [in+serō], tr., *put in, insert.*
- Insidiae**, -ārum, F. pl. [insideō], *ambush, ambuscade; strata-gem, IV. 13.*
- īnsigne**, -is, N., *sign, signal, standard; decoration, ornament, II. 21; distinction.*
- īnsignis**, -e [in + signum] (marked), *remarkable, noted.*
- īnsiliō**, -silīre, -siluī, -sultum [in+saliō], intr., *leap upon.*
- īnsinuō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [in+sinuō, bend], tr., *bend into; sē insinuāre, make one's way in.*
- īnsistō**, -sistere, -stitī, — [in+sistō], tr. and intr., *stand on; adopt, pursue, III. 14; get a footing, IV. 26.*
- īnsolenter**, adv. [īnsolēns], *haughtily, insolently.*
- īnstabilis**, -e [in+stabilis], *unsteady.*
- īnstār**, indecl. noun; *image; īnstār mūrī, like a wall, II. 17.*
- īnstituō**, -stituere, -stituī, -stitū-tum [in+statuō], tr., *set up, establish, build, construct, erect, form, draw up, III., 24; begin, train, I. 14; prepare, procure, III. 9; adopt, devise, IV. 17.*
- īnstitūtum**, -ī, N. [īnstituō], *custom, institution.*
- īnstō**, -stāre, -stitī, -statum [in+stō], intr., *stand near, be near, be at hand, approach, press forward.*
- īnstruō**, -struere, -strūxī, -strūc-tum [in+struō], tr., *build, draw up, marshal.*
- īnsuēfactus**, -a, -um [īnsuēscō, faciō], *trained.*
- īnsuētus**, -a, -um, *unaccustomed.*
- īnsula**, -ae, F., *island.*
- īnsuper**, adv. [in+super], *above, on the top.*
- integer**, -gra, -grum, *whole, fresh, unimpaired; integrī, pl., as noun, fresh troops.*
- ītegō**, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum [in+tegō], tr., *cover.*
- īntelligō**, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum



- [inter+legō, *gather*], tr., *learn, perceive, know, understand.*
- intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum [in+tendō], tr., *stretch.*
- intentus, -a, -um [intendō], *intent (upon), attentive.*
- inter, prep. w. acc., *between, among*; of time, *during, for, within*; as prefix, *between.*
- intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [inter+cēdō], intr., *go between, intervene; exist between*, I. 43; of time, *elapse.*
- intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [inter+capiō], tr. (take between), *intercept.*
- interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum [inter+claudō, *close*], tr., *cut off*; w. itinera, *block.*
- interdīcō, -dīcere, -dixī, -dictum [inter+dīcō], tr., *forbid, prohibit, interdict*, I. 46.
- interdiū, adv. [inter+diū], *during the day, by day.*
- interdum, adv. [inter+dum], *sometimes.*
- intereā, adv. [inter+ea], *in the meantime, meanwhile.*
- intereō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum [in+tereō], intr., *perish.*
- interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [inter+faciō], tr., *kill.*
- intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [inter+iaciō], tr., *throw between, place between*; pass., *lie between, intervene, be scattered*, III. 8.
- interim, adv., *meanwhile.*
- interior, -ius, adj. (App. 18), *inner, interior*; pl. as noun, *those within*, VII. 82.
- intermittō, -mittere, -misī, -missum [inter+mittō], tr. and intr. (send between), *stop, cease, discontinue, leave an interval, interrupt*; w. trīduum, nox, tempus, etc., *intermissus, having elapsed, intervening.*
- interneciō, -ōnis, F. [inter+necō, *kill*], *massacre, destruction.*
- interpellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *disturb, interfere with.*
- interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum [inter+pōnō], tr., *place between, interpose, give*, V. 6; w. causa, *allege*; pass., *occur*, IV. 32.
- interpres, -pretis, M., *interpreter.*
- interpretor, -ārī, -ātus sum [interpres], dep., *explain, interpret.*
- interscindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum [inter+scindō], tr., *destroy.*
- intersum, -esse, -fuī, — [inter+sum], intr., *be between; take part*, IV. 16; *preside over*, VI. 13; impers., *it concerns, it interests.*
- intervāllum, -ī, N. [inter+vāllum], *interval, space.*
- interventus, -ūs, M. [intervenīō], *coming between, intervention.*
- intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textum [in+texō], tr., *weave in, interweave, plait.*
- intrā, prep. w. acc., *within.*
- intrītus, -a, -um [in, not+terō, *rub*], *unwearied.*
1. intrō, adv., *to the inside, within.*

2. **intrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *enter, penetrate.*
- intrōdūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [intrō+dūcō], tr., *lead in.*
- intrōmittō**, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [intrō+mittō], tr., *let in, admit.*
- intrōrsus**, adv. [intrō+versus], *within.*
- intueor**, -tuērī, -tuitus sum [in+tuēor], dep., *look at, look upon.*
- inūsītātus**, -a, -um [in+ūsītātus], *unusual, strange.*
- inūtilis**, -e [in+ūtilis], *useless, unserviceable.*
- inveniō**, -venīre, -vēmī, -ventum [in+veniō] (come upon), *discover, find (without seeking).*
- inventor**, -ōris, M. [inveniō], *inventor, author.*
- inveterāscō**, -veterāscere, -veterāvī, — [vetus], intr., *become fixed or established; settle.*
- invictus**, -a, -um [in+victus], *unconquered, invincible.*
- invideō**, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum [in+videō], tr. and intr. (look askance at), *envy, be jealous of.*
- invidia**, -ae, F., *envy.*
- inviolātus**, -a, -um, *inviolable.*
- invītō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *invite, summon; request, IV. 6.*
- invītus**, -a, -um, *unwilling; against one's will; sē invītō, against his will.*
- ipse, ipsa, ipsum**, intensive pron (App. 24), *himself, herself, itself; very; pl., themselves; gen., his own, their own.*
- iracundus**, -a, -um [ira, wrath], *wrathful.*
- is, ea, id**, dem. pron. (App. 23), *that, he, she, it; pl., these, those, they.*
- iste, ista, istud**, dem. pron. (App. 23), *that (of yours).*
- ita**, adv., *so, thus, in this way, ita utī, just as.*
- Ītalia**, -ae, F., *Italy, I. 10, 33, 40, II. 29, etc.*
- itaque**, conj., *and so, accordingly, therefore.*
- item**, adv., *in like manner, also.*
- iter, itineris**, N. [eō, go], *way, journey, march, course; w. facere, to march; māgnum iter, forced march, great stage; ex itinere, (while) on the march.*
- iterum**, adv., *again, a second time.*
- itūrus**, part. of eō.
- iuba**, -ae, F., *mane.*
- iubeō**, iubēre, iussī, iussum, tr., *order, direct.*
- iūdicium**, -ī, N. [iūdex, judge], *judgment, decision, trial, place of trial; optimum iūdicium facere, express the highest opinion, I. 41, l. 867.*
- iūdicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [iūdex, judge], tr., *judge, decide, determine, think.*
- iugum**, -ī, N., *yoke, i.e. two spears set upright in the ground with another placed*

across them, I. 7, 12; *ridge*  
(of a mountain), II. 24; *yoke*  
(of a wagon).

iumentum, -ī, N. [iugum], *yoke-*  
*animal, beast of burden.*

iunctūra, -ae, F. [iungō], *join-*  
*ing.*

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iunctum,  
tr., *join.*

Iuppiter, Iovis, M., *Jupiter*, the  
chief god of the Romans.

Iūra, -ae, M., *Jura*, a moun-  
tain range running from the  
Rhine to the Rhone, west of  
the Helvetii, I. 2.

iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [iūs],  
intr., *swear, take an oath.*

iūs, iūris, N., *right, rights,*  
*justice; law; the principle of*  
*right, upon which law (lēx)*  
*is based.*

iūs iurandum, iūris iurandī, N.  
[iūrō], *oath.*

iūstitia, -ae, F. [iūstus], *justice,*  
*fairness.*

iūstus, -a, -um [iūs], *just, right,*  
*proper, fair; important, IV.*  
*16; regular, VI. 19.*

iuventūs, -tūtis, F. [iuvenis],  
*youth; young men (col-*  
*lectively).*

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, tr.,  
*help, aid.*

iuxtā, adv., and prep. w. acc.,  
*near, near by.*

## K

Kalendae, -ārum, F. pl. (abbr.  
Kal.), *the Calends, the first*  
*day of a month.*

## L

L., symbol for quinquāgintā.

L., see Lūcius.

Labiēnus, -ī, M. (Titus) *La-*  
*bienus* (lā-bi-ē'nus), Caesar's  
chief lieutenant during the  
Gallic war, afterward his  
enemy, taking the side of  
Pompey, I. 10, 21, 54, II.  
11, 26, III. 11, IV. 38.  
See Smith's "Dict. of Roman  
Biography."

labor, -ōris, M., *exertion, labor,*  
*work, hardship.*

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [labor],  
intr., *toil, strive; be hard-*  
*pressed, be in danger or dis-*  
*tress; tr., be anxious for, I.*  
*31; impers. pass., there is a*  
*struggle.*

labrum, -ī, N., *lip; rim, VI.*  
*28.*

lac, lactis, N., *milk.*

laccessō, -ere, -ivī, -itum [laciō,  
*entice], tr., excite, provoke,*  
*attack, harass.*

lacrima, -ae, F., *tear.*

lacus, -ūs, M., *lake.*

laetitia, -ae, F. [laetus], *gladness,*  
*joy.*

laetus, -a, -um, *joyful, glad.*

languidus, -a, -um, *weary, ex-*  
*hausted.*

lapis, lapidis, M., *stone.*

largior, -irī, -itus sum, dep.  
[largus, abundant], *give freely,*  
*give bribes; afford, VI. 24.*

largiter, adv. [largus], *in abun-*  
*dance; largiter posse, have*  
*great influence.*

- largit̃iō**, -ōnis, F. [largior], *a giving freely, generosity.*
- lassitūdō**, -inis, F. [lassus, faint], *faintness, weariness.*
- lātē**, adv. [lātus], *widely, broadly.*
- lateō**, latēre, latuī, —, intr., *lie hid, be concealed, escape notice*, III. 14.
- lātitudō**, -inis, F. [lātus], *breadth, width, extent.*
- Latobrigī**, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Latobrigi* (lat-ō-brī'jī), neighbors and allies of the Helvetii, I. 15, etc.
- latrō**, -ōnis, M., *robber.*
- latrōcinium**, -ī [latrō], *robbery, brigandage.*
- lātus**, -a, -um, *broad, wide.*
- latus**, lateris, N., *side, flank;*  
ab latere apertō, ad latus apertum, *on the exposed flank;*  
ab lateribus, *on the flanks*, II. 8.
- laus**, laudis, F., *praise, glory, honor.*
- lavō**, lavāre, lavī, lautum or lōtum, tr., *wash; pass., bathe.*
- laxō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *extend, open.*
- lēgātīō**, -ōnis, F. [lēgātus], *embassy, mission.*
- lēgātus**, -ī M. [lēgō, dispatch], *ambassador, envoy; as a military officer, lieutenant.*
- legiō**, -ōnis, F. [legō, collect], *legion; see Introd. 28.*
- legiōnārius**, -a, -um [legiō], *of a legion, legionary.*
- Lemannus**, -ī, M., w. lacus, *Lake Geneva, Lac Lemman*, I. 2, 8; III. 1.
- Lemovicēs**, -um, M. pl., *the Lemovices* (lem-ō-vī'sēz), a tribe west of the Arverni, whose chief town is now called *Limoges.*
- lēnis**, -e, *gentle, soft.*
- lēnitās**, -tātis, F. [lēnis], *gentleness, smoothness, slowness* (of a river).
- lēniter**, adv. [lēnis], *gently.*
- Lepontiī**, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Lepontii* (lē-pon'shī-ī), an Alpine tribe.
- lepus**, -oris, M., *hare.*
- Leuci**, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Leuci* (lū'sī), a Gallic tribe west of the Vosges Mts., I. 40.
- levis**, -e, *light.*
- levitās**, -tātis, F. [levis], *lightness; inconstancy*, II. 1.
- lēx**, lēgis, F., *law.*
- Lexovīi**, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Lexovii* (leks-ō'vi-ī), a Gallic tribe of the northwestern coast.
- libenter**, adv. [libēns, glad], *gladly, willingly.*
- liber**, libera, liberum, *free.*
- liberālītās**, -tātis, F. [liberālis], *generosity, liberality.*
- liberālīter**, adv. [liberālis], *generously, courteously, kindly.*
- liberē**, adv., *freely.*
- liberī**, -ōrum, M. pl. [liber] (free persons), *children.*
- liberō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [liber], tr., *free, release.*
- libertās**, -tātis, F. [liber], *free-*

- dom, liberty, permission, IV. 15.*  
**librilis**, -e [*libra, balance, pound*], weighing a pound.  
**liceor**, **licēri**, **licitus sum**, dep., *bid* (at auction).  
**licet**, **licēre**, **licuit**, impers. (App. 48), *it is permitted, it is allowed.*  
**Liger**, **Ligeris** (acc., -im, abl., ī), M., *the Liger* (lī'jer), a river of Gaul; modern *Loire* (lwār).  
**Lingonēs**, -um (acc., -ēs or as), M. pl., *the Lingones* (ling'gō-nēz), a Gallic tribe, north of the *Haedui*, I. 26, 40, etc.  
**lingua**, -ae, F., *tongue, language.*  
**lingula**, -ae, F. [*lingua*], *tongue of land.*  
**linter**, -tris, F., *boat.*  
**linum**, -ī, N., *flax.*  
**Liscus**, -ī, M., *Liscus* (lis'kus), a magistrate (vergobret) of the *Haedui*, I. 16-18.  
**littera**, -ae, F., *letter* (of alphabet); pl., a *letter* (epistle), *dispatch*, II. 1.  
**lītus**, -oris, N., *shore.*  
**locus**, -ī, M.; pl. *loca*, -ōrum, N., *place, ground, locality, region, position, site; rank; opportunity*, I. 40, l. 839; *situation*, II. 26; *precedence*, V. l. 103.  
**longē**, adv., *far, by far; longius*, *farther, longer* (of time).  
**longinquus**, -a, -um [*longus*], *long, of long duration, continued; distant*, IV. 27.  
**longitūdō**, -inis, F. [*longus*], *length.*  
**longurius**, -ī, M., *long pole.*  
**longus**, -a, -um, *long; longior diēs, later day.*  
**loquor**, **loquī**, **locūtus sum**, dep., *speak.*  
**lōrica**, -ae, F., *coat of mail; breastworks.*  
**Lūcius**, -ī, M., *Lucius* (lū'shius), a Roman personal name.  
**lūna**, -ae, F., *moon.*  
**lūx**, **lūcis**, F., *light, daylight, dawn; prīmā lūce, at day-break.*  
**lūxuria**, -ae, F., *luxury.*

## M

- M.**, see *Mārcus.*  
**M.** for *mille.*  
**māchinātiō**, -ōnis, F. [*māchinor, contrive*], *contrivance, engine, machine*, IV. 17.  
**maestus**, -a, -um [*maereō*], *sad.*  
**Magetobriga**, -ae, F., *Magetobriga* (ma-je-tob'ri-ga), a Gallic town; site unknown, I. 31.  
**magis**, comp. adv. (App. 19), *more, rather; eō magis, the more.*  
**magistrātus**, -ūs, M. [*magister*], *magistracy, magistrate, officer.*  
**māgnificus**, -a, -um [*māgnus*], *grand, magnificent.*  
**māgnitūdō**, -inis, F. [*māgnus*], *greatness, size.*  
**māgnopere**, adv. [*māgnō+opere*], *greatly, especially, earnestly.*  
**māgnus**, -a, -um, *great, large; w. vōx, loud.*

- māior**, -ius, adj., comp. of **māgnus**; pl. as noun, *ancestors*.
- malacia**, -ae, F., *calm*.
- male**, adv. [**malus**], *badly*;
- male rēs gesta**, *mismanagement*.
- maleficium**, -ī, N. [**male**+**faciō**], *evil deed, offense, crime, harm, injury*.
- mālo**, **mālle**, **māluī** (App. 46), *wish rather, prefer*.
- malus**, -a, -um, *bad*.
- mālus**, -ī, M., *mast*.
- mandātum**, -ī, N. [**mandō**], *order, instruction, command; message*, I. 37.
- mandō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [**manus**+**dō**], tr. (put in hand), *commit, intrust; commission, order; fugae sē mandāre, flee*.
- Mandubiī**, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Mandubiī* (man-dū'bi-ī), a tribe north of the Haedui whose chief town was Alesia.
- māne**, adv., *in the morning*.
- maneō**, **manēre**, **mānsī**, **mānsum**, intr., *remain, abide*.
- manipulus**, -ī, M. [**manus**], *maniple, two centuries of soldiers; lit. "handful," for the standard of the maniple was originally a handful or wisp of hay*.
- Manlius**, -ī, M. (**Lucius**) **Manlius** (man'li-us), proconsul of Gaul, 78 B.C.
- mānsuēfaciō**, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, tr., *tame*.
- mānsuētūdō**, -inis, F. [**mān-**suētus, *tamed*] (*tameness, gentleness*).
- manus**, -ūs, F., *hand; armed force, band*.
- Marcomannī**, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Marcomanni* (mār-kō-man'ni), a tribe of Germans, allies of Ariovistus, I. 51.
- Mārcus**, -ī, M., **Marcus** (mār'-kus), a Roman personal name.
- mare**, **maris**, N., *sea*.
- maritimus**, -a, -um [**mare**], *of the sea, on the seacoast, maritime; maritima ōra, seacoast; maritimae rēs, seamanship*.
- Marius**, -ī, M., **Marius** (mā'ri-us), name of a Roman gens; **Gaius**, the celebrated general and consul, uncle of Julius Caesar, died 86 B.C., I. 40.
- Mārs**, **Mārtis**, M., **Mars**, the Roman god of war.
- mās**, **maris**, M., *male*.
- matara**, -ae, F., *javelin* (of the Gauls).
- māter**, **mātris**, F., *mother; māter familiae, matron*.
- māteria**, -ae, F., *timber, wood*.
- Matiscō**, -ōnis, F., **Matisco** (mā-tis'kō), a town of the Haedui.
- mātrimōnium**, -ī, N. [**māter**], *marriage; in mātrimōnium dare, give in marriage; in mātrimōnium dūcere, marry*, I. 9.
- Matrona**, -ae, M., *the Marne* (mārn), a tributary of the Seine, I. 1.
- mātūrē**, adv., comp. **mātūrius**, sup. **mātūrissimē** and **mā-tūrrimē** [**mātūrus**], *early*.



- mātūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [mā-tūrus], tr. and intr., *hasten*.  
**mātūrus**, -a, -um, *ripe, early*.  
**māximē**, sup. adv. (App. 19), *most, mostly, very greatly, especially*.  
**māximus**, -a, -um, sup. of **māgnus** (App. 18), *greatest, largest; very great, very large*.  
**Māximus**, -ī, M., *Maximus* (mak'si-mus), surname of Fabius, I. 45.  
**mediocris**, -cre [medius], *ordinary, moderate, small*, IV. 17.  
**mediocriter**, adv. [mediocer], *moderately; nōn mediocriter, in no moderate degree*.  
**Mediomatrici**, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Mediomatrici* (mē-di-ō-mat'ri-sī), a tribe north of the Vosges Mts.  
**mediterrāneus**, -a, -um [medius, terra], *inland*.  
**medius**, -a, -um, *middle, the middle of; in the middle of; in colle mediō, halfway up the hill; medium utriusque*, I. 34, *midway between the two*.  
**melior**, comp. of bonus.  
**membrum**, -ī, N., *limb*.  
**meminī**, -isse, def. verb (App. 47), *remember*; perf. system used with meanings of the pres. system.  
**memoria**, -ae, F., *memory*; **memoriā tenēre**, *remember*.  
**Menapii**, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Menapii* (men-ā'pi-ī), a Belgian tribe, II. 4, etc.  
**mēns**, **mentis**, F., *mind, spirit, feeling, will*, III. 19.  
**mēnsis**, -is, M., *month*.  
**mēnsūra**, -ae, F. [mētior], *measurement*.  
**mercātor**, -ōris, M. [mercor, trade], *trader, merchant*.  
**mercātūra**, -ae, F. [mercor, trade], *trading, the pursuits of trade*.  
**mercēs**, **mercēdis**, F. [mereō, earn], *hire, pay*.  
**Mercurius**, -ī, M., *Mercury*, the Roman god of trade, etc.  
**mereor**, **merērī**, **meritus sum**, dep., *deserve, merit*.  
**merīdiēs**, -ēī, M. [medius+diēs], *mid-day, noon; the south*, V. 13.  
**meritum**, -ī, N. [mereō], *desert, merit*.  
**Messāla**, -ae, M., *Messala* (me-sā'la), a Roman family name; *Marcus*, consul, 61 B.C., I. 2, 35.  
**mētior**, **mētīrī**, **mēnsus sum**, dep., *measure, measure out, give out*.  
**Metius**, -ī, M. (*Marcus*) *Metius* (mē'shius), sent to Ariovistus to represent Caesar I. 47, 53.  
**metō**, **metere**, **messuī**, **messum**, tr., *reap*.  
**metus**, -ūs, M., *fear*.  
**meus**, -a, -um, *my*.  
**miles**, **militis**, M., *soldier*.  
**militāris**, -e [mīles], *of a soldier, military*; **rēs militāris**, *warfare, the art of war*.  
**militia**, -ae, F. [mīles], *military service*.  
**mille**, indecl. adj., *thousand*; as noun, **mīlia**, **mīlium**, N. pl.,

- thousand, thousands*; see *passus*.
- Minerva**, -ae, F., *Minerva*, the Roman goddess of wisdom.
- minimē**, adv., sup. of *parum* (App. 19), *least, by no means*.
- minimus**, -a, -um, sup. of *parvus* (App. 18), *least, very little*.
- minor**, -us, comp. of *parvus*.
- Minucius**, -I, M., *Minucius* (ini-nū'shi-us), name of a Roman gens; *Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar's officers.
- minuō**, *minuere*, *minui*, *minūtum* [minus], tr., *make smaller, lessen, weaken*; w. *aestus*, *ebb*; w. *contrōversia*, *settle*.
- minus**, adv., comp. of *parum* (App. 19), *less, not at all, not*.
- mīror**, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *wonder*.
- mīrus**, -a, -um, *wonderful, surprising*; *mīrum in modum*, *in a wonderful manner*.
- miser**, *misera*, *miserum*, *wretched, unfortunate*.
- misericordia**, -ae [misericors], *pity, compassion, mercy*.
- miseror**, -ārī, -ātus sum [miser], dep., *pity, lament, bewail*.
- mittō**, *mittere*, *mīsi*, *missum*, tr., *send*; w. *pīlum*, *tēlum*, *hurl*.
- mōbilis**, -e [moveō] (*easily moved*), *changeable, hasty, impulsive*.
- mōbilitās**, -tātis, F. [mōbilis], *mobility, speed*, IV. 33; *changeableness, fickleness*, II. 1.
- mōbiliter**, adv. [mōbilis], *easily, readily*.
- moderor**, -ārī, -ātus sum [modus], dep., *control, check*.
- modo**, adv. [modus], *only*; *nōn modo . . . sed etiam*, *not only . . . but also*.
- modus**, -I, M., *measure, extent, amount; way, manner; character*, IV. 27; *quem ad modum* (*in what manner*), *how, as, just as*; *ad hunc modum*, *after this manner*; *hūius modī*, *to this effect*, III. 3; *ēius modī*, *of such a nature, such*.
- moenia**, *moenium*, N. pl. [mūniō], *walls (of a city), fortifications*.
- mōlēs**, *mōlis*, F. (*massive structure*), *dike*.
- molestē**, adv., *with trouble or difficulty*; *molestē ferre*, *be vexed, be annoyed*.
- mōlimentum**, -I, N. [mōlior, *strive*], *effort, exertion, difficulty*.
- mollis**, -e, *infirm, yielding, weak*.
- mollitia**, -ae, F. [mollis] (*softness*), *weakness*.
- molō**, -ere, -uī, -itum, tr., *grind*.
- mōmentum**, -I, N. [moveō], *movement; importance, weight*.
- Mona**, -ae, F., *Mona* (mō'nā), *the Isle of Man*.
- moneō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, tr., *advise, warn, admonish*, IV. 23.
- mōns**, *montis*, M., *mountain; cliff*, IV. 23.
- mora**, -ae, F., *delay*.
- morbus**, -I, M., *disease*.

**Morinī, -ōrum, M. pl.,** *the Morini* (mor'i-nī), a Belgian tribe, II. 4, etc.

**morior, morī (morīrī), mortuus sum** [mors], *dep., die.*

**moror, -ārī, -ātus sum** [mora], *dep., delay; tarry, remain.*

**mors, mortis, F.,** *death.*

**mortuus, part. of morior.**

**mōs, mōris, M.,** *custom, manner; pl., customs, character.*

**Mosa, -ae, M.,** *the Meuse* (mūz), IV. 9.

**mōtus, -ūs, M.,** *motion, movement.*

**moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, tr.,** *move.*

**mulier, mulieris, F.,** *woman.*

**multitūdō, -inis, F. [multus],** *great number, multitude; the common people, populace.*

**multō, adv. [multus],** *by much, much* (App. 95).

**multum, adv. [multus],** *much,* (App. 19).

**multus, -a, -um** (App. 18), *much; pl., many; see diēs.*

**mundus, -ī, M.,** *world, universe.*

**mūnimentum, -ī, N. [mūniō],** *defense, fortification.*

**mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītum, tr.,** *fortify, protect.*

**mūnitiō, -ōnis, F. [mūniō],** *fortification, defense; mūnitiō operis, strength of the defenses.*

**mūnus, -eris, N.,** *duty, service, task; gift,* I. 43.

**mūrālis, -e [mūrus]** (of a wall), *mural.*

**mūrus, -ī, M.,** *wall* (the general word), *earthwork.*

**mutilus, -a, -um,** *maimed, mutilated.*

## N

**nactus, see nancīscor.**

**nam, conj.,** *for.*

**Nammēius, -ī, M.,** *Nammeius* (nam-mē'yus), an envoy of the Helvetians, I. 7.

**Namnetēs, -um, M. pl.,** *the Namnetes* (nam'ne-tēz), a tribe at the mouth of the Loire.

**namque, conj. [nam+que],** *for; gives a reason, with implied repetition of preceding statement, e.g. I. 38. and* (he thought so) *for.*

**nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus, dep.,** *obtain, meet with, find,* I. 53, IV. 23.

**Nantuātēs, -um, M. pl.,** *the Nantuates* (nan-tū-ā'tēz), an Alpine tribe.

**Narbō, -ōnis, M.,** *Narbo* (nār'bō); modern Narbonne.

**nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, dep.,** *be born; rise, spring, arise; be found,* V. 12, VI. 25.

**Nasua, -ae, M.,** *Nasua* (nash'ū-a), a leader of the Suebi, I. 37.

**nātālis, -e [nātus],** *of birth; diēs nātālis, birthday.*

**nātiō, -ōnis, F.,** *birth, origin; race, nation, tribe.*

**nātūra, -ae, F.,** *nature.*

1. **nātus, part.,** *see nāscor.*

2. **nātus, -ūs, M. [nāscor],** *birth, age; māior nātū* (greater in

- age), *older*; **māiōrēs nātū**, pl. as noun, *elders, ancestors*.
- nauta**, -ae, M., *sailor*.
- nauticus**, -a, -um [**nauta**], *naval*; **nauticae rēs**, *seamanship*.
- nāvālis**, -e [**nāvis**], *pertaining to a ship, naval*.
- nāvicula**, -ae, F. [**nāvis**+**cula**], *little boat*.
- nāvigātiō**, -ōnis, F. [**nāvigō**], *sailing, navigation*.
- nāvigium**, -ī, N. [**nāvis**], *ship, vessel*.
- nāvigō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [**nāvis**], intr., *sail*; impers. in pass., IV. 31.
- nāvis**, -is, F., *ship*; **nāvis longa**, *galley, warship*; see *Introd.* 57.
- nāvō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *do zealously*; **operam nāvāre**, *do one's best*.
1. **nē**, adv., *not*; **nē . . . quidem**, *not even*, always emphasizing a word or phrase standing between **nē** and **quidem**.
2. **nē**, conj., *that . . . not, lest*; after word of fearing, *that*.
- nē**, enclitic particle, introducing questions; w. direct questions, *not to be translated*; w. indirect questions, *whether*, followed by **an**, or.
- nec**, see **neque**.
- necessāriō**, adv., *of necessity, under compulsion*.
- necessārius**, -a, -um [**necesse**], *needful, necessary*; *urgent*, I. 17; **necessārium tempus**, *time of need*; as noun, *friend, kinsman*.
- necesse**, indecl. adj., *necessary*.
- necessitās**, -tātis, F. [**necesse**], *necessity, need*.
- necessitūdō**, -inis, F. [**necesse**] (*necessity*), *intimacy, friendship*.
- necne**, adv., *or not*.
- necō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., *put to death, kill*.
- nefārius**, -a, -um [**nefās**, *crime against the gods*], *wicked, infamous*.
- neglegō**, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum [**nec**+**legō**], tr., *disregard, neglect, overlook, ignore, treat lightly*.
- negō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., *say . . . not, deny, refuse*.
- negōtium**, -ī, N. [**nec**+**ōtium**], *business, affair, undertaking; difficulty*; **dare negōtium** (*assign the task*), *direct*, w. dat.
- Nemetēs**, -um, M. pl., *the Nemetes* (*nem'e-tēz*), a German tribe allied with Ariovistus, I. 51.
- nēmō**, dat., **nēminī**, acc., **nēmīnem**, other forms from **nūllus**, [**nē**+**homō**], *no one*.
- nēquāquam**, adv., *by no means*.
- neque** (before vowels or cons.), **nec** (before cons.), conj., *and not, nor*; **neque (nec) . . . neque (nec)**, *neither . . . nor*.
- nēquiquam**, adv. [**nē**+**quīquam**], *in vain, without reason*, II. 27.
- Nervicus**, -a, -um, *of the Nervii, Nervian*.
- Nerviī**, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Nervii*

- (nēr'vi-i), the most powerful tribe of the Belgae, II. 4, etc.
- nervus**, -ī, M., *sinew, muscle*; pl., *power, strength*.
- neu**, see **nēve**.
- neuter, neutra, neutrum**, *neither*; pl., *neither side*, II. 9.
- nēve** (or **neu**), conj., *and not, nor; and that not*, IV. 17.
- nex, necis**, F., *death, violent death*.
- nihil**, indecl. noun, *nothing*; **nihil vinī**, *no wine*; as adv., *not at all, not*; **nihil iam**, *no longer*.
- nihilō**, adv. (abl. of **nihilum**), *by nothing, none*; **nihilō minus**, *none the less, nevertheless* (App. 95).
- nisi**, conj., *if not, unless, except*.
- nītor, nīti, nīsus** or **nīxus sum**, dep., *rely upon, strive*.
- nōbilis**, -e, *well-known, famous; high-born*; as noun, *man of high birth, nobleman*, I. 44; pl., *the nobles*.
- nōbilitās**, -tātis, F. [**nōbilis**], *nobility*; collectively, *the nobles*; w. **summa**, *rank*, II. 6.
- noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum**, intr., *harm, injure*.
- noctū**, adv. [**nox**], *by night*.
- nocturnus**, -a, -um [**nox**], *by night, at night*.
- nōdus**, -ī, M., *knot; node on a joint*.
- nōlō, nōlle, nōluī** [**nōn**+**volō**, App. 46], irr., *be unwilling, not wish*.
- nōmen, nōminis**, N., *name*; **suō nōmine**, *on his own account*; **nōmine**, w. gen., *by way of, as*.
- nōminātim**, adv. [**nōmen**], *by name, individually*.
- nōminō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *name, mention*.
- nōn**, adv., *not*.
- nōnāgintā**, indecl. adj., *ninety*.
- nōndum**, adv. [**nōn**+**dum**], *not yet*.
- nōnnihil**, adv. [**nōn**+**nihil**], *some-what, considerably*.
- nōnnūllus**, -a, -um [**nōn**+**nūllus**] (not none), *some*; pl. as noun, *some*.
- nōnnumquam**, adv. [**nōn**+**numquam**], *sometimes*.
- nōnus**, -a, -um, *ninth*.
- Nōrēia**, -ae, F., *Noreia* (nō-rē'ya), a town of the Norici, now Neumarkt, in Styria, I. 5.
- Nōricus**, -a, -um, *of the Norici* (nō'ri-sī), *Norican*. The land of the Norici was south of Germany, now part of Austria and Bavaria.
- nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum**, tr., *become acquainted with, learn*; perf., *know*.
- noster**, -tra, -trum, poss. pron., *our*; pl., **nostrī** (sc. **militēs**), *our soldiers, our forces*.
- nōtitia**, -ae, F. [**nōscō**], *knowledge*.
- nōtus**, -a, -um [part. of **noscō**], *known*.
- novem**, indecl. adj., *nine*.
- Noviodūnum**, -ī, N., *Noviodunum* (nō-vi-ō-dū'num), a

- town of the SueSSIONES ("New-town"), II. 12.
- novitās, -tātis**, F. [novus], *newness, novelty*.
- novus, -a, -um**, *new, recent*; *novae rēs, nova imperia, change of government, revolution*; **novissimī, -ōrum**, masc. pl. as noun, *those in the rear, last in the formation of the marching line*; see **agmen**.
- nox, noctis**, F. (App. 6), *night*; **primā nocte**, *early in the night*; **multā nocte**, *late at night*.
- noxia, -ae**, F. [noceō], *guilt, offense, crime*.
- nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum**, intr. (veil oneself), *marry*; see **conlocō**.
- nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [nūdus]. tr., *lay bare, leave unprotected*, II. 23; **nūdārī dēfēnsōribus**, *be cleared of defenders*.
- nūdus, -a, -um**, *bare, unprotected*, I. 25.
- nūllus, -a, -um** [neg. of ūllus] (App. 12), *not any, no, none, no one*.
- num**, interrogative particle implying a negative answer; has no equivalent English word.
- nūmen, nūminis**, N. [nuō, nod], *divine will*.
- numerus, -i**, M., *number, amount*, II. 17; *account*, VI. 13; *in hostium numerō habēre, regard as enemies*.
- Numidae, -ārum**, M. pl., *the Numidians, who lived in northern Africa*, II. 7, 10, 24.
- nummus, -i**, M., *coin, money*.
- numquam**, adv. [nē+umquam], *never*.
- nunc**, adv., *now*.
- nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātum** [nūntius], tr., *report, announce*; *direct*, IV. 11.
- nūntius, -i**, M. *messenger; message, news*.
- nūper**, adv., *recently*.
- nūptum**, see **nūbō**.
- nūtus, -ūs**, M. [nuō, nod], *nod, command*.

## O

- ob**, prep. w. acc., *on account of*; **ob eam rem**, *on this account*; as prefix, *against, before, down*.
- obaerātus, -i**, M. [aes], *debtor*.
- obducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum** [ob+dūcō], tr. (draw before), *extend, construct*, II. 8.
- obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum** [ob+iaciō], tr., *throw before, place in front, expose*; **obiectus**, *lying opposite*.
- obitus, -ūs**, M. [obeō], *destruction*.
- oblātus**, see **offerō**.
- oblīquē**, adv. [oblīquus], *obliquely, in a slanting position*.
- oblīvīscor, -līvīscī, -lītus sum**, dep., *forget*.
- obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [ob, sacrum], tr., *beseech, entreat, implore*.
- observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [ob+servō], tr., *watch, observe, heed, respect, regard, keep*.
- obses, obsidis**, M. and F. [ob-



- sideō], *hostage*, a person given by one nation to another as a pledge of good faith.
- obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum [ob+sedeō], tr. (sit down against), *besiege, blockade*.
- obsidiō, -ōnis, F. [obsideō], *siege; oppression*, IV. 19.
- obsignō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ob+signō], tr., *seal*.
- obstinātē, adv. [obstinō, *persist*], *persistently, firmly*.
- obstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum [ob+stringō, *bind*], tr., *bind, lay under obligation*.
- obtemperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ob+temperō], intr., *submit, obey*.
- obtestor, -ārī, -ātus sum [testis], dep., *call to witness, entreat, implore*.
- obtimeō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [ob+teneō], tr., *hold, possess, occupy; gain*.
- obveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum [ob+veniō], intr., *come against, meet, encounter; fall to the lot of*.
- occāsiō, -ōnis, F. [occidō], *opportunity, occasion*.
- occāsus, -ūs, M. [cadō], *falling; occāsus sōlis, the setting of the sun, the west; inter occāsum sōlis et septentrionēs, toward the northwest*, I. 1.
- occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsum [ob+cadō], intr., *fall; occidēs sōl, the west* (lit. setting sun).
- occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum [ob+caedō], tr., *kill, slay*.
- occultē, adv. [occultus], *secretly*.
- occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *hide, conceal*.
- occultus, -a, -um [occulō], *hidden; in occultō, in secret*.
- occupātiō, -ōnis, F. [occupō], *occupation, duty, business; engagement*.
- occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *seize, take possession of; cover, occupy*, II. 8; *engage, be busy*, II. 19.
- occurrō, -currere, -currī (-currī), -cursum [ob+currō], intr., *run (to meet); meet, encounter; find, meet with*, IV. 26; *occur*.
- Ōceanus, -ī, M., *the ocean, i.e. the Atlantic*, I. 1, II. 34, III. 7, etc.
- Ocelum, -ī, N., *Ocelum* (os'el-um), a town of the Graioceli, in the Alps, I. 10.
- octāvus, -a, -um, *eighth*.
- octingenti, -ae, -a, *eight hundred*.
- octō, indecl. adj., *eight*.
- Octodūrus, -ī, M., *Octodurus* (ok-tō-dū'rus), chief town of the Veragri, in the Alps, III. 1; now *Martigny*.
- octōgintā, indecl. adj., *eighty*.
- oculus, -ī, M., *eye*.
- ōdī, ōdisse, def. verb (App. 47), *hate*, perf. system, w. meanings of pres. system.
- offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēsum [ob+fendō], tr. and intr., (strike against), *displease, offend, vex*.

- offēnsiō, -ōnis, F.** [offendō], (a striking against), *offense, wounding, hurting.*
- offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum** [ob+ferō], tr. (bear against), *present, offer; put in one's way; put in one's power, IV. 13; sē offerre, expose one-self, meet.*
- officiū, -ī, N.,** *duty, service, allegiance; ab officiō discēdere, I. 40, forsake his allegiance.*
- omittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum** [ob+mittō], tr., *let go, neglect, disregard, II. 17.*
- omniñō, adv.** [omnis], *in all, altogether, entirely, at all, I. 32, IV. 1.*
- omnis, -e, all, every, the whole of.**
- onerārius, -a, -um** [onus], *of burden; nāvis onerāria, transport; see Introd. 57.*
- onus, oneris, N.,** *weight.*
- opera, -ae, F.** [opus], *service, work; dare operam, take pains, try.*
- opiniō, -ōnis, F.** [opīnor, think], *opinion, idea, supposition; reputation, II. 8, 24; impression, notion; expectation, III. 3.*
- oportet, oportēre, oportuit, impers.,** *it is necessary, it ought.*
- oppidānus, -ī, M.** [oppidum], *inhabitant of a town, townsman.*
- oppidum, -ī, N.,** *town (usually fortified), stronghold.*
- opportūnē, adv.** [opportūnus], *advantageously, conveniently.*
- opportūnitās, -tātis, F.** [opportūnus], *fitness, advantage, opportunity.*
- opportūnus, -a, -um** [ob+portus], *convenient, suitable, favorable.*
- opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum** [ob+premō], tr. (press against), *crush, overwhelm, oppress, conquer; surprise, IV. 4.*
- oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, F.** [oppūgnō], *storming, attack; mode of attack, II. 6.*
- oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [ob+pūgnō], tr., *fight against, attack, assault.*
- (ops), opis, F.,** *aid, influence; pl., resources, means, wealth, power, help.*
- optimē, adv., sup. of bene,** *best.*
- optimus, -a, -um, sup. of bonus,** *best.*
- 1. opus, operis, N.,** *work, a work, fortification; structure, IV. 17; craft, VI. 17.*
- 2. opus, indecl. noun, N.,** *need, necessity.*
- ōra, -ae, F.,** *coast.*
- ōrātiō, -ōnis, F.** [ōrō], *speech, address, argument, words.*
- ōrātor, -ōris, M.** [ōrō], *speaker, envoy, IV. 27.*
- orbis, -is, M.,** *circle.*
- Orcynia, -ae, F.,** *Orcynia (or-sin'i-a).*
- ōrdō, ōrdinis, M.,** *order, rank, line; century.*
- Orgetorix, -Igis, M.,** *Orgetorix (or-jet'ō-riks), a prominent*

Helvetian nobleman, I. 2-4, 26.

**orior, orīrī, ortus sum, dep., rise, spring, spring up, descend; orīrī ab, begin at; oriēns sōl, the east.**

**ōrnāmentum, -ī, N. [ōrnō], decoration, honor, I. 44.**

**ōrnātus, -a, -um [ōrnō], furnished, supplied; sup., thoroughly furnished.**

**ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ōs], tr. and intr., speak, plead, entreat.**

**Osismī, -ōrum, M. pl., the Osismī (ō-siz'mī), a coast tribe north of the Veneti.**

**ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum [ob+tendō], tr., show, point out, declare.**

**ōvum, -ī, N., egg.**

## P

**P., see Pūblius.**

**pābulātiō, -ōnis, F. [pābulor, forage], foraging.**

**pābulum, -ī, N., fodder, green fodder.**

**pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [pāx], tr., pacify, subdue.**

**pactum, -ī, N. [pacīscor], (agreement), manner.**

**paene, adv., almost.**

**paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit, impers., it causes regret; eōs paenitet, they regret, they repent, IV. 5.**

**pāgus, -ī, M., canton, district.**

**palam, adv., openly, publicly.**

**palma, -ae, F., palm of the hand.**

**palūs, -ūdis, F., swamp, marsh.**

**pandō, pandere, pandī, passum (pānsūm), tr., spread out; passīs manibus, with outstretched hands.**

**pār, paris (abl. parī, gen. pl., parium), adj., equal, a match.**

**parātus, -a, -um, part. of parō, as adj., prepared, ready; may be followed by ad+ a gerund or gerundive (App. 164, 165), by an inf., or by ut+ subjunct; sup. w. nāvēs, fully equipped, III. 14.**

**parcō, parcere, pepercī (parsī), parsum, intr., spare.**

**pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, intr., obey, submit to.**

**parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., make ready, provide, prepare, prepare for, III. 9, procure, obtain, acquire.**

**pars, partis, F., part, side, direction; ūnā ex parte, on one side, I. 2; in utram partem, quam in partem, in what direction, to what place? aliam in partem, in another direction; māgnā ex parte, in great measure, to a great extent, I. 16.**

**partim, adv. [pars], partly.**

**partior, partīrī, partitus sum, dep. [pars], divide.**

**parum, adv. (App. 19), little.**

**parvulus, -a, -um [parvus], very small; very young, VI. 28; parvulum proelium, skirmish.**

**parvus, -a, -um, little, small; ā parvīs (puerīs), from childhood.**

- passim**, adv., *in all directions*.
1. **passus**, -ūs, M., *pace* (five Roman feet, the distance between two successive positions of the same foot); **mille passūs**, *mile* (a thousand paces); pl., **milia passuum** (63, *e*).
2. **passus**, perf. part. of **pandō**, or of **pator**.
- patefaciō**, -facere, -fēcī, -factum [pateō + faciō], tr., *open, throw open*.
- patefiō**, pass. of **patefaciō**.
- patēns**, -entis, part. as adj. [pateō], *open, exposed*.
- pateō**, -ēre, -uī, —, intr. (lie open), *extend; be open*, VI. 23.
- pater**, **patris**, M., *father*.
- patienter**, adv. [patiēns], *patiently*.
- patientia**, -ae, F. [patiēns], *endurance*.
- pator**, **patī**, **passus sum**, dep., *suffer, endure; allow, permit*.
- patrius**, -a, -um [pater], *of a father, ancestral, traditional*.
- paucī**, -ae, -a, *few; pauca* (sc. *verba*), *briefly*, I. 44.
- paucitās**, -tātis, F. [paucī], *small number, fewness, small size*.
- paulātim**, adv. [paulum], *little by little, gradually*.
- paulisper**, adv. [paulum], *for a short time*.
- paulō**, adv. [paulus], *by a little, a little*.
- paululum**, adv., *a very little*.
- paulum**, adv. [paulus, *little*], *a little*.
- pāx**, **pācis**, F., *peace*.
- peccō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., *offend, transgress, do wrong*, I. 47.
- pecūnia**, -ae, F. [pecus], *property, money*.
- pecus**, -oris, N., *cattle, flesh of cattle, meat*.
- pedālis**, -e [pēs], *of a foot; a foot* (in dimension), III. 13.
- pedes**, **peditis**, M. [pēs], *foot-soldier; pl., infantry*.
- pedester**, -tris, -tre [pedes], *of infantry; pedestria itinera, approaches by land; pedestrēs cōpiae, infantry*.
- peditātus**, -ūs, M. [pedes], *infantry*.
- Pedius**, -i, M., (Quintus) *Pedius* (pē'di-us), one of Caesar's lieutenants, II. 2.
- pēior**, **pēius** (comp. of **malus**), *worse*.
- pellis**, -is, F., *skin, hide; tent* (made of leather), III. 29.
- pellō**, **pellere**, **pepulī**, **pulsum**, tr., *drive, beat, rout, defeat*.
- pendō**, **pendere**, **pependī**, **pēnsum**, tr., *weigh; w. stipendium, etc., pay*.
- pependī**, see **pendō**.
- per**, prep. w. acc., *through, by, by means of; as prefix, through, thoroughly, very*.
- percontātiō**, -ōnis, F. [percontor, *inquire*], *questioning, inquiry*.

**percurrō, -currere, -cucurrī**  
(-currī), -cursum [per + currō],  
tr., *run along*.

**percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cus-**  
**-sum** [per + quatiō, *shake*],  
*thrust through, strike through*.

**perdiscō, -discere, -dici, —**  
[per + discō], tr., *learn thor-*  
*oughly*.

**perditus, -a, -um, part. as adj.**  
[perdō], *desperate*.

**perducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -duc-**  
**-tum** [per + dūcō], tr., *lead*  
*through, lead safely, bring;*  
*extend, continue; w. mūrus,*  
*construct*.

**pereō, perīre, perīi, peritum**  
[per + eō], intr. (pass away),  
*perish*.

**perequitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**  
[per + equitō], tr. and intr.,  
*ride through, ride about*.

**perfacilis, -e** [per + facilis], *very*  
*easy*.

**perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum**  
[per + ferō], tr. (bear through),  
*carry, bring; report, IV. 21;*  
*suffer, endure, submit to*.

**perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum**  
[per + faciō], tr., *do thoroughly,*  
*accomplish, complete, bring*  
*about*.

**perfidia, -ae, F.** [perfidus],  
*faithlessness, treachery*.

**perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāc-**  
**-tum** [per + frangō], tr., *break*  
*through*.

**perfuga, -ae, M.** [fugiō], *deserter;*  
*prō perfugā, in the character*  
*of a deserter, III. 18*.

**perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugi-**

**tum** [per + fugiō], intr., *flee*  
*for refuge*.

**perfugium, -ī, N.** [perfugiō],  
*place of refuge*.

**pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēc-**  
**-tum** [per + regō], intr., *proceed*  
*directly, advance*.

**periclitor, -ārī, -ātus** [pericu-  
**-lum], dep., try, test, put to the**  
**test**.

**periculōsus, -a, -um** [periculum],  
*full of danger, dangerous,*  
*perilous*.

**periculum, -ī, N., trial, IV. 21;**  
*danger, risk, peril; test, I. 40,*  
*l. 818*.

**perītus, -a, -um, experienced**  
(in), *familiar with, skilled,*  
*skillful*.

**permaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mān-**  
**-sum** [per + maneō], intr., *re-*  
*main*.

**permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mis-**  
**-sum** [per + mittō], tr., *let go,*  
*give up, surrender; intrust;*  
*allow, grant, permit*.

**permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mō-**  
**-tum** [per + moveō], tr., *move*  
*thoroughly, rouse, alarm, in-*  
*fluence*.

**permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsī,**  
**-mulsum** [per + mulceō], tr.,  
*soothe, appease, calm*.

**perniciēs, -ēī, F., destruction,**  
*ruin*.

**perpaucī, -ae, -a** [per + paucī],  
*very few*.

**perpendiculum, -ī, N.** [per-  
**pendō], plumb-line**.

**perpetuus, -a, -um** [per + petō],  
*continuous, whole, constant,*

- incessant, perpetual, permanent; in perpetuum, forever; perpetuō, abl. as adv., constantly, permanently.*
- perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -rump-tum** [per+rumpere], tr. and intr., *break through, get across.*
- persequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum** [per+sequor], dep., *follow after, follow up, pursue.*
- persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [per+sevērus, strict], intr., *persist, continue.*
- persolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtum** [per+solvō], tr. (release completely), *pay.*
- perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spec-tum** [per+speciō], tr., *see through, perceive, observe, see.*
- persuādēō, -suādēre, -suāsi, -suā-sum** [per+suādēō, advise], tr. and intr., *persuade; inculcate, VI. 14.*
- perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territum** [per+terreō], tr., *frighten thoroughly, terrify; timōre perterritus, panic-stricken.*
- pertinācia, -ae, F.** [pertināx], *stubbornness, obstinacy.*
- pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, —, —** [per+teneō], intr., *extend, reach, tend; concern, pertain, belong; eōdem pertinēre, signify the same thing, I. 14.*
- perturbātiō, -ōnis, F.** [perturbō], *disturbance, panic.*
- perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [per+turbō], tr., *disturb, confuse, throw into confusion.*
- pervenio, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum** [per+venio], intr., *come to, arrive at, reach, belong (legally); impers. in pass.*
- pēs, pedis, M., foot.**
- petō, petere, petivī, petitum, tr.,** *seek, ask, beg; aim at, attack; fugam petere, flee; fugā salūtem petere, flee for safety.*
- phalanx, phalangis, F., phalanx,** *a body of soldiers in close array, the first rank holding their shields before them, the others holding theirs horizontally over them.*
- Pictonēs, -um, M. pl., the Pictones** (pik'tō-nēs), *a tribe of western Gaul.*
- pīlum, -ī, N., spear, javelin; see** *Introd. 41.*
- pīlus, -ī, M., a maniple** (of the triarii or veteran soldiers).
- piscis, -is, M., fish.**
- Pisō, -onis, M., Piso** (pī'sō), *a Roman family name; 1. Marcus, consul 61 B.C., I. 2; 2. Lucius, consul 58 B.C., and father-in-law of Caesar, I. 6, 12; 3. Lucius, grandfather of the consul Lucius, slain by the Helvetii, 107 B.C., I. 12; 4. an Aquitanian, IV. 12.*
- placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum,** intr., *please; impers., it pleases.*
- plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, appease.**
- plānitīēs, -ēī, F.** [plānus], *plain, level stretch of country.*
- plānus, -a, -um, flat, level.**
- plēbs, plēbis (or plēbēs, plēbeī)** *F., common people, people*
- plēnē, adv.** [plēnus], *fully.*



**plēnus**, -a, -um, *full*.

**plerique**, **plēraeque**, **plēraque**,  
pl. adj., *very many, most of*.

**plērumque**, adv., *generally, commonly, for the most part*.

**plumbum**, -ī, N., *lead*; **plumbum album**, *tin*.

**plūrimum**, adv., sup. of **multum** (App. 19), *most*; **plūrimum posse**, *be most (or very) powerful, have greatest (or great) influence*.

**plūs**, comp. adj., and adv. [**multus**, App. 16, 18, 19], *more*; pl., *more, many, several*.

**pōculum**, -ī, N., *drinking vessel, cup*.

**poena**, -ae, F. *punishment, penalty*.

**pollex**, **pollicis**, M., *thumb*; **digitus pollex**, *thumb*.

**polliceor**, -ēri, -itus sum [**prō**+**liceor**], dep. (hold forth), *promise*.

**pollicitātiō**, -ōnis, F. [**polliceor**], *promise*.

**Pompēius**, -ī, M., (*Gnaeus*) *Pompeius*, Pompey the great, famous Roman general and statesman, member of triumvirate w. Caesar and Crassus; consul, 55 B.C.; see *Introd.* 12.

**pondus**, **ponderis**, N., *weight*.

**pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posuī**, **positum**, tr., *place, put*; w. **castra**, *pitch*; pass., of countries, towns, *be situated*; w. **certāmen**, *depend*; w. **arma**, *lay down*.

**pōns**, **pontis**, M., *bridge*.

**poposcī**, see **poscō**.

**populātiō**, -ōnis, F. [**populor**], *ravaging*.

**populor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *devastate, lay waste, ravage*.

**populus**, -ī, M., *people, nation*.

**porrigō**, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum [**por** (**prō**)+**regō**], tr., *stretch out, extend*; **porrēcta**, II. 19, *extended*.

**porta**, -ae, F., *gate*.

**portō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *carry*.

**portōrium**, -ī, N., *toll, duty, customs duty*, a tax levied on goods coming into or passing through a territory.

**portus**, -ūs, M., *harbor, port*.

**poscō**, **poscere**, **poposcī**, —, tr., *demand*.

**possessiō**, -ōnis, F. [**possideō**], *possession, property*.

**possideō**, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum [**por** (**prō**)+**sedeō**], tr., *occupy, have possession of*.

**possum**, **posse**, **potuī** [**potis**, *able*+**sum**, App. 42], irr., *be able, can*; usually w. a complementary infinitive; see **plūrimum**, **tantum**.

**post**, adv. and prep., w. acc., *after*.

**postea**, adv. [**post**+**ea**], *afterwards*.

**posteaquam**, conj., *after*.

**posterus**, -a, -um [**post**] (App. 18), *following*; pl. as noun, *posterity, descendants*.

**postpōnō**, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum [**post**+**pōnō**], tr., *place after, disregard*, V. 7.

- postquam, conj. [post+quam], *after*.
- postridiē, adv. [posterus+diēs], *on the day after, the next day; postridiē eius diēi, the next day after that*.
- postulātum, -ī, N. [postulō], *demand*.
- postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *ask, demand, request; require*, II. 22, IV. 23.
- potēns, -entis, adj. [possum], *powerful; potentiōrēs, masc. pl. as noun, the more powerful*, II. 1.
- potentātus, -ūs, M. [potēns], *power, leadership*.
- potentia, -ae, F. [potēns], *power, influence*.
- potestās, -tātis, F. [potis], *power, opportunity; potestātem facere, give an opportunity*.
- potior, -īrī, -ītus sum, dep., *get control of, obtain possession of, secure*.
- potius, adv., *rather, more*.
- prae, prep. w. abl., *before, in front of; in comparison with*. II. 30; as prefix, *before, over*.
- praeacūtus, -a, -um [prae+acūtus], *sharpened, pointed*.
- praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [prae+habeō], tr., *present, furnish, afford, give*.
- praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautum [prae+caveō], intr., *take precaution, be on one's guard*.
- praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [prae+cēdō], tr., *go before, surpass, precede, excel*.
- praeceps, praecipitis (abl. sing., ī, nom. pl., neut., -ia), adj., [prae+caput], *headlong; in great haste*, II. 24; *steep*.
- praecipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [prae+capiō], tr. (take in advance), *direct, order; praecceptum erat, impers., the command had been given*.
- praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [praeceps], tr., *throw headlong*.
- praecipuē, adv. [praecipuus], *especially*.
- Praecōninus, -ī, M., (Lucius Valerius) *Praeconinus* (prēcō-nī'nus), a Roman lieutenant, III. 20.
- praeda, -ae, F., *booty, plunder*.
- praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [prae+dicō], tr., *declare, assert, boast*.
- praedor, -ārī, -ātus sum [praeda], dep. *plunder, pillage*.
- praefectus, -ī, M. [praeficiō], *commander, officer (especially of the cavalry), prefect*.
- praefērō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [prae+ferō], tr., *bear before, place before; sē praeferre*, II. 27, *surpass* (lit. put themselves before).
- praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [prae+faciō], tr., *put before, put over, place in command*.
- praemium, -ī, N. [prae+emō], *reward, advantage, distinction (as a reward)*.
- praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [prae+mittō], tr., *send ahead, send in advance*.
- praeoptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [prae

- +optō], tr., choose rather, prefer.
- praeparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [prae + parō], tr. (make ready beforehand), prepare.
- praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum [prae + pōnō], tr., place over, put in command (of).
- praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum [prae + rumpō, break], tr., break off.
- praeruptus, -a, -um [praerumpō], (broken off), steep, abrupt.
- praesaepiō, -saepire, -saepsī, saeptum [prae + saepiō, hedge], tr., fence in, barricade.
- praescribō, -scribere, -scripsī -scriptum [prae + scribō, write beforehand], tr., prescribe, direct, order.
- praescriptum, -ī, N. [praescribō], direction, order, command.
- praesēns, -entis [praesum], adj., present; sē praesente, in his own presence.
- praesentia, -ae, F. [praesēns], presence; the present; in praesentiā, for the present.
- praesertim, adv., especially.
- praesidium, -ī, N. [praesideō, sit in front of], protection, guard, garrison; source of protection, I. 44; assistance, VI. 14; praesidium pōnō, seek refuge, II. 11.
- praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitum [prae + stō], tr. and intr., stand before, excel, surpass; show, display, II. 27; do, IV. 25; impers., praestat, it is better.
- praesum, praeesse, praefui [prae + sum], intr., be over, have charge of, be in command of.
- praeter, prep. w. acc., except, besides; beyond, by, past, I. 48; contrary to, III. 3; as prefix, by.
- praetereā, adv. [praeter + ea], besides, furthermore.
- praetereō, -ire, -ivī (-iī), -itum [praeter + eō], tr. and intr., go by, pass over, omit; praeterita, w. diēs, having passed; praeterita, -ōrum, as noun, the past ("by-gones").
- praetermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -misum [praeter + mittō], tr., let go by, lose.
- praeterquam, adv., except, besides.
- praetor, -ōris, M. [prae + eō] (one who goes ahead), commander, general; prō praetōre, with the power of general, I. 21. (The usual meaning of praetor, a Roman judge, is not found in Caesar).
- praetōrius, -a, -um [praetor], of a general; praetōria cohors, general's body-guard.
- premō, premere, pressī, pressum, tr., press, press hard, oppress; pass., be burdened, etc.
- prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsūm, tr., grasp, seize.
- pretium, -ī, N., price.
- prex, precis, F. (nom. and gen. sing. not used), prayer, entreaty.
- prīdiē, adv., the day before.
- prīmipīlus, -ī, M. [prīmus +

- pīlus**, *chief centurion* (of a legion); see *Introd.* 37.
- prīmō**, adv. [*prīmus*], *at first*.
- prīmum**, adv. [*prīmus*], *first, in the first place; quam prīmum, as soon as possible; cum prīmum, as soon as*.
- prīmus**, -a, -um (*App.* 18 and 20), *first; in prīmīs, especially*.
- prīnceps**, **prīncipis**, adj., *first in order, chief; as noun, chief, leader*.
- prīncipātus**, -ūs, M. [*prīnceps*], *first place, leadership*.
- prior**, **prius** (*App.* 18), *former, preceding, first; priōrēs, masc. pl. as noun, those in front*.
- prīstinus**, -a, -um [*cf. prius*], *former, previous*.
- priusquam**, conj. [*prius+quam*], *before; often written prius . . . quam*.
- prīvātīm**, adv. [*prīvātus*], *as an individual, as a private citizen, privately*.
- prīvātus**, -a, -um [*prīvō, deprive*], *personal, individual, private*.
- prō**, prep. w. abl., *before, for, as, in behalf of, in view of, considering, in proportion to, in comparison with, instead of, in accordance with, II. 31; as prefix, forth, forward, before*.
- probō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *prove, approve, approve of, show; be satisfied with, IV. 21*.
- prōcēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [*prō+cēdō*], intr., *go forward, go on, advance, proceed*.
- Procillus**, -ī, M. (*Gaius Valerius*) *Procillus* (prō-sil'us), *a young Gaul, in the service of Caesar, I. 47, 53*.
- prōcōnsul**, -is, M., *proconsul, governor of a province*.
- procul**, adv., *at a distance*.
- prōcumbō**, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum [*prō+cumbō, recline*], intr., *fall forward, sink down; incline, IV. 17; lie down, VI. 27*.
- prōcūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [*prō+cūrō*], tr., *take care of, attend to*.
- prōcurrō**, -currere, -curri, -cursum [*prō+currō*], intr., *run forward, charge*.
- prōdeō**, -īre, -īvī (-īī), -itum [*prō+eō*], intr., *go forward, advance*.
- prōditor**, -ōris, M. [*prōdō*], *traitor*.
- prōdō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum [*prō+dō*], tr., *transmit, hand down (as a tradition), publish; betray, abandon, IV. 25*.
- prōdūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [*prō+dūcō*], tr., *lead forth; prolong*.
- proelior**, -ārī, -ātus sum [*proelium*], dep., *fight*.
- proelium**, ī, N., *battle*.
- profectiō**, -ōnis, F. [*proficīscor*], *setting out, departure*.
- profectus**, see *proficīscor*.
- prōfectus**, see *prōficiō*.
- prōferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [*prō+ferō*], tr., *bring out*.
- prōficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [*prō+faciō*], tr. and intr., *accomplish; gain advantage*.

**proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus**  
sum, dep., *set out, depart.*

**profiteor, -fītērī, -fessus sum**  
[pro+fateor, *confess*], dep.,  
*declare publicly, volunteer*, VI.  
23.

**prōfligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,**  
*defeat, rout, overcome.*

**prōfluō, -fluere, -fluxī, —**  
[prō+fluō], intr., *flow forth,*  
*rise (of rivers).*

**profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum**  
[pro+fugiō], intr., *flee,*  
*escape.*

**prōgnātus, -a, -um** [prō+nāscor]  
*descended, sprung (from).*

**prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum**  
[prō+gradior], dep., *go for-*  
*ward, advance, proceed.*

**prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum**  
[prō+habeō], tr., *keep*  
*from, prohibit, prevent, hinder,*  
*restrain.*

**prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum**  
[prō+iaciō], tr., *throw in*  
*front, cast, throw down; throw*  
*away, abandon, give up*, II.  
15.

**prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum**  
[prō+mittō], tr., *let go;*  
**prōmissus, w. capillus** (let  
grow), *long, flowing.*

**prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum**  
[prō+moveō], tr., *move*  
*forward.*

**prōmptus, -a, -um, ready, quick.**

**prōmunturium, -ī, N., headland.**

**prōnē, adv. [prōnus], bending**  
*forward, inclined.*

**prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**  
[prō+nūntiō], tr., *declare, tell.*

**prope, prep. w. acc., near; adv.,**  
*near, near by, almost.*

**prōpellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum**  
[prō+pellō], tr., *drive off, put*  
*to flight.*

**properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**  
[properus], intr., *make haste,*  
*hasten.*

**propinquitās, -tātis, F. [propinquus], nearness; kinship,**  
*ties of blood*, II. 4.

**propinquus, -a, -um** [prope],  
*near; as noun, kinsman,*  
*relative; propinqua, female*  
*relative.*

**propius, comp. of prope.**

**prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, tr., set forth, declare,**  
*relate, explain; display*, II.  
20; *pass., present itself*, IV. 17.

**proprius, -a, -um** [prope], *one's*  
*own, private, peculiar, char-*  
*acteristic; a proof of*, VI. 23.

**propter, prep. w. acc., on ac-**  
*count of.*

**propterea, adv. [propter+ea],**  
*for this reason; propterea*  
*quod, for the reason that.*

**prōpūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**  
[prō+pūgnō], intr. (*fight in*  
*front*), *sally forth, attack*, III.  
4; *pres. part. as noun,*  
*defender.*

**prōpulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**  
[prōpellō], tr., *drive back,*  
*repel, ward off.*

**prōra, -ae, F., prow.**

**prōruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum**  
[prō+ruō], tr., *demolish, tear*  
*down.*

**prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus** [prō+



- sequor], dep., *pursue, follow*;  
 orātiōne prōsequī, *address*,  
 II. 5.
- prōspectus, -ūs, M., *view, sight*.  
 prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spec-  
 tum [prō+speciō], tr. and  
 intr., *look forward, look out*  
*for, provide for, take pre-*  
*caution*.
- prōsternō, -sternere, -strāvī,  
 -strātum [prō+sternō], tr.,  
*prostrate, overthrow*.
- prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum  
 [prō+tegō], tr., *protect*.
- prōterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [prō+  
 terreō], tr., *frighten away*.
- prōtinus, adv., *forthwith, at*  
*once, immediately*.
- prōturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [prō+  
 turbō, *disturb*], tr., *drive away*,  
 II. 19; *repulse*.
- prōvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum  
 [prō+vehō], tr., *carry for-*  
*ward*; prōvectae, *putting out*  
*(of ships)*, IV. 28.
- prōventus, -ūs, M. [prōveniō],  
*outcome, issue*.
- prōvideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum  
 [pro+videō], tr., *foresee, pro-*  
*vide*; pass. impers., *it is*  
*provided, provision is made*.
- prōvincia, -ae, F., *province*;  
 especially the Roman prov-  
 ince of Transalpine Gaul, or  
 Gallia Narbonensis, the valley  
 of the lower Rhone extending  
 from the Alps southwestward  
 to the Pyrenees and Cévennes,  
 and northward to Lake  
 Geneva; see Introd. 14.
- prōvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [prō+  
 volō, *fly*], intr. (*fly forth*),  
*dash forth, rush out*.
- proximē, adv. [prope, App. 19],  
*next, nearest, last*.
- proximus, -a, -um [prope, App.  
 18], *nearest, next, last*.
- prūdētia, -ae, F. [prūdēns=  
 prōvidēns], *wisdom*.
- Ptiānī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the*  
*Ptiani* (ti-ā'ni-i), a tribe in  
 Aquitania.
- pūblicē, adv. [pūblicus], *publicly*  
*as a tribe, as a nation*, IV. 3.
- pūblicus, -a, -um [populus], *of*  
*the people, of the state, public*;  
 rēs pūblica, *state, republic*,  
*affairs of state*, I. 34; in  
 pūblicum, *in public view*.
- Pūblius, -ī, M., *Publius* (pub'-  
 li-us), a Roman personal  
 name.
- pudor, pudōris, M., *shame, sense*  
*of shame*.
- puer, puerī, M., *boy*; pl., *child-*  
*dren*; ā pueris, *from child-*  
*hood*.
- puerilis, -e [puer], *of a boy*,  
*boyish*.
- pūgna, -ae, F., *fight, battle*; ad  
 pūgnam, *in fighting, for fight-*  
*ing*.
- pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [pūgna],  
 intr., *fight*; pass. impers.,  
 pūgnātur, *fighting goes on*,  
*they fight, the battle is fought*.
- pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beauti-*  
*ful, noble, glorious*.
- Pullō, -ōnis, M., *Pullo* (pul'ō),  
 a centurion, V. 44.
1. pulsus, -ūs, M. [pellō], *stroke*.
  2. pulsus, -a, -um, part. of pellō.



pulvis, pulveris, M., *dust*.

puppis, -is, F., *stern*.

pūrgātus, -a, -um, part. as adj.  
[pūrgō], *excused, exonerated, blameless*.

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,  
*clear, excuse; sē pūrgāre, apologize*.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *reckon think, suppose*.

Pŷrēnaeus, -a, -um, w. montēs,  
*the Pyrenees, I. 1*.

## Q

Q., see Quīntus.

quā, see quis.

quā, adv. [quī], *by which way, where*.

quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a, dist. num.  
adj., *forty each, forty at a time*.

quadrāgintā, indecl. adj., *forty*.

Quadrātus, -ī, M., *Quadratus*  
(kwod-rā'tus); see Volu-  
sēnus.

quadringentī, -ae, -a, *four hun-  
dred*.

quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī,  
quaesitum, tr., *seek, ask, inquire, consider*.

quaestiō, -ōnis, F. [quaerō],  
*investigation, inquiry*.

quaestor, -ōris, M. [quaerō],  
*quaestor, quartermaster of the army; see Introd. 35*.

quaestus, -ūs, M. [quaerō],  
*gaining, gain*.

quālis, -e, *of what sort? what?*

quam, adv. and conj., *how? as; w. comparatives, than;*

*w. superlatives, as . . . as possible*.

quam ob rem, interrog. phrase,  
*for what reason? wherefore? why?* rel. phrase, *on account of which, wherefore, why*.

quamquam, conj., *although*.

quamvis, adv., *however*.

quandō, adv., *at any time, ever; sī quandō, whenever, III. 12*.

quantus, -a, -um, *how great, how much; as great as, as much as; correl. w. tantus, as; quantō opere, how greatly; quantum, as adv., as, as far as, IV. 17*.

quārē, adv. [quā+rē], *wherefore, why, for which; therefore, and therefore*.

quārtus, -a, -um [quattuor],  
*fourth*.

quattuor, indecl. adj., *four*.

quattuordecim, indecl. adj.,  
*fourteen*.

-que, enclitic conj., *and; to be translated before the word to which it is attached*.

queror, querī, questus sum, dep., *complain, complain of, bewail*.

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, that*.

quicquam, see quisquam.

quicquid, see quisquis.

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. rel. pron. and adj., *whoever, whatever*.

quid, see quis.

quidam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam), indef. pron. and

- adj., *a certain*; pl., *certain, some*.
- quidem**, adv., *indeed*; **nē . . . quidem**, *not even*, emphasizing a word or phrase standing between **nē** and **quidem**.
- quiēs**, **quiētis**, F., *rest, sleep*.
- quīn**, conj. [**quī**, abl. + **ne**, *by which not*], *that, but that, from*; see **temperō**; **quīn etiam**, *furthermore, in fact*.
- quīndecim**, indecl. adj., *fifteen*.
- quīngentī**, -ae, -a, *five hundred*.
- quīnī**, -ae, -a, dist. num. adj., *five at a time, five each*.
- quīnquāgintā**, indecl. adj., *fifty*.
- quīnque**, indecl. adj., *five*.
- quīntus**, -a, -um [**quīnque**], *fifth*.
- Quīntus**, -ī, M., *Quintus* (kwin'tus), a Roman personal name.
1. **quis** (**quī**), **quid**, indef. pron. (App. 27), *any one, anything, some*; as adj., **quī**, **quae** (**qua**), **quod**, *any*; used chiefly after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**.
2. **quis**, **quid**, interrog. pron. (App. 26), *who? which? what?* as adj., **quī**, **quae**, **quod**, *which? what?* as adv., **quid**, *why?*
- quisnam**, **quidnam**, interrog. pron., *who, pray? what, pray?* adj., **quīnam**, **quae-nam**, **quodnam**, *what?* (possible), II. 30.
- quispiam**, **quaepiam**, **quidpiam** (**quodpiam**), indef. pron. (App. 27), *any one (at all), anything*.
- quisquam**, **quicquam**, indef. pron. (App. 27), *any one (at all), anything, any*; chiefly in negative sentences, or in questions implying a negative answer.
- quisque**, **quidque**, indef. pron. (App. 27), *each one, every one, each*; as adj., **quisque**, **quaeque**, **quodque**, *each, every, any*; **quisque nōbilissimus**, *all the nobles*.
- quisquis**, **quicquid** (**quidquid**), compound rel. pron., *whoever, whatever*, II. 17; only forms in common use are **quisquis**, **quicquid**, **quodquod**.
- quīvis**, **quaevis**, **quidvis** (**quodvis**), indef. pron. and adj., *any one, whatever, anything whatever; any whatever*, II. 31.
1. **quō**, conj. [= **ut eō**] (*that thereby*), *that, in order that*, used w. comparatives, App. 135, *a*; **quō minus**, or **quōminus** (*by which the less*), *that not, so that not*, IV. 22; *from (doing anything)*, App. 145, *e*.
2. **quō**, adv. [**quī**] *where; to any place, anywhere*, I. 48, l. 1051; *whither, to which*, II. 7, 16; *into which*, IV. 1; *in what respect*, VI. 11.
- quoad**, conj. [**quō**+**ad**], *as long as, until*.
- quod**, conj., *because, that, the fact that, as to the fact that*; **quod sī**, *and if, but if*.
- quōminus**, see 1. **quō**.
- quoniam**, conj. [**quom** (= **cum**)

+iam], (since now), *since, because, seeing that.*  
**quoque**, adv., *also.*  
**quodqueversus**, adv., *in all directions.*  
**quot**, indecl. adj., *as many as; how many?*  
**quotannis**, adv. [quot+annus], *every year, yearly.*  
**quotiēns**, adv. [quot], *how often? as often as.*

## R

**rādīx**, **rādīcis**, F., *root, base.*  
**rādō**, **rādere**, **rāsī**, **rāsum**, tr., *scrape, shave,*  
**raeda** (**rēda**), -ae, F., *wagon*  
*(with four wheels).*  
**rāmus**, -ī, M., *branch.*  
**rapiditās**, -tātis, F. [rapidus], *swiftness.*  
**rapīna**, -ae, F. [rapiō, seize], *plundering, robbery.*  
**rārus**, -a, -um, *far apart, scattered, in scattered groups.*  
**ratiō**, -ōnis, F. [reot, think], *reckoning, consideration, account, list, I. 29; reason, plan, way, method, system, theory, principles, IV. 23; strategy, I. 40; aliā ratiōne, on (any) other terms, I. 42.*  
**ratis**, -is, F., *raft.*  
**Rauracī**, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Rauraci (rā'ra-sī), neighbors and allies of the Helvetii, I. 5, 29.*  
**re-**, (red-), prefix, *back, again.*  
**rebelliō**, -ōnis, F. [re+bellum], *renewal of war, rebellion.*

**Rebilus**, -ī, M., *Rebilus (reb'i-lus); see Canīnius.*  
**recēns**, -entis, adj., *fresh, new, recent.*  
**receptus**, -ūs, M. [recipiō], *retreat, place of retreat.*  
**recipiō**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [re+capiō], tr., *take back, receive, admit; sē recipere, withdraw, retire, retreat, recover, II. 12, III. 4.*  
**reclīnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [re+clīnō, lean], tr., *lean back; w. sē or pass., recline.*  
**rēctē**, adv. [rēctus], *rightly, properly.*  
**rēctus**, -a, -um [regō], *straight.*  
**recuperō**, -āre, -āvī, -atum, tr., *recover, regain.*  
**recūsō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [causa], tr. and intr., *refuse, decline, give up; object, V. 6.*  
**redāctus**, part. of **redigō**.  
**reddō**, **reddere**, **reddidī**, **redditum** [re(d)+dō], tr., *give back, return; render, II. 5, VII. 90; grant, VI. 13; pay, offer, VI. 16.*  
**redēemptus**, part. of **redimō**.  
**redeō**, -īre, -ivī (-iī), -itum [re(d)+eō], intr., *go back, return.*  
**redigō**, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, [re(d)+agō], tr., *drive back; bring, reduce, I. 45, II. 14, etc., render, make, II. 27.*  
**redimō**, -imere, -ēmī, -ēemptum [re(d)+emō], tr., *buy back, buy up; w. pācem, etc., secure.*  
**redintegrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum

- [re(d)+integer], tr., *renew, restore*.
- reditiō, -ōnis, F. [redeō], *a going back, returning*.
- reditus, -ūs, M. [redeō], *return*.
- Redonēs, -um, M. pl., *the Redones* (red'ō-nēz), a tribe of north-western Gaul.
- redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [re+dūcō], tr., *bring back, lead back*.
- referō, referre, rettulī, relātum [re+ferō], tr., *bring back, carry back, report; pedem referre, retreat; see grātia*.
- reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [re+faciō], tr., *make over, repair; sē reficere, recover strength*.
- refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -fractum [re+frangō], tr., *break open, break down*.
- Rēgīnus, -ī, M., *Reginus* (rejī'nus); see *Antistius*.
- regiō, -ōnis, F. [regō], *direction, boundary, territory region, district, country; rēcta regiō, a straight line*.
- rēgnum, -ī, N. [rēx], *royal power; supreme power*.
- regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, tr., *rule, direct, control; of ships, manage*.
- rēiciō, rēicere, rēiēcī, rēiectum [re+iaciō], tr., *throw back, drive back, repulse*.
- relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languī, — [re+languēscō], intr., *become feeble, weaken*.
- relātus, see *referō*.
- relictus, part. of *relinquō*.
- religiō, -ōnis, F. [re+ligō, bind], *religious scruple, sense of obligation, religion; pl., matters of religion*.
- relinquō, -linquere, -liquī, -licitum [re+linquō, leave], tr., *leave behind, leave, abandon; pass., be left, remain*.
- reliquus, -a, -um, *remaining, the rest of, left, other*, II. 15, 17.
- remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsū [re+maneō], intr., *remain, stay*.
- rēmex, rēmigis, M. [rēmus], *oarsman, rower*.
- Rēmī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Remi* (rē'mī), a tribe of Belgae on the Aisne, II. 3, etc.; cf. modern Rheims.
- remigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [re+migrō], intr., *return*.
- reminiscor, -miniscī, —, dep. [cf. mēns], *call to mind, recall, remember*.
- remissus, -a, -um [remittō], *relaxed, mild*, V. 12.
- remittō, -mittere, -misī, -missum [re+mittō], tr., *send back, give up, relax*, II. 15; *hurl back*, II. 27; w. *stipendium*, *discontinue*.
- remollēscō, -ere, —, — [re+mollēscō, grow soft], intr., *lose strength*.
- removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum [re+moveō], tr., *move back, take away, remove; remōtus, distant, remote*.
- remūneror, -ārī, -ātus [re+mūnus], dep., *repay, reward, remunerate*.

**rēmus**, -ī, M., *oar*.

**Rēmus**, -ī, M., *one of the Remi*.

**renovō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [re+novō], tr., *renew*.

**renūntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [re+nūntiō], tr. (bring back word), *report*.

**repellō**, repellere, reppulī, repulsum [re+pellō], tr., *drive back, repulse*.

**repente**, adv., *suddenly*.

**repentīnō**, adv. [repentīnus], *suddenly*.

**repentīnus**, -a, -um, *unexpected, sudden, hasty*.

**reperiō**, reperire, repperī, reperitum [re+pariō, procure], tr., *find out, find* (by seeking or inquiring); *secure*, I. 53, 1124; **reperitī sunt complūrēs**, *there were many*, I. 52; *originate*, VI. 13.

**repetō**, -petere, -petivī, -petitum [re+petō], tr., *seek again, demand back*; *w. poenās, inflict*.

**reportō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [re+portō], tr., *carry back*.

**reppulī**, see repellō.

**repraesentō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [praesēns], tr., *do at once*.

**reprehendō**, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus, [re+prehendō], tr., *blame*, I. 20.

**reprimō**, -primere, -pressī, -pressum [re+premō], tr., *check, prevent*.

**repudiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *reject, spurn*.

**repūgnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [re+pūgnō], intr. (fight back),

*resist, be in opposition, weigh against*.

**repulsus**, part. of repellō.

**rēs**, rei, F., *thing, fact*; a more definite meaning is generally suggested by the context, *circumstance, situation, consideration, argument, plan, undertaking, event, incident, matter, question, conflict*; see **novus, pūbicus, militāris**.

**rescindō**, -scindere, -scidi, -scissum [re+scindo], tr., *break down, destroy*.

**resciscō**, -sciscere, -scivī (-scii), -scitum [re+sciscō, inquire], tr., *learn, find out*.

**rescribō**, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum [re+scribō], tr., *enroll*.

**reservō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [re+servō], tr., *keep back, reserve*.

**resideō**, -sidēre, -sēdī, — [re+sedeō], intr., *remain, be left*.

**resistō**, -sistere, -stitī, —, intr. (stand back), *withstand, oppose, resist*; **minimē resistēns**, *by no means sturdy*, III. 19.

**respicō**, -spicere, -spexī, -specitum [re+speciō], tr. and intr., *look back; have regard for, consider*.

**respondeō**, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum [re+spondeō, promise], tr. and intr., *answer, reply*.

**respōnsum**, -ī, N. [respondeō], *reply, answer*.

**rēs pūblica**, see **pūbicus**.



respuō, -spuere, -spuī, —  
 [re+spuō, *spit*], tr., *reject*.  
 restitī, see resistō.  
 restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitutum [re+statuō], tr. (set up again), *restore, renew*.  
 retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [re+teneō], tr., *hold back, detain, keep, retain, arrest*.  
 retrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctum [re+trahō], tr., *bring back*.  
 revellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum [re+vellō], tr., *tear away, pull away*.  
 revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum [re+vertō], intr., *turn back, return*; revertor, -ī, dep., is generally used in the present system.  
 revinciō, -vincire, -vīnxi, -vīnctum [re+vinciō], tr., *bind fast*.  
 revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [re+vocō], tr., *call back*.  
 rēx, rēgis, M., *king, chieftain*.  
 Rhēnus, -ī, M., *the Rhine*, I. 1, 2, 5, 27, etc.  
 Rhodanus, -ī, M., *the Rhone*, I. 1, 2, 6, 8, etc.  
 rīpa, -ae, F., *bank* (of a river).  
 rōbur, rōboris, N., *oak*.  
 rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *ask, request, beg*; *invite*, I. 44.  
 Rōma, -ae, F., *Rome*, I. 31.  
 Rōmānī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Romans*.  
 Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman*.  
 rōstrum, -ī, N. [rōdō, *gnaw*], *beak* (of bird or of ship).  
 rota, -ae, F., *wheel*.

rubus, -ī, M., *bramble*.  
 Rūfus, -ī, M., *Rufus*; see Sulpicus.  
 rūmor, -ōris, M., *report, rumor*.  
 rūpēs, -is, F. [rumpō], *rock, cliff*.  
 rūrsus, adv. [reversus], *again, in turn*.  
 Rutēnī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Ruteni* (rō-tē'nī), a Gallic tribe south of the Arverni, I. 45.  
 Rutilus, -ī, M., *Rutilus* (rō'ti-lus); see Semprōnius.

## S

Sabīnus, -ī, M., *Sabinus* (sa-bī-nus); see Titūrius.  
 Sabis, Sabis, M., *the Sabis* (sā'bis), modern *Sambre*, tributary of the Meuse, II. 16.  
 sacrificium, -ī, N., *sacrifice, offering*.  
 saepe, adv., *often*; minimē saepe, *very seldom*; saepius, I. 32, *repeatedly*.  
 saepenumērō, adv., *often*.  
 saepēs, -is, F., *hedge*.  
 saeviō, saevire, saevī, saevitum [saevus], intr., *rage, blow fiercely*.  
 sagitta, -ae, F., *arrow*.  
 sagittārius, -ī, M. [sagitta], *archer, bowman*.  
 salūs, salūtis, F. (health), *safety, welfare*.  
 sancīō, sancire, sānxi, sanctum, tr. (make sacred), *solemnly agree, ordain, establish*.  
 sāctus, -a, -um [sancīō], *sacred*.



**sānitās, -tātis, F.** [sānus], (soundness of body or mind), *good sense*.

**Santonēs, -um, or Santonī, -ōrum, M.,** *the Santones, Santoni* (san'tō-nez, san'tō-nī), a tribe in western Gaul, on the Bay of Biscay, I. 10, etc.

**sānus, -a, -um,** *sound* (in mind or body); **prō sānō,** *as a sane man*.

**sarcina, -ae, F.** [sarciō], *pack, baggage*; see *Introd. 42*.

**sarmentum, -ī, N.** [sarpō, *trim*], *twig, branch*; pl., *fatots*.

**satis, indecl. adj.,** often used as a noun, *enough, sufficient*; **habēre satis,** *hold or consider (it) enough*; adv., *sufficiently, quite, very*.

**satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum** [satis+faciō], tr., *do enough, satisfy, make amends, apologize*.

**satisfactiō, -ōnis, F.** [satisfaciō], *apology*.

**saucius, -a, -um,** *wounded*.

**saxum, -ī, N.,** *rock, large stone*.

**scālae, -ārum, F.** [scandō], *scaling-ladder*.

**scapha, -ae, F.,** *skiff, light boat*.

**scelerātus, -a, -um** [scelus], (crime-stained), *criminal*.

**scelus, sceleris, N.,** *crime*.

**scientia, -ae, F.** [sciō], *knowledge*.

**scindō, scindere, scidī, scisum, tr.,** *break down, demolish*.

**sciō, scīre, scivī, scītum, tr.,** *know*.

**scribō, scribere, scripsī, scriptum, tr.,** *write*.

**scrobis, -is, M. and F.,** *ditch, pit*.

**scūtum, -ī, N.,** *shield*.

**sē, see suī.**

**sēcrētō, adv.** [sēcrētus], *separately, secretly, privately*.

**sectiō, -ōnis, F.** [secō] (a cutting, hence a division of spoils in battle), *booty*.

**sectūra, -ae, F.** [secō], *quarry*.

**sēcum = cum sē.**

**secundum, prep. w. acc.** [sequor], *following, along; according to; besides*, I. 33.

**secundus, -a, -um** [sequor] (following), *second, favorable, successful*; **secundiōrēs rēs,** *more favorable circumstances, greater prosperity*.

**secūris, -is, F.** [secō, *cut*], *ax; pl., power, authority* (a bundle of rods containing an ax being an emblem of authority in Rome).

**sed, conj.,** *but*.

**sēdecim, indecl. adj.** [sex+decem], *sixteen*.

**sēdēs, sēdis, F.** [sedeō, *sit*], *seat, abode; home, settlement*, I. 31.

**sēditiōsus, -a, -um** [sēditiō] (full of discord), *mutinous, seditious, revolutionary*.

**Sedulius, -ī, M.,** *Sedulius* (sedū'li-us), leader of the Lemovices.

**Sedūnī, -ōrum, M. pl.,** *the Seduni* (se-dū'nī), an Alpine tribe.

**Sedusiī, -ōrum, M. pl.,** *the*

- Sedusii* (se-dū'shi-ī), a tribe of Germans allied with Ariovistus, I. 51.
- Segusiāvī, -ōrum**, M. pl., the *Segusiavi* (sē-gū-shi-ā'vī), a Gallic tribe west of the Allobroges, I. 10.
- semel**, adv., *once; ut semel, when once, as soon as.*
- sēmentis, -is**, F. [sēmen, *seed*], *sowing, planting.*
- semper**, adv., *always.*
- Semprōnius, -ī**, M., *Sempronius* (sem-prō'ni-us), name of a Roman gens; *Sempronius Rutilus*, one of Caesar's officers.
- senātor, -ōris**, M. [senex], *senator.*
- senātus, -ūs**, M. [senex], *senate, council of elders.*
- senex, senis**, M. (App. 10), *old man.*
- sēnī, -ae, -a**, dist. num. adj., *six at a time, six each.*
- Senonēs, -um**, M. pl., the *Senones* (sen'ō-nēz), a Gallic tribe on the Seine, II. 2, etc.
- sententia, -ae**, F. [sentiō], (way of thinking), *opinion, decision, determination; meaning, effect*, I. 45.
- sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsū**, tr., *feel, think, perceive, see.*
- sentis, -is**, M., *brier, thorn.*
- sēparātim**, adv., *separately, privately.*
- sēparātus, -a, -um** [sēparō], *separate.*
- septem**, indecl. adj., *seven.*
- septentriō, -ōnis**, M., usually pl. (seven plough-oxen, the seven stars forming the "dipper," in the Great Bear), *the north; sub septentriōnibus* (under the north stars), *in the north; in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem, towards the northeast*, I. 1.
- septimus, -a, -um** [septem], *seventh.*
- septingentī, -ae, -a**, *seven hundred.*
- septuāgintā**, indecl. adj., *seventy.*
- sepultūra, -ae**, F. [sepeliō, *bury*], *burial.*
- Sēquana, -ae**, F., *the Seine* (sān), a river of Gaul, I. 1.
- Sēquanī, -ōrum**, M. pl., the *Sequani* (sek'wā-nī), *Sequani-ans*, a tribe of eastern Gaul, west of the Helvetii, I. 1, 2, 3, etc.
- Sēquanus, -a, -um**, *of the Sequani, Sequanian; masc. as noun, a Sequanian.*
- sequor, sequī, secūtus sum**, dep., *follow, seek; w. poena, I. 4, be inflicted upon.*
- Ser**, see *Servius*.
- sermō, -ōnis**, M. [serō, *join*], *speech, conversation.*
- serō, serere, sēvī, satum**, tr., *sow, plant.*
- Sertōrius, -ī**, M., *Sertorius* (sēr-tō'ri-us), a Roman general, III. 23.
- servilis, -e** [servus], *of a slave; of the slaves*, I. 40.
- serviō, -īre, -iī, -itum** [servus], intr., *be a slave, serve, give heed to.*

**servitūs**, -tūtis, F. [servus], *slavery*.

**Servius**, -ī, M., *Servius*, a Roman personal name.

**servō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *guard, protect, watch*; w. **ordinēs**, etc., *keep, maintain*.

**servus**, -ī, M., *slave*.

**sēsē**, see **suī** (App. 21).

**sēsquipedālis**, -e [sēsqui-, one-and-a-half, **pedālis**], a foot-and-a-half in thickness, IV. 17.

**sētius** [or **sēcius**], adv., comp., *less*; **nihilō sētius**, *nevertheless, in addition*, IV. 17; strengthens **tamen** in V. 7.

**seu**, conj., see **sive**.

**sēvocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [sē, away **vocō**], tr., *call away, draw away, call aside*.

**sex**, indecl. adj., *six*.

**sexāgintā**, indecl. adj., *sixty*.

**sexcentī**, -ae, -a [sex + centum], *six hundred*.

**Sextius**, -ī, M., *Sextius* (seks'-ti-us), name of a Roman gens; *Titus Sextius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

**sī**, conj., *if*.

**Sibusātēs**, -um, M. pl., *the Sibusates* (sib-ū-sā'tez), an Aquitanian tribe.

**sīc**, adv., *so, in such a manner, as follows*, II. 4.

**siccitās**, -tātis, F. [siccus], *dryness*.

**sīcut**, or **sīcutī**, conj. [sīc + ut], *just as; as it were*.

**sīdus**, **sīderis**, N., *heavenly body, constellation*.

**sīgnifer**, **sīgniferī**, M. [sīgnum + ferō], *standard-bearer*.

**sīgnificātiō**, -ōnis, F. [sīgnificō], *signal*.

**sīgnificō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [sīgnum + faciō], tr., *indicate*.

**sīgnum**, -ī, N. *standard, signal*; see **ferō**.

**silentium**, -ī, N. [silēns], *silence*.

**Silius**, -ī, M., *Titus Silius* (sil'i-us), a Roman officer.

**silva**, -ae, F., *forest, woods*.

**silvestris**, -e [silva], *overgrown with woods, wooded*, II. 18.

**similis**, -e, *similar, like*.

**simul**, adv., *at the same time, at once*, IV. 24; *as soon as*, IV. 26; **simul atque**, *as soon as*, IV. 27; **simul . . . simul**, *partly . . . partly*.

**simulācrum**, -ī, N. [simulō], *likeness, image*.

**simulātiō**, -ōnis, F. [simulō], *pretense, deceit*; w. **rei frūmentāriae**, *a pretended anxiety about (for)*, I. 40.

**simulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [similis], tr. (make like), *feign, pretend*.

**simultās**, -tātis, F. [simul], *rivalry, jealousy*.

**sīn**, conj. [sī + ne], *but if*.

**sine**, prep. w. abl., *without*.

**singillātīm**, adv. [singulī], *individually*.

**singulāris**, -e [singulī], *unique, unparalleled, matchless, extraordinary*; *one at a time*, IV. 26.

**singulī**, -ae, -a, dist. num. adj., *one at a time, one by*

- one, one each, single, several,  
II. 17.
- sinister, -tra, -trum, *left* (opposed to dexter, *right*); sinistra (sc. manus), *left hand*.
- sinistrōrsus, adv. [sinister], *toward the left*.
- situs, -ūs, M., *location, situation, site*.
- sive [or seu], conj., *or if*; sive . . . sive, *whether . . . or, either . . . or*.
- socer, -erī, M., *father-in-law*.
- socius, -ī, M., *partner, associate, ally*.
- sōl, sōlis, M., *sun*; oriēns sōl, *the east*.
- soldurius, -ī, M., *retainers, vassals*.
- soleō, solēre, solitus sum, semi-dep., *be accustomed*.
- sōlitūdō, -inis, F. [sōlus], *wilderness*.
- sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [sollicitus, *agitated*], tr., *stir up, incite, tempt, induce, instigate*.
- solum, adv. [sōlus], *only*; nōn solum . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but also*.
- solum, -ī, N., *soil, ground*.
- sōlus, -a, -um (App. 12), *alone, only*.
- solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum, tr., *loosen*; set sail, IV. 28; nāvēs solvere, *set sail*.
- soror, -ōris, F., *sister*; soror ex mātre, *half-sister*.
- sors, sortis, F., *lot, casting lots*.
- Sōtiātēs, -um, M. pl., *the Sotiates* (sō-shi-ā'tēz), a tribe in Aquitania.
- spatium, -ī, N., *space, distance, period of time, time, period*, VI. 17.
- speciēs, speciēī, F. [speciō], *appearance*; ad speciem, *for show*.
- spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr., *look, face, lie*; look at, consider, I. 45.
- speculātor, -ōris, M. [speculor], *spy*.
- speculātōrius, -a, -um [speculātor], *of spies*; speculātōrium nāvīgium, *spy boat*.
- speculor, -ārī, -ātus [specula, *watch-tower*], dep. *spy out, watch, explore*.
- spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [spēs], tr., *hope, expect*.
- spēs, speī, F., *hope*; summam (māgnam) in spem venīre, *have highest (great) hope*; in extrēmā spē (lit. at the end of hope), *in utter despair*, II. 27, 33.
- spīritus, -ūs, M. [spīrō, *breathe*] (breath), *spirit, disposition*; pl., *pride, arrogance*.
- spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *deprive*.
- sponte, F. (abl. of obsolete spōns), *of one's own accord*.
- stabilitās, -tātis, F. [stabilis], *steadiness, stability*.
- statim, adv. [stō], *on the spot, at once, immediately*.
- statiō, -ōnis, F. [stō], (standing), *outpost, picket*, II. 18; guard; in statiōne, *on guard*, IV. 32.
- statuō, statuere, statuī, statū-

- tum**, tr., *set, place, establish; determine, decide.*
- statūra**, -ae, F. [stō], *stature, height.*
- status**, -ūs, M. [stō], *state, condition, status.*
- stimulus**, -ī, M. *goad; pointed stake.*
- stipendiārius**, -a, -um [stīpen-dium], (tax-paying), *tributary, under tribute; masc. pl. as noun, tributaries, subjects.*
- stipendium**, -ī, N. [stips, gift in money + pendō], *tribute.*
- stō**, stāre, stetī, statum, intr., *stand; abide by, VI. 13.*
- strepitus**, -ūs, M. [strepō], *noise, uproar.*
- studeō**, -ēre, -uī, —, intr., *strive, be eager (for); pay attention (to); devote oneself (to).*
- studiōsē**, adv. [studiōsus], *eagerly.*
- studium**, -ī, N. [studeō], *eagerness, desire, attachment; devotion, good will, enthusiasm, IV. 24; pursuit, VI. 21.*
- stultitia**, -ae, F. [stultus], *folly.*
- sub**, prep. w. acc. (of motion), *under, beneath, near to, up to; w. occāsum sōlis, towards; w. abl. (of rest), under; w. monte, at the foot of; as prefix, under, from under, up.*
- subducō**, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum [sub + ducō], tr. (lead under), *withdraw; draw up, beach (of ships).*
- subeō**, -ire, -ivī (-ii), -itum [sub + eō], tr., *go under, undergo, suffer; advance, advance to, II. 27; subeuntēs, II. 25, coming up, advancing.*
- subfodiō**, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum [sub + fodiō, dig], tr., *stab underneath.*
- subiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [sub + iaciō], tr., *throw under; thrust (from below), I. 26; place (below), IV. 17; expose, put under, VII. 77.*
- subigō**, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum [sub + agō], tr., *force, reduce.*
- subitō**, adv. [subitus], *suddenly.*
- subitus**, -a, -um, *sudden.*
- sublātus**, see tollō.
- sublevō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [sub + levō], tr., *lift up, raise up; assist, relieve, support.*
- sublica**, -ae, F., *pile.*
- subministrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [sub + ministrō], tr., *furnish, supply.*
- submitto**, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [sub + mittō], tr., *send under, send.*
- submoveō**, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum [sub + moveō], tr., *dislodge, repulse.*
- subruō**, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum [sub + ruō], tr., *undermine, loosen.*
- subsequor**, -sequī, -secūtus [sub + sequor], dep., *follow closely, follow up, follow.*
- subsidiū**, -ī, N. [sub + sedeō], *assistance, aid, relief, reinforcement; pl., reserves, II. 22.*
- subsistō**, -sistere, -stitī, — [sub + sistō], intr., *stand still, halt, withstand, resist.*

subsum, -esse, -fuī [sub + sum],  
intr., *be near at hand.*

subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāc-  
tum [sub + trahō], tr., *take*  
*away, carry off.*

subvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vec-  
tum [sub + vehō], tr., *bring*  
*up, convey.*

subveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ven-  
tum [sub + veniō], intr. (come  
to aid), *relieve, assist.*

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum  
[sub + cēdō], tr. and intr. (go  
from under), *come up, ad-*  
*vance, approach*, II. 6; *take*  
*the place of, relieve*, III. 4;  
*border*, IV. 3; *succeed*, VI. 13.

succendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēn-  
sum, tr., *set on fire.*

succidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum  
[sub + caedō], tr., *cut down.*

succumbō, -cumbere, -cubui,  
-cubitum [sub + cumbō], intr.,  
*yield to, succumb to.*

succurrō, -currere, -curri, -cur-  
sum [sub + currō], intr., *run*  
*to aid, hasten to aid.*

sudis, -is, F., *stake.*

Suēbī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Suebi*  
(swē'bī), *Swabians, the largest*  
*tribe of Germans*, I. 37, 51,  
54; IV. 1, 3, 7, etc.

Suēbus, -a, -um, *Suebian* (swē'-  
bi-an), *Swabian*, I. 53.

Suessiōnēs, -um, M. pl., *the*  
*Suessiones* (swes-i-ō'nēz), *a*  
*tribe of Belgae on the Marne*,  
II. 3, etc.; cf. *modern*  
*Soissons.*

sui, sibi, sē, reflex. pron. (App.  
21), *himself, herself, itself,*

*themselves; inter sē, from one*  
*another, to one another, to*  
*each other.*

suffrāgium, -ī, N., *vote.*

Sugambri, -ōrum, M. pl., *the*  
*Sugambri* (sū-gam'brī), *a Ger-*  
*man tribe.*

Sulla, -ae, M., *Sulla* (sul'a), *a*  
*Roman family name; L.*  
*Cornelius Sulla, the famous*  
*general and dictator (died*  
*78 B.C.), I. 21.*

Sulpicius, -ī, M., *Sulpicius* (sul-  
pish'i-us); *P. Sulpicius Rufus,*  
*one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, irr., *be.*

summa, -ae, F. [summus],  
*top; sum, total; w. bellī,*  
*management*, I. 41, II. 4;  
*summa imperī, chief com-*  
*mand*, II. 23.

summus, -a, -um, sup. of su-  
perus (App. 18), *highest,*  
*chief, greatest, supreme; of*  
*highest interest*, I. 34, *most*  
*important*, IV. 5; w. mōns,  
*collis, etc., the highest part of,*  
*the top of; as noun, ab*  
*summō, from the top*, II. 18.

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmp-  
tum [sub + emō], tr., *take,*  
*undertake; sūmere supplicium*  
*dē, inflict punishment on;*  
*sūmere sibi, assume*, II. 4.

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um [sumptus],  
*costly, expensive.*

sūmptus, -ūs, M. [sūmō], *ex-*  
*pense, cost.*

superbē, adv. [superbus],  
*proudly, haughtily.*

superior, -ius, comp. adj. [su-



**perus**, App. 18], *higher, upper*, IV. 28; *superior, more successful*; w. **diēs**, **tempus**, *former*.  
**superō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [superus], tr. (be superior to), *surpass, conquer, overcome; overtop*, III. 14; *survive*, VI. 19.

**supersedeō**, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sesum [super + sedeō], intr., *refrain from*.

**supersum**, -esse, -fuī [super + sum], intr., *be over, remain, survive*.

**superus**, -a, -um (App. 18), *upper, higher*.

**suppetō**, -petere, -petīvī, -petitum [sub + petō], intr., *be at hand, be in store; hold out*.

**supplex**, **supplicis**, adj., *entreating, submissive*; as noun, *suppliant*, II. 28.

**supplicātiō**, -ōnis, F. [supplicō, *supplicate*] (*religious festival*), *public thanksgiving*.

**suppliciter**, adv. [supplex], *humbly, suppliantly*.

**supplicium**, -ī, N. [supplex], *punishment, penalty*.

**supportō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [sub + portō], tr., *bring up, convey, supply*.

**suprā**, adv., *above, before*, II. 1, 18; prep. w. acc., *above*.

**suscipiō**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [sub + capiō], tr., *undertake, assume; suscipere sibi, accept*.

**suspiciō**, -ōnis, F. [sub + speciō, *spy*], *suspicion*.

**suspisor**, -ārī, -ātus [suspiciō], dep., *mistrust, suspect*.

**sustentō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [sustineō], tr. and intr., *hold out, endure, make a defense*.

**sustineō**, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [sub + teneō], tr. and intr., *hold up, sustain, control, withstand, endure; hold out; sē sustinēre*, II. 25, *stand*.

**sustulī**, see **tollō**.

**suus**, -a, -um, poss. pron., *his (own), her, its, their*; w. **clēmētia**, *usual*; w. **locus**, *favorable*; pl. as noun, **suī**, *their friends; sua*, *their property*.

## T

**T.**, see **Titus**.

**tabernāculum**, -ī, N. [taberna, *hut*], *tent*.

**tabula**, -ae, F., *tablet, record, list*.  
**taceō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, intr. and tr., *be silent; pass over in silence, keep quiet*.

**tacitus**, -a, -um, *silent, speechless*.

**tālea**, -ae, F., *rod, bar*.

**tam**, adv., *so, so much*.

**tamen**, conj., *nevertheless, yet, however*.

**tametsī**, conj. [tamen + etsī], *although*.

**tandem**, adv. [tam], *at length; in questions, pray*.

**tantopere**, adv. [tantō + opere], *so earnestly*.

**tantulus**, -a, -um [tantus], *so small, so little, so trivial*, IV. 22.

**tantummodo**, adv., *only*.

**tantus**, -a, -um, *so great, so*

*much, such; tantum, as adv., so much, only; tantum posse, have so much strength or weight.*

Tarbellī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Tarbelli* (tär-bel'i), a tribe in Aquitania.

tardē, adv. [tardus], *slowly.*

tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [tardus] (make slow), tr., *check.*

tardus, -a, -um, *slow, slack*, II. 25.

Tarusâtēs, -ium, M. pl., *the Tarusates* (tär-ū-sā'tēz), a tribe of Aquitania.

taurus, -ī, M., *bull.*

Tectosagēs, -um, M. pl., *the Tectosages* (tek-tos'a-jēz), a division of the Volcae.

tēctum, -ī, N. [tegō], *roof, shelter.*

tegimentum, -ī, N. [tegō], *covering.*

tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctum, tr., *cover.*

tēlum, -ī, N., *missile, weapon, javelin, spear.*

temerārius, -a, -um [temerē], *rash, heedless, reckless.*

temerē, adv., *rashly, recklessly; easily*, IV. 20.

temeritās, -tātis, F. [temerē], *rashness, recklessness.*

tēmō, -ōnis, M., *pole (of a wagon).*

temperantia, -ae, F. [temperō], *self-control, moderation, discretion.*

temperātus, -a, -um [temperō], *temperate, mild.*

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [tem-

pus], tr. and intr. (observe proper measure), *control (one-self), refrain.*

tempestās, -tātis, F., *season, weather, storm.*

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *try, attempt; tempt*, III. 6.

tempus, -oris, N., *time, season; reliquum tempus, the future; omni tempore, always.*

Tencterī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Tencteri* (tengkt'ē-rī), a German tribe that crossed the Rhine with the Usipetes.

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tēnsūm, tr., *stretch.*

tenebrae, -ārum, F. pl., *darkness.*

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum, tr., *hold, keep, bind*, I. 31, l. 616; *restrain*, I. 39; *memoriā tenēre, remember; sēsē tenēre, I. 49, remain.*

tener, -era, -erum, *tender, young.*

tenuiter, adv. [tenuis, thin], *thinly.*

ter, dist. num. adv., *three times.*

tergum, -ī, N., *back; terga vertere, turn and flee; post tergum, ā tergō, in the rear.*

ternī, -ae, -a, dist. num. adj., *three each, three at a time.*

terra, -ae, F., *land, country, ground*, I. 32, pl., *the world.*

Terrasidius, -ī, M., *Titus Terasidius* (ter-a-sid'i-us), one of Caesar's tribunes.

terrēnus, -a, -um [terra], *of earth.*

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, tr., *frighten, dismay, terrify.*

**territō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [terreō],  
tr., frighten, alarm, V. 6.

**terror, -ōris, M.** [terreō], fright,  
terror.

**tertius, -a, -um** [trēs], third.

**testāmentum, -ī, N.** [testor],  
will.

**testimōnium, -ī, N.** [testis],  
proof, evidence.

**testis, -is, M. or F.**, witness.

**testūdō, -inis, F.** (tortoise),  
*testudo*, a close column of  
soldiers, with shields over-  
lapping above their heads.

**Teutonī, -ōrum [-ēs, -um], M.**  
pl., the *Teutoni* (tū'tō-nī),  
*Teutons*, a tribe of Germans,  
allies of the *Cimbri*; de-  
feated by *Marius*, 102 B.C., I.  
33, etc.

**tignum, -ī, N.**, log, pile, beam.

**Tigurinī, -ōrum, M.** pl., the  
*Tigurini* (tig-ū-rī'nī), a can-  
ton of the *Helvetii*, I. 12.

**Tigurinus, -a, -um**, of the *Tigu-  
rini*.

**timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, tr. and**  
intr., be afraid, fear.

**timidus, -a, -um** [timeō], timid,  
cowardly.

**timor, -ōris, M.** [timeō], fear,  
dread.

**Titūrius, -ī, M.**, *Quintus Titurius*  
(tī-tū'ri-us) *Sabinus*, one of  
*Caesar's* lieutenants, II. 5,  
9; III. 11, etc.

**Titus, -ī, M.**, *Titus* (tī'tus), a  
Roman personal name.

**tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -atum, tr.**,  
endure, support, sustain.

**tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum,**

tr., lift up, take away, carry,  
destroy, break off, I. 42;  
remove, I. 5, VI. 23; *sublā-  
tus* ("lifted up"), elated, I.  
15; raised, III. 22; weighed,  
IV. 23.

**Tolōsa, -ae, F.**, *Tolosa* (tō-lō'sa),  
modern *Toulouse* (tö löz').

**Tolōsātēs, -ium, M.** pl., the  
*Tolosates* (tol-ō-sā'tēz), in-  
habitants of *Tolosa*, I. 10.

**tormentum, -ī, N.** [torqueō,  
twist], engine (for hurling  
missiles by twisted ropes);  
torture, means of torture, VI.  
19.

**tot, indecl. adj.**, so many.

**totidem, indecl. adj.** [tot + dem],  
just as many, the same num-  
ber.

**tōtus, -a, -um** (App. 12), the  
whole of, all, entire.

**trabs, trabis, F.**, beam.

**trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditum**  
[trāns + dō], tr., hand over,  
give up, surrender; hand  
down, IV. 7; transmit, im-  
part, teach, VI. 17.

**trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -duc-  
tum** [trāns + dūcō], tr., lead  
across, bring over.

**trāgula, -ae, F.**, dart, heavy  
and thrown by a strap.

**trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctum,**  
tr., draw; hurry along, I.  
53.

**trāciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum**  
[trāns + iaciō], tr. (throw  
across), pierce.

**trāiectus, -ūs, M.** [trāciō], pas-  
sage.

- trānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [trāns + nō], tr. and intr., *swim across*.  
 tranquillitās, -tātis, F. [tranquillus], *stillness, calm*.  
 trāns, prep. w. acc., *across*; as prefix, *across*.  
 trānsceŋdō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēsum [trāns + scandō, climb], intr., *climb across*; trānsceŋdere in nāvēs, *board the ships*.  
 trānseō, -īre, -ivī (-iī), -itum [trāns + eō], tr. and intr., *go across, cross, go over, pass over*; *move*, VI. 22; (of time) *pass by, elapse*.  
 trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [trāns + ferō], tr., *carry over, transfer*.  
 trānsfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum [trāns + figō, fix], tr., *pierce through*.  
 trānsfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum [trāns + fodiō], tr., *dig through, wound*.  
 trānsgridior, -gridī, -gressus sum [trāns + gradior], dep., *go across, cross*.  
 trānsmarīnus, -a, -um [trāns, mare], *beyond the sea*.  
 trānsmissus, -ūs, M., *passage, crossing*.  
 trānsportō, -are, -āvī, -ātum [trāns + portō], tr., *carry across, bring across, bring over*.  
 Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um [trāns, Rhēnus], *living across the Rhine*; as noun, Trānsrhēnānī, *those living across the Rhine*, IV. 16.  
 trānstrum, -ī, N., *cross-beam*.  
 trānsversus, -a, -um [trānsvertō (turned across)], *at right angles*, II. 8.  
 Trebius, -ī, M., *Marcus Trebius* (trē'bi-us) *Gallus*, an officer in Caesar's army.  
 Trebōnius, -ī, M., *Trebonius* (tre-bō'ni-us), name of a Roman tribe; *Gaius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.  
 trecentī, -ae, -a, *three hundred*.  
 trēs, tria (App. 16), *three*.  
 Trēverī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Treveri* (trev'e-rī), a Gallic tribe on the Moselle; their chief town now Treves, I. 37, II. 24, III. 11, IV. 10, etc.  
 Tribocī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Triboci* (trib'ō-sī), a German tribe allied with Ariovistus, I. 51.  
 tribūnus, -ī, M. [tribus, tribe], *tribune*; see Introd. 36.  
 tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtum, tr., *bestow, attribute*.  
 tribūtum, -ī, N. [tribuō], *tribute*.  
 triduum, -ī, N. [trēs + diēs], *three days*.  
 triennium, -ī, N. [trēs + annus], *a period of three years*.  
 trīgintā, indecl. adj., *thirty*.  
 trīnī, -ae, -a, *threefold, triple*; trīnae catēnae, *three sets of chains*.  
 triplex, triplicis, adj., *threefold, triple*; for triplex aciēs see Introd. 47.  
 triquetrus, -a, -um, *triangular*.  
 trīstis, -e, *sad, in sadness, sorrowful*.  
 trīstitia, -ae, F. [trīstis], *sadness, sorrowful state*.

**Troucillus, -i, M.**, (*Gaius Valerius*) *Troucillus* (trū-sil'-us), a leader of the province of Gaul, friendly to Caesar, I. 19.

**truncus, -i, M.**, *trunk* (of a tree).

**tuba, -ae, F.**, *trumpet*.

**tueor, tuērī, tūtus (tuitus) sum,** dep., *watch, protect, defend*.

**Tulingī, -ōrum, M. pl.**, the *Tulingi* (tū-lin'jī), neighbors and allies of the Helvetii, I. 5, 25, 28, 29.

**Tullius, -i, M.**, *Tullius*, name of a Roman gens; see *Cicerō*.

**tum, adv.**, *then, at that time*.

**tumultus, -ūs, M.** [*tumeō, swell*], *commotion, disorder, panic; insurrection*, I. 40.

**tumulus, -i, M.** [*tumeō, swell*], *mound, hill*.

**turma, -ae, F.**, *troop* (of cavalry), *squadron*.

**Turonī, -ōrum, M. pl.**, the *Turoni* (tū'rō-nī), a tribe on the Loire.

**turpis, -e**, *disgraceful*.

**turpiter, adv.** [*turpis*], *disgracefully*.

**turpitūdō, -inis, F.** [*turpis*], *disgrace*.

**turris, turris, F.**, *tower*.

**tūtō, adv.** [comp., *tūtius*], *safely*.

**tūtus, -a, -um**, *safe*.

**tuus, -a, -um**, *your*.

## U

**ubi, conj.**, *when, where*; **ubi primum**, *as soon as*.

**Ubī, -ōrum, M. pl.**, the *Ubii*

(ū'bi-ī), a German tribe on the Rhine, near modern Cologne, I. 54, IV. 3, 8, 11, 16, 19.

**ubique, adv.**, *everywhere, anywhere*.

**ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum,** dep., *punish, take revenge for, avenge*.

**ūllus, -a, -um** (App. 12), *any*.  
**ulterior, -ius, comp. adj.** [*ultrā*, App. 18], *farther, beyond, more remote*; see *Gallia*.

**ultimus, -a, -um, sup. adj.** [*ultrā*, App. 18], *farthest, most remote*.

**ultrā, adv. and prep. w. acc.** (App. 18), *beyond*.

**ultrō, adv.** (beyond), *of one's own accord, voluntarily*; **ultrō citrōque**, *back and forth, to and fro*.

**ultus**, see *ulcīscor*.

**ululātus, -ūs, M.** [*ululō, howl*], *howling, shrieking*.

**umquam, adv.**, *ever, at any time*.

**ūnā, adv.** [*ūnus*], *altogether, along (with)*; *at the same time, in the same place*.

**unde, adv.** (rel. or interrog.), *from which place, whence, from which*.

**ūndecimus, -a, -um**, *eleventh*.

**ūndēvigintī, indecl. adj.** [*ūnus + dē + vīgintī*], *nineteen*.

**undique, adv.** [*unde + que*], *from all sides, on all sides, everywhere*.

**ūniversus, -a, -um** [*ūnus + versus*], *all together, whole, entire*.

**ūnus**, -a, -um (App. 12), *one, alone, only one*, I. 31, l. 611.

**urbs**, **urbis**, F., *city, the city* (i.e. Rome).

**urgeō**, **urgēre**, **ursī**, —, tr., *press, press hard, beset*.

**ūrus**, -ī, M., *wild ox, urochs*.

**Usipetēs**, -um, M. pl., *the Usipetes* (ū-sip'e-tēz), a German tribe that crossed the Rhine in 55 B.C.

**ūsq̄ue**, adv., *continuously, without interruption, even; even to, as far as*.

**ūsus**, -ūs, M. [ūtōr], *use, practice, experience, skill, enjoyment, advantage; ex ūsū* ("of use"), *to the advantage, advantageous*, I. 30, 50; **ūsus est**, *there is need*, IV. 2.

**ut**, or **utī**, conj. w. subjunct., *that, in order that, so that, how, although*, III. l. 156; after a verb of fearing, *that not*; w. indic., *as, when*; in comparisons, *just as, as if*, I. 38.

**uter**, -tra, -trum (App. 12), *which* (of two).

**uterque**, **utraque**, **utrumque** [gen., **utriusque**; dat., **utrique**], adj. and pron., *both, each* (of two), *either; ex utrāque parte*, *on both sides*.

**utī**, older form of **ut**.

**ūtīlis**, -e [ūtōr], *useful*.

**ūtīlitās**, -tātis, F. [ūtīlis], *advantage, usefulness*.

**ūtōr**, **ūtī**, **ūsus sum**, dep., *use, adopt, enjoy* w. **condiciō**, *accept*.

**utrimque**, adv. [uterque], *on both sides*.

**utrum**, conj. [uter], *whether*.

**uxor**, -ōris, F., *wife*.

## V

**V**, symbol for **quīnque**.

**Vacalus**, -ī, M., *the Waal*, a branch of the Rhine.

**vacātiō**, -ōnis, F. [vacō], *exemption*.

**vacō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., *be vacant, be unoccupied*.

**vacuus**, -a, -um, *empty, vacant, unoccupied; vacuus ab*, *without*, II. 12.

**vadum**, -ī, N., *ford, shoal, shallows*, III. 12.

**vāgīna**, -ae, F., *sheath, scabbard*.

**vagor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, intr., *wander about, roam*.

**valeō**, -ere, -uī, -itum, intr., *be strong, have power, have influence; plūrimum valēre*, *be of great weight, have great (or greatest) influence, have great strength*.

**Valerius**, -ī, M., **Valerius** (valē'ri-us), name of a Roman gens. 1. **C. Valerius Troucillus**, I. 19, see **Troucillus**. 2. **C. V. Caburus**, I. 47, see **Cabūrus**. 3. **C. V. Procillus**, I. 47, son of 2. 4. **C. V. Flaccus**, I. 47, see **Flaccus**. 5. **L. V. Praeconinus**, III. 20, see **Praecōninus**.

**valētūdō**, -inis, F. [valeō], *health; state of health*.



**vallēs, -is, F.,** *valley.*

**vallum, -ī, N.,** *palisade, rampart, wall; prō vallō, as a barricade.*

**Vangionēs, -um, M. pl.,** the *Vangiones* (van-jī'ō-nēz), a tribe of Germans, allied with Ariovistus, I. 51.

**varietās, -tātis, F. [varius],** *variety, varied color.*

**varius, -a, -um,** *varying, various, different.*

**vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [vāstus],** tr. (make empty), *lay waste, ravage.*

**vāstus, -a, -um,** *vast, boundless.*

**vāticinātiō, -ōnis, F. [vātēs,** *prophet], prophecy, divination.*

**ve,** enclitic conj. = **vel.**

**vectigal, -ālis, N.,** *revenue, tax.*

**vectigālis, -e,** *tributary.*

**vehementer, adv. [vehemēns],** *severely, strongly, exceedingly, greatly, desperately.*

**vel, conj., or; vel . . . vel,** *either . . . or.*

**Velānius, -ī, M.,** *Quintus Velanius* (ve-lā'ni-us), one of Caesar's tribunes.

**Veliocassēs, -um, M. pl.,** the *Veliocasses* (vel-i-ō-kas'ēz), a Belgian tribe, II. 4.

**vēlōcitās, -tātis, F. [vēlōx],** *swiftness, speed.*

**vēlōx, vēlōcis, adj.,** *swift.*

**vēlum, -ī, N.,** *sail.*

**velut, adv. [vel + ut],** *just as.*

**vēnātiō, -ōnis, F. [vēnor, hunt],** *hunting.*

**vēnātor, -ōris, M. [vēnor],** *hunter.*

**vēndō, vēndere, vēndidī, vēn-**  
**ditum [vēnum, sale, + dō],** *sell.*

**Venellī, -ōrum, M. pl.,** the *Venelli* (ve-nel'i), a coast tribe of northwestern Gaul, II. 34, III. 17-19.

**Venetī, -ōrum, M. pl.,** the *Veneti* (ven'e-ti), an important tribe on the western coast of Gaul, II. 34, III. 7-16.

**Venetia, -ae, F.,** *Venetia* (venē'shi-a), country of the Veneti, III. 9.

**Veneticus, -a, -um,** *of (or with) the Veneti.*

**veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum,** intr., *come, go; ventum est,* impers. pass. (it was come), *they came.*

**ventitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of**  
**veniō],** *come often.*

**ventus, -ī, M.,** *wind.*

**Veragrī, -ōrum, M. pl.,** the *Veragri* (ver'a-grī), an Alpine tribe.

**Verbigenus, -ī, M.,** *Verbigenus* (vēr-bij'e-nus), one of the four cantons of the Helvetii, I. 27.

**verbum, -ī, N.,** *word; verba*  
*facere, speak, plead.*

**Vercassivellaunus, -ī, M.,** *Vercassivellaunus* (ver-kas-i-velā'nus), a leader of the Arverni.

**Vercingetorīx, -īgis, M.,** *Vercingetorix* (vēr-sin-jet'ō-riks), a chief of the Arverni, leader of the combined Gauls in 52 B.C.; surrendered to

- Caesar after the siege of Alesia; a few years later put to death by Caesar's order.
- vereor, verērī, veritus sum**, dep., *fear, dread.*
- vergō, vergere**, —, —, intr., *incline, slope, lie.*
- vergobretus, -ī, M.**, *vergobret*, title of the chief magistrate of the Haedui.
- vērīsimilis, -e** [vērus + similis], (like the truth), *probable, likely.*
- vērō**, adv. [vērus] (in truth), *in fact, in deed; but, however, on the other hand* (App. 171, e).
- versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [freq. of *vertō*], intr. (turn often), *treat, deal with*; pass. as dep., *be, dwell, remain, be engaged, occupied, involved, busy; associate, unite*, I. 48.
1. **versus**, prep. w. acc. [*vertō*]. *toward.*
2. **versus, -ūs, M.** [*vertō*] (turning), *line, verse.*
- vertō, vertere, vertī, versum**, tr., *turn.*
- Verucloetius, -ī, M.**, *Verucloetius* (vēr-ū-klē'shi-us), an envoy of the Helvetians, I. 7.
- vērus, -a, -um**, *true.*
- verūtum, -ī, N.** [verū], *dart.*
- Vesontiō, -ōnis, M.**, *Vesontio* (ve-son'shi-ō), largest town of the Sequani, modern Besançon, I. 38.
- vesper, vesperī, M.**, *evening*; sub *vesperum*, *toward evening.*
- vēstīgium, -ī, N.**, *footstep, footprint, track, spot*; in *vēstigiō*, *on the spot, immediately.*
- vestiō, -īre, -ivī, -itum** [vestis], tr., *clothe, cover.*
- vestitus, -ūs, M.** [vestiō], *clothing.*
- veterānus, -a, -um** [vetus], *old veteran.*
- vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum**, tr., *forbid.*
- vetus, veteris**, adj. (App. 16), *old, former.*
- vēxillum, -ī, N.**, *flag, banner.*
- vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, tr., *harass, overrun, ravage.*
- via, -ae, F.**, *way, road.*
- viātor, -ōris, M.** [via], *traveler.*
- vīcēnī, -ae, -a**, dist. num. adj., *twenty each, twenty at a time.*
- vīciēs**, num. adv., *twenty times.*
- vicis, -is, F.** (nom. and dat. not used), *change*; in *vicem*, *in turn.*
- victima, -ae, F.**, *victim, animal for sacrifice.*
- victor, -ōris, M.** [vincō], *victor*; adj., *victorious, conquering*, I. 31.
- victōria, -ae, F.** [victor], *victory.*
- victus**, part. of *vincō*.
- victus, -ūs, M.** [vīvō], *living, mode of life; food.*
- vīcus, -ī, M.**, *village.*
- videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum**, tr., *see*; pass., *be seen, seem, seem good, seem best.*
- vigilia, -ae, F.** [vigil, awake], *watch, fourth part of the night* (counting from sunset to sunrise); *dē tertiā vigiliā*,

- in the third watch, after midnight.*
- vīgintī**, indecl. adj., *twenty*.
- vīmen**, **vīminis**, N., *twig, osier*.
- vinciō**, **vincire**, **vīnxi**, **vinctum**, tr., *bind*.
- vincō**, **vincere**, **vīcī**, **victum**, tr., *conquer*.
- vinculum**, -ī, N. [**vinciō**], *bond, fetter, chain; ex vinculis, in chains; in vincula, into prison*.
- vindicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. (claim one's rights against), *punish*.
- vīnea**, -ae, F. [**vīnum**] (arbor for vines); *shed, to protect a besieging body of soldiers; see agō and Introd. 53*.
- vīnum**, -ī, N., *wine*.
- violō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *harm*.
- vir**, **virī**, M., *man*.
- virgultum**, -ī, N., *brushwood*.
- Viridovīx**, -īcis, M., *Viridovix* (vi-rid'ō-viks), leader of the Venelli, III. 17.
- Viromandūī**, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Viromandui* (vir-ō-man'dū-ī), a Belgian tribe, II. 4, etc.
- virtūs**, -tūtis, F. [**vir**] (manliness), *bravery, valor; virtue, character, ability*, IV. 21.
- vīs**, **vīs**, F. (App. 10), *force, strength, violence; pl., vīrēs, strength; vim facere, use violence*.
- vīta**, -ae, F., *life*.
- vīto**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *avoid, shun, escape*.
- vitrum**, -ī, N., *wood, a plant* used by the Britons for making a blue dye.
- vīvō**, **vivere**, **vīxi**, **victum**, intr., *live*.
- vīvus**, -a, -um [**vīvō**], *living, alive*.
- vix**, adv., *with difficulty, scarcely*.
- Vocātēs**, -ium, M. pl., *the Vocates* (vō-kā'tēz), an Aquitanian tribe.
- Vocciō**, -ōnis, M., *Voccio* (vok'shi-ō), king of the Norici, I. 53.
- vocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *call, summon*.
- Vocontīī**, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Vocontii* (vō-kon'shi-ī), a Gallic tribe, south of the Allobroges, I. 10.
- Volcae**, -ārum, M. pl., *the Volcae* (vol'sē), a tribe of the Province.
- volō**, **velle**, **voluī** (App. 46), tr. and intr., *wish, be willing*.
- voluntās**, -tātis, F. [**volō**], *will-ingness, consent, will, goodwill, wish, desire*.
- voluptās**, -tātis, F. [**volō**], *pleasure, delight*.
- Volusēnus**, -ī, M., *Volusenus* (vol-ū-sē'nus), name of Roman family; *Volusenus Quadratus*, a military tribune.
- Vorēnus**, -ī, M., *Vorenius* (vō-rē'nus), a centurion.
- Vosegus**, -ī, M., *the Vosges* (vōzh) *Mts.*
- voveō**, **vovēre**, **vōvī**, **vōtum**, tr., *vow*.
- vōx**, **vōcis**, F., *voice, word*,

*utterance; vōcibus, I. 39, talk; vōce māgnā, with a loud voice.*

**Vulcānus, -ī, M.,** *Vulcan, god of fire.*

**vulgō, adv. [vulgus]** (*among the multitude*), *generally, commonly, everywhere.*

**vulgus, -ī, N. (acc., vulgus),**

*the people, common people, mass; see efferō.*

**vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [vulnus], tr.,** *wound.*

**vulnus, -eris, N.,** *wound.*

**vultus. -ūs, M. [volō],** *look, expression of countenance;*

**vultum fingere, put on a brave face.**

# INDEX

To the Grammatical Appendix and the Latin Prose Composition

(The numbers refer to pages.)

## A

**ā, ab**, denoting separation, 249;  
place from which, 249; source,  
250; agency, 250.

Ablative case, uses of, 249-253.

absolute, 252, 290.

of accompaniment, 251.

of accordance, 251.

of agent, 250.

of attendant circumstances,  
251.

of cause, 251.

of comparison, 250.

of degree of difference, 251.

of description, 252, 297.

of manner, 251.

of means, 250.

of place from which, 249; in  
which, 253.

of price, 252, 311.

of separation, 249.

of source, 250.

of specification, 252, 297.

of time when or within which,  
253.

with **opus**, **usus**, 251, 309.

with **utor**, etc., 250.

Accusative case, uses of, 247-249.  
adverbial, 249.

as direct object, 247.

as predicate accusative, 248.

as secondary object, 248.

as subject of infinitive, 248.

cognate, 249, 314.

Accusative case, of duration of  
time, 249.

of extent of space, 249.

of place to which, 248.

with **ask**, **demand**, **teach**, 247,  
312.

with compound verbs, 247, 312.

with prepositions, 248, 274.

with **propior**, **proximus**, 248.

Adjective clauses, 255.

Adjectives, agreement of, 253, 281.

attributive, 254.

compared, 221.

numeral, 222.

of 1st and 2d declension, 218.

of 3d declension, 219.

predicate, 254.

uses of, 254.

Adverbial clauses, 274.

Adverbs, comparison, 222; forma-  
tion, 222; uses, 274.

Agreement, of nouns, 243; of  
adjectives, 253; of pronouns,  
255; of verbs, 258.

**alius**, **alter**, 219, 257.

**amplius**, in comparisons, 250.

Antecedent, of relative pronoun,  
256, 257.

**antequam**, with temporal clauses,  
264.

Apposition, 242.

Attraction, subjunctive by, 266.

## B

Base, of noun, 215.

## C

- Calendar, Roman, 276.  
 Cardinals, 222.  
**causā**, with genitive, 275, 289.  
 Causal clauses, 264.  
 Characteristic, clauses of, 262, 330, 333.  
 Clauses, defined, 243.  
 Cognate accusative, 249.  
 Command, 268.  
 Comparison of adjectives, 221.  
     of adverbs, 222.  
 Complex sentence, 243.  
 Compound sentence, 242.  
 Concessive clauses, 265, 353.  
 Conditional sentences, 265, 348;  
     in indirect discourse, 271, 350.  
 Conjugations, 226-240.  
 Conjunctions classified, 274.  
 Connectives, 243.  
**cum** (conj.), causal, 264; concessive, 265; temporal, 263, 340.  
**cum** (prep.), denoting accompaniment, 251; manner, 251; sometimes omitted, 251.  
**cum primum**, with indicative, 263.

## D

- Dative, case, uses of, 246, 247.  
     of agent, 247.  
     of indirect object, 246.  
     of possessor, 247, 305.  
     of purpose or tendency, 246, 307.  
     of reference, 246.  
     of separation, 246.  
     with adjectives, 247.  
     with compound verbs, 246.  
     with verbs of special meaning, 246.

- dē**, denoting place from which, separation, 249.  
 Declension, 215-225.  
 Defective verbs, 240.  
 Demonstrative pronouns, 224, 256.  
 Deponent verbs, 234.  
 Direct object, 247.  
 Direct reflexive, 255.  
**domī**, 253; **domō**, 250; **domum**, 249.  
**dum**, uses of, 264, 342.

## E

- ē**, **ex**, denoting place from which, separation, 249.  
 Emphasis, 275.  
**enim**, position, 276.  
**eō**, conjugated, 237.  
**etsī**, with concessive clauses, 265.

## F

- Fearing, verbs of, with **ut**, **nē**, 267, 329.  
**ferō**, conjugated, 238.  
 Fifth declension, 218.  
 Figures of speech, 277.  
**fiō**, conjugated, 237.  
 First conjugation, 226; declension, 215.  
 Fourth conjugation, 232; declension, 217.

## G

- Genitive case, uses of, 244.  
     objective, 244, 299.  
     of description, 244, 297.  
     of indefinite value, 245, 311.  
     of the whole, 244.  
     possessive, 244, 305.  
     subjective, 244, 299.  
     with adjectives, 245.  
     with **potior**, 245.



Genitive case, with verbs of interest, feeling, memory, 245, 300.

Gerund, gerundive, uses of, 272, 316.

## H

Hendiadys, 277.

Historical infinitive, 269.

Historical tenses, 259

## I

Imperative, uses of, 268.

Imperfect tense, 259, 260.

*imperō*, with subjunctive, 267, 326.

Impersonal verbs, 240, 258.

Indefinite pronouns, 225, 257.

Indicative noun clauses, 267.

Indicative, uses of, 261.

Indirect discourse, 269, 292, 346.

Indirect questions, 266, 302.

Indirect reflexive, 255.

Infinitive noun clauses, 268.

Infinitive, uses of, 268.

Intensive pronoun, 225, 256.

Interrogative pronouns, 225.

Irregular verbs, 235-239.

*iubeō*, with infinitive, 248, 326.

## L

*licet*, conjugated, 240.

Locative case, 253.

*longius*, in comparisons, 250.

## M

*mālō*, conjugated, 239.

*meminī*, conjugated, 240.

Modifiers, of subject, 242; of predicate, 242.

Moods, syntax of, 260-271; in indirect discourse, 269.

## N

*nē*, with purpose clauses, 263; with noun clauses, 267, 337.

Negative adverbs, 274.

Negative command, 268, 322.

*nōlō*, conjugated, 239.

Nominative case, uses of, 243.

Noun clauses, 266, 323, 328, 335

Nouns, declension of, 215-218.

Numerals, 222.

## O

Object, defined, 241.

*ōdī*, conjugated, 240.

*opus*, with ablative, 251, 309.

Order of words, 275.

## P

*parātus*, with gerund or infinitive, 269.

Participles, defined, 271; uses of, 272.

Perfect tense, 259.

Periphrastic conjugation, active, 233; passive, 234.

Personal pronouns, 223, 255.

Phrases, defined, 242.

Place, expressions of, 248, 249, 253.

Pluperfect tense, 259.

*plūs*, in comparisons, 250.

Polysyndeton, 277.

Possession, ways of expressing, 285.

Possessive pronouns, 224, 255.

*possum*, conjugated, 236.

*postquam*, with temporal clauses, 263.

*potior*, with genitive, 245; with ablative, 250.

Predicate, 241; accusative, 248; genitive, 245; noun, 244.

Prefixes, 278.

Prepositions, with accusative, 274;  
with ablative, 274.

Present tense, 259.

Primary tenses, 260.

*priusquam*, with temporal clauses,  
264, 343.

Prohibitions, 322.

Pronouns, declined, 223-225: uses  
of, 255-257; in indirect dis-  
course, 271.

*propior*, *proximus*, etc., with accu-  
sative, 248, 315.

Purpose clauses, 263; expressions  
of purpose, 263.

## Q

*quam*, with comparatives, 250.

*quamquam*, with concessive  
clauses, 265.

Questions, direct, 302; indirect,  
266, 302.

*quī*, with indicative, 262; with  
subjunctive, 262, 263.

*quīn*, *quōminus*, with noun clauses,  
267, 337.

*quō*, with purpose clauses, 263.

*quod*, with causal clauses, 264;  
with noun clauses, 267.

## R

Reflexive pronouns, 223, 255.

Relative clauses, 262.

Relative pronoun, 225, 256.

Result clauses, 263, 333.

## S

Second conjugation, 228; declen-  
sion, 215.

Secondary object, 247; tenses,  
260.

Semi-deponent verbs, 235.

Sentences, defined, 241; classi-  
fied, 242.

Sequence of tenses, 260, 323.

Simple sentence, 242.

Stem, 215.

Subject, defined, 241; of finite  
verb, 243; of infinitive, 248;  
of historical infinitive, 243.

Subjunctive, uses of, 261, 321;  
by attraction, 266; in noun  
clauses, 267.

Substantive clauses, *see* Noun.

Suffixes, 277, 278.

*sum*, conjugated, 235.

Supine, uses of, 274.

Syntax, 241.

## T

Temporal clauses, 263.

Tenses, of indicative, 259; of  
infinitive, 268; of subjunc-  
tive, 260; in indirect dis-  
course, 270.

Third conjugation, 230, 231; de-  
clension, 215.

Time, when, within which, 253;  
during which, 249.

## U

*ubi*, with temporal clauses, 263.

*ut*, with noun clauses, 267; with  
purpose clauses, 263; with  
result clauses, 263; with  
temporal clauses, 263.

*ūt*, with ablative, 250.

## V

Verbs, conjugated, 226-240; uses  
of, 258-273; agreement, 258;  
derivation, 278.

Vocative case, 244.

*volō*, conjugated, 239.

## W

*With*, how expressed, 288.

Word order, 275.





LIBRARY

ST. MARY'S UNIVERSITY

ST. MARY'S UNIVERSITY LIBRARY  
M PA6235 .G8 1907

Caesar's Gallic war, books I-IV, and sel



33525001271219

DISCARD

2083

PA 6235 .G8 1907  
Caesar, Julius  
Caesar's Gallic war,

